

3 1148 00Q82 3427

TTALY 1975 1976 1975

	DATE	DUE	
MAI	JUL 15	969	
MAI	EB 101	JAN TAN	07 1994
1 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	991	NOA 5	2 1997
	1 19 91		
MAI	AUG 14	1991	
00	T 2 3 199		
MAI MA	R 18 1992 JN 12 19	4	
	G 05 1992		
Delico, inc. 30-2			

MAR 0 1 1993



College Department SCOTT, FORESMAN ND COMPANY

* Stre**

447+9=456

MA: NOV 1 9 1981

NOV 1977 MAI JAN 2 1976

MAI JAN 27 1976

MAL JUN 23 1976

MA. JUL 28 1982

MAI NOV 1 1318

OCT 6- 1977

MAI NOV 1 0 1988

MAI JAN 16 1979 MAI JUL 15 1969
MAI MAR I 6 1979
MAI MAR I 6 1979

WAN FEB 8 1980

вч

MAI JUN 4 1982

NORMAN JOHNSTON DE WITT

MAI DEC 29 1982 UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

JOHN FLAGG GUMMERE

WILLIAM PENN CHARTER SCHOOL

ANNABEL HORN

WESLEYAN COLLEGE

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

CHICAGO ATLANTA DALLAS PALO ALTO FAIR LAWN, N.J.

Copyright, 1954, by Scott, Foresman and Company

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

CONTENTS

UNIT I AMERICA AND OTHER LANDS	
WHAT IS LATIN? YOUR LAND MY LAND BEAUTIFUL COUNTRIES: Pronunciation Sentences · The Predicate · Transitive Adjective Endings	10 11
Two Adjectives Modifying One Noun · Phrases A SAILOR'S LIFE · Nouns Denoting Possession · Case · Omission of the Subject	12 15
AN EMBLIRE ISSING MOMENT. Use of do in Negative Sentences and in Questions · Person and Number of Verbs · Forms of sum · Position of the Verb · The Infinitive · Conjugation of portō · The First Conjugation · You, Singular and Plural	18
WE SAVE THE JEWELS: Indirect Object · Dative Case · Adjectives Modifying Nouns in the Dative · Adjectives with a Dependent Dative Position of Genitive and Dative	22
SICILY: Apposition · Prepositions · The Prepositions \bar{a} , ab , and \bar{e} , ex Ablative Case · The Expletive there	24
REVIEW OF UNIT I	26
UNIT II STORIES OF GODS AND MEN	
LATONA AND THE FROGS: First Declension · Clauses · Conjunctions MAIL FROM HOME: Indicative Mood · Imperative Mood · Vocative Case · Tense of Verbs · Present Tense · Future Tense · Future of portō · Stem of the Future · Future of sum ·	28
Future of $d\bar{o}$ · The Conjunction cum A LADY OR A BEAR?: Perfect Tense · Stem of the Perfect Person Endings ·	30
Perfect of the First Conjugation · Perfect of sum BURIED TREASURE Imperfect Tense · Tense Sign of the Imperfect · Person Endings · Imperfect of portō · Present System ·	34
Imperfect of sum A WOODLAND TEMPLE: Second Declension · Gender · Agreement of Adjectives in Gender	37 40
A FRIEND IN NEED. Declension of amīcus Second-Declension Nouns in -er. Vocative Case of the Second Declension	42
REVIEW OF UNIT II	47
UNIT III OLD TALES	
THE GOLDEN TOUCH Adjectives with Masculine in -er · Adjectives with Masculine Nouns of the First Declension · Adjectives	
Used As Nouns · Declension of vir three books for the price of nine · The Adverb · Distinction Between	48
nunc and jam \cdot Imperfect of $dar{o}$ The golden bough. Case Use with Prepositions \cdot Phrases with to \cdot In with	50
the Accusative THE FLOOD Second Conjugation Present System of the Second Conjuga-	52
tion Present Imperative of moneō A TALL TALE Use of Passive Voice Present Passive of portō and moneō.	56
Passive Endings \cdot \bar{a} or ab Meaning by \cdot Ablative of Means	58
THE FIRST FYRRHIC VICTORY: Perfect Tense of the Second Conjugation	62 65
all Kansas Cut 50345	3

	$T \times T$			
UNIT	$\mathbb{T} \mathbb{A}$	HISTORY	AND	LEGEND

		1
METTER OF CIVIL VI		
REVIEW OF UNIT VI	122	
THE GODS DESERT TURNUS: Future of the the end of the conflict: Present Inf		
	he Third and Fourth Conjugations 118	
	ipal Parts of Fourth-Conjugation Verbs 114	
	oal Parts of Third-Conjugation Verbs	
	f the Third and Fourth Conjugations	
Verbs · Perfect Active of	f the Third and Fourth Conjugations	
	on · Imperative of Fourth-Conjugation	
	tives of -iō Verbs 112	
THE PROMISED BRIDE: Present Tense of	Third-Conjugation -iō Verbs · Impera-	
	of the Third Conjugation 110	
	Conjugation · Imperative of $-\bar{o}$ Verbs	
	n · Present Tense of $-\bar{o}$ Verbs of the	
=	ee Translation of the Ablative Absolute 108	
	endent Participial Construction · The	
AN AMBIGUOUS PROPHECY: Ablative wi	-	
Forms · Principa	al Parts of Second-Conjugation Verbs · Different Endings of the Perfect Stem 102	
	nd moneō · Predicate Noun with Passive	
UNIT ${ m VI}$ the birth of a Nat	EVON	
ALEVIEW OF UNITY		
REVIEW OF UNIT V	Lonjugation verbs - Stems of the verb 98	
	ncipal Parts of the Verb · Principal Conjugation Verbs · Stems of the Verb 98	
notes and the second se	ciple · Declension of the Participle 96	
androcles and the lion: Use of Pa	rticiples · Forms of the Perfect Parti-	
	Gender in the Third Declension 94	
	Neuter Nouns of the Second Class	
THE BLIND POET: Masculine and Fe	minine Nouns of the Second Class ·	
	sion · Neuter Nouns of the First Class 92	
A SOLDIER'S LETTER: Masculine and	Feminine Nouns of the Third Declen-	
	Nouns of the First Class · Endings 90	
SERTORIUS AND DIANA'S DEER: Third	Declension · Masculine and Feminine	
ASCANIUS AND THE WHITE STAG: USE	e of suus · Declension of suus · ejus and eōrum 86	
unit ${ t V}$ tales of adventure		
MANLITIS SAVES THE CAPITOL: Reflexive	e Pronoun 82	
THE CAPTURE OF VEIL PULLIC PASSIV	Pronouns 80	
	rative is · Pronoun Use of is	
THESEUS AND THE MINOTAUR: Imperfe THE FIRST MAN TO FLY: The Demonsti		
VESUVIUS AND POMPEII Interrogative		
•	tions · Answers to Questions 70	
THE TIMID SOUL: The Pronoun · Case	e of the Interrogative · Forms of Ques-	
	adsum and absum 66	
APPIUS CLAUDIUS-PUBLIC SERVANT:	Declension of hic and ille. The Verbs	

UNIT	VII	FAMOUS	MYTHS

AN UNHAPPY BRIDE: Third-Declension Adjectives · Third-Declension Adjectives of One Ending THE LOST WIFE: Third-Declension Adjectives of Two Endings · Adjectives of Three Endings · Present Active Participle Declension of the Present Participle	
A CURIOUS WOMAN: Comparison of Adjectives · Formation of the Comparative and the Superlative · Comparison of Adjectives in -er Comparison of Adjectives in -lis · Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives · Cardinal Numbers	
A DARING YOUNG MAN: Adjectives Compared Irregularly · Adverbs Compared Regularly · Irregular Adverbs REVIEW OF UNIT VII	
UNIT VIII THE FALL OF TROY	
A BEAUTY CONTEST: Meaning and Use of the Relative Pronoun · Agreement of the Relative Pronoun · Relative Pronoun with cum	138
PARIS AND HELEN: Direct Quotations · Indirect Quotations · Indirect Discourse · Predicate Noun or Adjective in Indirect Discourse · Present Infinitive in Indirect Discourse :	140
HELEN AND THE BEGGAR: Conjugation of $e\bar{o}$ · Compounds of $e\bar{o}$	144 146
Unit ${ m IX}$ the story of iphigenia	
A DECEITFUL LETTER: Use of Personal Pronouns · Declension of ego Reflexive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons · Pronouns with cum RENDEZVOUS WITH DEATH: Meaning of the Past Perfect · Formation of the Past Perfect Active · Past Perfect Passive : SURPRISE FOR ACHILLES: Perfect Active Infinitives · Passive Infinitives · Tense of Infinitives in Indirect Discourse DIANA TO THE RESCUE: Fifth Declension · Accusative of Duration of Time	152 154
Ablative of Time at Which	
UNIT X ADVENTURES OF ULYSSES	
THE LAND OF FORGETFULNESS: mīlle and mīlia · Accusative of Extent of Space · The Verb ferō and Its Compounds · The Verbs volō and nōlō · Declension and Use of īdem	160
A CLEVER TRICK: Deponent Verbs · Conjugation of possum · Deponents of the Third and Fourth Conjugations	164
TOO MUCH WIND: Ablative of Respect ESCAPE FROM A SORCERESS: Declension and Use of ipse The Gerund Future Active Participle Future Active Infinitive	
HOME AT LAST	174 174
Passive Perfect System	176 179
	181
TO THE PERSON OF	* 4 * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *

UNIT	XI	THE	QUEST	OF	THE	GOLDEN	FLEECE
------	----	-----	-------	----	-----	--------	--------

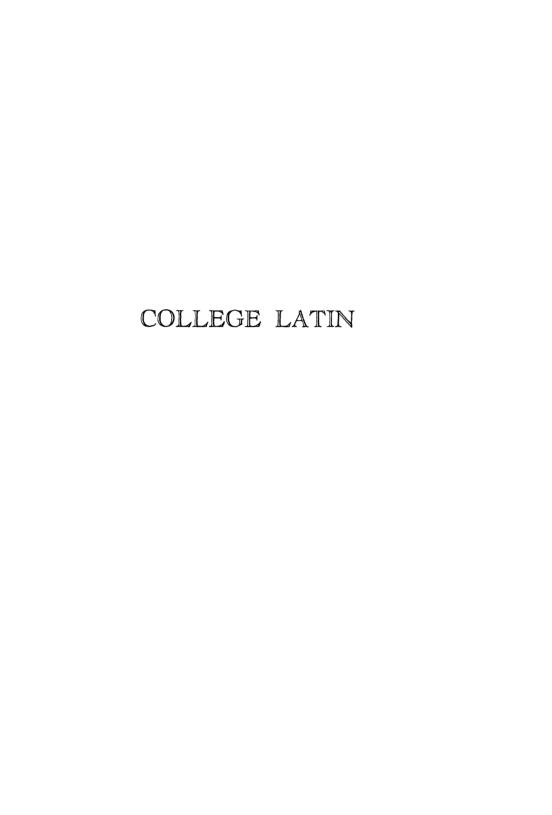
JASON COMES TO COURT: Descriptive Clauses of Situation · Passive of the Imperfect Subjunctive · Imperfect Subjunctive of sum and possum · Past Perfect Subjunctive · Passive of the Past Perfect Subjunctive · Indirect Questions · Subjunctive in cum Causal Clauses 18 THE GOLD SEEKERS: Expressions of Purpose · Subjunctive in a Clause of Purpose · Subjunctive with Expressions of Doubt · Noun Clauses of Desire · Subjunctive in a Dependent Clause in Indirect Discourse 18 WINNING THE FLEECE: Subjunctive in Clauses of Result · Impersonal Verbs · Present Subjunctive 19 REVIEW OF UNIT XI	38
Subjunctive in cum Causal Clauses 18 THE GOLD SEEKERS: Expressions of Purpose · Subjunctive in a Clause of Purpose · Subjunctive with Expressions of Doubt · Noun Clauses of Desire · Subjunctive in a Dependent Clause in Indirect Discourse 18 WINNING THE FLEECE: Subjunctive in Clauses of Result · Impersonal Verbs · Present Subjunctive 19	38
Purpose · Subjunctive with Expressions of Doubt · Noun Clauses of Desire · Subjunctive in a Dependent Clause in Indirect Discourse 18 WINNING THE FLEECE: Subjunctive in Clauses of Result · Impersonal Verbs · Present Subjunctive 19	
Clauses of Desire · Subjunctive in a Dependent Clause in Indirect Discourse 18 WINNING THE FLEECE: Subjunctive in Clauses of Result · Impersonal Verbs · Present Subjunctive 19	
Clause in Indirect Discourse 18 WINNING THE FLEECE: Subjunctive in Clauses of Result · Impersonal Verbs · Present Subjunctive 19	
WINNING THE FLEECE: Subjunctive in Clauses of Result · Impersonal Verbs · Present Subjunctive 19	
·	13
REVIEW OF CHILAI	
	_
UNIT XII ROMAN STORIES RETOLD	
THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME. Ablative with Deponent Verbs · Dative of	
Possession 20 ROYAL TWINS: Future Passive Participle • Dative of Agent	_
THREE AGAINST THREE: Gerundive · Distinctions Between Gerund and	•
Gerundive 20	8
THE HONOR OF A ROMAN: Perfect Subjunctive · Sequence of Tenses 210	
A TRUE PATRIOT: Anticipatory Subjunctive · Clauses of Fear	
REVIEW OF UNIT XII	5
UNIT XIII CAESAR AND THE HELVETIANS	
GAUL AND ITS PEOPLE	7
A NATION OUTGROWS ITS BOUNDARIES: The Irregular Verb fio · Noun	_
Clauses of Fact 218	
LET US PASS	2
200	
YOU SHALL NOT PASS	
YOU SHALL NOT PASS	5
YOU SHALL NOT PASS	5 8
YOU SHALL NOT PASS	5 8 0
YOU SHALL NOT PASS	5 8 0 3
YOU SHALL NOT PASS	5 8 0 3 4
YOU SHALL NOT PASS	5 8 0 3 4 6
YOU SHALL NOT PASS 224 HELP FOR THE INVADED 225 AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH 226 TWO BROTHERS: Dative of Purpose Dative of Reference 236 AN OFFICER'S ERROR 235 BATTLE AND VICTORY 236 DEFEAT AND SURRENDER 236	5 8 0 3 4 6
YOU SHALL NOT PASS 224 HELP FOR THE INVADED 225 AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH 226 TWO BROTHERS: Dative of Purpose · Dative of Reference 236 AN OFFICER'S ERROR 235 BATTLE AND VICTORY 236 DEFEAT AND SURRENDER 236 REVIEW OF UNIT XIII 236 UNIT XIV CAESAR VISITS BRITAIN	5 8 0 3 4 6 9
YOU SHALL NOT PASS 224 HELP FOR THE INVADED 225 AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH 226 TWO BROTHERS: Dative of Purpose Dative of Reference 236 AN OFFICER'S ERROR 235 BATTLE AND VICTORY 236 DEFEAT AND SURRENDER 236 REVIEW OF UNIT XIII 239 UNIT XIV CAESAR VISITS BRITAIN	5 8 0 3 4 6 9 3
YOU SHALL NOT PASS 224 HELP FOR THE INVADED 225 AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH 226 TWO BROTHERS: Dative of Purpose · Dative of Reference 236 AN OFFICER'S ERROR 235 BATTLE AND VICTORY 236 DEFEAT AND SURRENDER 236 REVIEW OF UNIT XIII 236 UNIT XIV CAESAR VISITS BRITAIN PREPARATION FOR AN INVASION 246 OPERATION CHANNEL 246	5 8 0 3 4 6 9 3 6
YOU SHALL NOT PASS 224 HELP FOR THE INVADED 225 AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH 226 TWO BROTHERS: Dative of Purpose Dative of Reference 236 AN OFFICER'S ERROR 237 BATTLE AND VICTORY 236 DEFEAT AND SURRENDER 236 REVIEW OF UNIT XIII 239 UNIT XIV CAESAR VISITS BRITAIN PREPARATION FOR AN INVASION 245 OPERATION CHANNEL 246	5803469 368
YOU SHALL NOT PASS 224 HELP FOR THE INVADED 225 AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH 226 TWO BROTHERS: Dative of Purpose Dative of Reference 236 AN OFFICER'S ERROR 235 BATTLE AND VICTORY 236 DEFEAT AND SURRENDER 236 REVIEW OF UNIT XIII 236 UNIT XIV CAESAR VISITS BRITAIN PREPARATION FOR AN INVASION 246 OPERATION CHANNEL 246 WINNING A BEACHHEAD 246	5803469 3689

UNIT XV A TRAVELER'S REPORT TWO WAYS OF LIFE—PRIESTHOOD AND KNIG

TWO WAYS OF LIFE-PRIESTHOOD AND	KNIGE	ITHO	OD									255
THE GODS MUST BE APPEASED												258
STRANGE GALLIC CUSTOMS										•	·	259
THE GERMANS WERE DIFFERENT										•		261
REVIEW OF UNIT XV												264
		-			•	•		•		•		204
UNIT XVI AN INTREPID LEA	DER	IN	G.	AU:	L							
THE FIRES OF REVOLT BLAZE UP HIGH HOPES PROVE VAIN	•		•	-	•					•		265
HIGH HOPES PROVE VAIN												267
REVIEW OF UNIT XVI	•		-		•							270
unit $\mathbb{X} \mathbb{V} \mathbb{I} \mathbb{I}$ the language	OF V	VES'	TEF	lΝ	TH	ю	J G :	нт				
THE CREATION OF THE WORLD, Genesis	I, 1-1	.4										273
CONFESSIONS OF A SMNT, St. Augustin	e .											274
A HYMN OF PRAISE, Bishop Nicetas												275
							-					276
DAY AND NIGHT, Bishop Isidore .							Ī		•		•	278
PORTRAIT OF A KING, Einhard										•		279
THE GREAT CHARTER	_						•	•		•	•	280
SCIENTIFIC INVENTIONS TO COME, Roge	r Bace	m.		•	-	•	•	•	•	•	•	281
RELIGION AND THE CLASSICS, Erasmus			•	• •	•							282
THE UNIVERSE IN MOTION, Copernicus	•	• •										284
CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD Harvey			•	• •	•	-	-					285
CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD, Harvey PROOF OF MAN'S EXISTENCE, Descartes		•	•	•						•	•	286
GOD, MAN, AND NATURE, Spinoza	•	• •	•	٠.	•	•	•		•	•	•	287
TIDES, Newton			•	• •		•	•	•			•	201
CAPITAL AND LABOR, Pope Leo XIII			•	• •		•	•			•	•	200
THIS DAMACHE OF PROPERTY.	•	-	•	•	٠.	•	•		•	•	•	494
UNIT XVIII A COMEDY OF 1	RR RO	RS										
SCENES FROM Plautus' MENAECHMI .												202
SCENES FROM I MUMBS MENTECHMI .		• •	•		•	•	•	•			•	293
Roman life and literature												
DIGGING UP THE PAST												
ETERNAL ROME												61
THE ROMAN GOVERNMENT												
RELIGION OF THE ROMANS									-			73
ROMAN HOUSES												89
FURNISHINGS OF THE HOUSE												105
ROMAN FOOD												117
INDUSTRY												131
THE FAR-REACHING EMPIRE												143
SOLDIERS OF ROME												216
ROMAN BRITAIN												
CROSSING THE CHANNEL												241
ROMANS IN GAUL												254
ROMANS IN GAUL THE SPAN OF LATIN			1								1	272
	1 .			-	1 7		7.1	1.7	7 1	-	1.1	. (3)

Latin and english

	LATIN WORDS AND ENGLISH WORDS								21
	ENGLISH NOUNS AND LATIN NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION								
	ENGLISH VERBS AND LATIN VERBS								55
	ENGLISH ADJECTIVES AND LATIN ADJECTIVES								64
	PREFIXES IN LATIN AND IN ENGLISH								
	LATIN NOUNS AND ENGLISH NOUNS								100
	WORD FAMILIES								124
	ENGLISH ADJECTIVES FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES								
	ENGLISH NOUNS AND LATIN NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION								
	CHANGES OF SPELLING IN LATIN COMPOUNDS								
	LATIN AND ENGLISH NOUNS WITH SUFFIXES								
	LATIN AND ENGLISH VERBS AND LATIN NOUNS MADE FROM VERB								
	LATIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES								
	LATIN WORDS WITH MANY ENGLISH DERIVATIVES								
П	ELPS FOR THE STUDENT SUMMARY OF FIRST- AND SECOND-DECLENSION NOUNS AND ADJECT	ימינ	***						11
	THE ROMAN CALENDAR								
		•	•	•	•		•		211
	GRAMMAR FOR REFERENCE								212
	INFLECTIONS								
	SYNTAX								
	SUMMARY OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION								
	LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY								
	PROPER NAMES								
	LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS								
	GRAMMATICAL INDEX		•	•	•	•	•	٠	434
A_{c}	CKNOWLEDGMENTS								446



WHAT IS LATIN?

The purpose of this book is to teach you to read Latin. How did you learn English? By hearing it spoken, of course. That is the way anyone learns his first language. He uses the forms he hears, imitating speakers. But when you learn a language from a book, you have to understand its forms and usages. These can be learned easily and quickly by analysis and classification.

One important way in which Latin differs from English is in its inflections—that is, changes in the endings of words to show their use. In the reading on the facing page, we have this statement.

America est pulchra, America is beautiful.

We might have had also this one.

Amō Americam, I love America.

The -m that has been added to America in the second statement shows that the word is the object of an action, which may be either mental or physical.

When we read English, we do not look for endings; the great majority of words have exactly the same form most of the time. The meaning is usually determined by the order of words.

Anna loves Julia. Julia loves Anna.

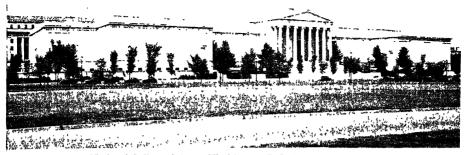
But when we read Latin, we have to notice the endings—the meaning signals—and understand what they tell us.

Anna Juliam amat. Anna amat Juliam. Juliam Anna amat.

Regardless of the order of the words, the endings tell us that these statements have the same basic meaning; the change in word order alters only the emphasis.

This basic difference between Latin and English requires you to develop entirely new reading techniques. As you advance in Latin, you will have to use your eyes in ways to which you have not been accustomed. But Latin will not be difficult, for you will get the meaning of many words from their similarity to English, and the form of a Latin word will usually tell you its use.

Here is some Latin you may be able to read at sight.



The National Gallery of Art in Washington, D.C., is similar in design to public buildings that stood in Rome two thousand years ago

YOUR LAND AND MY LAND

America est patria mea. America est patria tua. America est patria nostra.

Patria tua est terra pulchra. Patria mea est terra pulchra. Patria nostra est terra pulchra. America est pulchra.

Patria nostra est terra lībera. America est terra lībera. America 5 est patria nostra.

America non est insula. Europa non est insula. Britannia est insula, et Sardinia est insula.

Britannia est magna īnsula. Britannia non est patria nostra, sed Britannia est terra pulchra.

Sardinia est īnsula, sed Sardinia non est parva īnsula. Sardinia est magna īnsula. Sardinia est terra pulchra.

Ītalia est terra pulchra, sed Ītalia non est īnsula. Ītalia non est parva. Hispānia non est īnsula, sed Hispānia est terra pulchra. Hispānia non est patria tua.

Europa non est patria nostra. Britannia non est patria mea. Sardinia non est patria mea, et Italia non est patria tua. America est patria nostra.

How many words did you have to guess the meaning of? What suggested the meaning of et, libera, mea, non, nostra, parva, sed, tua? How did you know the meaning of the others? You can see how a knowledge of English helps you understand Latin. More than half the words in the English language came from Latin, and most of them have meanings related to the Latin words they look like.

BEAUTIFUL COUNTRIES

B ritannia et Sardinia sunt însulae pulchrae. Saepe Britanniam et Sardiniam laudāmus quod însulae sunt pulchrae. Americam et Italiam quoque laudāmus, sed America et Italia non sunt însulae.

Americam amāmus quod America est patria nostra. Europam quoque amāmus, sed Europa non est patria nostra. Europa multās et magnās silvās habet. America quoque multās et magnās silvās habet; silvae sunt pulchrae. Sardinia parvās silvās habet.

Sardiniam amāmus quod Sardinia est īnsula pulchra. Agricolae Sardiniam amant, sed Hispāniam quoque amant. Agricolae Hispāniam amant quod Hispānia magnās silvās non habet.

Agricolae silvās non amant sed agricolae terrās pulchrās amant.

WORDS WITH CLUES

agri'cola (agriculture), farmer amā'mus (amorous), we love, like; a'mant, (they) love, like laudā'mus (laudable), we praise mul'tae (multitude), many sil'va (silvan), forest

NEW WORDS

ha'bet, (he) has quod, because quo'que, also sae'pe, often sunt, (they) are

PRONUNCIATION

Imitation of a person who pronounces new words accurately as they are met is a good beginning in learning the pronunciation of a second language. For additional help, see page 368.

SENTENCES

A sentence is a group of words which expresses a thought. The word about which something is stated or asked is called the *subject*, and is usually a noun. The names of persons, places, or things, and of qualities or ideas are *nouns*.

An adjective is a word which describes (or modifies) a noun. A Latin adjective often follows its noun, but magna, large, and other adjectives denoting size or number usually stand before their nouns. Latin has no word for a (an) or the, but in translating, we supply these articles when needed.

THE PREDICATE

What we say or ask about the subject is called the *predicate*. The word in the predicate which tells what the subject does or what is done to the subject is called the *verb*. A verb may also show existence, continuance in a place, or connection.

A noun in the predicate which is linked to the subject by a form of the verb meaning to be (est, etc.) is called a *predicate noun*. A predicate noun denotes the same thing as the subject.

America est patria nostra, America is our country.

A predicate adjective modifies (or describes) the subject of the sentence. The predicate adjective is linked to the subject by **est** or some other form of the verb sum.

America est pulchra, America is beautiful.

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

In the following sentence American denotes the thing which the subject, agricola, loves.

Agricola Americam amat, The farmer loves America.

A word denoting the person or thing directly affected by an act is called the *direct object*. In this lesson the direct objects end in -am. A verb which has a direct object is *transitive*.

Americam amāmus, We love America.

If a verb does not have an object, it is intransitive.

Ambulant, They walk.

In this example the action is complete in itself; the verb has no object and is intransitive.

Some verbs are transitive or intransitive according to the way they are used. But such verbs as be, appear, seem cannot take an object and are therefore always intransitive.

Thus the forms of sum are intransitive. In the following sentence the verb est merely links the predicate noun, insula, to the subject, Sicilia.

Sicilia est însula pulchra, Sicily is a beautiful island.

NUMBER

In Latin, as in English, different forms of nouns mean one person or thing, or more than one. Insula is in the singular number, and insulae is in the plural number.

The plural nouns used as subjects or predicate nouns in "Beautiful Countries" end in -ae. The direct objects in the plural end in -ās.

Britannia et Sardinia sunt insulae, Britain and Sardinia are islands.

Agricolae casas amant, The farmers like the cottages.

ADJECTIVE ENDINGS

A Latin adjective has different endings, according to its use in the sentence. In "Beautiful Countries" adjectives modifying subjects or predicate nouns end in -a or -ae, while those modifying direct objects end in -am or -ās. Since a predicate adjective modifies the subject, predicate adjectives also end in -a or -ae.

Patria nostra est terra pulchra, Our country is a beautiful land. Insulae nostrae sunt terrae pulchrae, Our islands are beautiful lands.

Patriam nostram amāmus, We love our country.
Silvās pulchrās amāmus, We like beautiful forests.
Patria nostra est pulchra, Our country is beautiful.
Silvae nostrae sunt pulchrae, Our forests are beautiful.

TWO ADJECTIVES MODIFYING ONE NOUN

In Latin two adjectives modifying the same noun are sometimes connected by et, which can often be omitted in translation.

America multās et magnās silvās habet, America has many large forests.

PHRASES

Any group of connected words not containing a subject and verb is called a *phrase*.

Britannia et Sardinia, Britain and Sardinia patria nostra, our country multās et magnās insulās, many large islands

A SAILOR'S LIFE

Vita nautae est periculōsa, sed vita agricolae nōn est periculōsa. Nautae vitam periculōsam amant; agricolae vitam quiētam parvae insulae amant.

Corsica et Sardinia et Melita sunt īnsulae pulchrae. Corsica et Sardinia sunt magnae īnsulae; Melita est parva īnsula. Incolae īnsulārum pulchrārum sunt agricolae et nautae. Casae nautārum sunt parvae, sed casae agricolārum sunt magnae.

Vīta agricolae saepe est longa, sed agricola multās terrās non videt. Nautae multās terrās vident, sed interdum vīta nautae non est longa quod vīta nautae est perīculosa.

Saepe vīta quiēta est vīta bona; interdum vīta perīculōsa quoque est bona. Poētae saepe perīculōsam nautārum vītam laudant, sed quiētam agricolārum vītam amō.

Cornēlius est nauta; est incola Sardiniae. Cornēlius Sardiniam amat quod Sardinia est patria. Saepe Hispāniam, Britanniam, Ītaliam videt. Hispāniam et Britanniam laudat, sed Ītaliam non amat.

Cornēlius epistulās bonās scrībit, quod multās terrās videt. Saepe epistulās videō. Epistulae nautae nōn sunt longae, sed sunt bonae. Epistulae Hispāniam et Britanniam laudant, sed Ītaliam nōn laudant.

Cornēlius vītam perīculōsam amat quod nauta est. Epistulās nautae amō, sed vītam perīculōsam nōn amō.

Vīta mea est quiēta, sed est vīta bona. Est vīta agricolae, et non est perīculosa.

WORDS WITH CLUES

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

quiē'ta, quiet
scrī'bit (script), (he) writes
vi'deō (video), I see; vi'det, (he)
sees; vi'dent, (they) see
vī'ta (vital), life

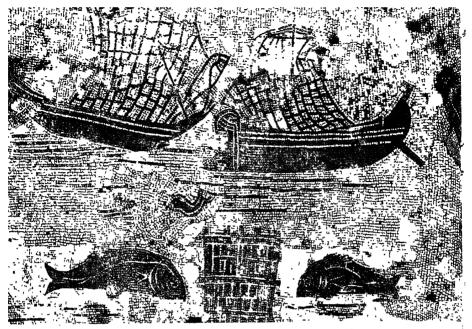
NEW WORDS

ca'sa, cottage, house in'cola, inhabitant inter'dum, sometimes



With this carved ivory stylus a Roman wrote on a waxed tablet

10



These ancient ships decorated the floor of a building in Ostia

NOUNS DENOTING POSSESSION

In writing English we often show possession by adding an apostrophe and s to a singular noun $(girl^s)$, and an apostrophe to a plural noun $(girls^s)$. In Latin the form of a word is changed to show possession, and its case is called the *genitive*.

The genitive may be translated either by the possessive case or by of and the noun.

casa nautae, the sailor's cottage or the cottage of the sailor

Latin nouns which end in -a in the nominative and -am in the accusative end in -ae in the genitive singular. The genitive plural ends in -ārum.

Vīta nautae est perīculōsa, The sailor's life is dangerous.

Casae nautārum sunt parvae, The sailors' cottages are small.

An adjective modifying a noun in the genitive is also in the genitive and is in the same number as the noun. In "A Sailor's Life" adjectives which modify singular nouns in the genitive end in -ae; those which modify plural nouns end in -arum.

CASE

In English some words have different forms to show how they are used in sentences.

A noun in English has the same form for the subject and for the direct object, but it has a different form to refer to a person as possessing something.

The boy walks. I see the boy. I have the boy's book.

These different forms and uses of words in sentences are called *cases* or *case uses*. The subject is in the *nominative case*, the direct object is in the *objective* (or *accusative*) *case*, and the word referring to the possessor is in the *possessive case*.

In Latin also, the subject is said to be in the *nominative case*, and the direct object is said to be in the *accusative case*. The possessive case in Latin is called the *genitive*.

The Latin endings for the nominative, genitive, and accusative of all nouns used thus far are as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Nominative:	-a	-ae
Genitive:	-ae	-ārum
Accusative:	-am	-ās

OMISSION OF THE SUBJECT

Just as $am\bar{o}$ is used to mean I love or I like, without a separate word for I, so amat, which is translated loves when it has a noun subject, means he (or she) loves when there is no noun subject.

Poēta parvam casam amat; magnās casās quoque amat, The poet likes the small house; he likes large houses, also.

In the same way, we may translate scrībit he writes or she writes, videt, he sees or she sees, and est, he is or she is or it is.

From the list at the left below, select the word or phrase that translates the word or words in each parenthesis.

bonae	multās terrās	1. (the long letter) laudāmus.
epistula longa	nauta	2. (a sailor) (many lands) videt.
epistulam longam	nautās	3. (a small island) vidēmus.
puellae multae epistulae	parva insula parvam insulam	4. (the girls) sunt (good).

AN EMBARRASSING MOMENT

Cornēlius. Cūr casam spectātis? Cūr non ambulātis?

Lūcia. Non ambulāmus quod puellam expectāmus.

Lūcius. Casam spectāmus quod est casa nautae. Puella est fīlia nautae. Cūr casam spectās?

- 5 Cornēlius. Casam spectō quod casa est pulchra. Casās pulchrās spectāre amō. Cūr fīliam nautae expectātis?
 - Lūcia. Puellam expectāmus quod fābulās saepe nārrat. Fābulās nārrare amat. Puella fābulās bene nārrat quod est fīlia nautae. Nauta multās terrās videt et fābulās bonās nārrat.
- Lūcius. Lūcia est fīlia mea. Fābulās bonās amāmus. Interdum fābulās nārrō, sed fīlia fābulās meās nōn amat. Fābulās nautārum amat.
 - Cornēlius. Nautae multās terrās vident, sed vīta nautārum est perīculōsa. Interdum epistulās portant; multam pecūniam quoque portant.
 - Lūcius. Multam pecūniam non porto. Poēta sum. Vīta mea est quiēta. Vītam perīculosam nautae non amo.
 - Cornēlius. Vītam perīculōsam amō. Nauta sum. Casam meam spectātis.
- 20 Lūcia. Nauta es! Fīliam tuam expectāmus!

WORDS WITH CLUES

am'bulō, -āre (amble), walk be'ne (benefit), well expec'tō, -āre, wait for, expect fā'bula (fable), story fī'lia (filiat), daughter mul'ta (multae), much nār'rō, -āre (narrate), tell, relate pecū'nia (pecuniary), money

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

por'tō, -āre (porter), carry, bring
spec'tō, -āre (spectator), look at,
 watch

NEW WORDS

cur, why puel'la, girl sum. I am

Prosperous people once lived in this section of an ancient town on the seacoast of Italy



USE OF do IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES AND IN QUESTIONS

The Latin question $C\bar{u}r$ fābulās amās? may be translated Why do you like stories? In the same way, Multam pecūniam non porto is translated I do not carry much money.

In such sentences there is no separate Latin word for do or does.

PERSON AND NUMBER OF VERBS

A verb may be in the first person, the second person, or the third person.

First Person: ambulō, I walk
Second Person: ambulās, you walk
Third Person: ambulat, he walks

The first person of a verb shows that the speaker is performing the action. The second person shows that the person spoken to is performing the action. The third person shows that a person or thing spoken of is performing the action.

A verb always agrees with its subject; that is, the person and number of the verb are always the same as the person and number of the subject.

Poēta patriam amat, The poet loves his country.

Here, the subject, poēta, is third person singular. The verb amat, since it agrees with the subject, is also third person singular.

In Latin, a verb has different forms to show person and number.

THE FORMS OF SUM

The verb sum changes in this way to show person and number.

First Person: sum, I am su'mus, we are Second Person: es, you are es'tis, you are third Person: est, he, she, it is sunt, they are

The forms of a verb when arranged in regular order make a *conjugation*. When we recite these forms, we *conjugate* the verb.

POSITION OF THE VERB

The Latin verb commonly stands at the end of the sentence. But forms of the verb meaning to be (is, are, was, were, will be, etc.) frequently come before the predicate noun or adjective.

America est terra pulchra, America is a beautiful land.

THE INFINITIVE

You are familiar with such English verb forms as to go, to ride, to carry.

I want to carry the package.

Such a verb form is called an infinitive.

The Latin infinitive meaning to carry is portare.

CONJUGATION OF porto

SINGULAR	PLURAL	
por'tō, I carry, I am carrying	portā'mus, we carry	
por'tās, you carry, etc.	portā'tis, you carry	
por'tat, he, she, it carries	por'tant, they carry	

The stem of a verb is found by dropping the -re of the infinitive. The stem of portō is portō. To this stem the person endings are added.

You will observe that the characteristic vowel of the stem, $-\bar{a}$ -, disappears before the ending $-\bar{o}$ and becomes short before -t and -nt.

The person endings are these.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
First Person:	$-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ or $-\mathbf{m}$ (I)	-mus (we)	
Second Person:	-s (you)	-tis (you)	
Third Person:	-t (he, she, it)	-nt (they)	

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

All verbs which have the infinitive ending in -āre are of the first conjugation and are conjugated like portō. The verbs ambulō, amō, expectō, laudō, nārrō, and spectō, forms of which you have already met, are of the first conjugation.

You, SINGULAR AND PLURAL

In English the word you may be either singular or plural. Latin, however, has different forms for the singular and plural of the word meaning you, although the Latin word for you is not often used as the subject of a verb.

The Latin verb forms for the second person are also different in the singular and plural.

Singular: Es agricola.

Plural: Estis agricolae.

LATIN WORDS AND ENGLISH WORDS

Some Latin words give us English words identical in form and similar in meaning.

animal census circus decorum Sardinia victor

Other Latin words give English words related in meaning but slightly different in form.

expecto, expect

patientia, patience

poeta, poet

Sometimes the English word which resembles the Latin suggests the best translation: defendo, defend. In other cases, it merely gives a clue: erro, wander; err, "wander from the right, do wrong."

Some English words are like Latin words without the ending.

angelus, angel benigna, benign laboro, labor longa, long

matrona, matron moveo, move signum, sign vestis, vest

Give the English word for each of these Latin words.

removeo

tumultus

valida

Some Latin words ending in -a, -ium, -um, -us, or -o have related English words ending in -e.

causa, cause sacrificium, sacrifice fatum, fate captives

senatus, senate invito, invite

In addition to a change in ending, some English words show the loss of an internal -u- which appears in Latin: fabula, fable.

Some Latin words ending in -ia give English words in -y. Others ending in -cia and -tia give English words in -ce.

injuria, injury

provincia, province

abundantia, abundance

What English word corresponds to each of the following Latin words?

alumna clavicula ambulo consul caverna Europa excito gloria gratia ignorantia Italia Iaudo rosa timida villa



WE SAVE THE JEWELS

Corsica est magna īnsula; est Sardiniae propinqua. Vīta incolārum Sardiniae est perīculōsa quod pīrātae Corsicae incolās Sardiniae saepe superant et abdūcunt (carry off). Interdum agricolās et nautās necant. Casās agricolārum et nautārum saepe occupant. Pecūnia et gemmae incolārum pīrātīs grātae sunt.

Cornēlius est incola Sardiniae; est nauta. Galba est fīlius (his son); Anna est fīlia. Jūlius sum; agricola sum.

Hodiē pīrātae casās nostrās spectant, sed pīrātās nōn vidēmus quod labōrāmus. Fēminae et puellae quoque labōrant; pīrātās nōn vident. Pīrātae Galbam abducunt; Galba clāmat. Anna pīrātās videt; fēminīs Galbam et pīrātās mōnstrat. Nunc clāmant fēminae et puellae.

Cornēlius pīrātās videt et nautās et agricolās vocat. Bene pugnāmus. Pīrātās superāmus et necāmus; īnsulam pīrātārum occupāmus. Ibi Galbam nōn vidēmus, sed parva pīrātae fīlia adest (is there) et mihi Galbam mōnstrat. Galbam et parvam puellam quoque servāmus. Parva puella laeta est quod pīrātae Galbam nōn necant. Anna est laeta quod parvam puellam incolīs Corsicae damus.

Nunc pīrātae agricolās et nautās Sardiniae non abdūcunt; nunc pecūniam et gemmās incolārum însulae nostrae non occupant.

WORDS WITH CLUES

clā'mō, -āre (clamor), shout, scream fē'mina (feminine), woman gem'ma, gem, jewel grā'ta (gratify), pleasing mōn'strō, -āre (demonstrate), point out, show oc'cupō, -āre, occupy, seize, take possession of propin'qua (propinquity), near (to) pug'nō, -āre (pugnacious), fight ser'vō, -āre (preserve), save su'perō, -āre ([in] superable), overcome, conquer

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

vidē'mus (videt), we see vo'cō, -āre (vocal), call, summon

NEW WORDS

dō, dare, give ho'diē, today i'bi, there, in that place lae'ta, happy, glad mi'hi, me, to me (as ind. obj.) ne'cō, -āre, kill, slay nunc, now



20

INDIRECT OBJECT

In the following sentence, poëtae is *indirect object* because it denotes the person to whom something is shown.

Epistulam poëtae mönströ, I show the letter to the poet.

An indirect object may be used with a verb meaning give or say.

DATIVE CASE

A Latin noun used as an indirect object is in the dative case. Nouns ending in -a have -ae in the dative singular. Notice that this ending is the same as that of the genitive singular and the nominative plural. These nouns end in -īs in the dative plural.

Pīrāta nautae epistulam dat, The pirate gives the sailor a letter.

Galba incolīs epistulam monstrat, Galba shows the inhabitants the letter.

ADJECTIVES MODIFYING NOUNS IN THE DATIVE

An adjective modifying a noun in the dative case is also in the dative, and is in the same number as its noun. In this lesson the adjectives which modify singular nouns in the dative end in -ae; those which modify plural nouns in the dative end in -is.

ADJECTIVES WITH A DEPENDENT DATIVE

In the following sentence Sardiniae is in the dative case because it depends on the adjective propinqua.

Corsica est Sardiniae propinqua, Corsica is near Sardinia.

With adjectives meaning kind, friendly, dear, pleasing, hostile, near, and some others the dative is often used as the equivalent of an English phrase with to. This use is called the dependent dative.

POSITION OF GENITIVE AND DATIVE

The English noun in the possessive case stands before the word on which it depends, but in Latin the genitive commonly follows.

the poet's house, casa poētae

In Latin the dependent dative commonly precedes the word on which it depends.

pleasing to the women, feminis grata

The indirect object may either precede or follow the direct object.

SICILY

Sicilia est magna însula Europae. In Sicilia sunt multae casae et villae. Sunt multae silvae quoque, sed silvae Siciliae non sunt magnae.

Incolae ōrae maritimae sunt nautae, sed casae agricolārum ōrae 5 marītimae propinquae nōn sunt.

Aetna est in īnsulā Siciliā. Incolae Siciliae Aetnam timent. Cūr incolae īnsulae Aetnam timent? Incolae Aetnam timent quod flammās Aetnae saepe vident.

Sicilia Italiae propinqua est. Ex Sicilia Italiam vidēmus. Incolae ¹⁰ Italiae quoque Siciliam vident. Flammās Aetnae vident. Aqua Siciliam ab Italia sēparat, sed aqua est angusta.

Messāna est in ōrā maritimā Siciliae, et incolae Messānae ōram maritimam Ītaliae vident. Casās et vīllās Ītaliae vident. Incolae Ītaliae īnsulam Siciliam quoque vident.

Sicilia est însula amoena. Incolae Aetnam timent, sed Siciliam amant, quod est însula amoena.

WORDS WITH CLUES

ā, ab (absent), prep. with abl., from a'qua (aquatic), water ē, ex (exit), prep. with abl., from, out of flam'ma, flame, fire in, prep. with abl., in, on sē'parō, -āre, separate ti'ment (timid), (they) fear

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

vīl'la (villa), farmhouse, country house

NEW WORDS

amoe'na, pleasant
angus'ta, narrow
ō'ra, shore; ō'ra mari'tima (maritime), seacoast, seashore

APPOSITION

A noun that is set beside another noun to explain its meaning by indicating more definitely who or what is meant is in *apposition* with the noun it explains.

Americam, patriam nostram, amāmus, We love America, our native land.

In this sentence, patriam is in apposition with Americam. A noun in apposition is called an appositive. An appositive agrees with its noun; i.e., it is in the same case and number as the noun it explains. Since Americam is accusative, patriam is also accusative.

15

In English we often use of in translating an appositive that is a place name.

Aetna est in însulă Siciliă, Aetna is on the island of Sicily.

PREPOSITIONS

Words like *from* and *in* are called prepositions. A preposition is usually found with a noun: in īnsulā. The noun īnsulā is the object of the preposition in. Together, in and īnsulā form a prepositional phrase.

A preposition shows the relation between its object and some other word. In the sentence In Siciliā sunt multae casae, In shows the relation between its object Siciliā and the verb sunt.

THE PREPOSITIONS a, ab, AND e, ex

Two prepositions meaning from appear in "Sicily"; \bar{a} or ab and \bar{e} or ex. Both have two forms. Before a vowel or h, ab and ex are used; before most consonants, \bar{a} and \bar{e} are generally used.

While both prepositions may be translated by from, \bar{a} or ab means away from, while \bar{e} or ex means from in the sense of out of.

Nauta <u>a</u> casa ambulat, The sailor is walking <u>away from</u> the house.

Agricola pecuniam <u>ex</u> casa portat, The farmer is carrying the money out of the house.

ABLATIVE CASE

Latin prepositions meaning from or in are followed by the ablative case. In the nouns used thus far, the ablative ends in $-\bar{a}$ in the singular and in $-\bar{s}$ in the plural.

An adjective modifying a noun in the ablative case is also in the ablative. A Latin adjective is always in the same case and number as its noun.

THE EXPLETIVE there

In Latin, ibi means there, in the sense of a place that can be pointed out: ibi labōrō. In English, there is also used as an expletive; that is, to introduce a statement: There are forests in Sicily. Latin does not use any word for the expletive there. There are forests in Sicily is expressed by Sunt silvae in Siciliā. In such sentences the Latin verb usually stands before the subject and when spoken, is stressed.

REVIEW OF UNIT I

- I. In the following sentences change each singular noun to plural and make other necessary changes.
 - 1. Bona puella casam albam amat.
 - 2. Silvam pulchram amō.
 - 3. Insula est parva.
- II. In the first two columns below, are some Latin person endings. Find in the last two columns the English pronoun corresponding to each one.
 - 1. -ō or -m 4. -mus
- (a) you (pl.)
- (d) you (sing.)

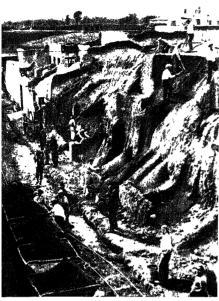
- 2. -s 3. -t
- 5. -tis 6. -nt
- (*b*) he (*c*) we
- (e) they (f) I
- III. Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.
- 1. Casae (agricolam, agricolārum, agricolās) sunt pulchrae
- 2. Puella (casārum, casae, casam) monstrat.
- 3. (Fēmina, Fēminam, Fēminae) interdum ambulat.
- 4. Pīrātae (incola, incolās, incolae) spectant.
- 5. (Gemmās, Gemma, Gemmae) est pulchra.
- 6. Fēminae et (puellam, puellās, puellae) sunt laetae.
- IV. Tell which word does not belong in each list and give the reason.

Sample: filia, nauta, habet, terra, patria

Answer: Habet, because it is a verb and all the others are nouns.

- 1. agricola, casa, epistula, est, īnsula
- 2. amat, habet, laudāmus, non, sunt
- 3. alba, bona, fīlia, lībera, mea
- 4. longa, magna, nostra, nauta, pulchra
- 5. nauta, patria, quod, silva, terra
- v. Give one or more English words related to each Latin word.

aqua	laboro	multa	occupo	specto
femina	longa	narro	porto	terra
insula	magna	nauta	silva	voco



excavation in Herculaneum. All the dirt in the baskets and cars will be sifted and every scrap of metal and crockery saved and examined

DIGGING UP THE PAST

A statue of Mercury recently dug up in England



The pieces of a Roman mosaic, exposed by the bombing of an English city in World War II, are being put together in the original design



Stories of Gods and Men

LATONA AND THE FROGS

Incolae Graeciae saepe deās vident, quod deae saepe in silvīs Graeciae ambulant. Interdum Lātōna in silvīs ambulat. Fēminae Graeciae Lātōnam, deam pulchram, amant, quod Lātōna est fēminīs benigna.

Nunc Lātōna ın silvā ambulat. Cum Lātōnā sunt īnfantēs (*infants*) Diāna et Apollō.

Agrıcolae Lātōnam et īnfantēs spectant; deam timent. Dea agrıcolās videt; itaque agricolās vocat. Aquam ōrat. Lātōna aquam nōn dēsīderat, sed īnfantēs aquam dēsīderant.

Est aqua in lacūnā (pond), sed agricolae Lātōnae aquam dare nōn dēsīderant. Itaque in lacūnā ambulant; nunc aqua nōn est bona. Lātōna est īrāta quod agricolae sunt in aquā.

Dea īrāta clāmat.

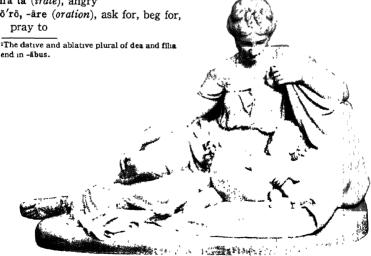
Nunc agricolae sunt rānae. Nunc agricolae in casīs nōn habitant; in lacūnā habitant, quod sunt rānae.

WORDS WITH CLUES

benig'na (benign), kind
de'a¹,-ae (deity), goddess
dēsī'derō, -āre (desire), want, desire
ha'bitō, -āre (inhabit), live, dwell
īrā'ta (irate), angry
ō'rō, -āre (oration), ask for, beg for,
pray to

NEW WORDS

cum, prep. with abl., with i'taque, and so, therefore rā'na, -ae, frog



A modern statue of Latona with Apollo and Diana

FIRST DECLENSION

A list of the cases and numbers of a noun or adjective, given in order, is called a *declension*. When you give all the forms of a noun or adjective, you decline it.

Nouns which have the nominative ending in -a and the genitive in -ae belong to the *first declension*. All first-declension nouns form their cases with the same endings as silva.

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Nominative:	${f sil}'{f va}$	sil'vae
Genitive:	sil'vae	silvā 'rum
Dative:	sil'vae	sil'vīs
Accusative:	sil'va m	sil'vās
Ablative:	sil'vā	$\mathtt{sil}'\mathtt{v\bar{i}s}$

The part of a noun to which the endings are added is called the base. The base may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. Thus, the base of silva (found from the genitive silvae) is silva.

CLAUSES

A part of a sentence containing a subject and predicate is called a *clause*. Clauses are of two kinds: *independent* and *dependent*. An independent clause expresses a complete thought. A dependent clause is meaningless without reference to a word in the independent clause.

Lātona est īrāta quod agricolae sunt in aquā, Latona is angry because the farmers are in the water.

Lātona est īrāta is the independent clause. The dependent clause is quod agricolae sunt in aquā; it depends on īrāta for its full meaning.

CONJUNCTIONS

As you know, the words **et**, and, and **sed**, but, are used to join words. Such words are called *conjunctions*.

Diāna et Apollō aquam dēsīderant, sed nunc aqua nōn est bona, quod agricolae sunt in lacūnā, Diana and Apollo want water, but the water is not good now, because the farmers are in the pond.

Conjunctions also join phrases and clauses. Here, et connects the two subjects, while sed and quod join the clauses.

MAIL FROM HOME

Cornēlia. Cūr hīc in jānuā casae amitae meae stās?

Fulvia. In jānuā casae stō, quod ē jānuā ōram marītīmam videō. Mox nautae epistulās ex prōvinciīs iterum portābunt.

Cornēlia. In provincia quoque habito, sed nautae mihi epistulās non dabunt.

Fulvia. Ubi habitās?

Cornēlia. In însulā Siciliā habitō, et casa mea est in ōrā maritimā. Cum in Siciliā sum, ex fenestrīs casae nostrae aquam videō. Saepe in ōrā maritimā vesperī ambulō. Interdum noctū ibi ambulō et lūnam clāram spectō. Ubi est casa tua?

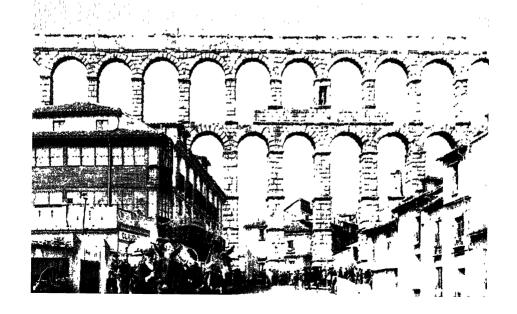
Fulvia. Casa mea est in Hispāniā. Mox erō in Hispāniā. Hispānia nōn est īnsula. Casa nostra nōn est ōrae maritimae propinqua; est silvīs propinqua. Ē jānuā casae magnās silvās vidēmus, sed aquam nōn vidēmus. Hīc esse amō, sed quoque in Hispāniā esse amō.

15 Cornēlia. Amita mea Hispāniam quoque amat; mox erimus ibi in casā nostrā.

Fulvia. Spectā, spectā! Nautam videō; celeriter ambulat. Mox mihi epistulam dabit.

Puellae clāmant. Non puellis, sed amitae nauta epistulam dat.

For twenty centuries this Roman aqueduct carried water to Segovia, Spain



NEW WORDS

WORDS WITH CLUES

cele'riter (accelerate), quickly, fast
clā'ra (clarify), bright, clear; famous
i'terum (reiterate), again, a second
time

lū'na, -ae (lunar), moon
noc'tū (nocturnal), at night
u'bi (ubiquitous), where, when
ves'perī (vesper), in the evening

a'mita, -ae, aunt cum, conj., when fenes'tra, -ae, window hīc, here jā'nua, -ae, door mox, soon stō, stā're, stand

INDICATIVE MOOD

In Latin, as in English, the way in which a verb is used determines its *mood*. A verb that states a fact is in the *indicative mood*. A verb used in a question which requires a statement of fact for an answer is also in the *indicative*.

Aquam portō, I am carrying water.

Cūr aquam portās? Why are you carrying water?

IMPERATIVE MOOD

A verb used to express a command is in the *imperative* mood.

Specta! Look! Vocate puellas, Call the girls.

The imperative of portō has two forms.

Singular: portā, carry (said to one person)
Plural: portāte, carry (said to more than one)

The singular imperative is like the present stem of the verb; the plural is made up of the present stem and -te.

nārrā, nārrāte

laudā, laudāte

The imperative forms of do are da, date. How do they differ from the imperative forms of other verbs?

VOCATIVE CASE

In addition to the cases which have been given so far, there is another case, called the *vocative*, which is used in addressing a person. In most Latin nouns the vocative has the same form as the nominative.

Noctū, Anna, lūnam vidēmus, At night, Anna, we see the moon. Vocāte agricolās, puellae, Girls, call the farmers.

In a Latin sentence the vocative is usually preceded by **one** or more words.

TENSE OF VERBS

The forms of a verb which show time are called *tenses*. There are six tenses in Latin: present, past, future, present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. They may be translated thus:

Present:I walkPresent Perfect:I have walkedPast:I walkedPast Perfect:I had walkedFuture:I shall walkFuture Perfect:I shall have walked

PRESENT TENSE

All the Latin verbs you have had up to this time are in the *present tense*; that is, each one shows that an act is taking place in the present time.

Epistulam portās, You are carrying the letter.

The stem portā-, which is used to form the present tense of portō, is called the *present stem*.

FUTURE TENSE

In the following sentence *shall go* indicates an act to be done in the future.

I shall go tomorrow.

So we say that *shall go* is in the *future tense*. In English *shall* and *will* are the signs of the future tense.

I shall, or will, praise.

You will praise.

In Latin verbs of the first conjugation the tense sign of the future appears as -b- in the first person singular, -bu- in the third person plural, and -bi- in the other forms.

FUTURE OF porto

The verb porto is conjugated as follows in the future tense:

SINGULAR

PLURAL

portā'bō, I shall carry portā'bis, you will carry portā'bit, he, she, it will carry portā'bitus, we shall carry portā'bitis, you will carry portā'bunt, they will carry

STEM OF THE FUTURE

The *future tense*, like the present, is formed on the present stem of the verb, which is, as you know, found by dropping the -re of the infinitive.

Present = present stem + person endings Future = present stem + -bi- (-b-, -bu-) + person endings

The tenses of the verb which are formed on the present stem are said to belong to the *present system*.

FUTURE OF Sum

The English verb to be has such different forms as be, am, is; and so we call it an *irregular verb*. In the same way the Latin verb sum is irregular. In the present tense, as you know, it has such different forms as sum, es, and sunt.

Sum is irregular in the future, too. It does not have the tense signs you have seen in the future of regular verbs. The verb sum is conjugated as follows in the future tense:

SINGULAR

e'rō, I shall (will) be e'ris, you will be

e'rit, he, she, it will be

PLURAL

e'rimus, we shall (will) be e'ritis, you will be e'runt, they will be

The infinitive of sum is esse, to be.

FUTURE OF $d\bar{o}$

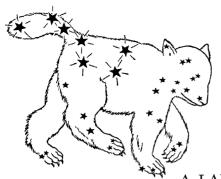
As you know, the stem vowel, -a-, is short in the present of dō (except the second person singular, dās). In all forms of the future, the stem vowel is also short.

THE CONJUNCTION cum

You have already met the conjunctions et and sed. In "Mail from Home" you meet the Latin conjunction cum, meaning when. Do not confuse this word with the preposition cum, which you have already learned.

Preposition: Cum puellīs ambulābō, I shall walk with the girls.

Conjunction: Saepe ambulant cum lūna est clāra. They often walk when the moon is bright.



If you can locate the Big Dipper on a starry night, you can easily recognize Ursa Major, the great bear

A LADY OR A BEAR?

Cornēlia, fīlia agricolae, in parvā casā habitat. Casa est silvae propinqua. Cornēlia in silvā saepe ambulat.

Sed ōlim Cornēlia in magnā et obscūrā silvā ē viā errāvit. Subitō magnam ursam vīdit. Ursa stetit et Cornēliam expectāvit. Ursa Cornēliam spectāvit; Cornēlia ursam spectāvit.

Territa Cornēlia clāmāre dēsīderāvit, sed non clāmāvit. Viam non vīdit, sed celeriter ambulāre temptāvit. Ursa quoque celeriter ambulāvit! Cornēlia lēniter ambulāvit. Ursa quoque lēniter ambulāvit! Dēnique ursa pede (with her paw) Cornēliae viam monstrāvit.

Subitō Cornēlia casam vīdit. Laeta puella properāvit et mox agricolae dē ursā benignā nārrāvit.

Agricola dīxit, "Ursa fuit Callistō. Ōlim Callistō fuit fēmina pulchra; nunc est ursa pulchra. Saepe agricolae ursam necāre temptāvērunt, sed ursa semper effūgit (has escaped)."

Cornēlia dīxit, "Sum laeta quod agricolae ursam non necāvērunt. Ursa benigna mē jūvit; mihi viam monstrāvit. Itaque ero ursae benigna; ursae cibum (food) dabo."

Sed Cornēlia ursae benignae cibum non dedit quod ursam iterum non vīdit.

WORDS WITH CLUES

dī'xit (diction), said
mē, acc sing., me
obscū'ra (obscure), dim, dark,
obscure
temp'tō, -āre, -āvī (attempt), try,
attempt
ter'rita (terrified), frightened
ur'sa, -ae (Ursa Major), bear
vi'a, -ae (via), street, road, way
vī'dit (video), saw, did see

NEW WORDS

dē, prep. with abl., about, concerning
dē'nique, finally, at last
e'rat, was
ju'vō, -āre, jū'vī, help
lē'niter, slowly
ō'lim, some day, sometimes; once
upon a time, formerly
pro'perō, -āre, -āvī, hasten, hurry
sem'per, always
su'bitō, suddenly

10

15

PERFECT TENSE

You are familiar with the English present perfect tense, which indicates action that took place just before the present time.

I have walked a mile. He has come.

The Latin tense which corresponds to our present perfect is the *perfect*. In the following sentence, laudāvit is translated as representing action that took place just before the present time.

Agricola puellam laudāvit, The farmer has praised the girl.

The Latin perfect is sometimes used where English uses a simple past tense.

Agricola puellam laudāvit, The farmer praised the girl.

In this instance the action is represented as happening at any time in the past, and as being a single past act, not continuous. The meaning of the whole sentence or paragraph will help you decide whether to translate a Latin perfect by an English present perfect or by a simple past tense.

STEM OF THE PERFECT

The present and the future tenses belong to the present system; that is, they use the present stem.

The perfect tense belongs to the *perfect system* and has a different stem, called the *perfect stem*. The perfect stem is found by dropping the -ī from the first person singular of the perfect.

Perfect: portāvī Perfect Stem: portāv-

PERSON ENDINGS

The person endings for the perfect are different from those you have seen with the other tenses. They are used only for this one tense.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person: -ī (I)	-imus (we)
Second Person: -istī (you)	-istis (you)
Third Person: -it (he, she,	it) -ērunt (they)

To conjugate a verb in the perfect tense you add the perfect endings to the perfect stem.

PERFECT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

The verb porto is conjugated as follows in the perfect

tense:

SINGULAR

portā'vī, I carried, I have carried portavis'ti, vou carried, you

have carried

portā'vit, he carried, he has carried

PLURAL

portā'vimus, we carried, we have carried

portāvis'tis, vou carried, vou have carried

portave'runt, they carried, they have carried

Most first-conjugation verbs have a perfect stem like portō, but a few verbs of this conjugation do not. Some of these are listed below.

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE
dō	dare	dedī
stō	stāre	stetī
juvō	juvāre	jūvī

PERFECT OF Sum

The verb sum is conjugated in the perfect: fui, fuisti, fuit, fuimus, fuistis, fuērunt. This tense of sum is not often used.

If the following paragraph were in Latin, which of the verbs would be imperfect and which perfect?

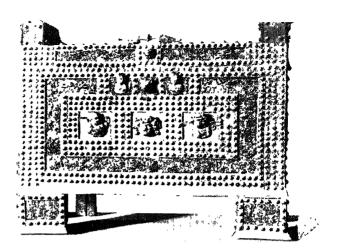
As I was walking down the street with my mother, I saw a friend who was hurrying home. People were coming toward us, but no one spoke to us. Then we saw Father. He was walking very fast.

Complete each sentence (1) with a form of the perfect indicative of tempto. (2) with a form of the future indicative of tempto.

- 1. Fābulam nārrāre \perp (I).
- 4. Bene laborāre _ (we).
- 2. Pīrātam monstrāre _ (you, sing.). 5. Gemmas portāre _ (you, pl.).
- 3. Agricola ursam necāre
- 6. Nautae fēminās servāre __.

Change each verb in the six sentences below, (1) to future, (2) to perfect; (3) translate each sentence you make.

- 1. Sagittās portāmus.
- 2. Amitae tuae epistulam dās.
- 3. Puellae in silvā errant.
- 4. Agricola sum.
- 5. In silvā errātis.
- 6. Fulvia rānās spectat.



This Roman arca is made of wood covered with bronze

BURIED TREASURE

Lūcrētia in Siciliā habitābat. Erat fīlia nautae et in casā albā habitābat. Casa erat ōrae maritimae propinqua. Noctū Lūcrētia saepe in ōrā maritimā stābat et nautam expectābat.

Sed ōlim noctū quattuor pīrātās in ōrā vīdit. Pīrātae magnam arcam portābant. Arca erat longa et angusta. Lūcrētia territa pīrātās 5 diū spectābat, sed nōn clāmāvit. Pīrātae terram celeriter effōdērunt (dug up) et arcam cēlāvērunt. Tum ab ōrā maritimā properāvērunt.

Mox Lūcrētia nautam vīdit; nautae dē quattuor pīrātīs et dē arcā novā nārrāvit.

Nauta fīliam laudāvit et dīxit, "Incolae īnsulae nostrae multam 10 pecūniam habent; interdum pecūniam in magnīs arcīs cēlant. Pīrātae saepe incolās Siciliae necant, quod gemmās et pecūniam dēsīderant. Arcam incolīs īnsulae dabō."

Tum nauta et puella arcam longam et angustam invēnērunt (found). In arcā erant gemmae et urnae et pecūnia.

Nauta incolīs īnsulae arcam monstrāvit. Incolae nautam et fīliam laudāvērunt et nautae multam pecūniam dedērunt. Posteā incolae Siciliae pīrātās expectāvērunt et necāvērunt.

WORDS WITH CLUES

al'ba (albumen), white habent (habet), (they) have no'va (novelty), strange, new post'eā (postgraduate), afterwards, later quat'tuor, not declined (quarter), four

NEW WORDS

ar'ca, -ae, box, chest cē'lō, -āre, -āvī, conceal, hide di'ū, long, for a long time tum, then



Beside this famous temple in Sicily shepherds now pasture their flocks

IMPERFECT TENSE

You are familiar with the Latin perfect tense, which represents an act as happening at any time in the past, and as being a single past act, not continuous.

Nauta Siciliam monstravit, The sailor pointed out Sicily.

There is also another Latin tense that expresses past time: the imperfect. The imperfect tense represents an act as happening in the past time and as going on, or continuing, in the past.

Nauta arcam celabat, The sailor was hiding the chest.

In English we sometimes use the simple past tense of a verb to represent an act or situation as continuing. Here also the Latin uses the imperfect.

Agricola filiam amābat, The farmer loved his daughter.

You will often find the imperfect and the perfect tenses used in the same sentence or in successive sentences. Here the perfect tells what happened, and the imperfect describes or tells something about the circumstances connected with the act.

Agricolae pīrātās necāvērunt, quod pīrātae īnsulās occupābant,

The farmers killed the pirates, because the pirates were seizing
the islands.

TENSE SIGN OF THE IMPERFECT

The syllable -bā-, which is seen in all forms of the imperfect, is called the tense sign of the imperfect. The forms all have -bā- before the person endings. Notice that in the conjugation of portō the -a- becomes short before -m, -t, and -nt.

PERSON ENDINGS

The person endings for the imperfect are the same as those for the present, except that -m instead of $-\bar{o}$ is used for the first person singular, just as it is in the present of sum.

IMPERFECT OF porto

The verb porto is conjugated as follows in the imperfect:

SINGULAR

portā'bam, I was carrying,
I carried

portā'bās, you were carrying, you carried

portā'bat, he was carrying, he carried

PLURAL

portābā'mus, we were carrying, we carried

portābā'tis, you were carrying, you carried

portā'bant, they were carrying, they carried

PRESENT SYSTEM

The imperfect tense, like the present and future, is formed on the present stem of the verb, which is found by dropping the -re of the infinitive. These three tenses make up the *present system*.

As you have seen (pp. 20, 32, and above), in the first conjugation the tenses of the present system are formed as follows:

Present = present stem + person endings Future = present stem + bi (b, bu) + person endings Imperfect = present stem + bā (ba) + person endings

IMPERFECT OF Sum

The irregular verb sum is conjugated as follows in the imperfect:

SINGULAR

e'ram, I was e'rās, you were

e'rat, he, she, it was

PLURAL

erā'mus, we were erā'tis, you were e'rant, they were



Diana is both huntress and goddess of the moon

A WOODLAND TEMPLE

Olim in Ītaliā erat templum antīquum Diānae in silvā. Propinqua erat casa ubi hieme nauta cum agricolā habitābat. Aestāte nauta ab Ītaliā nāvigābat et multās terrās spectābat.

Agricola templum amābat quod Diāna, dea lūnae, agricolīs cāra erat. Sed nauta dīxit, "Dea in templō antīquō nōn habitat."

Ōlim noctū nauta in silvā ambulābat. Lēniter ambulābat quod via erat obscūra. Subitō jānuam apertam templī antīquī et flammās clārās in ārā vīdit. Prō ārā stābat dea pulchra cum multīs puellīs. Puellae parvās lucernās portābant, sed dea sagittās clārās portābat.

Diāna āram et flammās du spectābat. Dēnique dea dīxit, "Multa templa habeō, sed incolae terrae ārās meās nōn servant. Mihi dōna nōn dant. Dea nōn manet in terrā ubi incolae āram deae nōn servant. Date mihi lucernās, puellae; eritis stellae in caelō. Erō lūna in caelō."

Puellae deae lucernās dedērunt. Templum antīquum erat obscūrum; flammae non erant in ārā. Sed lūna erat clāra; stellae erant clārae.

Tum nauta ex silvā properāvit. Celeriter ambulāvit, quod nunc via non erat obscūra. Diāna et puellae erant in caelo.

WORDS WITH CLUES

anti'quum (antique), old, ancient aper'ta (aperture), open dō'num, -ī, N. (donation), gift ha'beō (habet), I have ma'net (permanent), remains, stays nā'vigō, -āre, -āvī (navigate), sail sagit'ta, -ae, F. (Sagittarius), arrow stel'la, -ae, F. (stellar), star

NEW WORDS

aestā'te, in summer
ā'ra, -ae, F., altar
cae'lum, -ī, N., sky
cā'ra, dear
hi'eme, in winter
lucer'na, -ae, F., lamp
prō, prep. with abl., in front of, on
behalf of, for

SECOND DECLENSION

Nouns with the genitive singular ending in -ī are of the second declension. The second-declension nouns are not all alike in the nominative. Some have the nominative ending in -um, others in -us, and others in -er. Those ending in -um are declined like templum.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative:	tem'plum	tem'pla
Genitive:	tem'plī	templō'rum
Dative:	tem′plō	tem'plīs
Accusative:	tem'plum	tem'pla
Ablative:	tem′plō	tem'plīs

The case endings differ from those of silva and other first-declension nouns everywhere except in the dative and ablative plural.

GENDER

In English we use the pronoun *he* when referring to a man, a boy, or a male animal, the pronoun *she* when referring to a woman, a girl, or a female animal, and the pronoun *it* when referring to a thing. He is in the masculine gender, she is in the feminine gender, and *it* is in the neuter gender.

Nouns also are said to have gender. Thus, brother is masculine, sister is feminine, and house is neuter.

In Latin, gender does not depend entirely on meaning, as it does in English. For example, most first-declension nouns are feminine, even though we should expect many of them to be neuter from their meanings. Those denoting males, however, are masculine. Thus, agricola, nauta, pīrāta, and poēta are masculine; incola may be either masculine or feminine. All other nouns of this declension which have been given are feminine.

You have learned the forms of second-declension nouns ending in -um, such as templum. All nouns ending in -um in the nominative singular are neuter.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN GENDER

An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, as well as in case and number. The adjectives which you have learned with the ending -a have also a neuter form in -um declined like templum.

magna insula, a large island magnum templum, a large temple



This mosaic shows spirited horses near a Roman farmhouse

A FRIEND IN NEED

Sextus et Mārcus erant amīcī. Sextus in magnā vīllā habitābat. Mārcus sōlus in sılvā in parvā casā habitābat.

Saepe aestāte Mārcus in hortīs amīcī Sextī labōrābat, et agricolās in agrīs juvābat. Mārcus equōs amābat, et aestāte erant multī equī in agrīs Sextī. Interdum hieme Mārcus servōs juvābat; frūmentum equīs dare amābat.

Ōlim equī Sextī ab agrō errāvērunt.

Territī servī Sextum vocāvērunt et clāmāvērunt, "Nūllī equī sunt in agrīs tuīs! Ubi sunt equī tuī?"

Sextus īrātus clāmāvit, "Cūr equōs in agrīs nōn spectābātis, puerī?"
Nunc equī in silvā sunt. Ursae equōs meōs necābunt!"

Tum Sextus ē vīllā properat. In agrō propinquō agricolam videt. Agricolae dē magnō perīculō equōrum nārrat. Celeriter agricola Sextō hastam dat.

Via est obscūra in silvā sed Sextus celeriter ambulat quod equōs servāre dēsīderat. Subitō Mārcum videt. Mārcus dēfessus cum magnā ursā pugnat. Est in magnō perīculō quod nūllum gladium et nūllam hastam habet.

Sextus clāmat, "Tē juvābō, Mārce! Hastam habeō!"

Celeriter ursam necat et Mārcum amīcum servat. Tum Mārcus Sextō equōs territōs mōnstrat.

Sextus laetus equōs spectat, et dīcit, "Equōs meōs servāvistī, Mārce; es amīcus fīdus!"

15

WORDS WITH CLUES

a'ger, a'grī, M. (agricola), field amī'cus, -ī, M. (omicable), friend dī'cit (dīxit), speaks, says e'quus, -ī, M. (equestrian), horse fī'dus, -a, -um (fidelity), faithful gla'dius, -ī, M. (gladiator), sword hor'tus, -ī, M. (horticulture), garden nūl'lus, -a, -um¹ (null), no, none perī'culum, -ī, N. (perīculōsa), danger, peril

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

pu'er, pu'erī, M. (puerile), boy ser'vus, -ī, M., servant, slave sō'lus, -a, -um¹ (solo), alone, only tē (tua, mē), acc. sing., you

NEW WORDS

dēfes'sus, -a, -um, tired, weary frūmen'tum, -ī, N., grain has'ta, -ae, F., spear

DECLENSION OF amicus

The noun amīcus is of the second declension. It has the same endings as templum, except in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

All second-declension nouns which end in -us are declined like amīcus. Most of them are masculine.

SECOND-DECLENSION NOUNS IN -er

Second-declension nouns ending in -er are masculine, and their forms, except the nominative singular, are the same as those of amīcus. Two of these, puer, boy, and vesper, evening, keep the -e- in cases other than the nominative singular. You can remember this by means of English words derived from them: puerile, vespers. The words ager, field, liber, book, and magister, teacher, do not keep the -e-. You can remember this by the words agriculture, library, magistrate.

VOCATIVE CASE OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

On page 31 you read that the vocative case of most Latin nouns has the same form as the nominative. An exception is the class of nouns in the second declension ending in -us. The vocative singular of these nouns ends in -e.

Nominative: Mārcus, amīcus Vocative: Mārce, amīce

In all nouns the vocative plural is the same as the nominative plural.

Nullus and solus are declined like bonus, except in the genitive and dative singular. (See page 318, 18.)

SUMMARY OF FIRST- AND SECOND-DECLENSION NOUNS

FIRST DECL.

SECOND DECL.

NEUTER MASCULINE SINGULAR Nom. silva amicus templum ager puer Gen. silvae templī amici agrī puerī Dat. silvae amicō agrō templö puerõ Acc. silvam templum amicum agrum puerum Abl. silvā templő amīcō agrõ puerō PLURAL Nom. silvae templa amīcī agrī pueri Gen. silvārum templörum amīcōrum agrörum puerōrum Dat. silvīs templīs amicis agris pueris Acc. silvās templa agrōs amīcōs puerōs Abl. silvīs templis amīcīs agrīs pueris

All first-declension nouns end in -a in the nominative singular and in -ae in the genitive singular. Most of them are feminine, but a few are masculine.

Second-declension nouns end in -us, -er (-ir), or -um in the nominative singular, and in -ī in the genitive singular. Most -us and -er nouns are masculine; nouns ending in -um are neuter. The nominative plural of -us and -er nouns ends in -ī. All neuter nouns end in -a in both nominative and accusative plural.

ENDINGS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

		SINGULAR		P	LURAL	
FI	RST DECL.	SECOND DE	CL.	FIRST DECL.	SECOND	DECL.
		MASC.	NEUT.		MASC.	NEUT.
Nom.	-a	-us, -er (-ir)	-um	-ae	- ĭ	-a
Gen.	-ae	-ī	-ī	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	-ae	-ō	- ō	-īs	-īs	-is
Acc.	-am	-um	-um	-ās	-ōs	-a
Abl.	-ā	-ō	-õ	-īs	-īs	-īs

ADJECTIVES IN -us

Such adjectives as bona and magna have a masculine form ending in -us in the nominative. The other case endings are also like those of the noun amīcus. The adjectives which have the ending -a have also a neuter form in -um declined like templum.

DECLENSION OF bonus IN ALL GENDERS

		SINGULAR	
;	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nominative:	bo'nus	bo'na	bo'num
Genitive:	bo'nī	bo'nae	bo'nī
Dative:	bo'nō	bo'nae	bo'nō
Accusative:	bo'n um	bo'nam	bo'num
Ablative:	bo'nō	bo'nā	bo'nō
		PLURAL	
Nominative:	bo'nï	bo'nae	bo'na
Genitive:	bonō'rum	bonā'rum	bonō'rum
Dative:	bo'nīs	bo'nĭs	bo'nīs
Accusative:	bo'nōs	bo'nās	bo'na
Ablative:	bo'nīs	bo'nīs	bo'nīs

The following adjectives, of which one or more forms have previously been given, are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

albus	clārus	magnus	perīculōsus
amoenus	dēfessus	maritimus	propinquus
angustus	fīdus	meus	quiētus
antīquus	grātus	multus	territus
apertus	īrātus	novus	tuus
benignus	laetus	obscūrus	
cārus	longus	parvus	

Notice that the words meus and tuus are included in this list of adjectives. Like other adjectives, they agree in gender, number, and case with nouns they modify.

Observe the differences in the forms of the adjective used with amīcus and the forms of the same adjective used with puella or templum.

	SINGULAR	
amī'cus bo'nus	puel'la bo'na	tem'plum bo'num
amī'cī bo'nī	puel'lae bo'nae	tem'plī bo'nī
amī'cō bo'nō	puel'lae bo'nae	tem'plō bo'nō
amī'cum bo'num	puel'lam bo'nam	tem'plum bo'num
amī'cō bo'nō	puel'lā bo'nā	tem'plō bo'nō
	PLURAL	
amī'cī bo'nī	puel'lae bo'nae	tem'pla bo'na
amīcō'rum bonō'rum	puellā'rum bonā'rum	templö'rum bonö'rum
amī'cīs bo'nīs	puel'līs bo'nīs	tem'plīs bo'nīs
amī'cōs bo'nōs	puel'lās bo'nās	tem'pla bo'na
amī'cīs bo'nīs	puel'lis bo'nis	tem'plīs bo'nīs
	amī'cī bo'nī amī'cō bo'nō amī'cum bo'num amī'cō bo'nō amī'cī bo'nī amīcō'rum bonō'rum amī'cīs bo'nīs amī'cōs bo'nōs	amī'cī bo'nī puel'lae bo'nae amī'cō bo'nō puel'lae bo'nae amī'cum bo'num puel'lam bo'nam amī'cō bo'nō puel'lā bo'nā PLURAL amī'cī bo'nī puel'lae bo'nae amīcō'rum bonō'rum puellā'rum bonā'rum amī'cīs bo'nīs puel'līs bo'nīs amī'cōs bo'nōs puel'lās bo'nās

ENGLISH NOUNS AND LATIN NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

You already know several first-declension Latin nouns which give us related English nouns. Some are identical in form and similar in meaning: arena, villa. Others show slight changes in form.

-a dropped -a to -e -ia to -y -a to -e -cia, -tia to -ce -u- omitted

matrona, fortuna, controversia, epistula, provincia, justitia, matron fortune controversy epistle province justice

Latin nouns of the second declension also give us related English words, alike in form and similar in meaning.

auditorium campus forum

Other second-declension Latin nouns have corresponding English nouns without the ending.

elephantus, elephant factum, fact

Some Latin nouns of the second declension ending in -ium, -um, or -us have related English nouns ending in -e, and sometimes showing the loss of Latin internal -u-.

domicilium, domicile oraculum, oracle captivus, captive

Several second-declension Latin nouns in -ium give English nouns in -y.

matrimonium, matrimony testimonium, testimony

There are some English nouns in -er which correspond to second-declension Latin nouns in -um.

membrum, member sepulchrum, sepulcher

Some English words have e where Latin has ae. In addition to this internal difference, there is sometimes a change in ending.

aedificium, edifice Aethiopia, Ethiopia

Give the English word corresponding to each of these Latin words.

exilium meritum praejudicium stabulum area columna fatum monstrum prudentia statua defendo tabula fumus patrimonium receptaculum rustica digitus ignorantia pendulum victoria

REVIEW OF UNIT II

I. In each list of words below, find one word that does not belong there and tell why it does not belong.

aqua, deārum, fenestrīs, ōrātis, schola, viīs aperta, benigna, cāra, fāma, grāta, īrāta damus, dēsīderās, habitāmus, labōrās, ōrās, lucernās ē, cum, dē, dō, ex, in

II. Below are given a number of statements, each followed by three words or syllables, only one of which is correct. Find the one which completes the statement and makes it true.

- 1. The infinitive of juvo is (juvat, juva-, juvare).
- 2. The perfect stem of properō is (properāre, properā-, properāv-).
- 3. The present stem of postulō is (postulāre, postul-, postulā-).
- 4. The tense sign of the future is (-bā-, -bi-, -āre).
- 5. The tense sign of the imperfect is (-ō, -bā-, -bi-).

III. Fill each blank with the imperative of the verb given.

(spectō)

- 1. _ hīc in jānuā, Anna. (stō) 4.
 - 4. __ pīrātam, nauta. (necō)
- 2. __ ursam, agricolae. (necō)
- 5. _ lūnam clāram, amita.
- 3. __ (pl.) celeriter sagittās. (portō)

IV. Find in group B the English equivalent of each Latin word in group A.

 \mathbf{B} 5. minimē (a) afterward (e) finally (i) slowly 1. celeriter (f) formerly (j) so 2. dēnique 6. posteā (b) at night (k) suddenly (c) by day (g) here 3. ita 7. subitō (l) then 4. lēniter 8. tum (d) by no means (h) quickly

v. Give one or more English words related to each Latin word.

amicus filius nullus separo donum leo praejudicium solus equus navigo pugno validus

THE GOLDEN TOUCH

M idās in magnā rēgiā habitābat, ubi erant multae arcae, urnae, lucernae, statuae. Sed Midās non erat laetus, quod multum aurum dēsiderābat.

Ōlim Mīdās deum jūvit, et deus dīxit, "Tibi praemium dabō. Quid dēsīderās?"

Itaque Mīdās dīxit, "Multī multum aurum habent; aurum quoque amō. Dā mihi contāctum (*louch*) aureum. Multa mūtābō; tum erit multum aurum in rēgiā meā."

Deus dōnum virō laetō dedit. Statim Mīdās multa mūtāre temptāvit. Per (through) hortum ambulāvit; rosae erant aureae. Per rēgiam ambulāvit; lucernae, mēnsae, urnae, arcae, statuae erant aureae. Mīdās erat vir laetus, quod aurum spectāre amābat. Vesperī multōs incolās convocāvit; aurum incolīs mōnstrāvit.

Dēnique magnam cēnam postulāvit. "Parāte cēnam bonam," dīxit. Posteā Mīdās cēnam edere (*io eat*) temptāvit, sed cēna erat aurea! Aquam bibere (*to drink*) temptāvit, sed aqua quoque aurea erat! Mīdās erat territus. Contāctum aureum nōn dēsīderābat; cēnam dēsīderābat. Multum aurum nōn dēsīderābat; aquam dēsīderābat.

Mīdās miser deum vocāvit. "Juvā mē! Juvā mē!" clāmāvit.

Deus erat benignus et virum miserum servāvit. Iterum Mīdās magnam cēnam postulāvit. Cēna erat bona; nōn erat aurea.

Mīdās erat laetus et dīxit, "Nunc sum līber; contāctum aureum nōn habeō. Nunc laetus sum, quamquam multum aurum nōn habeō."

WORDS WITH CLUES

convocō, -āre, -āvī (convocation), call together
deus, -ī, M. (dea), a god; nom pl., dī, the gods
līber, lībera, līberum (liberty), free miser, misera, miserum (miserable), unhappy
mūtō, -āre, -āvī (mutation, commute), change
parō, -āre, -āvī, prepare
postulō, -āre, -āvī (postulate), demand praemium, praemiī, N. (premium), reward

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont

rēgia, -ae, F. (regal), palace vir, virī, M. (virīle), man

NEW WORDS

aureus, -a, -um, golden, of gold aurum, -ī, N., gold cēna, -ae, F., dinner, feast mēnsa, -ae, F., table quamquam, although quid, what statim, at once, immediately tibi (tua, tē, mihi), to you, you (as ind. obt.)

For a summary of Latin pronunciation, including syllabication and accent, see page 368.

20

ADJECTIVES WITH MASCULINE IN -er

You have already met the adjectives pulchra and misera. These forms are feminine. The masculine form of these words in the nominative singular ends in -er instead of -us: pulcher, miser.

Some adjectives in -er keep -e- throughout the declension: miser, misera, miserum, etc. In this book you will meet only three such adjectives: alter, līber, and miser. English words derived from them —alteration, liberation, miserable—will help you remember them.

Other adjectives in -er drop the -e- before -r in all forms except the nominative singular masculine: pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum. In this book you will meet only six adjectives which drop the -e-: aeger, impiger, noster, piger, pulcher, and vester.

Remember that only in the nominative singular is there any difference between the declension of these adjectives and that of bonus.

ADJECTIVES WITH MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

An adjective must agree with its noun in gender, but its endings are not necessarily the same as those of the noun. Since agricola, nauta, pīrāta, and poēta are masculine, an adjective modifying one of them will be masculine. The words for a good sailor are declined as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL

Nominative: nauta bonus nautae bonī

Genitive: nautae bonī nautārum bonōrum

etc. etc.

ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

The masculine plural of some adjectives may be used without a noun to denote persons. Thus multi means many (persons) and boni means the good (persons). In descriptions of war or military operations of any kind, nostri means our men or our soldiers.

The neuter form of some adjectives may be used in the plural to denote things. Thus multa means many things.

DECLENSION OF vir

In "The Golden Touch" are several forms of the noun vir. Its declension is like that of amīcus except for the nominative singular. There are no other words like vir in Latin.

THREE BOOKS FOR THE PRICE OF NINE

Tarquinius Superbus, vir clārus et validus, rēgnum Rōmānum occupāvīt. Rōmānī virum superbum nōn amābant; itaque Tarquiniō fīdī nōn erant.

Ōlim Tarquinius prō rēgiā fēminam sōlam vīdit. Fēmina rēgiam spectābat. Vesperī Tarquinius fēminam in rēgiā vīdit. Jam fēmina novem librōs in parvā arcā portābat. Tarquiniō librōs mōnstrāvit, et magnum pretium postulāvit.

Tarquinius rīsit (*laughed*) et dīxit, "Cūr librī tuī sunt pretiōsī? Tibi magnum pretium nōn dabō. Librōs pretiōsōs nōn dēsīderō."

Statim fēmina īrāta ē rēgiā Tarquiniī properāvit, sed postrīdiē in rēgiā iterum Tarquiniō librōs monstrāvit.

"Nōn jam novem, sed sex librōs habeō," dīxit. "Trēs librōs dēlēvī (*I have destroyed*). Dā mihi pretium novem librōrum, et tibi sex librōs dabō."

Tarquinius iterum rīsit, et iterum fēmina īrāta ē rēgiā properāvit.

Postrīdiē fēmina Tarquiniō trēs librōs mōnstrāvit et dīxit, "Aut dabis mihi pretium novem librōrum aut trēs librōs quoque dēlēbō (*I will destroy*)."

Tarquinius erat territus; jam librōs dēsīderābat. Itaque fēminae dīxit, "Dā mihī trēs librōs et tibi pretium novem librōrum dabō."

Quod pretium novem librōrum dabat, trēs librī Tarquiniō cārī erant. Posteā Rōmānī templum pretiōsum aedificāvērunt; semper librī pretiōsī erant in templō. Librī Rōmam ē perīculō servābant, quod Rōmānīs arcāna (secrets) mōnstrābant. Erant librī Sibyllīnī.

WORDS WITH CLUES

aedificō, -āre, -āvī (edifice), build liber, librī, M. (library), book pretiōsus, -a, -um (precious), expensive, costly pretium, -ī, N. (pretiōsus), price



WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont

rēgnum, -ī, N. (regia, regal), kingdom sex, not declined (sextet), six trēs, M and F. nom and acc. pl. (triple), three validus, -a, -um (valid), strong, well

NEW WORDS

aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . .
 or
jam, adv., now, already; non jam,
 no longer
novem, not declined, nine
postrīdiē, adv., on the next day
superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty

Michelangelo's Cumaean Sybil

THE ADVERB

We often use a word with a verb to tell how or when an action is done.

He runs <u>swiftly</u>.

They came today.

The word *swiftly* tells how the act of the verb *runs* is done; the word *today* tells when the act of the verb *came* was done. Such words are called *adverbs*.

Adverbs are also used to tell something about adjectives and even about other adverbs.

too small

very swiftly

probably right

In this lesson you meet the Latin adverbs jam and postrīdiē, which tell when the action of a verb is done. You have already met the adverbs celeriter, diū, ibi, nōn, saepe, statim, ubi, and many others, which tell something about verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

The Latin adverb regularly precedes the word it modifies.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN nunc AND jam

Both nunc and jam may be translated now. But nunc merely indicates a point of time.

Nunc pugnat, He is fighting now (at this moment).

Jam indicates that something is now true which was not true before.

Jam novem pīrātās necāvit, He has now (by this time or already) killed nine pirates.

IMPERFECT OF $d\bar{o}$

You will remember that dō has short a in all forms of the present, except the second person singular, dās. In the imperfect, all forms have the short a before the tense sign.

For each blank in the sentences below, substitute nunc or jam and explain your choice.

- 1. Puella fābulam _ nārrat.
- 2. Agricola validus sex ursās ___ necāvit.
- 3. Virī in ōrā maritimā <u>ambulant</u>.
- 4. Terrae līberae sunt quietae.
- 5. Pīrāta gemmās pulchrās nonhabet.
- 6. Fēmina trēs libros Tarquinio ____ dat.



Aeneas plucks the golden bough

THE GOLDEN BOUGH

Olim in cavernā propinquā oppidō Cūmīs Sibylla nōta habitābat. Post bellum Trōjānum Aenēās multīs cum virīs ad oppidum Cūmās nāvigāvit.

Hīc Aenēās ante jānuam cavernae Sibyllae stetit et clāmāvit, "Ē 5 rēgnō mortuōrum Anchīsēs, pater (father) meus, mē vocat. Mōnstrā mihi viam!"

Sibylla dīxit, "Noctū et interdiū jānua est aperta. Multī in terram mortuōrum properant, sed nōn iterum patriam spectant."

"Māter (mother) mea est dea. Dī mē juvābunt," Aenēās clāmāvit.
"In silvā propinquā est rāmus aureus," Sibylla dīxit. "Prīmō portā ad mē rāmum aureum. Deinde tibi jānuam terrae mortuōrum mōnstrābō."

Statim Aenēās cum amīcō fīdō in silvam obscūram properāvit. Subitō Aenēās per rāmōs aurum clārum vīdit.

"Ecce!" dixit. "Est rāmus aureus! Di nos juvant!" Laetus rāmum aureum ad cavernam portāvit. Tum Sibylla clāmāvit, "Dī tē amant. Ecce! Jānua cavernae est aperta; nunc rāmum aureum ad Prōserpinam, rēgīnam mortuōrum, portābimus."

Aenēās et Sibylla in cavernam properāvērunt et prīmō per viās perīculōsās et obscūrās ambulāvērunt. Deinde Sibylla rēgiam Prō- 5 serpinae monstrāvit, et Aenēās rāmum aureum ad jānuam rēgiae portāvit. Donum erat rēgīnae grātum.

Itaque trāns agrōs amoenōs ambulāvērunt. Ibi erat pater Anchīsēs. Tum Anchīsēs multa fīliō nārrāvit, et multa in terrā mortuōrum monstrāvit.

WORDS WITH CLUES

ante, prep. with acc. (anterior), before, in front of
bellum, -ī, N. (belligerent), war
fīlius, fīliī, M. (fīlia), son
mortuus, -a, -um (mortuary), dead;
M. as noun, dead man
nōtus, -a, -um, noted, well-known
post, prep. with acc. (posteā), behind,
back of, after
prīmō, adv. (primary), at first
rēgīna, -ae, F. (regia, regnum), queen
trāns, prep. with acc. (transit, transport), across

NEW WORDS

ad, prep. with acc., to, toward, near deinde, adv., then, next ecce, look! interdiū, adv., by day, during the day nōs, nom. and acc. pl., we, us oppidum, -ī, N., town per, prep. with acc., through rāmus, -ī, M., branch, bough

CASE USE WITH PREPOSITIONS

The prepositions ab, cum, dē, ex, and in, as you know, take the ablative case. There are, however, many prepositions with which the accusative is used. In fact, the number of prepositions taking the accusative is larger than the number taking the ablative.

Thus you see that the accusative not only is the case of the direct object of a verb, but is also found with some prepositions. Here you meet five prepositions which take the accusative: ad, to, toward; ante, before, in front of; per, through; post, behind, after; and trans, across.

Per viam ad scholam properat, He hurries to school through the street.

Trans viam est casa, Across the street is a cottage.

Hortus est ante templum; non est post templum. The garden is in front of the temple; it is not behind the temple.



This ancient sculpture shows Aeneas escaping from Troy with his father and his son

PHRASES WITH to

We have seen that the Latin indirect object is in the dative case without a preposition. In English a phrase with the preposition *to* is often used to express the same idea.

Rosam puellae do, I give the rose to the girl.

But when the Latin shows to what place a person or thing moves, it does not use the dative, but the preposition ad, followed by the accusative.

Ad silvam properat, He hastens to the forest.

In WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

Thus far you have seen the preposition in used only with the ablative. The ablative with in (meaning in or on) denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. The accusative with in (meaning into or in) denotes the place to which motion is directed.

Ablative: In oppido habitas, You live in the town.

Accusative In oppidum properās, You hasten into the town.

ENGLISH VERBS AND LATIN VERBS

Many Latin verbs give us English verbs similar in form and meaning. You have already met some Latin verbs which have corresponding English words. Some are without -o: adorno, adorn. Others have final -e instead of -o: observo, observe.

For another group of Latin verbs there are English verbs ending in -ate.

libero, liberate

migro, migrate

navigo, navigate

Give the English verb corresponding to each of the following Latin verbs.

attendo

commemoro

excito

tempto

Some Latin verbs are related to Latin nouns, just as some English verbs and nouns are related.

In some cases, the English noun names the doer of the action described by the verb, and in others, the noun gives the result of the verb's action.

sing

singer (one who sings)

write

writing (that which is written)

Discuss the following groups of English words, giving the meaning of each noun and telling how it is related to the corresponding verb.

audit auditor build building fly flier labor labor rule ruler

Latin also has pairs of related verbs and nouns.

bello bellum ceno cena pugno pugna specto spectator timeo timor

Since bellum means war, it is easy to see that the verb bello means make war. The Latin word spectator means one who watches or looks at something; what does specto mean? By association, you can deduce the meaning of related Latin words and remember them easily.

Translate the pairs of Latin words above, and discuss the relationship in meaning between each noun and its corresponding verb. Then consider each Latin word on the page and give as many related English words as possible.

THE FLOOD

Olim virī malī in terrā habitābant. Deōs nōn timēbant; templa deōrum nōn cūrābant.

Itaque Juppiter deos convocāvit et dīxit, "Quamquam viros et fēminās monēmus, tamen dona deis non dant. Non jam incolae malī in terrā manēre dēbent."

Tum multa aqua in terrā erat. Diū aqua in terrā manēbat. Mox aqua alta agrōs cēlāvit; in agrīs nūllī virī erant. Aqua alta oppida quoque cēlāvit; in oppidīs nūllī virī et nūllae fēminae erant. Incolae malī erant mortuī.

Deucalion solus erat vir bonus et impiger, et Pyrrha sola erat femina bona et impigra. Itaque di virum bonum et feminam bonam servaverunt.

Dēnique aqua alta non jam terram cēlāvit, sed Deucalion et Pyrrha nūllos viros, nūllas fēminas in terra vidēbant. Lēniter ambulābant.

Caelum et aquam spectābant. Maximē auxilium dēsīderābant.

Templum erat propinquum et Deucalion dixit, "In templum properābimus. Ibi manēbimus et dī nos juvābunt."

Subitō \bar{o} rāculum dīxit, "Jacite (throw) ossa mātris (the bones of your mother) post terga."

Deucalion et Pyrrha maxime timebant. Tum Deucalion dixit, "Di boni sunt. Terra est mater (mother) nostra. Saxa sunt ossa matris nostrae."

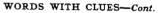
Itaque Pyrrha saxa post tergum jēcit (threw) et dī saxa in fēminās mūtāvērunt.

Deucalion quoque saxa post tergum jēcit et dī saxa in viros mūtāvērunt. Ita terra iterum incolās habēbat.

WORDS WITH CLUES

altus, -a, -um (altitude), deep; high,
tall

auxilium, -ī, N. (auxiliary), help, aid cūrō, -āre, -āvī (curator), take care of dēbeō, -ēre (debt), owe, ought; must



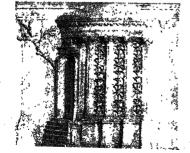
malus, -a, -um (malicious), bad, wicked

maximē, adv. (maximum), very much, especially

moneō, -ēre (admonish), warn, advise

NEW WORDS

impiger, -gra, -grum, industrious ita, adv., so, thus; yes saxum, -ī, N., stone, rock tamen, adv., nevertheless tergum, -ī, N., back, rear



An ancient temple

SECOND CONJUGATION

You are familiar with a number of verb forms of the first conjugation.

portat, he carries portābit, he will carry portābat, he was carrying, he carried

Verb forms of the second conjugation differ slightly from these.

monet, he warns monebit, he will warn monebat, he was warning, he warned

Notice that these second-conjugation forms have -e- before the person ending and before the tense sign, where the first conjugation has -a-.

The verb moneō, of the second conjugation, has the infinitive monēre. For the present, imperfect, and future forms of moneō, see page 329.

Notice that the person endings are the same as those in the corresponding forms of portō.

All verbs which have the infinitive ending in -ēre are of the second conjugation and are conjugated like moneō. Thus videō, habeō, maneō, and timeō, forms of which have been used in previous lessons, are of the second conjugation, as well as moneō and dēbeō, which occur in the vocabulary of this lesson.

PRESENT SYSTEM OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

As in the first conjugation, the tenses of the present system are formed as follows:

Present = present stem + person endings Future = present stem + bi (b, bu) + person endings Imperfect = present stem + bā (ba) + person endings

PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF moneo

You are familiar with the present imperative of the first conjugation. The imperative of the second conjugation is formed in the same way, using the present stem for the singular and the present stem with the ending -te for the plural.

FIRST CONJUGATION SECOND CONJUGATION
Singular: portā monē
Plural: portāte monēte



An ancient plowman

A TALL TALE

Pīrātae semper ab incolīs provinciārum timentur. Saepe parva oppida ā pīrātīs oppugnantur; agrī agricolārum vāstantur. Fābula ā Sexto, agricolā provinciae Siciliae, saepe nārrātur.

Pīrātae frūmentum Siciliae dēsīderant; magna castra in ōrā maritimā īnsulae nostrae habent. In castrīs est Seleucus, pīrāta malus.

Quamquam dē magnō perīculō monēmur, tamen in agrīs labōrāmus; sed puerī et puellae vigilant. Castra pīrātārum ab agricolīs et ā puerīs nōn videntur.

Fīlia mea sola pīrātās videt et clāmat, "Pīrātās video. Properāte, puerī, ad agros: vocāte agricolās!"

Ex agrīs properāmus. Ab incolīs oppidī propinquī et ā nautīs juvāmur. Incolae bona arma, scūta lāta, galeās validās habent. Bona arma portāmus, sed nūllās galeās et nūlla scūta habēmus. Cum pīrātīs diū et ācriter pugnāmus.

Dēnique clāmō, "Ubi est Seleucus? Mihi Seleucum monstrāte! Solus Seleucum necābo."

Sed Seleucus abest (*is absent*). Pīrātae male pugnant; multī necantur. Sōlus centum pīrātās necō.

Posteā castra ā Rōmānīs occupantur et Seleucus gladiō necātur. Dux (general) mē laudat. Dīcit, "Siciliam, Sexte, servāvistī!"

WORDS WITH CLUES

arma, -ōrum, N. pl., arms, weapons, tools
centum, not declined (century), one hundred
lātus, -a, -um (latitude), wide, broad male, adv. (malus), badly
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī (pugnō), attack scūtum, -ī, N. (escutcheon), shield

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, devastate, destroy
vigilō, -āre, -āvī (vigilant), watch,
keep awake

NEW WORDS

ācriter, adv., fiercely castra, -ōrum, N. pl., camp galea, -ae, F., helmet

10

15

USE OF PASSIVE VOICE

The following two sentences both have the word *boy* as subject, since in each sentence we assert something about the boy.

The boy helps his friend. The boy is helped by his friend.

In the first sentence the subject does the act, that is, he helps someone; in the second sentence something is done to the subject. A verb which denotes something that the subject does is in the active voice. A verb which denotes something done to the subject by another person or thing is in the passive voice. In the illustrative sentences given above, helps is in the active voice and is helped is in the passive voice.

PRESENT PASSIVE OF porto and moneo

Thus far all the verb forms you have met have been in the active voice. In Latin, just as in English, there is a passive voice. The verbs portō and moneō are conjugated as follows in the present passive:

	SINGULAR
T area accurated	

por'tor, I am carried mo'neor, I am warned portā'ris, you are carried monē'ris, you are warned portā'tur, he, she, it is carried monē'tur, he, she, it is warned

PLURAL

portā'mur, we are carried portā'minī, you are carried portan'tur, they are carried

monē'mur, we are warned monē'minî, you are warned monen'tur, they are warned

These forms may also be translated I am being carried, I am being warned, etc.

PASSIVE ENDINGS

As you see from the conjugations on this page, the person endings used in the passive voice are as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person:	-or (-r)	-mur
Second Person:	-ris	-mini
Third Person:	-tur	-ntur

In the active voice we have seen that the vowel -ā- or -ē- of the stem becomes short before the person endings -t and -nt. The -ā-disappears before -ō, and the -ē- becomes short. In the passive voice the -ā- and -ē- become short before the ending -ntur. The -ā-disappears before -or, and the -ē- becomes short.

\bar{a} OR ab MEANING by

In "Sicily" you met the word ā or ab, used to mean from. But from is not the only meaning of this preposition. In "A Tall Tale" you find ā or ab used to mean by.

Pīrātae semper ab incolīs provinciārum timentur, Pirates are always feared by the inhabitants of the provinces.

With passive verbs the person by whom the act is done is expressed by the ablative with the preposition \bar{a} or ab, meaning by.

Epistulae a puero portantur, The letters are carried by the boy.

This use is called the ablative of agent.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

In the preceding lessons the ablative has been used as the object of certain Latin prepositions. Sometimes, however, the ablative is used without a preposition.

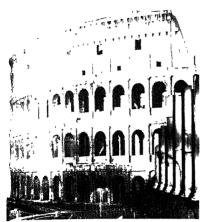
Virī gladis pugnābant, The men were fighting with swords.

Puer ursam sagittā necāvit, The boy killed the bear with an arrow.

In these sentences gladis and sagitta denote the means by which or with which an act is done. This use is called the ablative of means.

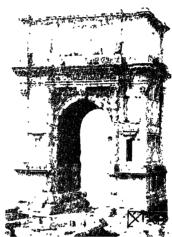
Choose the correct word or phrase to complete each sentence and give the reason for your choice.

- 1. A bona fide offer is made ___.
 - (a) deceitfully (b) in good faith (c) jokingly
- 2. The leaves of gladioli are shaped like __.
 - (a) arrows (b) hearts (c) swords
- 3. A person in peril is ___.
 - (a) gay (b) in danger (c) safe
- 4. When you are satisfied, you have ___.
 - (a) enough (b) too little (c) too much
- 5. A pilot making a solo flight is flying ___.
 - (a) alone (b) for the first time (c) in a monoplane



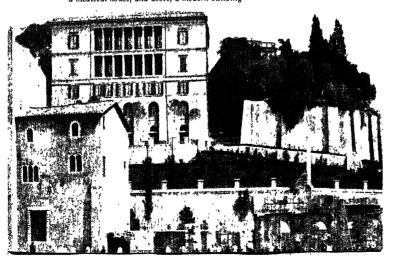
A night view of the Colosseum

ETERNAL ROME



Arch of the emperor Titus

Roman tuins on the site of the ancient Forum Holitorium, the vegetable market. Here old and new meet—on the left, a medieval house, and above, a modern building



THE FIRST PYRRHIC VICTORY

lim Pyrrhus cum copiis Graecis ad Italiam navigavit. Ad oppidum Graecum, Tarentum, auxilium portābat, quod Tarentīnī cum populō Rōmānō pugnābant. Quamquam Tarentum erat in Ītaliā, tamen incolae Tarentī erant Graecī.

Tarentīnī cum Romānīs saepe pugnābant. Nunc auxilium maximē dēsīderābant.

Itaque Pyrrhus ad Ītaliam copiās Graecas portāvit. In copiis Graecorum erant multi sagittārii et funditorēs (slingers). Virī gladios longos, hastās, scūta, galeās habēbant.

Romani quoque bona arma-jacula, pila, galeas, scuta, gladios -habēbant, sed gladiī Rōmānōrum non erant longī. Rōmānī multos equos habebant, et interdum in proelio equites (cavalrymen) a dextra et ā sınistrā stābant.

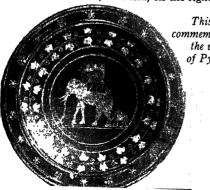
In magnō proeliō Rōmānī cum Pyrrhō ācriter pugnāvērunt, sed dolus novus Pyrrhum in hõc proeliö jüvit. Pyrrhus multõs elephantõs habuit. Elephanti erant magni; in tergis elephantorum erant parva tēcta ubi virī stābant. Virī in dextrīs longās et acūtās hastās et longās sagittās habēbant.

Romani hastas et sagittas minime timebant, sed elephantos maxime 20 timēbant. Equī Rōmānōrum quoque novōs elephantōs timēbant. Itaque equī territī fūgērunt (fled); multōs Rōmānōs equī territī et elephanti necāvērunt.

Quamquam dolus novus Pyrrhō victōriam dedit, tamen in hōc proeliō Rōmānī quoque multōs Graecōs necāvērunt. Itaque Pyrrhus 25 magnam victōriam nūntiāvit; tamen victōria Pyrrhī fuit pretiōsa.

WORDS WITH CLUES

copia, -ae, F. (copious), plenty: abundance; pl., forces, troops dextra, -ae, F., (dexterity), right hand; ā dextrā, on the right



This plate commemorates the victory of Pyrrhus

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, announce, report populus, -ī, M. (population), people sagittārius, -ī, M. (sagitta), archer sinistra, -ae, F (sinister), left hand; ā sinistrā, on the left

NEW WORDS

dolus, -ī, M., trick; scheme hic, haec, hoc, this jaculum, -ī, N , javelin minimē, adv., no; not at all pilum, -i, N, spear proelium, -ī, N., battle tēctum, -ī, N., house



An archer and a slinger

PERFECT TENSE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

As shown on pages 35 and 36, the forms of the perfect are made up of the perfect stem, with special endings which are used in no other tense. The formation of this tense is the same for all Latin verbs.

To make the perfect tense of the second conjugation, we simply add the perfect endings to the perfect stem, as we did for portō.

The verb moneō is conjugated as follows in the perfect tense:

SINGULAR

mo'nui, I warned, have warned monuis'ti, you warned, have warned mo'nuit, he, she, it warned, etc.

PLURAL

monu'imus, we warned, have warned monuis'tis, you warned, have warned monuē'runt, they warned, etc.

The perfects of timeō and habeō are like that of moneō. The perfect of maneō is mānsī, mānsistī, etc.; that of videō is vīdī, vīdistī, etc.

Change the tense of each verb to the perfect, in the same person and number.

- 1. Copiās in castrīs vidēmus.
- 2. Rōmānī galeās et scūta habent.
- 3. Populus prope tēctum manet.
- 4. Nüllum perīculum timēs.
- 5. Cūr ad templum properātis?
- 6. Puerō praemium dabit.
- 7. Rēgīnam miseram monēbam.

ENGLISH ADJECTIVES AND LATIN ADJECTIVES

You have met some Latin adjectives that give us English adjectives with almost the same spelling. In one class the ending -us disappears; in another the -us becomes -e.

rapidus, rapid

privatus, private

Other English adjectives have -y where the Latin has -ius.

ordinarius, ordinary

contrarius, contrary

What is the corresponding Latin adjective for each of these English ones?

contradictory

imaginary

peremptory

Give the English adjective corresponding to each of the following Latin adjectives and explain its formation.

> acutus amplus auxiliarius

frigidus magicus perfectus quietus secretus severus solus superbus temporarius

Some Latin adjectives ending in -ius or -uus give English adjec-

tives in -ious or -ous.

anxins

assiduus

continuus

Some Latin adjectives came from nouns. The suffix -alis or -aris added to a Latin noun made an adjective meaning pertaining to.

NOUN

ADJECTIVE

natura

naturalis

consul

consularis

miles

militaris

What is the English adjective from each of the three Latin adjectives above? How does it differ in spelling from the Latin word?

Below are some Latin nouns with English adjectives. What is the Latin adjective from the noun?

familia, _____, familiar judicium, _____, judicial

lex, _____, legal

manus, _____, manual mors, _____, mortal pes, _____, bedal

REVIEW OF UNIT III

I. Find in the list a verb to complete each sentence below.

ambulō dēbēmus manēbunt manēre monēbit necābant necābunt portāte vidēbant vidēbis vidēbunt vident videt

- 1. Ā tergō vīllam vidēre (we ought).
- 2. Multōs virōs et multās fēminās (you will see).
- 3. Hieme hic (they will remain).
- 4. Puerōs bonōs (he will warn).
- 5. In vīllā (to remain) dēbēmus.
- 6. Tamen puerī templa deōrum (see).
- 7. Fēminae Americam, patriam pulchram, (saw).
- 8. Virī Britanniam et Eurōpam (will see).

II. In the following paragraph find at least five words or phrases that can be translated by Latin adverbs.

Immediately he called together his friends and told them about his plan. At first they did not approve because they were already tired. And so on the next day only nine men wanted to fight. Afterward he again demanded aid. Then many were ready to help, and finally the troops were sufficiently strong.

III. For each blank supply an adjective in the correct form.

- 1. Scūtum est
- 2. Pretium erat __.
- 3. Cavernae __ sunt in Ītaliā.
- 4. Jacula virōrum erant
- 5. Rāmī _ sunt aureī.
- 6. Virī scūta ___, galeās ___, gladiōs habent.
- 7. Virī _ sunt in castrīs _..
- IV. For each blank substitute ā, ab, ē, ex, or dē.
- 1. Tamen sagittārii _ proeliō properāre dēbuērunt.
- Cum __ tergō castra ācriter oppugnābantur, populus __ oppidīs properāvit.
- Monēte populum hōc periculō.
- 4. Arma acūta _ hōc virō portantur.
- 5. Centum agrī virīs malīs vāstantur.

v. For each Latin verb give a related English verb and a connected noun.

adorno	definio	migro	prohibeo
comparo	exploro	occupo	reporto
consumo	libero	perturbo	transcribo



UNIT

Appius Claudius entering the senate

\mathbb{IV}

History and Legend

APPIUS CLAUDIUS-PUBLIC SERVANT

Appius Claudius, vir clārus, in Rōmā antīquā habitābat. Quod Rōma satis magnam cōpiam aquae bonae nōn habēbat, Appius longum aquaeductum (aqueduct) aedificāvit. Hic nōtus aquaeductus, Aqua Appia, aquam ab altīs locīs ad populum oppidī Rōmae portābat.

Appius quoque longam viam ab oppidō Rōmā ad oppidum Capuam aedificāvit. Haec via erat Via Appia.

Fāma Appiī Claudiī erat magna propter hunc aquaeductum et hanc viam, sed in senātū (*senate*) Rōmānō quoque Appius erat nōtus.

Tamen post multōs annōs Appius nōn saepe in senātū aderat quod jam caecus erat.

Ölim Pyrrhus, Graecus, contrā Rōmānōs pugnābat, et populus Rōmānus propter magnam victōriam Pyrrhī dolēbat. Jam nūntius Graecus in senātū aderat et dēditiōnem (surrender) multōrum oppidōrum Rōmānōrum postulābat. Multī Rōmānī Graecōs timēbant et oppida Pyrrhō dare dēsīderābant.

Quamquam Appius aberat, tamen dē nūntiō audīvit. Statim auxiliō servorum in senātum (acc.) properāvit, ubi nūntius Pyrrhī aderat.

Ibi dīxit, "Interdum amīcī meī dolent quod sum caecus. Sed hodiē sum laetus quod illum nūntium in hōc locō nōn videō. Quam caecī estis, Rōmānī! Rōma erit tūta; illa oppida erunt tūta! Rōmānī in terrā Rōmānā nōn superābuntur!"

Propter Appium Claudium Romani consilium Pyrrhi non pro-

bāvērunt. Posteā cōpiae Rōmānae ācriter pugnāvērunt et Pyrrhum superāvērunt. Itaque Appius Claudius magnam fāmam habēbat quod Rōmae fīdus erat.

WORDS WITH CLUES

absum, abesse, āfuī, be absent, be away
adsum, adesse, adfuī, be present, be here
annus, -ī, M. (annual), year
audīvit (audible), heard
cōnsilium, cōnsiliī, N. (counsel), plan, advice
contrā, prep. with acc., contrary to, against
doleō, -ēre, -uī (doleful), grieve, grieve for
fāma, -ae, F. (fame), report; reputation

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

locus, -ī, M. (local), place; pl., loca,
 -ōrum, N.
nūntius, -ī, M. (announce), messenger;
 message, news
probō, -āre, -āvī, approve, approve of
satis, adv. (satisfactory), sufficiently,
 enough

NEW WORDS

caecus, -a, -um, blind ille, illa, illud, that propter, prep. with acc., on account of; because of quam, adv., how, as, than tūtus, -a, -um, safe, unharmed

DECLENSION OF bic AND ille

The English word *this* has only two forms: *this*, singular, and *these*, plural. The Latin hic, *this*, has different forms for the different cases and genders.

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hu'jus	hu'jus	hu'jus	hō'rum	hā'rum	hō'rum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

This word points out something, and so it is called a demonstrative adjective.

Another Latin demonstrative is ille, that (plural, those). It is declined as follows:

	S	INGULAR			PLURAL	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	il'le	il'la	il'lud	il'lī	il'lae	il'la
Gen.	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illō'rum	illā'rum	illō'rum
Dat.	il'lī	il'lī	il'lī	il'līs	il'līs	il'līs
Acc.	il'lum	il'lam	il'lud	il'lōs	il'lās	il'la
Abl.	il′lō	il'lā	il'lō	il'līs	il'līs	il'līs

A demonstrative adjective, like any other adjective, must agree in number, gender, and case with the noun it modifies.

You have already learned that an adjective can be used as a noun.

multī, many men

multa, many things

In the same way a demonstrative may be used as a pronoun.

ille, that man

illa, those things

The demonstratives hic and ille both point out persons or things. Usually hic refers to a person or thing near the speaker, while ille indicates a person or thing farther away. Sometimes hic and ille are used in the same sentence.

Hic liber est bonus; ille liber est malus, This book is good; that book is had.

THE VERBS adsum AND absum

The verb adsum is made from sum and the prefix ad. The verb absum is made from sum and the prefix ab. Such verbs are called *compound verbs*.

Adsum and absum are conjugated like sum: ad'sum, I am present; ad'es, you are present, etc.; ab'sum, I am absent, am away from; ab'es, you are absent, are away from, etc.

Complete each sentence with a form of absum or adsum.

1. Fēminae (are here).

5. Multī (were present).

2. Agricola (was here).

6. Puer (is absent).

3. In patriā (*I will be*).

7. Puellae (have been away).

4. Ille (has been away).

8. Hodiē (they will be absent).

Find in the list of Latin phrases one that completes each sentence correctly.

ā dextrā haec jacula hōrum poētārum in silvīs ā sinistrā hujus bellī in proeliō virī et puerī

- 1. Sagittāriī ā sinistrā stetērunt; elephantī _ stetērunt.
- 2. Prīmō Pyrrhus Rōmānōs elephantīs superāvit.
- 3. Hodiē librī _ non laudantur.
- 4. Amīcus tuus causam _ nūntiābit.
- 5. _ sunt viae lātae; ā dextrā sunt hortī.



THE ROMAN GOVERNMENT

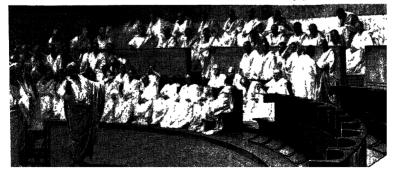
A consul of Rome preceded by twelve attendants







A meeting of the senate



THE TIMID SOUL

Tocus est Hispānia, provincia Romāna. Virī, feminae, puerī, L puellae in viā parvī oppidī stant aut ambulant. Galba, vir tımidus, cum Titō, ā sinistrā stat. Nūntius dēfessus ā dextrā celeriter venit

⁵ Galba. Ouis est ille vir? Epistulās portat. Estne nūntius? Titus. Ille vir est Pūblius, fīlius Sextī. Sextus in Galliā pugnat. Nūntius. Epistulās ē Galliā portō. Sextus hās epistulās ad incolās hujus oppidī mittit. Barbarī Galliam oppugnant. Fortūna bellī

est dubia. Periculum est magnum!

10 Galba. Habēbantne Gallī sociōs? Nonne Gallī auxilium postulāvērunt?

Nūntius. Ita, Gallī auxilium postulāvērunt, sed multos socios non hahēhant

Titus. Oui Gallis auxilium dederunt?

15 Nūntius. Incolae Britanniae Gallīs auxilium dedērunt. Gallī et Britanni fortiter pugnāvērunt, sed barbari—

Galba. Qui oppida Gallorum occupaverunt? Quorum agros vastavērunt?

Nūntius. Noctū barbarī agrōs Gallorum vāstāvērunt et oppida occupāvērunt et-

Virī et fēminae. Gallī sunt sociī nostrī. Gallōs juvāre dēbēmus! Galba. Timentne Britanni barbaros?

Nūntius. Minimē, aqua Britanniam ā Galliā sēparat. Sed jam periculum Hispāniae est magnum. Mox barbarī oppida nostra oppugnābunt.

Galba. Heu! Aqua Hispāniam ā Galliā non sēparat. Gallos timeo. Britannōs timeō. Barbarōs timeō. Heu! Heu!

WORDS WITH CLUES

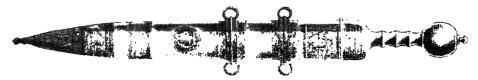
barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous; M. as noun, a barbarian dubius, -a, -um (dubious), doubtful fortiter, adv. (fortitude), bravely mittit (remit), sends, is sending socius, -ī, M. (sociable), ally, companion venit (advent), comes

NEW WORDS

heu, oh me! alas! -ne, attached to a word, to denote a *question*

nonne, a word used to introduce a question which expects the answer

quis, quid, who, what



This scabbard, in which some Roman officer carried his sword, was found in Spain

THE PRONOUN

In the following sentence notice that the word *him* is used instead of *boy*.

The man saw the boy and warned him.

A word which is used instead of a noun is called a pronoun.

The noun to which a pronoun refers is called its *antecedent*. In the sentence given above, *boy* is the antecedent of *him*.

The pronouns *I*, you, he, she, it, we, and they are called personal pronouns. In Latin you have already met forms of some personal pronouns: mē, me; mihi, to me; nōs, we, us; tē, you; and tibi, to you.

When the words who, which, and what are used to introduce questions, they are called *interrogative pronouns*.

The interrogative pronoun is declined as follows:

MASC. AND FEM.

Nom. quis, who

SINGULAR

NEUT.

quid, what

Gen.	cu'jus, whose, of whom	cu'jus, whose, of whom				
Dat.	cui, to whom, whom (as	indirect object)	cui, to	what		
Acc.	quem, whom (as direct of	object)	quid, w	hat (as direct object)		
Abl.	quō, (from, with, by) when the state of the	hom	quō, (fr	rom, with, by) what		
	PLURAL					
	MASC.	FEM.		NEUT.		
Nom.	quī, who	quae, who	(quae, what		
Gen.	quō'rum, whose, of whom	quā'rum, whose, whom	of o	quō'rum, of what		
Dat.	qui'bus, to whom, whom (as ind, obj.)	qui'bus, to whom whom (as ind. o	•	qui'bus, to what (as ind. obj.)		
Acc.	quōs, whom (as dir. obj.)	quās, whom (as a obj.)	lir. (quae, what (as dir. obj.)		
Abl.	qui'bus, (from, with, by) whom	qui'bus, (from, with) whom	by, (qui'bus, (from, with, by) what		

In the singular the same forms of the interrogative pronoun are commonly used for the masculine and feminine, but the plural is regularly declined in the three genders.

CASE OF THE INTERROGATIVE

The case of an interrogative pronoun is, of course, determined by its use in the sentence. In the following sentence the English interrogative, *whom*, is in the objective case, and the accusative will be required in the Latin.

Whom did you see? Quem vīdistī?

FORMS OF QUESTIONS

In each of the following Latin sentences the syllable -ne has been added to the first word.

Habetne poëta fīliam? Has the poet a daughter? Estne Sicilia magna īnsula? Is Sicily a large island?

The syllable -ne indicates that these sentences are questions. There is no separate English word for -ne. In English we indicate that a sentence is a question by the order of words and by the punctuation.

Ouestions of another form are introduced by nonne.

Nonne patriam tuam amas? <u>Do you not (Don't you) love your native country?</u>

Nonne implies the answer yes, but with -ne the answer expected is not indicated.

You have had questions introduced by cur and ubi. With such interrogative words or interrogative pronouns -ne and nonne are not used.

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS

In Latin one generally answers yes to a question by repeating the words of the question in the form of a statement.

Estne Sicilia magna însula? Sicilia est magna insula.

One may answer no by repeating the words of the question as a statement with $n\bar{o}n$.

Habetne poēta filiam? Poēta filiam non habet.

Sometimes minime is used for no and ita for yes.

RELIGION OF THE ROMANS

A Lat, one of the gods of the household



Jupiter



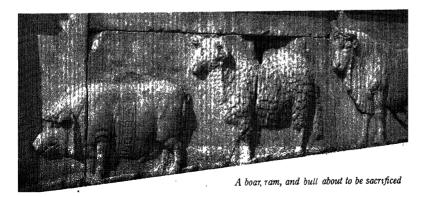
Mars

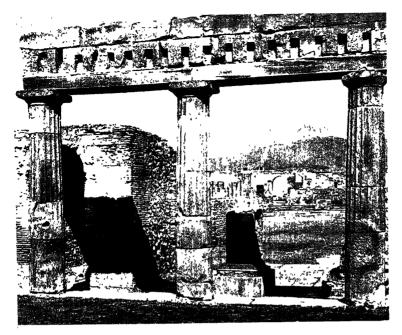


A household shrine



Venus





Vesuvius seen through an arch in Pombeii

VESUVIUS AND POMPEII

 $P^{l\bar{\imath}_{nius}}$ sum; cum avunculō meō habitābam. Vīlla nostra erat in locō altō inter oppidum Mīsēnum et ōram maritimam.

Ōlim māter (*mother*) mea ın hortō vīllae ambulābat. Subitō illa clāmāvit, "Spectā flammās clārās! Spectā caelum! Quam obscūrum 5 est caelum! Quod perīculum est propinquum?"

Caelum spectāvī. Circum Vesuvium flammae erant clārae et fūmus erat dēnsus. Statim Plīnium, avunculum meum, vocāvī.

Avunculus Vesuvium spectāvit. Tum jussit, "Vocā servōs! Vīllae amīcōrum nostrōrum sunt in magnō perīculō; nōn longē ā Vesuviō absunt. Amīcōs nostrōs juvāre dēbeō. Quī servī mē juvābunt?"

Avunculus meus cum multīs servīs ad ōram maritimam properāvit. Diū in hortō avunculum expectābam. Noctū quoque avunculum meum expectābam.

Postrīdiē erat magnus tremor terrae (earthquake); fūmus dēnsus 15 caelum cēlāvīt; cinis (ashes) erat dēnsus in hortō et circum mūrōs.

Nos ā villā per viās Mīsēnī properāvimus. Propter fūmum dēnsum viae erant obscūrae; multī incolae territī per viās angustās errābant.

Post multās hōrās iterum ad vīllam lēniter ambulābāmus. Ibi avunculum meum expectābāmus.

Postrīdiē nūntius vēnit et mihi nūntiāvit, "Vesuvius Pompeios et Herculāneum vāstāvit. Avunculus tuus est mortuus."

WORDS WITH CLUES

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

circum, prep. with acc. (circumference), around
fūmus, -ī, M., fume, smoke
hōra, -ae, F., hour
inter, prep. with acc. (interscholastic),
between, among
mūrus, -ī, M. (mural), wall

vēnit (venit), came

NEW WORDS

avunculus, -ī, M., uncle jubeō, -ēre, jussī, order longē, adv., far, at a distance quī, quae, quod, which, what

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

You are familiar with interrogative pronouns.

Quid video? What do I see?

Sometimes an interrogative word is used to modify a noun.

Quod oppidum video? What city do I see?

Here Quod modifies oppidum and is therefore an *interrogative* adjective. Like any other adjective, an interrogative adjective must always agree in number, gender, and case with the noun it modifies.

			, O 201-111	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom.	quī, quis	quae	quod	which, what
Gen.	cu'jus	cu'jus	cu'jus	of which, what
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	to which, what
Acc.	quem	quam	quođ	which, what
Abl.	quõ	quā	quō	(from, with, by,
				in, on) which, what
		PLU	RAL	
Nom.	quī	quae	quae	which, what
Gen.	quō'rum	quā'rum	quō'rum	of which, what
Dat.	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus	to which, what
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	which, what
Abl.	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus	(from, with, by,
				in, on) which, what

SINGULAR

Read each question and answer it in a Latin sentence.

1. Quod oppidum ā vīllā avunculī non longē aberat? 2. Quid Plīnius in caelo vīdit? 3. Quos avunculus vocāvit? 4. Quorum vīllae erant in perīculo? 5. Ad quem locum avunculus et servī properāvērunt? 6. Per quās viās Plīnius properāvit? 7. Quis Plīnio dē Vesuvio nūntiāvit? 8. Quae oppida Vesuvius vāstāvit?



Victims for the Minotaur

THESEUS AND THE MINOTAUR

Crēta, īnsula nōta, ā Graeciā nōn longē abest. In hāc īnsulā Daedalus, vir ēgregius, magnum Labyrinthum aedificāvit. Hīc Mīnōtaurus habitābat et per multās et caecās viās hujus Labyrinthī errābat. Hoc mōnstrum nōn cibum, sed virōs, fēminās, puerōs, puellās edēbat (used to eat).

Ōlim populus Athēnārum fīlium rēgis (of the king) Crētae necāvit. Propter hoc factum malum, sacrificium postulābātur. Itaque puerī et puellae saepe ab oppidō Athēnīs ad hunc Labyrınthum portābantur, ubi ā mōnstrō necābantur.

Thēseus, fīlius rēgis Athēnārum, puer ēgregius et validus, maximē dolēbat.

Ita dīxit, "Populus puerōs et puellās Mīnōtaurō dare nōn dēbet. Sum validus; Mīnōtaurum superābō. Hodiē puerī ad Crētam nāvigant; cum cēterīs nāvigābō."

Itaque Thēseus cēterīs cum puerīs ad Crētam nāvigāvit. Perīculum vidēbātur magnum, sed ab Ariadnā, fīliā rēgis Crētae, Thēseus juvābātur. Ariadna Thēseō viam sēcrētam in Labyrinthum mōnstrāvit, et Thēseō fīlum (*thread*) longum dedit.

Noctū Thēseus sēcrētō hoc fīlum ad jānuam Labyrinthī alligāvit (tied). Taedam quoque in Labyrinthum portāvit quod via erat obscūra. Mīnōtaurus īrātus Thēseum vīdit et statim puerum necāre temptāvit.

Sed Thēseus erat validus et parātus; gladiō mōnstrum necāvit. Deinde sine perīculō cēterōs puerōs cum multīs et miserīs virīs, fēminīs, puellīs servāvit.

Dēnique auxiliō fīlī ad jānuam Labyrinthī tūtus iterum vēnit, ubi ab Arıadnā expectābātur.

WORDS WITH CLUES

factum, -ī, N. (fact), deed, act sēcrētō, adv., secretly

NEW WORDS

cēterī, -ae, -a, pl., the rest of, the other cibus, -ī, M., food

NEW WORDS-Cont

ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished, unusual parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared sine, prep. with abl., without taeda, -ae, F., torch videor, -ērī, seem

IMPERFECT PASSIVE

You have already met the imperfect active of the first and second conjugations. As you know, the tense sign of the imperfect is -bā-. The imperfect passive differs from the imperfect active only in having passive endings instead of the active endings you met on page 39. The vowel -ā- becomes short before the endings -r and -ntur.

The imperfect passive of the first and second conjugations is given below. Notice that the vowel preceding the tense sign is -ā- in the first conjugation and -ē- in the second conjugation.

SINGULAR

portā'bar, I was being carried portābā'ris, you were being carried portābā'tur, he, she, it was being carried monē'bar, I was being warned monēbā'ris, you were being warned monēbā'tur, he, she, it was being warned

PLURAL

portābā/mur, we were being carried portābā/minī, you were being carried portāban'tur, they were being carried

monēbā'mur, we were being warned monēbā'minī, you were being warned monēban'tur, they were being warned

The imperfect passive is frequently translated by a simple past: I was carried, etc.

THE FIRST MAN TO FLY

Olim Daedalus in īnsulā Crētā cum fīlio Īcarō habitābat. Quamquam Daedalus erat vir ēgregius, tamen līber non erat. Captīvus in eā īnsulā servābātur, sed semper viam fugae parāre temptābat. Neque terra neque aqua eī auxilium dedit.

Deinde in caelō avēs (birds) vīdit. Diū avēs spectābat.

Dēnique fīliō dīxit, "Illae avēs ālīs volant. Nōs quoque volābimus. Hās avēs necābimus et pennīs eārum ālās parābimus."

Itaque Daedalus et Īcarus sagittīs multās avēs necāvērunt et pennās eārum servāvērunt. Auxiliō cērae magnās ālās parāvērunt.

Dēnique ālae erant parātae. Statim Daedalus eās temptāvīt et Īcarum ālās temptāre invītāvit. Mox Īcarus cum Daedalō volābat.

"Ālae sunt validae, sed propter cēram prope solem (sun) volāre non dēbēmus," Daedalus fīlium monuit.

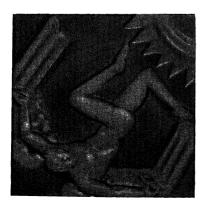
Prīmō Īcarus erat timīdus et prope terram manēbat, sed nōn diū prope terram manēbat. Daedalus terrītus fīlium appellāvit et eum dē perīculō iterum monuit. Sed Īcarus longē ā terrā et ab aquā per caelum altum volābat. Prope sōlem volābat.

Daedalus fīlium spectābat et propter audāciam ejus lacrimābat. Subitō cēra ā pennīs sēparābātur et bracchia Īcarī erant sine ālīs. In 20 aquam puer cecidit (*fell*), et aqua eum cēlāvit.

Posteā Daedalus propter fīlium mortuum semper dolēbat et iterum in caelō nōn volāvit.

WORDS WITH CLUES

appellō, -āre, -āvī (appellation), name, call audācia, -ae, F. (audacious), boldness, daring bracchium, -ī, N. (bracelet), arm



NEW WORDS-Cont

fuga, -ae, F. (fugitive), flight
lacrimō, -āre, -āvī (lacrimal), weep,
cry
penna, -ae, F. (pen), feather
prope, prep. with acc. (propinquus),
near
volō, -āre, -āvī (volatile), fly

NEW WORDS

āla, -ae, F., wing
cēra, -ae, F., wax
is, ea, id, that, this, pl., those, these;
as pronoun, he, she, it, pl., they
neque, conj., nor, and not; neque...
neque, neither...nor

A panel from a door in the memorial to the Wright Brothers at Kitty Hawk, N.C.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE is

You have learned two demonstratives: hic, this, and ille, that. There is also another important demonstrative, is.

When used as adjectives, the forms of is may be translated either *this* or *that*, as the sense requires, since is does not emphasize that the thing is near, as does hic, or that it is some distance away, as does ille.

Is puer nauta est, This boy (or that boy) is a sailor.

PRONOUN USE OF is

The forms of is are very commonly used as pronouns, meaning he, she, it, his, her, its, etc., as shown in the translation below.

When is is used as a pronoun, it must agree with its antecedent in number and gender, but its case depends on the use in the sentence.

Ager est magnus. Vidēsne eum? The field is large. Do you see it?

In the example above, eum, a masculine singular form, is used, because the antecedent, ager, is masculine singular. In this instance, the masculine form, eum, is translated *it*, because in English *field* is neuter. Eum is accusative because it is the object of the verb vidēs.

SINGULAR

The forms of is with its meanings as a pronoun are as follows:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	is, he	e'a, she	id, it
Gen.	e'jus, his	e'jus, her (possessive)	e'jus, its
Dat.	e'ī, to him, him (as indirect object)	e'i, to her, her (as indirect object)	e'ī, to it, it (as indirect object)
Acc.	e'um, him (as direct object)	e'am, her (as direct object)	id, it (as direct object)
Abl.	e'ō, (from, with, by) him	e'ā, (from, with, by) her	e'ō, (from, with, by) it
		PLURAL	
Nom.	e'ī}they	e'ae, they	e'a, they, those things
Gen.	eō'rum, their	eā'rum, their	eō'rum, their
Dat.	e' is to them, them is $\int (as \ ind. \ obj.)$	e'īs to them, them iīs (as ind. obj.)	e'īs to them, them iīs (as ind. obj.)
Acc.	$e'\bar{o}s$, them (as dir. obj.)	e'ās, them (as dir. obj.)	e'a, them (as dir. obj.)
Abl.	e'īs (from, with, iīs) by them	e'īs (trom, with, iis) by) them	e'īs (from, with, iīs) by) them

The forms it and its are pronounced in one syllable as if spelled it and is.



THE CAPTURE OF VEII

uamquam Veiī, magnum oppidum Etrūscōrum, erant prope Rōmam, tamen populus Veiōrum saepe cum Rōmānīs pugnābat. Rōmānī Veiōs oppugnābant et mūrōs eōrum vehementer dēlēre temptābant. Sed mūrī erant altī et validī, et diū incolae Veiōrum tūtī vidēbantur.

Sed post multōs annōs incolae magnam cōpiam cibī nōn habēbant; multī erant aegrī; tamen cēterī incolae oppidum vehementer dēfendēbant.

Dēnique incola Veiōrum in mūrō oppidī stābat. "Haec sunt verba ōrāculī," clāmāvit. "Veiōs nōn occupābitis, Rōmānī, dum aqua erit in lacū (*lake*) Albānō. Semper erit aqua in lacū. Dī semper Veiōs cūrābunt, et Veiī semper erunt tūtī."

Rōmānī respondērunt, "Es stultus! Oppidum tuum occupābitur; templa tua dēlēbuntur; dī Veiōrum ad oppidum nostrum portābuntur; dī tuī Rōmānōs cūrābunt."

Statim Romānus Camillus bonum consilium monstrāvit. Cēterī virī id consilium probavērunt.

Noctū Camillus multōs Rōmānōs ē castrīs ad lacum Albānum sēcrētō dūxit. Sēcrētō hī virī magnum cunīculum (tunnel) sub terrā fodiēbant (dug). Celeriter labōrābant quod populus Veiōrum in tēctīs erat. Dēnique per hunc cunīculum aqua ē lacū trāns campōs flūxit (flowed). Jam erat nūlla aqua in lacū Albānō.

Iterum multī Rōmānī Veiōs fortiter oppugnāvērunt. Iterum mūrōs vehementer dēlēre temptābant. Quamquam incolae Veiōrum diū et ācriter pugnāvērunt, tamen nōn jam tūtī erant. Nūlla aqua in lacū erat; itaque Rōmānī oppidum occupāvērunt. Verba ōrāculī erant vēra.

WORDS WITH CLUES

campus, -ī, M. (camp), level plain, plain

defendebant, (they) defended, were defending

dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī (delete), destroy
dūxit (conduct), (he, she) led, did
lead

respondeō, -ēre, respondī (respond), answer, reply

sub, prep. with acc. or abl. (subway), under, below

WORDS WITH CLUES-Cont.

vehementer, adv. (vehemently), violently, strongly verbum, -ī, N. (verbal), word verus, -a, -um (veracity), true

NEW WORDS

aeger, -gra, -grum, sick, ill dum, conj., while, as long as stultus, -a, -um, stupid, foolish

FUTURE PASSIVE OF porto AND moneo

You have already met the future active of verbs of the first and second conjugations. In the future passive portō and moneō are conjugated as follows:

SINGULAR

portā'bor, I shall be carried portā'beris, you will be carried portā'bitur, he, she, it will be carried

monē'bor, I shall be warned monē'beris, you will be warned monē'bitur, he, she, it will be warned

PLURAL

portā'bimur, we shall be carried portābi'minī, you will be carried portābun'tur, they will be carried

monē'bimur, we shall be warned monēbi'minī, you will be warned monēbun'tur, they will be warned

The syllable -bi- is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations. Notice that this tense sign has the form -bu- in the third person plural of both voices, -b- in the first person singular of both voices, and -be- in the second person singular of the passive.

hic and ille as pronouns

The forms of hic and ille are sometimes used instead of the forms of is as pronouns meaning he, she, it, his, her, him, etc. The plural forms hī, illī, etc., mean these or those (persons); the neuter haec, illa, etc., mean these things or those things.

MANLIUS SAVES THE CAPITOL

Callī erant barbarī, et Rōmānī eōs maximē timēbant. Jam Gallī ā portīs Rōmae nōn longē aberant. Propter magnum perīculum multī incolae Rōmae manēre ibi nōn dēsīderābant; itaque ad oppida propinqua fūgērunt.

Virī validī sōlī in oppidō manēbant. Tamen in tēctīs nōn manēbant, sed in Capitōliō. Hīc Juppiter et Jūnō et Mınerva templa habēbant. In templō Jūnōnis erant ānserēs (geese) sacrī.

Quamquam Capitōlium propter templa ab hīs virīs dēfendēbātur, tamen oppidum tōtum erat minimē tūtum. Portae Rōmae erant apertae, et mox Gallī ferī adfuērunt; mox tēcta et templa et ārās dēlēbant.

Dēnique noctū Gallī viam sēcrētam vīdērunt. Via erat dūra sed eōs ad mūrum Capitōliī dūxit. Quamquam Rōmānī Capitōlium vigilābant, tamen Gallōs nōn vīdērunt. Nūllus sonus erat; Gallī erant maximē quiētī.

Sed in templō Jūnōnis sacrī ānserēs strepuērunt (cackled), et eōrum clangor Mānlium excitāvit. Statim Mānlius cēterōs Rōmānōs vocāvit et ad mūrum properāvit.

Prīmus Gallus jam in mūrō stābat. Sē servāre temptāvit, sed celeriter Mānlius eum gladiō necāvit. Post prīmum Gallum erant multī sociī ejus, sed statim ā Gallō cadentī (falling) dē viā angustā dēpulsī sunt (were knocked off). Mox hī Gallī quoque ā Mānliō et ab amīcīs ejus necābantur et Capitōlium servābātur.

This mosaic is so cleverly made that the ducks seem to be modeled



WORDS WITH CLUES

clangor (clang), noise
dēfendēbātur, was being defended
excītō, -āre, -āvī (excite), arouse,
alarm
ferus, -a, -um, fierce, wild
fūgērunt (fuga), (they) fled
porta, -ae, F. (portal), gate
prīmus, -a, -um (prīmō, prime), first
sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred
sonus, -ī, M. (sonorous), sound, noise
suī (suicide), of himself, herself,
itself, themselves
tōtus, -a, -um (total), whole

NEW WORD

dūrus, -a, -um, hard, difficult

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

As you have already learned, the demonstratives is, hic, and ille are sometimes used as pronouns. One use of such a pronoun is as the object of a verb whose subject refers to a different person or thing.

> Mānlius viros excitāvit et eos servāvit, Manlius aroused the men and saved them.

In the following sentence the object, *himself*, means the same person as the subject, he.

Sē servat, He saves himself.

A pronoun which is thus used is called a reflexive pronoun.

The Latin reflexive pronoun is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative case to denote the same person as the subject of the sentence in which it stands.

The Latin reflexive pronoun meaning himself, herself, itself, or themselves is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Genitive:	su'i	su'ī
Dative:	si'bi	si'bi
Accusative:	sē, sē'sē	sē, sē'sē
Ablative:	sē, sē'sē	sē, sē'sē

Choose the correct Latin pronoun for each English pronoun.

- Tōtum oppidum nōn dēlēbitur; (it) vigilāmus. { illum id sē
 Vir ferus (himself) necāvit. { sē suī eum
 Haec verba erant dūra sed vēra; populus (them) audīvit. { sibi ea sē

PREFIXES IN LATIN AND IN ENGLISH

As you know, a new word is often formed, both in Latin and in English, by adding a prefix to a word. Many Latin adjectives add the prefix in- to make a negative.

in- + credibilis = incredibilis, incredible

Explain the make-up and meaning of each of these adjectives.

inauditus infelix insanus invalidus incertus infinitus insciens invictus

The prefix in- also gives a negative meaning to some nouns.

indignitas infamia injuria

This prefix is called inseparable, because it cannot be used as a separate word. There is another prefix in which is used with verbs and which has the meaning of *in* or *into*.

incedo, move in induco, lead in

Many new Latin verbs are made by adding a prefix to a known verb. Common Latin prefixes used in making compound verbs are ab, ad, circum, de, ex, per, re-, trans.

abduco, lead away educo, lead out
adduco, lead to perduco, lead through
circumduco, lead around reduco, lead back
deduco, lead down transduco, lead across

The prefix com-, meaning with or together, appears in some words as co-, col-, con-, or cor-.

conduco colloco confirmo

Give the meaning of each of the following verbs.

abeo circumspecto depono permitto admitto comporto exeo renuntio

Other Latin prefixes used with verbs are inter, among, between; prae, before, in front; pro, before, forward.

Give the meaning of these compound verbs.

interpono praecedo praesto promoveo intervenio praecurro produco provideo

The same three prefixes occur in many English words.

Which of the Latin words on this page have English derivatives? How do the English words differ in meaning from the Latin?

REVIEW OF UNIT IV

- I. Select the correct form and tell why you chose it.
- 1. Celeriter populus \bar{a} serv \bar{o} impigr \bar{o} $\begin{cases} \text{moneor.} \\ \text{monentur.} \\ \text{monetur.} \end{cases}$
- $2. \ \, \text{Cibus \bar{a} popul\bar{o} maxim\bar{e}} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} postul\bar{a} bat.} \\ postul\bar{a} tur.} \\ postul\bar{a} vit.} \end{array} \right.$
 - 3. Sagittārius prope saxum lātum et altum $\left\{\begin{array}{l} excitāvī.\\ excitātur.\\ excitantur. \end{array}\right.$
- $\label{eq:continuity} \textbf{4. Quam male hoc t\bar{e}ctum \bar{a} f\bar{\imath}li\bar{\imath}s} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} aedific\bar{a}ris!\\ aedific\bar{a}tur!\\ aedific\bar{a}bit! \end{array} \right.$
 - 5. Ubi vir haec facta dūra nūntiābat, fēminae doluērunt. doletur.
- II. Explain the grouping of these words, all of which refer to time.

hodiē postrīdiē	interdum saepe semper	aestāte hieme	interdiū noctū vesperī	deinde dēnique mox
nunc		ante		ōlim
tum		post		prīmō

III. From the following list of adverbs select one that replaces each blank in the sentences below.

bene	fortiter	lēniter	maximē	posteā	statim
celeriter	hīc	longē	minimē	postrīdiē	tum
diū	ita	male	nunc	satis	vehementer

- 1. Prīmō puerī _ ambulāvērunt; deinde, territī, _ ambulāvērunt.
- 2. Puerī impigrī _ laborant; puerī cēterī _ laborant.
- 3. Oppidum ā silvā dēnsā _ abest.
- 4. Amāsne hunc campum? Respondē "__" aut "__."
- 5. Nūntium expectāvistī; nūntius nōn vēnit; tamen aderit.



Illa est sagitta Trojana!

UNIT

 \mathbb{V}

Tales of Adventure

ASCANIUS AND THE WHITE STAG

Postquam Graecī Trōjam dēlēvērunt, Trōjānus Aenēās ad Ītaliam cum fīliō suō et multīs sociīs nāvigāvit. Hīc erat Latium, rēgnum Latīnī. Aenēās prō sē et suīs sociīs agrōs rogāvit. Latīnus Aenēae et ejus virīs benignus erat et eīs agrōs dedit. Tamen multī incolae Latī Trōjānīs ınımīcī erant.

Prope castra Trōjāna agricola Tyrrhus habitābat; trēs fīliōs et fīliam, Silviam, habēbat. Ōlim Tyrrhus et ejus fīliī cervum album paene mortuum ē silvā portāvērunt. Cervum Silviae dedērunt.

Silvia suum cervum cūrābat et amābat. Māne per sılvās cervus 10 errābat sed vesperī semper ad Silviam redībat (came back).

Ōlim Ascanius, fīlius Aenēae, cum sociīs suīs in silvā errābat et cervum album vīdit. Quod prō sē glōriam dēsīderābat et nōn quod Silviae inimīcus erat, Ascanius cervum necāre temptābat. Itaque eum sagīttā suā vulnerāvit.

¹⁵ Cervus ad casam Silviae fūgit. Ubi Silvia cervum paene mortuum vīdit, vehementer lacrimāvit.

Sed ubi Tyrrhus sagittam vīdit, īrātus erat. Dīxit, "Illa est sagitta Trōjāna! Perfidī Trōjānī! Cervum fīliae meae sagīttīs vestrīs vulnerāvistis; sagittīs nostrīs, igitur, Ascanium et sociōs ejus vulnerābimus."

Itaque Tyrrhus cum fīliīs suīs et amīcīs eōrum castra Trōjāna 5 vehementer oppugnāvit; hoc erat initium bellī.

cervus, -ī, M., stag; cerva, -ae, F., deer fūgit, fled igitur, adv., therefore inimīcus, -a, -um, unfriendly; M. and F. as noun, enemy initium, -ī, N., beginning māne, adv., in the morning paene, adv., almost

perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous
postquam, conj., after
rogō, -āre, -āvī, ask, request
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their;
his own, etc.
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (of
more than one person)
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, wound

USE OF SUUS

In the first sentence below, the word *his* refers to the subject. In the second sentence the word *their* refers to the subject.

The boy praises his friends.

The boys praise their friends.

In both sentences the possessors are the same persons as the subjects. The Latin word for *his*, *her*, *its*, or *their* when referring to the subject is suus.

Puer amīcōs <u>suōs</u> laudat. Puerī amīcōs suōs laudant.

To decide whether suos in such a sentence means his, her, its, or their, notice whether the subject is singular or plural and whether it is masculine, feminine, or neuter. In the first sentence above, suos is translated his, because puer is masculine singular; in the second sentence above, suos is translated their, because puer is plural. In the following sentence suos is translated her, because puella is feminine singular.

Puella amīcos suos laudat, The girl praises her friends.

DECLENSION OF SUUS

Suus is an adjective declined like meus and tuus. Since it is an adjective, it must agree in number, gender, and case with the noun it modifies. Thus, in the sentence above, suōs is masculine plural accusative, to agree with amīcōs.

ejus AND eorum

Sometimes *his*, *her*, or *their* does not refer to the subject of the sentence.

They praise his friends. He praises their friends.

In the sentences above, the possessors are not the same persons as the subjects. When thus used, *his*, *her*, *its* are expressed by **ejus**; and when *their* is similarly used, it is expressed by **eōrum** (or **eārum**).

Amīcos ejus laudant.

Amīcōs eōrum laudat.

Ejus is the genitive singular of is, and eōrum (eārum) is the genitive plural. Since they are pronouns in the genitive case, their forms are not affected by the nouns which they modify.

Sometimes a possessive word is omitted in Latin when the meaning is clear, even though the corresponding English sentence requires a possessive. Possessives are to be supplied in translation whenever the sense requires.

Fēmina fīliam amat, The woman loves her daughter.

Choose the correct form to complete each sentence.

- 1. Librum (suum, ejus) non habet; librum (suum, ejus) habeo.
- 2. Librōs (suōs, eōrum) habent; librōs (suōs, eōrum) habēmus.
- 3. Postquam arma (sua, eõrum) vīdimus, (ea, sua) timēbāmus.
- 4. Virī perfidī fūgērunt; cōpiae (nostrae, vestrum) igitur (eōs, suōs) superāvērunt.
- 5. Pīrāta amīcīs (suīs, ejus) arcam pulchram monstrat; amīcī (suī, ejus) arcam maximē laudant.

Find a phrase that correctly completes each sentence.

casae suae	fīliam ejus	fīlium suum	in oppidum
castra eōrum	fīliam suam	fīlius ejus	oppida eōrum
fīlia sua	fīlium ejus	in agrō suō	oppida sua

- 1. Agricola (in his own field) labōrat.
- 2. (*His son*) quoque in agrō labōrat.
- 3. Barbarī (their own towns) dēlēbant.
- 4. Vir (his son) laudat.

- 5. (His son) non laudo.
- 6. Ab hoc loco (their camp) vidēmus.
- 7. (Their towns) oppugnābuntur.
- 8. Fēmina saepe (her daughter) monet.
- 9. (Her daughter) monēmus.



The center of family life in this Pompeian house was the atrium



This plan of a simple Roman house shows the large central room with small rooms at each side. The corner rooms at the rear may wave been kitchen and dining room

> Model of a large house belonging to a wealthy man

Very modern in appearance is this ancient Roman apartment house, shown here in a model. Notice the height of the building and the shops on the ground floor

SERTORIUS AND DIANA'S DEER

lim in Ītaliā Sulla, dux Rōmānus, cōpiās Mariī, cōnsulis Rōmānī, superāvit. Posteā Sertōrius, amīcus Mariī, ad Hıspāniam fūgit. Tum Hıspānī rēgēs nōn habēbant, sed ducēs bonōs et bona cōnsilia bellī habēbant. Quamquam Hispānī multīs Rōmānīs inimīcī erant, tamen Sertōrium amābant, quod mātribus et patribus lēgēs bonās dedit; līberīs eōrum scholās bonās dedit. Magistrī Rōmānī in scholīs Hispāniae labōrābant. Līberī Hispānōrum togās Rōmānās habēbant et in scholīs linguam Rōmānam discēbant (learned).

Posteā Sertōrius pācem ōrāvit, sed ducēs Rōmānī eī respondērunt, 10 "Rōma pācem virīs perfidīs nōn dat."

Sertōrius igitur in silvīs Hispāniae contrā cōpiās Rōmānās pugnāre parābat.

Ōlim Hispānus cervam albam Sertōriō dedit. Hoc dōnum Sertōriō erat grātum. Cervam cōpiīs suīs mōnstrāvit et dīxit, "Haec cerva est dōnum Diānae. Dum ea est tūta, Diāna cōpiīs nostrīs auxilium dabit."

Posteā Sertōrius dīxit, "Per hanc cervam Diāna mihi dīcit et mē dē perīculīs nostrīs monēbit."

Multae võcēs clāmāvērunt, "Sertõrius est frāter noster! Diāna frātrī nostrō auxilium dabit. Rōmānōs superābimus."

Diū haec cerva alba Sertōrium juvābat; Rōmānī saepe superābantur. Dēnique cerva in silvam errābat, neque Hispānī eam iterum vīdērunt. Nōn jam fortūna Sertōriō benigna erat. Dēnique ejus inimīcī eum necāvērunt.



consul, -ulis, M., consul, a Roman magistrate
dux, ducis, M., leader
frāter, frātris, M., brother
lēx, lēgis, F., law
līberī, -ōrum, M., pl., children
lingua, -ae, F., tongue, speech,
language
magister, -trī, M., teacher, master
māter, mātris, F., mother
pater, patris, M., father
pāx, pācis, F., peace
rēx, rēgis, M., king
schola, -ae, F., school
vōx, vōcis, F., voice

An ancient bronze statue

THIRD DECLENSION

The declension to which a Latin noun belongs can always be determined from the ending of the genitive singular. First-declension nouns have the ending -ae in the genitive, and second-declension nouns have -ī. All third-declension nouns have the genitive singular ending in -is, but the endings of the nominative singular are of many kinds. Examples of the various types will be given in the following lessons.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE FIRST CLASS

Nouns of the third declension may be divided into two classes. Those of the first class have the genitive plural ending in -um. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

māter, F., mother rēx, M., king dux, M., leader prīnceps, M., chief singular

Nom. mā'ter Gen. mā'tris Dat. mā'trī Acc. mā'trem	rēx	dux	prīn'ceps
	rē'gis	du'cis	prīn'cipis
	rē'gī	du'cī	prīn'cipī
	rē'gem	du'cem	prīn'cipem
Abl. mā'tre	rē'ge	du'ce	prīn'cipe
Nom. mā'trēs Gen. mā'trum Dat. mā'tribus Acc. mā'trēs Abl. mā'tribus	rē'gēs	du'cēs	prīn'cipēs
	rē'gum	du'cum	prīn'cipum
	rē'gibus	du'cibus	prīnci'pibus
	rē'gēs	du'cēs	prīn'cipēs
	rē'gibus	du'cibus	prīnci'pibus

ENDINGS

You will observe that the case endings in this class of the third declension are as follows:

:	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative:		-ēs
Genitive:	-is	-um
Dative:	-ī	-ibus
Accusative:	-em	-ēs
Ablative:	-e	-ibus

A SOLDIER'S LETTER

Mārcus Sextō salūtem dīcit. Sī valēs, bene est; valeō. Sumus in magnā silvā Galliae, et legiō nostra castra in rīpā magnī flūminis posuit (pitched). Hoc flūmen lātum et altum est.

Mīlitēs bene labōrāvērunt et circum castra mūrum aedificāvērunt.

Multī rāmōs et saxa ex silvā portābant, multī equōs cūrābant, multī tabernācula parābant, sed cum illīs mīlitibus nōn labōrābam. Cum paucīs mīlitibus cibum in dēnsā silvā petēbam (was seeking).

In hāc regione sunt multa genera bēstiārum. Sunt nūllī leonēs in Galliā, sed in silvā ursās paucās et multos cervos vīdimus. Multos cervos necāvimus et corpora eorum ad castra portāvimus.

Hodiē cum sociīs paucīs iterum in silvam ambulāvī. Non longē ā castrīs nostrīs parvum flūmen vīdimus. Silvam circumspectāvimus, sed nūllos Gallos vīdimus. In medio flūmine erat magnum saxum. Cum sociīs meīs ad hoc saxum natāvī. In hoc saxo diū sēdimus et mīlitēs in dextrā rīpā flūminis spectāvimus. Paucī in flūmine natābant; capita eorum in aquā vīdimus.

Laetus sum quod in hāc regione du manēbimus. Germānī magnās copiās trāns Rhēnum habent et hanc regionem vāstāre parant, sed eos non timēmus. Gallī Germānos timent quod corpora valida habent et sunt barbarī. Prīnceps Germānus est homo perfidus, sed ducēs nostrī bona consilia bellī habent et hominēs Galliae juvāre dēsīderant.

Nonne legio tua mox erit in Gallia? Tum te videbo et tibi multa de hac regione narrabo. Vale.

bēstia, -ae, F., beast, animal caput, capitis, N., head corpus, corporis, N., body flümen, flüminis, N., river genus, generis, N., kind, sort homō, hominis, M., man, human being

legiō, -ōnis, F., legion, a Roman division of soldiers (4000 to 6000 men)



Roman writing materials leō, -ōnis, M., lion medius, -a, -um, middle, the middle mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier nato, -are, -avī, swim paucī, -ae, -a, pl., few, a few princeps, principis, M., chief, prince, leader rīpa, -ae, F., bank (of a stream) salūs, salūtis, F., safety; salūtem dīcit, gives greetings sedeo, -ere, sedī, sit, be seated; settle down, settle sī, conj., if tabernāculum, -ī, N., tent valeo, -ere, -ui, be well; vale (at end of a letter), farewell

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Among other masculine nouns and feminine nouns in the first class of the third declension are these.

mīles, M., soldier mercātor, M., trader homō, M., man legiō, F., legion calamitās, F., calamity

These words illustrate different formations of the nominative singular, but they are all declined in the same way.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST CLASS

Many neuter nouns of the third declension belong to the same class as the masculine and feminine nouns which you met on page 91, that is, they have the genitive plural in -um. Neuter nouns of this class are declined as follows:

flumen, N., river caput, N., head corpus, N., body genus, N., kind

		SINGULA	R	
Nom.	flū'men	ca'put	cor'pus	ge'nus
Gen.	flū'minis	ca'pitis	cor'poris	ge'neris
Dat.	flū'minī	ca'pitī	cor'porī	ge'nerī
Acc.	flū'men	ca'put	cor'pus	ge'nus
Abl.	flū'mine	ca'pite	cor'pore	ge'nere
		PLURAL		
Nom.	. flū'mina	ca'pita	cor'pora	ge'nera
Gen.	${ m fl}ar{{ m u}}'{ m minum}$	ca'pitum	cor'porum	ge'nerum
Dat.	flūmi'nibus	capi'tibus	corpo'ribus	gene'ribus
Acc.	flū'mina	ca'pita	cor'pora	ge'nera
Abl.	flūmi'nibus	capi'tibus	corpo'ribus	gene'ribus

Change the italicized words to plural and make any other necessary changes.

- 1. Parvum caput vīdī.
- Temptā nārrāre dē bellō Rōmānō.
- 3. Corpus mīlitis validum erat.
- 4. Mīlitēs trāns illud *flūmen* properābant.
- 5. *Mīles* in rīpā *flūminis* lātī sedēbat.
- 6. $Hom\bar{o}$ in $r\bar{\imath}p\bar{a}$ illīus flūminis vulnerābātur.
- 7. Aut in flūmine *natō* aut in rīpā *sedeō*.

THE BLIND POET

Vir in summō colle ambulat; lyram portat. Quamquam est caecus, celeriter ambulat. Cum virō in viā dūrā est parva puella.

Puella. Nox est et in silvā avēs et anımālia silent. Via est obscūra; lūnam non video quod nūbēs eam cēlant.

5 Vir. Longē ā tēctō nostrō absumus. Es dēfessa et nūllum cibum habēmus.

Puella. Undique colles et montes sunt. Neque urbem neque oppidum video. Tamen non longe lumen video. Lumen est in parvo tecto.

Vir. Appropinquābimus et cibum rogābimus, quod dēfessus sum et nūllam pecūniam habeō. Illī virī nōn barbarī sunt et cibum dabunt. Pecūniam nōn rogābimus.

In tēctō parvō agricola et puer sedent. In fenestrā tēctī est lucerna. Nōn jam via est obscūra quod subitō per nūbēs lūna vidētur.

Puer [magnā vōce]. Ecce, pater! Virum et parvam puellam videō. Ad tēctum appropinquant.

Agricola. Virum et puellam appellāre dēbēmus. Eīs cibum dabimus; vir est dēfessus.

Puer ad jānuam properāvit; virum et puellam appellāvit.

Vir. Tēctum meum longē trāns mare abest. Caecus sum et nūllam pecūniam habeō.

Agricola. Sed es homō, et homō hominem juvāre dēbet!

Itaque vir cum puellā in tēctum vēnit. Agricola eīs cibum dedit. Post cēnam vir caecus lyram suam ōrāvit et dē urbe longinquā et dē bellō Trōjānō cantāvit.

²⁵ Caecus erat Homērus, clārus poēta Graeciae.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, approach avis, avis, -ium, F., bird cantō, -āre, -āvī, sing



10

15

collis, collis, -ium, M., hill longinquus, -a, -um, distant lümen, lüminis, N., light mare, maris, -ium, N, sea, ocean mõns, montis, -ium, M., mountain nox, noctis, -ium, F., night nübēs, nübis, -ium, F., cloud sileō, -ēre, siluī, be silent summus, -a, -um, highest; highest part of, top of undique, adv., on all sides, from all sides urbs, urbis, -ium, F., city

Poeta caecus

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE SECOND CLASS

Nouns of the third declension which make up the second class end in -ium in the genitive plural. Practically all masculine and feminine nouns of the second class have (a) the same number of syllables in the nominative and the genitive singular or (b) two consonants immediately preceding the ending of the genitive singular: $n\bar{u}b\bar{e}s$, gen., $n\bar{u}bis$; nox, gen., noctis.

collis, M., hill nūbēs, F., cloud	nox, F., night urbs, F., city		mõns, M	1., mountain		
SINGULAR						
Nom. col'lis Gen. col'lis Dat. col'li Acc. col'lem Abl. col'le	nū'bēs nū'bis nū'bī nū'bem nū'be	nox noc'tis noc'ti noc'tem noc'te	urbs ur'bis ur'bī ur'bem ur'be	mons mon'tis mon'ti mon'tem mon'te		
		PLURAL				
Nom. col'lēs Gen. col'lium Dat. col'libus Acc. col'lēs Abl. col'libus	nū'bēs nū'bium nū'bibus nū'bēs nū'bibus	noc'tës noc'tium noc'tibus noc'tës noc'tibus	ur'bēs ur'bium ur'bibus ur'bēs ur'bibus	mon'tēs mon'tium mon'tibus mon'tēs mon'tibus		

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND CLASS

The second class of third-declension nouns has a number of neuters. These end in -e, -al, or -ar in the nominative.

animal, animālis, N., animal exemplar, exemplaris, N., example mare, maris, N., sea

These nouns differ from neuter nouns of the first class in that the genitive plural ends in -ium, the ablative singular ends in -i, and the nominative and accusative plural end in -ia. As with all neuter nouns, the nominative and accusative singular are alike, and the nominative and accusative plural are alike. For their declension, see page 314, 5.

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

You can remember the gender of third-declension nouns in this way. Nouns ending in -tor are usually masculine; in -iō, -tās, or -tūs, feminine; in -al, -ar, -e, or -t, neuter.

ANDROCLES AND THE LION

Androclēs erat servus dominī Rōmānī in Āfricā. Quod ejus dominus erat malus, Androclēs in loca fera fūgit, ubi in spēluncā obscūrā latēbat.

Sed ölim leö ferus in hanc spēluncam vēnit ubi Androclēs sedēbat, et fugitīvum magnopere terruit. Tamen servus non sē movit. Leö lēniter ad Androclem vēnit, et pedem suum, longā spīnā vulnerātum, monstrāvit. Androclēs benignus ex pede leonis spīnam celeriter removit.

Jam leō servum benignum amāre vidēbātur. Cum amīcō suō manēre dēsīderābat. Itaque diū homō et leō in spēluncā obscūrā habitāvērunt.

Sed dēnique mīlitēs Rōmānī fugitīvum procul ā spēluncā vīdērunt. Androclēs, sonō pedum monitus, celeriter fūgit, sed mīlitēs eum hastīs vulnerāvērunt. Quod Androclēs erat servus, dux mīlitum eum ad dominum ejus dūxit.

Dominus servum vulnerātum ad Ītaliam portāvit. Hīc vir malus dīxit, "Imperātor Rōmānus est amīcus meus; crās in arēnā ā leōnibus ferīs necāberis."

Postrīdiē mīlitēs armātī Androclem in arēnam portāvērunt. Statim leō ferus ad servum appropinquāvit. Subitō leō stetit et servum spectāvit. Tum ad eum lēniter vēnit et pedem mōnstrāvit. Nōn jam leō erat ferus; Androclēs erat amīcus.

Prīmō populus erat īrātus quod leō servum nōn necāvit. Sed, ubi dē leōne et spīnā audīvit, imperātor, magnopere mōtus, Androclem et leōnem līberāvit.

armātus, -a, -um, armed; M. pl. as noun, armed men, soldiers crās, adv., tomorrow dominus, -ī, M., master imperātor, -ōris, M., commander, emperor lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, hide, be concealed

magnopere, adv., greatly, very much manēre, to remain pēs, pedis, M. foot, paw procul, adv., at a distance, far spelunca, -ae, F., cave, den spīna, -ae, F., thorn terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten, terrify



USE OF PARTICIPLES

There are certain verb forms which not only denote action, but also tell something about a person or thing, very much as an adjective does.

The boy, frightened by the noise, called for help.

In the sentence above, the word *frightened* is a form of the verb *frighten*, but it also tells something about the situation or condition of the boy. It is called a *participle*, and it shares something of the character of a verb and of an adjective. It has the character of a verb in that it denotes action, and it has the character of an adjective in that it modifies a noun or pronoun.

FORMS OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

The perfect passive participle of portō is portātus, -a, -um, translated either having been carried or carried.

The perfect participle of juvō is jūtus, -a, -um; of dō is datus, -a, -um (differing from portātus in that the a is short). The perfect participles of all the other verbs of the first conjugation which you have met thus far are formed like that of portō; for example, laudātus, amātus.

The participle of moneō is monitus, -a, -um, meaning having been warned or simply warned. Some other second-conjugation verbs form the perfect passive participle like moneō; for example, dēbitus, -a, -um; habitus, -a, -um.

DECLENSION OF THE PARTICIPLE

The perfect passive participle is declined like **bonus**. Like any adjective, a participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun it modifies.

Puer, ā patre monitus, ad scholam properābat.

The boy, having been warned by his father, was hurrying to school,

or

The boy, warned by his father, was hurrying to school.

The Latin participle is usually placed at the end of the participial phrase.

The verb sto has no perfect participle.

PICUS-KING AND WOODPECKER

Pīcus, rēx Latiī antīquī, magnam rēgiam in mediō campō habēbat. Circē, maga clāra, prope rēgiam Pīcī habitābat. Magnam et malam potestātem habēbat; saepe hominēs in bēstiās aut in avēs mūtāvit. Ōlım Circē Pīcum vīdit et statim rēgem amāvit. Sed Pīcus Circam nōn amāvit; nympham pulchram hujus regiōnis amāvit.

Dēnique Pīcus nympham in mātrimōnium dūxit. Postrīdiē cīvēs et uxōrēs cīvium ad magnam cēnam convocāvit. Sed ante cēnam Pīcus cum paucīs comitibus in silvam propinquam vēnit. Circē quoque in silvam sēcrētō properāvit et sub altā arbore stetit. Tum comitēs rēgis, magnopere territī, spectāculum mīrum spectābant. Ubi Pīcus ad hanc arborem appropinquāvit, maga invidiōsa formam ejus mūtāvit.

Non jam caput Pīcī coronā sed cristā (*crest*) adornātur; manūs (*hands*) ejus in ālās mūtantur; pedēs ejus in pedēs avis; oculī ejus in parvos oculos avis. Non jam vocem hominis habet; os (*mouth*) ejus in rostrum mūtātur. Multī colorēs in corpore et in ālīs videntur. Pīcus rēx jam est Pīcus avis.

Hōra cēnae vēnit; cīvēs et uxōrēs eōrum aderant; rēgīna aderat; sed Rēx Pīcus aberat. Subitō per apertam portam rēgiae avis pulchra, multīs colōribus adōrnāta, volāvit. Circum magnam rēgiam errāvit; tum ē fenestrā celeriter volāvit.

Jam Pīcus avis ın arboribus et in rīpīs flūminis, aut in silvīs aut in hortīs habitat. Semper clāmat, "Ōlim rēx fuī et corōnam habuī; nunc avis sum et rōstrō meō cibum in arbore inveniō (find)."

arbor, -oris, F., tree cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M. and F., citizen comes, comitis, M. and F., companion corōna, -ae, F, crown invidiōsus, -a, -um, jealous maga, -ae, F., witch mīrus, -a, -um, strange, remarkable oculus, -ī, M., eye potestās, -tātis, F., power rōstrum, -ī, N., beak uxor, -ōris, F., wife

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

There are certain forms of a verb which show important facts regarding its conjugation. These four forms of each Latin verb are commonly listed in a vocabulary. They are called *principal parts*.

Present Active (first person singular): portō
Present Infinitive: portāre
Perfect Active (first person singular): portāvī
Perfect Passive Participle: portātum

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST-CONJUGATION VERBS

Most verbs of the first conjugation form their principal parts like portō. Among the verbs given thus far, there are three that do not.

dō, dare, dedī, datum juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum stō, stāre, stetī

The verb stō has no perfect passive participle; dō is different in having the a short in the infinitive and in the perfect participle. You will remember that dō also has short a in all forms of the present tense except the second person singular, dās, and in all forms of the imperfect and future.

STEMS OF THE VERB

A Latin verb regularly has three stems: present, perfect, and participial.

PRESENT STEM

The present stem is found by dropping the -re of the infinitive.

Infinitive: portare

Present Stem: portā-

The present stem is used to form the tenses of the present system: present, imperfect, and future, both active and passive.

PERFECT STEM

The perfect stem is found by dropping -ī from the first person singular of the perfect active.

Perfect Active: portāvī

Perfect Stem: portāv-

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice. You have already learned one tense which is formed on the perfect stem: the perfect active. You will learn the others later.

PARTICIPIAL STEM

The participial stem is found by dropping -um from the perfect participle.

Perfect Participle: portātum Participial Stem: portāt-

Only a few forms aside from the perfect participle are made on the participial stem. You will learn these later.

LATIN NOUNS AND ENGLISH NOUNS

Many Latin nouns of the third declension give us English nouns which have the same spelling and similar meanings: animal, animal; labor, labor.

What is the Latin word for each of the following nouns?

color error honor omen victor

Some English nouns come from Latin nouns ending in -io. Such nouns end in -n because they are made from the stem of the Latin noun, which ends in -n: educatio, education; opinio, opinion.

What, then, is the Latin word for each of the following nouns?

accommodation description expectation inflation

Some English nouns ending in -y come from Latin nouns ending in -tas: calamitas, calamity; infirmitas, infirmity.

What is the Latin word for each of the following nouns?

antiquity dignity liberty security

Some third-declension nouns ending in -o have corresponding English words ending in -e: altitudo, altitude.

What is the Latin for each of the following words?

longitude magnitude multitude

With what familiar Latin adjective is each of these connected?

Many Latin nouns ending in -or have come unchanged into English: dictator, spectator. In such cases the -or is a Latin suffix and has the same meaning as in English—one who.

There is an English word spelled exactly like each of the following words. What does each of these Latin words mean?

curatorgladiatormonitororatoreducatormoderatornarratorvictor

Give the English noun which comes from each Latin noun.

clamor dictator humanitas regio suspicio collectio difficultas recitatio religio terror

REVIEW OF UNIT V

I. Choose the correct verb form to complete each sentence.

1. Sagittārius in hōc proeliō ($will\ be\ wounded$).

vulnerābitur vulnerābātur vulnerābat vulnerātur

2. Vir ā servō (will be feared).

timēbat timēbitur timēbit timēbuntur

3. Ōlim illa puella trāns Tiberim ($was\ swimming$).

natābit natābunt natābat natat

4. Novem oppida (will be destroyed).

cūrābitur dēlēbat movēbitur dēlēbuntur

5. Magna castra Rōmāna māne ($will\ be\ moved$).

movēbitur oppugnābuntur manēbunt movēbuntur

6. Captīvī natāre ad rīpam (will try).

temptābuntur temptābit temptābunt temptābant

7. Rōmānī dare decem puerōs et decem puellās (were ordered).

jubēbantur jubēbuntur jubēbant jubēbunt

II. Read the following paragraphs and answer the Latin questions below.

Sextus est avunculus Jūliae; Fulvia est amita Jūliae; Cornēlia est comes Jūliae. Jūlia in casā Sextī et Fulviae habitat.

Sextus multōs amīcōs habet; Sextus saepe eōs amīcōs in viīs videt. Mārcus est amīcus Sextī, et Sextus saepe Mārcum ad casam invītat. Sed hodiē Mārcum nōn videt.

Jūlia saepe Cornēliam ad casam amitae invītat. Interdum amita Jūliae dōna Cornēliae dat. Interdum Sextus dōnum Mārcō dat. Mārcus saepe cum Jūliā et Cornēliā ambulat. Interdum Fulvia cum Sextō et Mārcō ambulat.

- 1. Cujus amīcus est Mārcus?
- 2. In quōrum casā Jūlia habitat?
- 3. Ā quō Mārcus saepe invītātur?
- 4. Quid Sextus Mārcō dat?
- 5. Quae amita Jūliae Cornēliae dat?

- 6. Quōs Sextus saepe in viīs videt?
- 7. Quem hodiē non videt?
- 8. Quis Cornēliam ad casam Fulviae invītat?
- 9. Cui Sextus dōnum interdum dat?
- 10. Cui Fulvia dona dat?

The Birth of a Nation

In his long epic poem, the Aeneid, Vergil tells how Aeneas, after escaping from Troy, wandered for years around the Mediterranean, searching for the location of the kingdom that, according to prophets, he was to rule. The part of the story here retold deals with events leading up to the fulfillment of the prophecy—his winning of the Latin princess Lavinia and the union of the Latin and Trojan peoples.

BAD OMENS

Lavinia Turnum, rēgem Rutulorum, amābat, sed mala omina eorum mātrimonium prohibuērunt.

In mediō hortō rēgiae ubi Lāvīnia cum patre, rēge Latīnō, habitābat, arbor sacra erat. Ōlim multae apēs ā marī trāns Tiberim volāvērunt et ad urbem appropinquāvērunt. Prīmō circum mūrōs urbis volāvērunt; dēnique in hortum volāvērunt et in arbore sacrā sēdērunt.

Comitēs rēgis et populus erant territī. Servī apēs terrēre temptāvērunt, sed apēs in arbore mānsērunt. Mīlitēs tubās īnflāre jussī sunt, sed apēs mānsērunt. Ducēs ad rēgiam vocātī sunt et rēx Latīnus ē somnō excitātus est. Tum rēx territus deōs ōrāvit.

Võx magna respondit, "Apēs sunt ōmen. Jam advena appropinquat. Apēs trāns mare ad urbem tuam volāvērunt et in summā arbore sēdērunt; advena in summā arce mox sedēbit."

Postrīdiē Latīnus ōmen iterum vīdit. Lāvīnia prō ārā stābat ubi Latīnus ignem sacrum incendēbat (was kindling). Subitō flammae comam longam Lāvīniae occupāvērunt. Puella territa per rēgiam fūgit. Sed flammae subitō cessāvērunt (ceased) et Lāvīnia servāta est.

Rēx, hīs ōminibus magnopere territus, in silvam ad ōrāculum sacrum properāvit. Hīc mediā nocte Latīnus magnās vōcēs audīvit.

Hae võcēs eī dīcere vidēbantur, "Nõn Turnus, sed advena Lāvīniam in mātrimonium dūcet (fut.). Advenae erunt fīliī tuī, Ō Latīne; advenae nomen tuum habēbunt. Advenae, Trojānī nunc appellātī, mox Latīnī appellābuntur. Hī advenae nomen Latīnum ad stellās portābunt; gēns tua erit clāra."

advena, -ae, M., stranger, foreigner apis, apis, -ium, F., bee arx, arcis, -ium, F., citadel coma, -ae, F., hair dicere, to say gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation ignis, ignis, -ium, M., fire

Inflö, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blow into, blow; play on nömen, nöminis, N., name prohibeö, -ēre, -uī, -itum, prohibit, prevent somnus, -ī, M., sleep tuba, -ae, F., trumpet

20

PERFECT PASSIVE OF porto and moneo

The perfect passive, unlike the other tenses which you have met, is not formed by adding person endings to a stem. Instead, the perfect passive participle is used with the present tense of sum. Two separate words are used to represent each person and number.

The verbs portō and moneō are conjugated as follows in the perfect passive:

SINGULAR

portā'tus sum, I was carried, I have been carried portā'tus es, you were carried, you have been carried portā'tus est, he, she, it was carried; he, she, it has been carried mo'nitus sum, I was warned,
I have been warned
mo'nitus es, you were warned,
you have been warned
mo'nitus est, he, she, it was
warned; he, she, it has been
warned

PLURAL

portā'tī sumus, we were carried, we have been carried portā'tī estis, you were carried, you have been carried portā'tī sunt, they were carried, they have been carried

mo'nitī sumus, we were warned, we have been warned mo'nitī estis, you were warned, you have been warned mo'nitī sunt, they were warned, they have been warned

The participle used in forming the perfect passive agrees with the subject in gender and number.

Puella laudāta est, The girl has been praised.

Puer laudātus est, The boy has been praised.

Puerī laudātī sunt, The boys have been praised.

PREDICATE NOUN WITH PASSIVE FORMS

As you have already learned, a noun or pronoun which is used after some form of the verb sum, and which means the same thing as the subject, is called a predicate noun. It is in the nominative case.

Like the forms of sum, the passive forms of appello and other words of naming and calling may have a predicate noun.

Virī Gallī appellābantur, The men were called Gauls. Puer Mārcus appellātur, The boy is called Marcus.

In the first sentence Galli refers to the same people as the subject viri. In the second sentence Mārcus refers to the same person as puer.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SECOND-CONJUGATION VERBS

The principal parts of seven second-conjugation verbs which have appeared in preceding lessons are given below, with their stems.

dēbeō	dēbēre dēbē-	dēbuī dēbu-	dēbitum dēbit-	lateō	latēre latē-	latuī latu-	_
habeō	habēre habē-	habuī habu-	habitum habit-	sileō	silēre silē-	siluī silu-	_
moneō	monēre monē-	monuī monu-	monitum monit-	timeõ	timēre timē-	timuī timu-	
terreō	terrëre terrë-	terruī terru-	territum territ–				

The last three verbs in the list above have no perfect passive participle.

DIFFERENT ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT STEM

All the second-conjugation verbs given above have the perfect ending in -uī. But this is not true of all verbs of this conjugation. Other ways of forming the perfect are seen in the following:

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussum, order, command
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, move
sedeō, sedēre, sedī, sessum, sit
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, see
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, destroy
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum, answer, reply

In the numbered list find a Latin word equivalent to each English phrase.

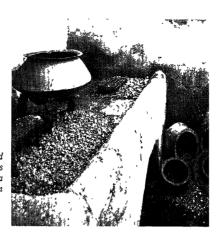
1. fuērunt	9. movent	(a) he advised	(h)	they were
2. fuistī	10. möverunt			having been
3. jussērunt	11. respondet	(c) he has remained	()	warned
4. jussī 5. jūvī	12. respondit 13. terruisti	(d) I helped	(i)	we saw
6. mānsit	14. timuistī	(e) she has answered	(k)	
7. moniti	15. vīdimus	(f) they have moved		•
8. monuit		(g) they ordered	(-)	y 0.11.10.11.00.1

FURNISHINGS OF THE HOUSE



A portable Roman stove

Stove and cooking pots from a Pomperan kitchen

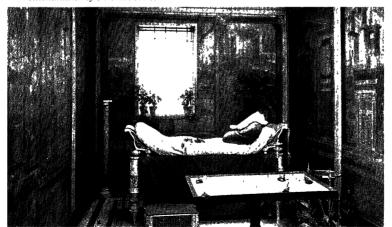


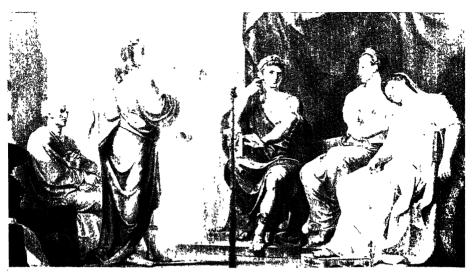




Lamp

Reconstruction of a Roman bedroom





Vergil reading his long poem, the Aeneid

AN AMBIGUOUS PROPHECY

Postquam Trōja ā Graecīs vāstāta est, Aenēās, dux Trōjānus, cum sociīs suīs ad Thrāciam nāvigāvit.

In lītore erat tumulus. Hic tumulus parvīs arboribus cēlātus est. Aenēās paucōs rāmōs ab arbore remōvit quod āram adōrnāre dēsīderāvit. Sed ubi sanguinem ın rāmīs vīdit magnopere territus erat.

Tum vox ē tumulo clāmāvit, "Ō Aenēās, mē miserum vulnerāvistī. Sum Polydorus Trojānus. Rēx hujus terrae mē necāvit et hīc sub hōc tumulo corpus meum cēlāvit. Fuge (flee) ab hīs lītoribus perīculosīs sine morā!"

Hīs verbīs mōtī, Aenēās et sociī ejus ā lītoribus Thrāciae fūgērunt. Īnsula Dēlos, ubi erat templum Apollinis, nōn longē aberat. Hīc Aenēās auxilium deī rogāvit.

Ita Aenēās ōrāvīt, "Ō Apollō, dā Trōjānīs domicilium idōneum; dā gentem validam et urbem mānsūram (lastīng); dā nōbīs ōmen bonum."

Vox dei respondit, "Exquirite (seek) antiquam matrem vestram. Ibi Aenēās erit rēx, et līberī ejus erunt rēgēs."

"Ubi est māter nostra antīqua?" rogāvērunt sociī Aenēae.

Tum sine morā Anchīsēs, pater Aenēae, dīxit, "In īnsulā Crētā initium gentis nostrae fuit. Illa īnsula est māter nostra antīqua."

Itaque Trōjānī laetī, ventīs portātī, ad īnsulam Crētam nāvigāvērunt, ubi parvam urbem aedificāvērunt. Sed posteā pestilentia multōs Trōjānōs necāvit.

Tum Aenēās ā deīs suīs ita monitus est, "Crēta non est antīqua māter vestra. Longē ab hāc īnsulā in terrā Ītaliā tūtum domicilium vos expectat."

domicilium, -ī, N., home idōneus, -a, -um, suitable lītus, lītoris, N., seashore, beach mora, -ae, F., delay nōbīs, dat. and abl. of nōs, us

sanguis, -inis, M., blood tumulus, -ī, M., mound, tomb ventus, -ī, M., wind vōs, you (nom. and acc. pl.)

ABLATIVE WITH cum

On page 28 you learned that cum, meaning with, is followed by the ablative.

Cum amīcō ambulō, I walk with my friend.

In the sentence above, amīcō denotes the person in company with whom the act is done. Hence it is called the ablative of accompaniment.

There is another common use of the ablative with cum, which denotes the way an act is done. This is called the *ablative of manner*.

Ibi magnā cum difficultāte parvum oppidum aedificāvit, With great difficulty he built a small town there.

KINDS OF ABLATIVES

You are already familiar with the ablative of agent and the ablative of means.

Ursa <u>ā mīlite</u> necāta est, *The bear was killed by the soldier*. Ursa <u>hastā</u> necāta est, *The bear was killed with a spear*.

The ablative of agent shows the person by whom the act is done, just as the ablative of means shows the means by which an act is done.

Remember these points about ablatives:

- 1. The ablative of accompaniment usually has cum.
- 2. The ablative of agent is used only with the passive voice and always has ā or ab.
- 3. The ablative of manner usually has cum.
- 4. The ablative of means never has a preposition.

THIS IS NOT THE PLACE

Tāvibus parātīs, Aenēās iterum trāns mare ab īnsulā Crētā nāvigāvit. Tamen ubi longē ā lītore āfuit, et caelum undique et undique mare vīdit, magna tempestās eum per undās perīculōsās in vada portāvit. Dēnique Aenēās cum sociīs suīs ad īnsulam vēnit.

Hīc Trōjānī dēfessī multa animālia in lītore vīdērunt. Pauca animālia necāvērunt et cēnam et sacrificia parāvērunt. Sed subitō dē caelō avēs ferae circum eōs volāvērunt. Haec mōnstra habēbant corpora avium, capita fēminārum; Harpyiae appellābantur. Hīs mōnstrīs vīsīs, Trōjānī territī fūgērunt. Posteā, verbīs ducis Aenēae excitātī, contrā Harpyiās pugnāre temptābant, sed haec erat difficultās—etiam gladiīs acūtīs terga dūra avium nōn vulnerāta sunt.

Subitō Harpyia fera magnā cum vōce clāmāvit, "Animālia nostra necāvistis; nōs necāre temptāvistis. In hāc terrā igitur pācem numquam habēbitis. In Ītaliā urbem dēsīderātam habēbitis."

Propter terrorem mortis Trojāni in hoc loco manēre non jam audēbant. Itaque, mente mūtātā, ab īnsulā celeriter nāvigāvērunt.

Deinde Aenēās prope ōram Graecam nāvigāvit, et dēnique cum Trōjānīs cēterīs ad terram vēnit ubi Helenus erat rēx. Helenus, fīlius rēgis Trōjānī, erat laetus ubi amīcōs vīdit, et eōs ad rēgiam dūxit.

20 Ibi eīs cibum et multa dōna dedit.

Tum, auxiliō deī prō Aenēā rogātō, Helenus dīxit, "Magna erunt perīcula et magnae erunt difficultātēs; per multa maria nāvigābitis, sed dēnique in Ītaliā domicilium tūtum et idōneum post itinera perīculōsa habēbitis."

audeō, -ēre, dare
etiam, adv., even, also
iter, itineris, N., road; journey,
 march; route, course
mēns, mentis, -ium, F., mind,
 purpose

mors, mortis, -ium, F., death nāvis, nāvis, -ium, F., ship, boat numquam, adv., never unda, -ae, F., wave vadum, -ī, N., shoal, ford

THE INDEPENDENT PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION

A phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun and a participle is sometimes used in a sentence without being closely connected with any other word in the sentence.

A new leader having been chosen, we may expect better results.

In this sentence the phrase *A new leader having been chosen* is not directly connected with any word in the rest of the sentence. Such a phrase is said to be independent of the rest of the sentence.

15

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

The case which is used in Latin for such independent constructions is the ablative. In the sentence on page 108 as an example the word for *leader* would be put in the ablative in Latin, and the participle for *having been chosen* would agree with it in case as well as in gender and number. This use of the ablative is called the *ablative absolute*—the word *absolute* here meaning virtually "independent."

Nāvibus parātīs, Aenēās ab īnsulā nāvigāvit, The ships having been prepared, Aeneas sailed from the island.

Auxiliō rogātō, Helenus dē perīculīs dīxit, Aid having been asked, Helenus spoke about the dangers.

Often an adjective or another noun is used instead of a participle as the second part of the ablative absolute.

Amīcō meō aegrō, nōn manēbō, My friend (being) sick, I shall not remain.

Sextō duce, mīlitēs semper fortiter pugnābant, Sextus (being) leader, the soldiers always fought bravely.

When we translate an ablative absolute of which the second part is an adjective or a noun, we often supply the participle *being*, as in the illustrative sentences above.

FREE TRANSLATION OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

In English, independent phrases corresponding to the literal translation of the ablative absolute are not often used. So it is frequently necessary to translate the ablative absolute in other ways.

Sometimes a perfect passive participle in an ablative absolute is best translated by an English perfect active participle.

Nomine mūtāto, vir fūgit, Having changed his name, the man fled.

Frequently the best translation of the ablative absolute is a dependent clause introduced by when, after, if, since, or although.

monte occupātō, when the mountain had been seized duce vocātō, after the leader had been called Turnō necātō, if Turnus is killed amīcō meō aegrō, since my friend is sick puerō caecō, although the boy was blind

Sometimes prepositional phrases are used in translating this ablative.

Sexto consule, in the consulship of Sextus

¹ The original force of the ablative in this construction may be seen if the preposition with is used in the translation of these phrases: with the leader called; with my sons (having been) praised.

AENEAS AND DIDO

Post multa et longa itinera, Aenēās iterum ad Ītaliam nāvigāre temptat. Sed Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum, magnam tempestātem mittit, et nāvēs Aenēae ad lītus Āfricae portantur. Classis Trōjāna inter vada et magna saxa paene vāstātur, sed dēnique Trōjānī tūtī in lītore stant.

Frūmentum portātum ē nāvibus nōn est bonum. Virī dēfessī alium cıbum habēre dēbent. Itaque in silvā propinquā Aenēās sagittīs cervōs septem necat, et sociī cēnam in ōrā parant.

Postrīdiē Aenēās et sociī ejus magnam et pulchram urbem, Car-10 thāginem, vident.

Dīdō, ōlim rēgīna Phoenīciae, post mortem conjugis suī trāns mare Mediterrāneum ad Āfricam cum multīs comitibus nāvigāvit et hanc novam urbem aedificāvit.

Calamitāte Trōjānōrum nūntiātā, Dīdō, nunc rēgīna Carthāginis, advenīs benigna est. Aenēās et Ascanius, fīlius ejus, cum multīs prīncipibus ad rēgiam dūcuntur. Cibus quoque et alia dōna ad cēterōs Trōjānōs mittuntur.

Noctū in rēgiā magna cēna parātur. Hīc Aenēās, verbīs rēgīnae mōtus, fābulam Trōjae nārrat. Dux Trōjānus hanc fābulam bene nārrat; Dīdō statim Aenēam maximē amat.

Quod Aenēam et Trōjānōs in Āfricā diū manēre dēsīderat, rēgīna Aenēae et sociīs ejus domicilia in rēgnō suō dat.

Dēnique Juppiter, hāc morā vīsā, Mercurium celeriter ad Aenēam mittit.

Mercurius dīcit, "Carthāgō nōn est urbs Trōjānīs ā deīs data. Ītalia tē trāns mare expectat. Ibi urbem clāram aedificābis; ibi Lāvīnia, fīlia rēgis, erit conjūnx tua. Relinque hanc urbem. In Ītaliā pete domicilium tuum."

Tum Aenēās, verbīs deī mōtus, sine morā urbem relinquit. Ē 30 rēgiā Dīdō misera nāvēs Trōjānās videt. Nunc mortem dēsīderat; sine Aenēā vīta nōn jam amoena est.

alius, -a, -ud, another, other
classis, classis, -ium, F., fleet;
 division, class
conjūnx, -jugis, M., husband;
 F., wife

petō, -ere, seek
relinquō, -linquere, leave, leave
 behind
septem, not declined, seven

THIRD CONJUGATION

Verbs of the third conjugation have the ending -ere in the present infinitive. This ending must be distinguished from that of the second conjugation, which is -ere.

There are two classes of verbs of the third conjugation, one class with the ending -ō and the other class with the ending -iō in the first person singular of the present active.

PRESENT TENSE OF -O VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

Verbs of the first class are conjugated as follows in the present tense:

SINGULAR

ACTIVE

dū'cō, I lead, am leading dū'cis, you lead, etc. dū'cit, he, she, it leads, etc.

dū'cor, I am being led, am led dū'ceris, you are being led, are led dū'citur, he, she, it is being led, etc.

PASSIVE

PLURAL

dū'cimus, we lead, etc. dū'citis, vou lead. etc. dū'cunt, they lead, etc. $d\bar{u}'$ cimur, we are being led. etc. dūci'minī, you are being led, etc. dūcun'tur, they are being led, etc.

In the second person singular of the passive, the vowel before the person ending is -e- (not -i- as in the active). In the third person plural of both voices it is -u-.

You have already met forms of six verbs which are conjugated like dūcō, dūcere:

> dēfendō, dēfendere dīcō, dīcere

mittō, mittere petō, petere

relinquō, relinquere scrībō, scrībere

IMPERATIVE OF $-\bar{\theta}$ VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

As in the first and second conjugations, the singular imperative of most third-conjugation verbs is like the present stem of the verb.

> dēfende mitte relinque scrībe pete

Exceptions are the short forms dic and duc.

In the plural imperative, all third-conjugation verbs have the same ending.

defendite dicite ducite mittite petite relinquite scribite



Dona ad regem mittuntur

THE PROMISED BRIDE

Post multās difficultātēs et calamitātēs classis Trōjāna ad Ītaliam et urbem Latīnī rēgis venīt. Multa et pretiōsa dōna ad rēgem ab Aenēā, prīncīpe Trōjānō, mittuntur, et pāx et salūs ā Trōjānīs petuntur.

Tum rēx Latīnus comitibus suīs dīcit, "Ille dux Trōjānus est advena ā nōbīs expectātus. Aenēās erit conjūnx fīliae meae. Haec ōmine apium mōnstrantur."

Itaque Aenēās ad rēgiam dūcitur, et Lāvīnia, fīlia rēgis, eī conjūnx prōmittitur. Sed Lāvīnia ā Turnō, rēge Rutulōrum, amātur, et Amāta, uxor Latīnī, Turnum esse conjugem fīliae suae cupit. Itaque Amāta mātrimōnium Aenēae et Lāvīniae prohibēre in animō habet; auxilium Jūnōnis, rēgīnae deōrum, ōrat.

Statim Allēctō, rēgīna Furiārum, ā deā īrātā ad rēgiam mittitur. Allēctō Amātam verbīs īnsānīs excitat.

Rēgīna Amāta igitur Latīnum petit et cum lacrimīs dīcit, "Lāvīnia ab Aenēā petitur. Ōminibus territus, dabisne fīliam nostram huic advenae Trōjānō?"

Alia verba quoque ā rēgīnā īrātā dīcuntur; sed Latīnus, ā deīs monitus, mentem suam non mutat. Itaque Amata secreto filiam suam capit et noctū in montēs altōs fugit. Ibi Lāvīniam cēlat.

Interim Allēctō mala ad urbem Rutulōrum volat et haec verba Turnō dīcit. "Rēgnum tuum et conjūnx tua ab hoc advenā Trojāno capjuntur. Convocā comitēs tuōs fīdōs; oppugnā castra hostium; dūc mīlitēs validos contra hostes; pugna pro virgine; confirma animum. Di te juvābunt; Fortūna tibi victōriam dabit."

Sine morā Turnus populum convocat et clāmat, "Uxōrem meam, Lāvīniam, postulō! Trōjānī sunt perfidī! Ā deīs dūcimur; victōria nōbīs dabitur!"

animus, -ī, M., mind; in animō habēre, to intend capiō, -ere, take, seize cupiō, -ere, wish, want hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy (a public enemy); pl., the enemy

interim, adv., meanwhile lacrima, -ae, F., tear promitto, -mittere, promise virgo, -inis, F., maiden, girl

PRESENT TENSE OF THIRD-CONJUGATION -iō VERBS

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

ca'piō, I take ca'pis, you take

ca'pior, I am being taken; am taken ca'peris, you are being taken; are taken ca'pit, he, she, it takes ca'pitur, he, she, it is being taken; is taken

PLURAL

ca'pimus, we take ca'pitis, you take ca'piunt, they take ca'pimur, we are being taken; are taken capi'minī, you are being taken; are taken capiun'tur, they are being taken; are taken

Notice that the -i- of the first person singular ending appears also in the third person plural ending, both active and passive. This is the only difference between -ō and -iō verbs of the third conjugation in the present tense.

You have also met forms of fugio, fugere, a verb conjugated like capiō, capere.

IMPERATIVES OF -io VERBS

The imperatives of these verbs are:

SINGULAR cape fuge PLURAL capite fugite

A BROKEN TREATY

Rutulīs superātīs, rēx Latinus ā Trojānīs pācem petere dēsīderāvit.

Sed Turnus ācriter respondit, "Mortem non timeo. Vītam sine gloriā non cupio. Gladio meo Aenēam vincere temptābo."

Itaque Rutulī et Trōjānī castra sua relīquērunt et sub moenia urbis prōcessērunt ubi locum certāminis parāvērunt.

Tum in medium campum Latīnus et Turnus cum magnō agmine prīncipum suōrum prōcessērunt. Ad eōs Aenēās et Ascanius cum paucīs comitibus appropinquāvērunt. Populus silentium tenēbat.

Prīmō Aenēās ita dīxit, "Foedus aeternum petimus; hoc foedus bellum prohibēbit. Rēx Latīnus arcem suam, urbem suam, rēgnum suum habēbit. Turnō victōre, Trōjānī numquam hoc rēgnum oppugnābunt. Sed, sī erō victor, Latīnī sub potestāte Trōjānōrum numquam erunt. Trōjānī urbem suam aedificābunt, et Lāvīnia huic urbī novae nōmen suum dabit."

Deinde Latīnus ita dīxit, "Haec probō. Hoc foedus sacrum semper erit. Pāx aeterna inter nōs erit."

Hōc foedere probātō ab Aenēā Latīnōque furor mentēs Rutulōrum occupāvit. Eīs hoc foedus nōn erat grātum; bellum, nōn pācem, dēlēgērunt.

Turnus sõlus ad āram silentiō prōcessit. Subitō silentium frāctum est. Soror Turnī, Jūturna, clāmāvit, "Ubi est honor? Ubi est fāma? Capīte arma, Rutulī! Pugnāte prō patriā nostrā! Turnus sõlus pugnāre nōn dēbet. Nōs eum juvāre dēbēmus."

Verbīs sorōris audītīs, animus Turnī quoque furōre occupātus est. Etiam mēns ejus jam mūtāta est. Itaque Rutulī foedus frēgērunt. Arma petīta sunt; hastae jactae sunt. Foedere frāctō, mīlitēs cum mīlitibus iterum pugnābant.

agmen, agminis, N., column, line, line of march audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear, listen to, listen certāmen, certāminis, N., contest dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose foedus, foederis, N., agreement, treaty frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break furor, -ōris, M., madness, frenzy

jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, throw, hurl moenia, -ium, N. pl., walls (of a city), fortifications
-que, conj. (attached to a word), and soror, -ōris, F., sister
teneō, -ēre, -uī, hold, hold to; keep, keep back
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, defeat, conquer, overcome

10

20

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Verbs of the *fourth conjugation* have the present infinitive ending in -ire: audiō, *I hear*, audire, *to hear*. The present of audiō is conjugated on page 329.

As you will observe, the characteristic vowel, \bar{i} , is long, except in the first person singular, active and passive, the third person singular, active, and the third person plural, active and passive.

The present tense, active, of the fourth conjugation is like that of the -iō verbs of the third conjugation, except for the long ī. The passive differs also in the second person singular.

You have already met forms of veniō, -īre, which is conjugated like audiō, -īre.

IMPERATIVE OF FOURTH-CONJUGATION VERBS

As in other conjugations, the singular imperative of fourth-conjugation verbs is like the present stem of the verb: audī, venī.

In the plural imperative, -te is added to the present stem: audite, venite.

PERFECT ACTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

As shown on pages 35-36, the forms of the perfect active are made up of the perfect stem, with special endings which are used in no other tense. The formation of this tense is the same for all verbs of the Latin language, in all conjugations, and for irregular as well as regular verbs.

There is, therefore, nothing new to learn for the perfect active of the third and fourth conjugations. We simply add the perfect endings to the perfect stem as shown in the principal parts.

SINGULAR

dū'xī, I led, I have led dūxis'tī, you led, etc. dū'xit, he, she, it led, etc. audī'vī, I heard, I have heard audīvis'tī, you heard, etc. audī'vit, he, she, it heard, etc.

PLURAL

dū'ximus, we led, etc. dūxis'tis, you led, etc. dūxē'runt, they led, etc. audī'vimus, we heard, etc.
audīvis'tis, you heard, etc.
audīvē'runt, they heard, etc.

PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

The perfect passive, like the perfect active, is the same in its method of formation for all Latin verbs. As you learned on page 103, it consists of the perfect passive participle with the present forms of sum. Remember that the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number.

The perfect passive of third- and fourth-conjugation verbs, therefore, is formed like that of first- and second-conjugation verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THIRD-CONJUGATION VERBS

The principal parts of dūcō and other third-conjugation verbs which have appeared in preceding lessons are as follows:

dēfendō	-fendere	-fendī	-fēnsum	prōmittō	-mittere	-mīsī	-missum
dēligō	-ligere	-lēgī	-lēctum	scrībō	scrībere	scrīpsī	scrīptum
dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictum	v incō	vincere	vīcī	victum
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductum	capiō	capere	cēpī	captum
\mathbf{m} ittō	mittere	mīsī	missum	cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupitum
petō	petere	petīvī	petītum	fugiō	fugere	fūgī	

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FOURTH-CONJUGATION VERBS

The principal parts of fourth-conjugation verbs which have appeared in preceding lessons are as follows:

audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum
veniō	venîr e	vēnī	ventum

Find in the list of Latin phrases below, one that translates each English clause.

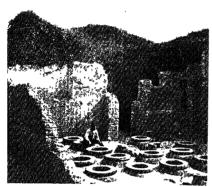
- 1. after the city was taken
- 2. after the monster had been killed
- 3. on seeing the enemy

- 4. when many had been wounded
- 5. when the house was built
- 6. because his wife had been killed

certāmine temptātō classe dēlētā conjuge necātā hostibus vīsīs lītore occupātō monstrō necātō morte nuntiātā multīs vulnerātīs tēctō aedificātō urbe occupātā



Bakers at work The mill is turned by a donkey



ROMAN FOOD

Storage vault for olive oil



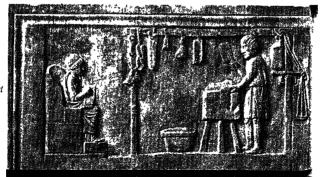
Loaf of bread



Wine container



Fish plate



Roman meat market



An ancient coin commemorating a treaty

THE WRATH OF AENEAS

Poedere frāctō, Aenēās īrā excitātus Trōjānōs magnā vōce vocāvit. "Cūr bellum iterum geritis?" clāmāvit. "Foedus factum est! Huic foederī fīdus erō. Sōlus cum Turnō pugnāre dēbeō."

Tamen neque Trōjānī neque Rutulī ā proeliō recēdēbant; eum nōn audiēbant. Etiam Turnus in certāmine hastam contrā Trōjānōs vehementer jēcit. Sed ab Aenēā inter agmina Rutulōrum petēbātur, quod dux Trōjānus cum illō sōlō pugnāre cupiēbat.

Undique magnus numerus sociōrum Aenēae, necātus ā Turnō perfidō, in terrā jacēbat. Jam Aenēās, sociīs mortuīs vīsīs, īrā agitābātur; prope urbem Latīnī veniēbat. Urbe vīsā, subitō mēns ejus mūtāta est.

"Oppugnāte moenia!" mīlitēs suōs Aenēās jussit. "Dēbetne haec urbs, causa bellī, manēre, dum nostrī in proeliō injūstō interficiuntur?"

Mox Trōjānī moenia ascendēbant et portās oppugnābant. Nōn sōlum hastae sed etiam taedae in urbem jaciēbantur. Magnus erat terror cīvium; urbs et domicilia eōrum dēlēbantur.

"Ubi est Turnus?" clāmāvit rēgīna Amāta, maximē furōre agitāta. "Urbs nostra vincitur. Turnus sōlus nōs servābit; sine eō superābimur. Sum causa calamitātis; nōn jam vīvere dēbeō."

Statim Amāta sē interfēcit. Propter mortem rēgīnae cīvēs multīs cum lacrimīs dolēbant. Clāmōre audītō, Turnus ad urbem fūmō flammīsque cēlātam properāvit. Undique mīlitēs ab aliīs mīlitibus interficiēbantur.

"O Rutulī et Latīnī!" Turnus clāmāvit, "solus Aenēam in certāmine peto."

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, drive on; agitate; pursue faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make; do gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, wear, carry; carry on, wage injūstus, -a, -um, unfair, unjust interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill, slay

20

IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

The tense sign of the imperfect in the third and fourth conjugations is -bā-, just as in the first and second conjugations. The imperfect tense of dūcō is formed in exactly the same way as the imperfect tense of moneō, with -ē- before -bā-. Verbs of the fourth conjugation have -iē- before the tense sign.

ACTIVE SINGULAR

dūcē'bam, I was leading, I led audiē'bam, I was hearing, I heard dūcē'bās, you were leading, you led heard dūcē'bat, he, she, it was leading; he, she, it led audiē'bat, he, she, it was hearing, etc.

PLURAL

dūcēbā'mus, we were leading, we heard heard dūcēbā'tis, you were leading, you led dūcē'bant, they were leading, they led audiēbā'mus, we were hearing, we hearing, etc. audiē'bant, they were hearing, etc.

PASSIVE SINGULAR

dūcē'bar, I was being led, I was led

dūcēbā'ris, you were being led, you were led

dūcēbā'tur, he, she, it was being led; heard

heard

audiē'bar, I was being heard, I was heard

audiēbā'ris, you were being heard, you were heard

audiēbā'tur, he, she, it was being heard, etc.

PLURAL

dūcēbā'mur, we were being led, we audiēbā'mur, we were being heard, we were led dūcēbā'minī, you were being led, you were led etc.

dūcēban'tur, they were being led, they were led etc.

The imperfect of -iō verbs of the third conjugation is just like the imperfect of the fourth conjugation.



Juppiter et Juno e caelo spectabant

THE GODS DESERT TURNUS

Võce Turnī audītā, Aenēās urbem relīquit et ācriter ad certāmen prōcessit. Hoc certāmen, autem, Juppiter et Jūnō ē caelō spectābant.

Procul Aenēās hastam suam contrā hostem jēcit, sed hasta suprā caput Turnī volāvit et in arbore stetīt. Tum gladiīs Aenēās et Turnus vehementer pugnābant. Subitō gladius Turnī scūtō Aenēae frāctus est. Gladiō āmissō, dux Rutulus, captus terrore, celeriter fūgīt. Interim soror ejus, Jūturna, alium gladium invēnit eumque frātrī suō dedit.

Hōc vīsō, Juppiter dīxıt, "Quī erit fīnis hujus certāminis, Ō conjūnx mea? Nōnne Aenēās Turnum vincet? Quid in anımō facere habēs? Noctū et interdiū, aestāte et hieme, Trōjānōs per terrās et maria agitāvistī. Propter tē, nōn sōlum foedus frāctum est, sed etiam bellum malum iterum inceptum est. Auxiliō tuō, Jūturna gladium invēnit et frātrī suō eum dedit. Jam ad fīnem hoc certāmen veniet. Prohibeō tē haec iterum facere."

Jūnō respondīt, "Propter tē, magne Juppiter, Turnum et terram relīquī. Facta Jūturnae probāvī; meō auxiliō illa gladium invēnit. Tamen, potestātem meam āmittam. Nōn jam Turnus vōcem sorōris suae audiet; nūllum auxilium inveniet. Fātīs repulsa, nōn jam fīnem gentis Trōjānae postulō. Mors Turnī fīnem certāminis faciet. Aenēās vītam suam nōn āmittet; is vīvet; sed Turnus interficiētur."

Tum Juppiter haec prōmīsit, "Quamquam Aenēās erit rēx eōrum, Latīnī nōmen suum linguamque suam tenēbunt. Ūnam (one) gentem Trōjānī Latīnīque facient; ūnam linguam habēbunt; et ex eōrum līberīs populus clārus veniet."

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, lose, let go

autem, conj., but, however (never stands first in a clause)

fīnis, fīnis, -ium, M., end, boundary, limit

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, find, discover suprā, prep. with acc., above, over

FUTURE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

We have seen that in the first and second conjugations the tense sign of the future is -bi-. In the third and fourth conjugations the future tense sign is -ē-, which is replaced by -a- in the first person singular. The -ē- becomes short before the person endings -t, -nt, and -ntur.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

dū'cam, I shall leaddū'cēs, you will leaddū'cet, he, she, it will lead

dū'car, I shall be led dūcē'ris, you will be led dūcē'tur, he, she, it will be led

PASSIVE

PLURAL

dūcē'mus, we shall lead dūcē'tis, you will lead dū'cent, they will lead dūcē'mur, we shall be led dūcē'minī, you will be led dūcen'tur, they will be led

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

au'diam, I shall hear au'diēs, you will hear au'diet, he, she, it will hear au'diar, I shall be heard audië'ris, you will be heard audië'tur, he, she, it will be heard

PLURAL

audiē'mus, we shall hear audiē'tis, you will hear au'dient, they will hear audië'mur, we shall be heard audië'minī, you will be heard audien'tur, they will be heard

The future of -iō verbs of the third conjugation is just like the future of the fourth conjugation.



Aeneas Turnum gladio interfecit

THE END OF THE CONFLICT

Avis fera, missa ad terram ā deīs, Turnum inter agmina Rutulōrum petēbat. Ante oculōs et circum umerōs ducis Rutulī volābat scūtumque ejus ālīs suīs oppugnābat. Turnus potentiam (power) deōrum et ōmen mortis recognōvit.

Jūturna hanc avem procul vidit et clāmāvit, "Certē haec avis missa est quod dī Turnum interficī et Rutulōs superārī cupiunt. Frātre meō interfectō Rutulīsque victīs, nōn jam vīvere dēsīderō."

Hīs verbīs dictīs, Jūturna sē in undās Tiberis jēcit.

Interim Aenēās Turnum agitāre iterum incēpit.

"Cūr recēdis, Turne?" dīxit. "Cūr mortem tuam fugere temptās?" Turnus respondit, "Verba tua mē nōn terrent. Dī et odium deōrum mē terrent. Juppiter est hostis meus."

Tum Aenēās magnam hastam jēcīt, et Turnus, gravīter vulnerātus, ad terram cecidit (fell).

Rutulus victus dīxit, "Vītam meam āmittere prō patriā meā jam diū parātus sum. Satis pugnāvī; nunc mē vīcistī. Lāvīnia erit conjūnx

tua. Vītam non oro, sed certē pro patre misero meis amicīs corpus meum dabis."

Prīmō Aenēās Turnum interficere in animō nōn habēbat. Tum in umerō hostis vulnerātī īnsigne nōtum vīdit. Ōlim amīcus Aenēae illud īnsigne gerēbat; jam ille erat mortuus—necātus ā Turnō. Celeriter Aenēās īrātus Turnum gladiō interfēcit. Ita mors Turnī fīnem certāminis fēcit.

certē, adv., surely, certainly
graviter, adv., severely, heavily;
 greatly, deeply
īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium, N., decoration, badge

odium, -ī, N., hatred
recognōscō, -cognōscere, -cognōvī,
-cognitum, recognize
umerus, -ī, M., shoulder

PRESENT INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

You have seen the present active infinitives of the four conjugations:

I II III . IV

portare, to monere, to ducere, to lead audire, to hear carry warn capere, to take

Each verb has also a present passive infinitive, for instance, **portārī**, to be carried. The passive infinitives of the four conjugations of regular verbs are like the following:

I II III IV

portārī, to be monērī, to be dūcī, to be led audīrī, to be carried warned capī, to be taken heard

Notice that in the first, second, and fourth conjugations the final -e of the active endings (-āre, -ēre, -īre) is replaced by -ī in the passive; in the third conjugation the entire ending (-ere) is replaced by -ī.

Find in the list at the right the Latin verb form corresponding to each English phrase.

1. to begin	6. to find	(a) dūcere	(f) invenīre
2. to be led	7. to make	(b) dūcī	(g) scrībere
3. to be broken	8. to lead	(c) facere	(h) timēre
4. to seem	9. to see	(d) frangi	(i) vidēre
5. to fear	10. to write	(e) incipere	(j) vidērī

WORD FAMILIES

It is easy to see that the English words below are related.

love

Lover

lovable

unlovely

The following Latin words all come from the same root.

amo

amor

amabilis

amicus

inimicus

A group of words having a common root is often called a word family. Individual words in such a group may be different parts of speech, though all are related in form and meaning.

civis, citizen (noun)

 ${\it civilis, civil}$ (adj.), pertaining to citizens

civitas, citizenship (noun), state of being a citizen

vigilo, watch (verb)

vigil, sentinel (noun), one who watches

vigilia, watch (noun), act of watching

Discuss the meaning of each Latin word below, explaining its relationship to rex.

rex, regis, king

regina, queen

rego, guide; rule

regia, palace

regius, royal

regio, region

regno, reign

regnum, royal authority; kingdom

Latin word families sometimes contain words made from other words by the addition of prefixes. In the group of verbs below, the relationship is evident, though the prefixes have altered the meanings.

fugio, flee

defugio, flee from

profugio, flee before

Give the meaning of each word in the following word family, pointing out its connection with duco.

duco dux deductio

deduco educo induco perduco

Give some common English derivatives from the Latin words above.

	 Complete 	each	sentence	with	the	required	form	of
audiō and	l translate the se	ntenc	e .					

- 1. Dīcō et ā multīs hominibus (I am heard).
- 2. Vesperī in hortō avem (I hear).
- 3. Nonne sonum militum (you [pl.] hear)?
- 4. Apēs rēgis vidēmus et (we hear).
- 5. Multī mīlitēs ā virīs (are heard).
- 6. Apēsne in hortō (do you [sing.] hear)?
- 7. Clāmor mīlitum graviter vulnerātōrum (is heard).
- 8. Sēcrētō ad flūmen properāmus, sed ab hostibus (we are heard).
- II. Choose the word that completes each sentence correctly and justify your choice.
- 1. Magna fuit $\left\{ egin{array}{ll} \mbox{animus.} & \mbox{4. Animus} \\ \mbox{calamit\bar{a}s.} & \mbox{Fur\bar{o}ris} \\ \mbox{domicilium.} & \mbox{Vadum} \end{array} \right\}$ Aenēae erat magnus.
- 2. Classem Undae Ventum
 Ventum
 Vidimus.
 5. Mors { conjugem monstri tumulus } erat idonea.
- $3. \ \ Tr\bar{o}j\bar{a}n\bar{i} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} cert\bar{a}mina \\ difficult\bar{a}tis \\ sanguine \end{array} \right\} habu\bar{e}runt.$

III. Make three complete sentences of each of the following by translating the phrases.

- 1. Mīlitēs frūmentum __ invenient.

 in the city of the inhabitants in the fields
- 2. Mīles __ fūgit.

 overcome by the enemy severely wounded frightened by trumpets
- 3. Sed cōpiae Rōmānae in campō __. will fight will hear their leader will conquer the enemy
- 4. Foedus ā Rōmānīs et Latīnīs will be approved will be broken will be sought
- 5. Puer saxum __ jēcit.

 into the water over the house above his friend's head
- 6. Turnus ___.

 will be killed will break the spear will not be king



Proserpina a Plutone capta est

VII Famous Myths

Myths are stories of such universal appeal that people will not let them die. Greek myths not only reflect the legendary past of the race, but also symbolize many basic human experiences

AN UNHAPPY BRIDE

Tulla puella uxor Plūtonis esse dēsīderābat quod ille erat rēx mortuorum et in Orco habitābat.

Ölim, autem, ubi Plūtō in terrā equōs suōs agēbat, Prōserpinam, fīliam Cereris, vīdit. Statım puellam pulchram amāvit et in mātrimōnium dūcere cupiēbat. Rēx potēns igitur puellam vī (by force) capere cōnstituit.

Celeriter Prōserpina īnfēlīx capta est et ā Plūtōne sub terram in Orcum, rēgnum mortuōrum, portāta est. In terrā puella misera vēstīgia nūlla relīquit.

Jam Plūtō uxōrem habēbat. Jam Prōserpina erat rēgīna mortuōrum, sed illa erat rēgīna īnfēlīx. Semper magnopere dolēbat quod mātrem vidēre cupiēbat. Lūcem, autem, amābat, et in Orcō erat, ubi neque sōl neque lūna erat.

Diū māter īnfēlix Prōserpinam fīliam in terrā invenīre temptābat. Mox nūllum frūmentum in agrīs erat et nūlla folia in arboribus erant, quod Cerēs, dea agrīcultūrae, per multās terrās errābat neque agrīcultūram cūrābat.

Dēnique Cerēs dē Plūtone et de uxore înfelici audīvit. Dea īrāta

10

ad Jovem, rēgem potentem deōrum, properāvit et auxilium ab eō postulāvit.

Juppiter respondit, "Fīliam tuam tibi dare cupiō, sed Prōserpina in Orcō manēre dēbet quod cibum gustāvit (*has tasted*). Illa est lēx deōrum."

Mōtus Cereris lacrimīs, autem, Juppiter benignus cōnsilium bonum cōnstituit.

"Annum dīvidam," dīxit. "Per sex mēnsēs Prōserpina in terrā cum mātre suā habitābit; tum in Orcō cum conjuge suō per sex mēnsēs manēbit."

Itaque aestāte, dum Prōserpina est in terrā, Cerēs est fēlīx et hominibus frūmentum dat. Hieme, autem, dum Prōserpina est in Orcō, Cerēs est īnfēlīx et hominibus nihil dat.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, do; drīve cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, decide, decide upon, set up fēlīx, gen., fēlīcis, happy, fortunate, lucky folium, -ī, N., leaf īnfēlīx, gen., īnfēlīcis, unhappy, unlucky

lūx, lūcis, F., light; prīma lūx, daybreak
mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium, M., month
nihil, N., not declined, nothing
potēns, gen., potentis, powerful
sōl, sōlis, M., sun
vēstīgium, -ī, N., footstep; track,
trace

10

THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

We have seen that many adjectives are declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. There is also a large group of adjectives declined like nouns of the third declension.

THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

Some adjectives of the third declension have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M	ASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom.	fē'līx	fē'līx	fēlī'cēs	fēlī'cia	
Gen.	fēlī'cis	fēlī'cis	fēlī'cium	fēlī'cium	
Dat.	fēlī'cī	fēlī'cī	fēlī'cibus	fēlī'cibus	
Acc.	fēlī'cem	fē'līx	fēlī'cēs	fēlī'cia	
Abl.	fēlī'cī	fēlī'cī	fēlī'cibus	fēlī'cibus	

The neuter is given separately though it differs from the masculine and feminine only in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

THE LOST WIFE

Per silvam sonus lyrae audītus est. Omnēs avēs, sonō lyrae audītō, cantāre dēstitērunt. Bēstiae ācrēs quidem stetērunt et nōn jam necāre hominēs temptāvērunt.

Orpheus, fīlius Apollinis, lyram habēbat et cantābat. Eurydicē, virgō pulchra, Orpheum cantantem audīvit. Eum vidēre cupiēns, ad eum properāvit. Orpheus eam venientem vīdit et statim eam amāvit. Posteā Eurydicēn in mātrimōnium dūxit.

Ōlim serpēns pedem Eurydicēs ambulantis in agrō momordit (bit). Illa statim ē vītā excēdēns sub terram in Orcum, locum mortuōrum, ducta est.



Orpheus and Cerberus, famous for his three heads

Orpheus, propter uxōrem āmissam dolēns, eam etiam in Orcō petere cōnstituit. Itaque per cavernam sub terram dēscendit.

Sed ubi ad flümen Stygem vēnit, portitor (ferryman) Charōn eum vīventem trāns flümen nāve suā portāre recūsāvit. Orpheus autem lyram cēpit et cantāvit; tum Charōn libenter eum trāns flümen portāvit. Ibi Cerberus, magnus canis, eum terrēre temptāvit. Sed Orpheus iterum cantāvit et canis statim dormīvit.

Ita post multa perīcula Orpheus ad rēgiam Plūtōnis vēnit et ā Plūtōne uxōrem petīvit. Plūtō autem Eurydicēn āmittere recūsābat. Tum Orpheus, capiēns lyram, cantāvit.

Dēnique Plūtō sonō lyrae victus Eurydicēn Orpheō dedit, sed sub hāc lēge: "Orpheus ad terram prōcēdet; Eurydicēn post sē venientem nōn respiciet. Sī Orpheus respiciet, Eurydicē in Orcum iterum dūcētur."

Orpheus laetus ad terram ascendere incēpit. Dum sub terrā Orpheus erat, nōn respexit. Subitō prope portam cavernae respexit et uxōrem amātam suam vīdit.

20

30

35

Eurydicē misera clāmāvit, "Valē! Iterum ad mortuōs dūcar. Valē!" Conjuge suā iterum āmissā, Orpheus dolōre ācrī victus est et in terrā nōn diū habitābat. Mox in Orcō Eurydicēn iterum invēnit.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp; fierce, eager
canis, -is (gen.pl.-um), M. and F., dog
dolor, -ōris, M., grief, sorrow
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep
excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
go out, depart
libenter, adv., gladly, freely

omnis, -e, all, every, whole; N. pl. as noun, everything quidem, adv., certainly, indeed recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse, reject respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look back, look back at

THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

There are many third-declension adjectives that have two endings in the nominative singular—one for the masculine and feminine and one for the neuter.

In the masculine and feminine, these adjectives are declined like collis (p. 95) and in the neuter like **īnsigne** (p. 314, 5), except that the ablative singular of all genders ends in **ī**.

SINGULAR			PLURAL	PLURAL		
N	ASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.		
Nom.	om'nis	om'ne	om'nēs	om'nia		
Gen.	om'nis	om'nis	om'nium	om'nium		
Dat.	o m'nī	om'nī	$\mathtt{om'nibus}$	om'nibus		
Acc.	om'nem	om'ne	om'nēs	om'nia		
Abl.	om'nī	om'nī	om'nibus	om'nibus		

ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

There are a few third-declension adjectives which have separate forms for the three genders in the nominative singular. In all other respects they are declined exactly like those with two endings.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ā'cer	ā'cris	ā'cre	ā'c rē s	ā'cria
Gen.	ā'o	cris	ā'cris	ā'crium	ā'crium
Dat.	ā'e	erī	ā'crī	·ā′cribus	ā'cribus
Acc.	ā'o	crem	ā'cre	ā'c rē s	ā'cria
Abl.	ā'o	erī	ā'crī	ā'cribus	ā'cribus

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

You are familiar with the perfect passive participle.

portātus, having been carried

There are also participles in the active voice.

Present Active Participle: portans, carrying

The present participles of regular verbs in the four conjugations are as follows:

I	II	III		IV
(portō)	(moneō)	(dūcō)	(capiō)	(audiō)
portāns	monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns
carrying	warning	leading	taking	hearing

As you can see from these examples, the present active participle of a Latin verb ends in -ns, and is formed on the present stem.

The present participle of -ō verbs of the third conjugation is exactly like that of the second conjugation. In the fourth conjugation and in -iō verbs of the third conjugation the stem ending appears as -iē-.

DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Like other participles, the present participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun it modifies. It is declined as an adjective of the third declension:

SINGUL	AR	PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom. por'tāns	por'tāns	portan'tēs	portan'tia	
Gen. portan'tis	portan'tis	portan'tium	portan'tium	
Dat. portan'ti	portan'ti	portan'tibus	portan'tibus	
Acc. portan'tem	por'tāns	portan'tēs	portan'tia	
$Abl.$ portan'te, $-\bar{i}$	portan'te, -ī	portan'tibus	portan'tibus	

Supply the participle for each blank.

- 1. Serpēns pedem Eurydicēs __ in hortō vulnerābat. (walk)
- 2. Cerēs, __ filiam āmissam, in Orcum properāvit. (grieve for)
- 3. Lyram __ et __, Orpheus ad rēgiam Plūtōnis vēnit. (carry, sing)
- 4. Orpheus uxōrem post sē __ respexit. (come)
- 5. Charōn virōs __ trāns flūmen nāve suā nōn portābat. (live)

This scene was on the tomb of a wine merchant

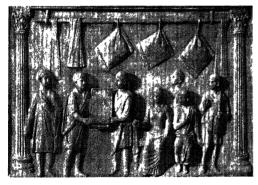


Building a boat

INDUSTRY



An ancient Roman version of a hardware store



In this shop cushions and scarves were sold





A CURIOUS WOMAN

Olim ın terrā sōla fēmina erat uxor Epimētheī. Haec fēmina nōn sōlum pulcherrima erat, sed etiam cūriōsissima erat. Multa dōna ā deīs data habēbat. Nōmen ejus igitur erat Pandōra, significāns "dōna omnia." Inter dōna deōrum erat parva arca, dōnum Jovis.

"Haec arca," Juppiter dīxit, "magnum sēcrētum tenet; aperīrī nōn dēbet. Sī aperiētur, perīcula gravia in terrā aderunt. Dā arcam clausam tuō conjugī, et fēlīcior eris."

Epimētheus arcam libenter cēpit; sed, ā deīs monitus, eam non aperuit. Non satis sapiēns autem erat conjūnx Pandorae cūriosae.

10 Arcam non cēlāvit.

Cotīdiē Pandōra arcam spectābat, cupiēns eam aperīre. Timēns autem perīcula gravia ā Jove prōmissa, ab eā procul manēre temptāvit.

Ōlim Pandōra sōla erat in hortō ubi arca erat. Fēmina cūriōsa eam diū spectāvit; scrīpta in arcā haec verba vīdit: "Teneō omnia gaudia deōrum. Aperī mē."

Maximē haec gaudia habēre cupiēns, Pandōra arcam aperuit. Subitō mala, nōn gaudia, ex arcā volāvērunt. Prīmō duo mala, deinde tria alia ex arcā vēnērunt. Dēnique omnia mala hominum per terrās volāvērunt. Pandōra miserrima celeriter arcam clausit.

Pandora as the English artist Rossetti painted her



Mox autem Pandōra īnfēlīx audīvit vōcem dīcentem: "Aperī iterum arcam. Summum bonum in arcā relīquistī. Hominēs juvābō. Līberā mē!"

Itaque Pandōra cūriōsa parvam arcam iterum aperuit. Ex arcā Spēs (*Hope*), sōlum dōnum bonum deōrum, vēnit.

aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum, open claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, close cotīdiē, adv., every day, daily cūriōsus, -a, -um, curious duo, duae, duo, two gaudium, -ī, N., joy, delight, pleasure gravis, -e, heavy, severe, serious sapiēns, gen., -entis, wise significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, mean

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Most Latin adjectives may be used in the positive, comparative, and superlative.

Positive:	altus,	fortis,	fēlīx,
	hıgh	brave	happy
Comparative:	altior,	fortior,	fēlīcior,
	higher	braver	happier
Superlative:	altissimus,	fortissimus,	fēlīcissimus,
	highest	bravest	happiest

Sometimes a comparative adjective is translated with *too* or *rather* instead of an English comparative, and a superlative with *very* instead of an English superlative.

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND THE SUPERLATIVE

The comparative of Latin adjectives regularly ends in -ior for the masculine and feminine and -ius for the neuter. These endings are added to the base. The base is found by dropping the masculine genitive ending of the positive form.

altus, genitive altī, base altfortis, genitive fortis, base fortfēlīx, genitive fēlīcis, base fēlīcComparative: altior, altius
Comparative: fēlīcior, fortius
Comparative: fēlīcior, fēlīcius

The superlative is formed regularly by adding -issimus, -issima, -issimum to the base.

altus, genitive alti, base altfortis, genitive fortis, base fortfēlīx, genitive fēlīcis, base fēlīcpotēns, genitive potentis, base potentSuperlative: fēlīcissimus, -a, -um
Superlative: potentissimus, -a, -um
Superlative: potentissimus, -a, -um

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -er

The superlative of adjectives ending in -er may be formed by adding -rimus to the nominative singular of the masculine. Their comparative is formed like that of other adjectives.

Positive: miser, -era, -erum pulcher, -chra, -chrum comparative: miserior, -ius pulchrior, -chrius superlative: miserrimus, -a, -um pulcherrimus, -a, -um

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -lis

The superlative of five adjectives ending in -lis may be found by adding -limus to the base:

facilis, easy similis, like humilis, low difficilis, difficult dissimilis, unlike

Positive: facilis, -e humilis, -e Comparative: facilior, -ius humilior, -ius Superlative: facilimus, -a, -um humilimus, -a, -um

Most other adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative regularly with **-issimus**.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Adjectives in the comparative are declined as third-declension adjectives. The ablative singular, however, ends in -e, and the genitive plural in -um.

MAS	C. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nominative:	lā′tior	lā'tius	lātiō'rēs	lātiō'ra
Genitive:	lātiō'ris	lātiō 'ris	lātiō'rum	lātiō'rum
Dative:	lātiō'rī	lātiō'rī	lātiō'ribus	lātiō'ribus
Accusative:	lātiō'rem	lā'ti us	lātiō′rēs	lātiō'ra
Ablative:	lātiō're	lātiō're	lātiō'ribus	lātiō'ribus

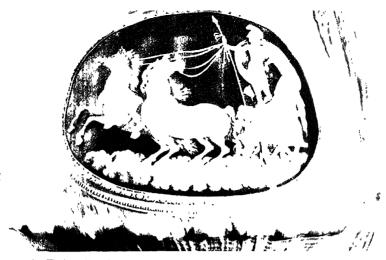
The superlative of any adjective is declined like bonus.

CARDINAL NUMBERS

The cardinal numbers from one to ten in Latin are unus, duo, tres, quattuor, quinque, sex, septem, octo, novem, decem. Of these, only the first three are declined. Unus, -a, -um is declined like bonus except in the genitive and dative singular (for which see page 318, 18). Duo and tres are, of course, always in the plural.

They are declined as follows:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	du'o	du'ae	du'o	trēs	tri'a
Gen.	duō'rum	duā'rum	duō'rum	tri'um	tri'um
Dat.	duō'bus	duā'bus	duō'bus	tri'bus	tri'bus
Acc.	du'ōs, du'o	du'ās	du'o	trēs	tri'a
Abl.	duō'bus	duā'bus	duō'bus	tri'bus	tri'bus



Apollo driving
his chariot
—a cameo
carved
on a shell

A DARING YOUNG MAN

Phaėthon erat puer superbissimus quod Apollo erat pater ejus. Saepe juvenis Apollinem, deum solis, agentem equos potentes trāns caelum spectābat. Olim ad rēgiam solis vēnit.

Fīliō salūtātō, Apollō dīxit, "Quid cupiēns vēnistī? Nihil recūsābō."

Phaëthōn magnō cum gaudiō respondit, "Equōs sōlis trāns caelum sagere cupiō."

Apollō cum dolōre dīxit, "Ō Phaëthōn īnfēlīx, es fortis sed neque satis potēns neque satis sapiēns. Tua audācia quidem tibi mortis, mihi dolōris causa erit."

Fīlius, autem, respondit, "Deus hoc prōmissum recūsāre nōn audet. ¹⁰ Certus sum; mentem nōn mūtābō. Potentior et sapientior sum, quod fīlius deī sum."

Māne, igitur, equī ācerrimī jūnctī sunt, et per portās Aurōrae apertās Phaëthōn eōs libenter ēgit. Equī subitō respicientēs territī erant. Prīmō prope terram, deinde altius inter stellās juvenem īn- 15 fēlīcem portantēs, dēsistere recūsābant. In agrīs arātīs flammae frūmentum vāstābant; aquae quidem flūminum mariumque recēdēbant.

Tum Juppiter, perīculō gravissimō vīsō, fulmen (thunderbolt) jēcit. Statim inter flammās Phaëthōn ē caelō in flūmen cecidit (fell). Posteā sorōrēs ejus in rīpā flūminis lacrimantēs in arborēs mūtātae sunt, et 20 folia eārum sonum fēminārum dolentium facere numquam dēstitērunt.

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plow, till, cultivate

certus, -a, -um, certain, sure; prō certō, certainly

fortis, -e, brave, strong

jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, join, yoke, fasten together juvenis, juvenis (gen. pl. -um), M., young man, youth

ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

There are a few adjectives which are compared irregularly. The most important are the following:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um, good malus, -a, -um, bad magnus, -a, -um, large parvus, -a, -um, small multus, -a, -um, much	melior, melius, better pejor, pejus, worse major, majus, larger minor, minus, smaller —, plūs, more ulterior, ulterius, farther	optimus, -a, -um, best pessimus, -a, -um, worst maximus, -a, -um, largest minimus, -a, -um, smallest plūrimus, -a, -um, most ultimus, -a, -um, farthest

In the singular, plūs is a neuter noun, with the genitive plūris. In the plural it is declined as an adjective with the forms plūrēs, plūra, etc.

ADVERBS COMPARED REGULARLY

In adverbs derived from adjectives the comparative is regularly the same as the neuter accusative singular form of the comparative of the corresponding adjective. The superlative is made by adding -ē to the base of the superlative of the corresponding adjective.

Pos.	lātē (from lātus)	ācriter (from ācer)	facile (from facilis)
Comp.	lātius	ācrius	facilius
Super.	lātissimē	ācerrimē	facillimē

IRREGULAR ADVERBS

The following adverbs are irregular either in their formation or their comparison:

•	bene, well melius, better optimē, best	male, badly pejus, worse pessimē, worst	magnopere, greatly magis, more maximē, very greatly
Comparative:	multum, much plūs, more plūrimum, most	parum, little minus, less minimē, least	







136

REVIEW OF UNIT VII

 Supply the participle for each blank. 						
 Nōmen fēminae Pandōra erat, "dōna omnia." (meaning) _ ā deō, Epimētheus arcam nōn aperuit. (Warned) _ perīcula, Pandōra arcam spectābat. (Fearing) Haec gaudia habēre, arcam aperuit. (desiring) Audīvit vōcem, "Līberā mē!" (saying) 						
II. Supply the missing words and arrange the sentences in the order of the story on page 135. 1. Tum fulmen jēcit. 2. Fīlius, "Certus sum; nōn mūtābō." 3. Phaëthōn cupīvit equōs sōlis trāns agere. 4. Phaēthōn erat Apollinis. 5. Apollō dīxit, "Quid cupis? recūsābō." 6. Apollō dīxit, "Es neque satis potēns neque satis" 7. Subitō equī erant. 8. Phaëthōn ē in flūmen cecidit.						
 Complete each sentence with the correct Latin word. Sex et quattuor sunt Quinque et tres sunt Octo et duo sunt Septem et duo sunt Septem et tres sunt 						
IV. Choose the word that fits each sentence and tell why you chose it.						
 Mārcus erat (very standard) stupidus Ille est liber (better). 	stupidior	stupidissimus				
bonus	melior	optimus				
 Pandōra erat fēmina cūriōsissima 	(curious). cūriōsa	cūriōsior				
4. Magna arca est (too gravis	heavy). gravior	gravissima				
5. Phaëthōn erat (<i>a ver</i> altissimus	ry brave) juvenis. fēlīcissimus	fortissimus				

The Greek poet Homer wrote the story of the Trojan War in deathless verse. Other ancient writers told it again and again until it became one of the most famous stories of antiquity. Here are some interesting incidents connected with the Trojan War.



A BEAUTY CONTEST

Olim di deaeque ad magnam cēnam invitāti sunt. Discordia erat sõla dea quae nõn invitāta est. Tamen, maximē irāta, ad cēnam vēnit et jēcit inter deōs deāsque mālum aureum in quō hoc verbum scriptum est: "Pulcherrimae."

Statim erat controversia inter deās Jūnonem et Minervam et Venerem. Omnēs mālum aureum habēre cupiēbant.

Juppiter, quī aderat, dīxit, "In hāc contrōversiā jūdex esse nōn cupiō. In monte Īdā, autem, habitat pāstor, cujus nōmen est Paris. Petite eum; is hoc mālum, īnsigne victōriae, deae 'pulcherrimae' dabit."

Deae, igitur, in montem \overline{I} dam convēnērunt. Cum eīs erat Mercurius, cujus auxiliō deae Paridem invēnērunt.

Mercurius pāstōrī mālum aureum mōnstrāvit, et dīxit, "In hōc mālō quod teneō ūnum verbum scrībitur: 'Pulcherrimae.' Magna est contrōversia inter hās deās quibuscum veniō. Juppiter, igitur, tē jūdicem hujus contrōversiae dēlēgit."

Itaque Paris, graviter agitātus, verba deārum audiēbat. Prīmō ²⁰ Jūnō dīxit, "Dā mihi mālum aureum, Paris. Pulchrior quam aliae sum. Rēgīna deōrum sum; dīvitiās potentiamque tibi dabō."

Deinde Minerva jūdicī dīxit, "Dā mihi mālum aureum. Dea sapientiae sum; magnam sapientiam et cōnsilia bona tibi dabō."

Dēnique Venus pulchra prō jūdice stetit. "Fīnem hujus con²⁵ trōversiae facile faciam," dīxit. "Dā mihi mālum aureum. Dea amōris sum; pulcherrimam fēminam quae in orbe terrārum (*the world*) vīvit conjugem tibi dabō!"

Paris, autem, jūdicium facile non fēcit. Dīvitiae, potentia, sapientia—omnēs juvenī grātae erant. Tamen conjugem pulcherrimam promissam ā Venere maximē cupiēbat. Itaque deae amoris mālum dedit.

amor, -ōris, M., love conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, assemble, gather dīvitiae, -ārum, F., pl., riches, wealth facile, adv., easily jūdex, jūdicis, M., judge

jūdicium, -ī, N., judgment, decision mālum, -ī, N., apple pāstor, -ōris, M., shepherd potentia, -ae, F., power quī, quae, quod, who, which, that sapientia, -ae, F., wisdom

MEANING AND USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

On page 29 you met a dependent clause introduced by a *conjunction* to show its relationship to an independent clause.

In the sentence *The boy whom you saw yesterday is my brother*, the dependent clause *whom you saw yesterday* is introduced by the relative pronoun *whom*. The word *whom* connects the dependent clause with the independent clause and is a pronoun with *boy* as its antecedent.

The English relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, and *that*. We use *who* to refer to persons and *which* to refer to things. We may use *that* for either persons or things. In the following sentence quem is a relative pronoun.

Homo quem vides amīcus meus est, The man whom you see is my friend.

The Latin relative pronouns may be translated who (whom), which, or that. For their forms, see page 322, 30.

AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homo quem vides amīcus meus est, The man whom you see is my friend.

In the sentence above, quem is masculine singular to agree with its antecedent, homō. It is accusative because it is the object of vidēs.

RELATIVE PRONOUN WITH cum

When the ablative forms of the relative pronoun are used as objects of the preposition cum, they regularly have cum added as a final syllable.

quōcum, quācum, quibuscum, with whom, with which This is also true of the interrogative pronoun.

PARIS AND HELEN

Mālō aureō acceptō, Venus Paridī nūntiāvit, "Fēmina pulcherrima (most beautiful) in Graeciā habitat. Nōmen ejus est Helena; Helena erit tua conjūnx."

Dea Paridī quoque dīxit patrem et mātrem ejus esse rēgem et rē-5 gīnam Trōjae. "Monitus ōrāculō, pater tuus mortem tuam cupiēbat et tē in silvīs relīquit; pāstor tē servāvit," dīxit.

Dea ostendit Hectorem, frātrem Paridis, in rēgiā Trōjānā habitāre et ā populō propter magnam audāciam laudārī.

Itaque Paris invidiōsus îrātusque ad urbem Trōjam prōcessit. Ubi
Priamus rēx pāstōrem vīdīt, statīm sēnsit eum esse fīlium suum. Nōn
jam mortem Paridis cupiēbat. Laetus quod Paris vīvēbat, Priamus
juvenem libenter in rēgiam invītāvīt.

Posteā cum classe Paris ad Graeciam nāvigāvit, quamquam pater ejus crēdidit eum ad aliam terram iter facere. Hīc audīvit Helenam, fēminam ā Venere prōmissam, Spartae rēgīnam et uxōrem Menelāī esse.

Itaque Paris sõlus ad urbem Spartam prõcessit, sed cum Helenā sēcrētō discessit. Regīna perfida, conjuge relictō, ad urbem Trōjam cum Paride fūgit.



Uxōre āmissā, Menelāus prīncipēs Graeciae convocāvit. Graviter agitātus, rēx in animō bellum contrā Trōjānōs gerere habuit.

accipiō,-cipere,-cēpī,-ceptum, receive, accept crēdō,-ere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe, trust discēdō,-ere,-cessī,-cessum, depart, withdraw ostendō,-tendere,-tendī, -tentum, show, display sentiō,-īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, believe

Helena cum Parıde fugit

DIRECT QUOTATIONS

A *direct quotation* is one which repeats the exact words of the speaker.

He said, "I will come."

The exact words of the speaker are inclosed in quotation marks.

INDIRECT QUOTATIONS

An *indirect quotation* is one which repeats the thought, but not the exact words of the original speaker. In English an indirect quotation is often introduced by the conjunction *that*, but sometimes the conjunction is omitted.

He said that he would come, or He said he would come.

No conjunction is used to introduce indirect quotations in Latin. An indirect quotation has its verb in the infinitive and its subject in the accusative.

Dīcit puerum in silvā ambulāre, He says that the boy is walking in the forest.

In the direct form this quotation would be Puer in silvā ambulat. In the indirect quotation puer, the subject, becomes puerum, and ambulat becomes ambulāre.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The name *indirect discourse* is given to the use of the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect quotations.

Certain other expressions which are not exactly quotations take the same form as indirect quotations.

I heard that you had received a letter.

Everyone thought that the day would be pleasant.

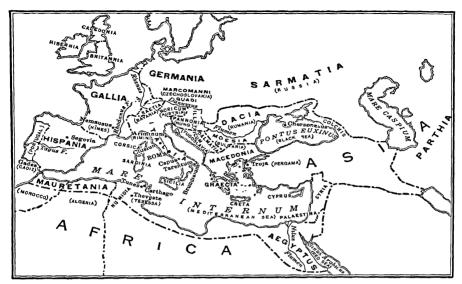
In the sentences above, the clauses introduced by *that* would be in the form of indirect discourse in Latin. Accordingly, their verbs would be infinitives and their subjects would stand in the accusative.

Indirect discourse is used with verbs of saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing, and the like.

Crēdō tē librum meum habēre, I believe (that) you have my book.

When the speaker makes a statement about himself in indirect discourse, the reflexive pronoun is used.

Dīcit sē librum tuum habēre, He says that he has your book.



The dash-and-dot line marks the boundaries of the Roman Empire

PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

A predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in indirect discourse is in the accusative, to agree with the subject of the infinitive.

Crēdimus ducem nostrum fortem esse, We believe (that) our leader is brave.

PRESENT INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

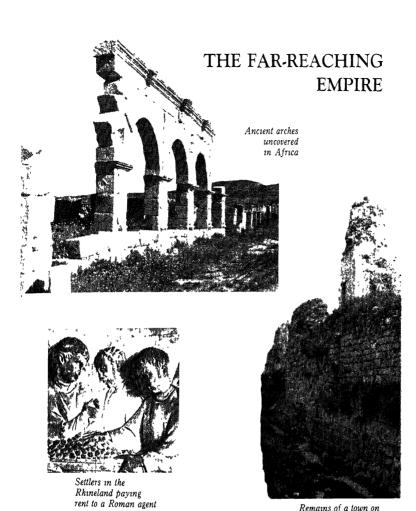
The act expressed by the present infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as occurring at the time shown by the tense of the main verb.

Dīcit sē perīculum timēre, He says that he fears danger.

Dīxit sē perīculum timēre, He said that he feared danger.

Choose the correct verb to complete each sentence.

- 1. Paris dīcīt fēminam in Graeciā (habitāre habitat).
- 2. Helena dīcit, "In Graeciā (habitāre habitō)."
- 3. Dea nūntiat juvenem fīlium rēgis (esse est).
- 4. Priamus dīcit, "Paris (esse est) fīlius meus."
- 5. Rēgīna dīcit, "Conjugem meum (āmīsī āmittere)."







HELEN AND THE BEGGAR

Postquam Paris et Hector ā Graecīs interfectī sunt, magnus dolor mentēs populī Trōjānī occupāvit. In viās urbis Helena exīre nōn audēbat, quod fēminae Trōjānae clāmāvērunt, "Propter tē, fēmina mala, dī nōs nōn jam amant."

In templis sacerdotes dixerunt, "Deos, Trojani, orare debetis; in arīs sacrificia ponite. Ōmina sunt mala. Fata nos nostramque urbem delebunt."

Trōjānī sciēbant sē ducēs bonōs nōn jam habēre.

Jam Helena ad Graecōs trānsīre cupiēbat. Tamen nōn sōlum īram ¹⁰ Menelāī timēbat sed etiam portae urbis clausae sunt.

Ōlim Helena in urbe mendicum vīdit. Multī līberī, clāmantēs et lapidēs jacientēs, ad eum ībant. Helena subitō sēnsit hunc mendicum esse Ulīxem, ducem clārum Graecum. Itaque servō suō dīxit, "Vocā mendicum in rēgiam; dā eī cibum et aquam."

Hōc factō, Helena servōs suōs expulit et parvā vōce mendicō dīxit, "Tē recognōscō; tū es Ulīxēs. Quid in hāc urbe facis? Nōnne ad Graecōs redībis?"



Ulīxēs respondit sē portās et viās urbis spec-20 tāre; Graecōs novum cōnsilium habēre. "Certē," dīxīt, "urbs Trōja dēlēbitur."

Tum Helena dīxit, "Tē juvābō; tibi viam sēcrētam in mediam urbem mōnstrābō. Ita, meō auxiliō, Graecī Trōjam vāstābunt."

eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, go
lapis, lapidis, M., a stone
mendicus, -ī, M., beggar
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum,
place, put; castra pōnere,
to pitch camp
sacerdōs, -dōtis, M. and F.,
priest, priestess
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum,
know
tū, you

Helen at Troy

CONJUGATION OF $e\bar{o}$

The irregular verb $e\bar{o}$, go, is conjugated in the present system as follows:

PRESENT	IMPERFECT SINGULAR	FUTURE
e'ō, I go	ī'bam, I was going, I	ī'bō, I shall go
īs, you go	went	ī'bis, you will go
it, he, she, it goes	i'bās, you were go- ing, you went	ī'bit, he, she, it will go
	i'bat, he, she, it was going; he, she, it went	
	PLURAL	
ī'mus, we go ī'tis, you go	ībā'mus, we were go- ing, we went	ī'bimus, we shall go ī'bitis, you will go
e'unt, they go	ībā'tis, you were go- ing, you went	i'bunt, they will go
	i'bant, they were go- ing, they went	

The principal parts are eō, īre, iī or īvī, itum. The perfect is conjugated as follows:

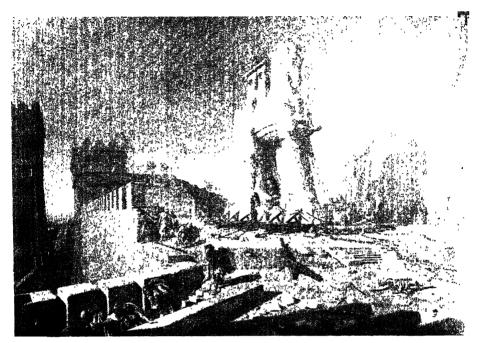
SINGULAR	PLURAL
i'ī, I went, I have gone	i'imus, we went, we have gone
īs'tī, you went, you have gone	īs'tis, you went, you have gone
i'it, he, she, it went; he, she, it	ie'runt, they went, they have
has gone	gone

COMPOUNDS OF $e\bar{o}$

There are many compounds of eō, such as exeō, go out, redeō, go back, trānseō, go across. They are conjugated like eō, with the syllable ex-, red-, trāns-, etc., prefixed: present, exeō, exīs, etc.

Supply the correct forms of the verb $e\bar{o}$ in the following sentences.

- 1. Deae ad montem __ (are going).
- 2. Paris ad urbem Trōjam __ (was going).
- 3. Ad urbem Spartam mox _ (he will go).
- 4. Ad ōram maritimam saepe __ (we have gone).



Graeci descenderunt

THE WOODEN HORSE

Hectore mortuō, tamen exercitūs Graecī urbem Trōjam nōn cēpērunt. Quamquam Helena Graecōs juvāre dēsīderāvit, fortēs Trōjānī eam prohibuērunt.

Dēnique Graecī dolum parāvērunt. Magnum equum ligneum 5 fēcērunt in quō paucōs virōs fortēs cēlāvērunt. Noctū cēterī Graecī, equō in cōnspectū Trōjānōrum relictō, ad īnsulam propinquam discessērunt. Relīquērunt ūnum ē comitibus suīs, cujus nōmen erat Sinōn; et is prope urbem sē cēlāvit.

Māne Trōjānī ex urbe magnō cum gaudiō prōcessērunt et in castra Graecōrum dēserta convēnērunt. Equum spectāvērunt. Multī quī dolum nōn sēnsērunt eum in urbem trahere dēsīderāvērunt. Aliī, autem, equum timuērunt eumque dēlēre dēsīderāvērunt.

Deinde Lāocoōn, sacerdōs, clāmāvit in equō latēre dolum. "Timeō Graecōs," dīxit, "etiam dōna dantēs."

Hīs verbīs dictīs, statim Lāocoōn hastam contrā equum jēcit. Subitō autem duo serpentēs ē marī vēnērunt et Lāocoontem et ejus duōs fīliōs interfēcērunt.

Tum omnēs dīxērunt Lāocoontem malum esse. Clāmāvērunt, "Dī sunt īrātī. Equum in urbem trahere dēbēmus."

Interim Sınon inventus est et ad regem celerrime ductus est.

"Graecus sum," dīxit. "Cēterī Graecī mē interficere temptāvērunt. Fūgī, autem, et mē (*myself*) cēlāvī. Jam Graecī in patriam suam sēcrētō rediērunt. Equus est sacer deae Minervae. Pōne eum in arce; ita urbs tua semper tūta erit."

Equō in arce positō, deīs sacrificia Trōjānī fēcērunt. In tōtā urbe magnum erat gaudium.

Mediā nocte (at midnight) Sinōn ad equum vēnit. Jānuam parvam in corpore equī aperuit; Graecī dēscendērunt et portās urbis aperuērunt. Jam omnēs exercitūs Graecī adfuērunt; signum proeliī cornibus dedērunt; impetum in Trōjānōs fēcērunt. Urbs, capta auxiliō equī ligneī, mox ā Trōjānīs dēserēbātur.

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight
cornū, -ūs, N., horn; wing of an army
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum,
desert, abandon
dēsertus, -a, -um, deserted

exercitus, -ūs, M., army impetus, -ūs, M., attack ligneus, -a, -um, wooden, of wood trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, drag, draw, pull

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS

In the fourth declension the genitive singular ends in $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s. The nominative singular ends in $-\mathbf{u}$ s for the masculine and feminine and in $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ for the neuter. Most nouns ending in $-\mathbf{u}$ s are masculine.

		exercitus, M., army	cornū, N., horn	
	SINGULA	ar.	PLURAL	
Nom.	exer'citus	cor'nū	exer'citūs	cor'nua
Gen.	exer'citūs	cor'nūs	exerci'tuum	cor'nuum
Dat.	exerci'tuī	cor'nū	exerci'tibus	cor'nibus
Acc.	exer'citum	cor'nū	exer'citūs	cor'nua
Abl.	exer'citū	cor'nū	exerci'tibus	cor'nibus

ENDINGS

As you see, the endings of fourth-declension nouns of the two classes are as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
Nominative:	-us	-ū	-ūs	-ua
Genitive:	-ūs	-ūs	-uum	-uum
Dative:	-uī	-ū	-ibus	-ibus
Accusative:	-um	-ū	-ūs	-ua
Ablative:	-ū	-ū	-ibus	-ibus

ENGLISH ADJECTIVES FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES

Many Latin adjectives give us English adjectives similar in form and meaning. Some of these Latin adjectives are made from nouns plus suffixes. Besides those ending in -alis or -aris, there are adjectives with -inus or -ilis (English -ine and -il or -ile) which come from nouns and mean pertaining to or like.

> femininus (femina), feminine (like a woman) civilis (civis), civil (pertaining to a citizen) hostilis (hostis), hostile (pertaining to an enemy)

What is the English adjective from each Latin adjective below?

canis, caninus

puer, puerilis

Some Latin adjectives coming from nouns have the suffixes -osus (English -ous or -ose) and -icus or -ticus (English -ic or -tic).

copiosus (copia), copious domesticus (domus), domestic

Latin adjectives come also from verbs. Some present participles used as adjectives have corresponding English words. First-conjugation verbs usually give the English ending -ant; other verbs -ent.

vigilans, -antis (vigilo), vigilant

latens, -entis (lateo), latent

Perfect passive participles also give Latin and English adjectives.

adversus (adverto), adverse

oppositus (oppono), opposite

Other participles give Latin adjectives which do not have English cognates, though a connection may often be seen.

paratus (paro), prepared

territus (terreo), terrified

What English adjectives come from the following Latin words?

conveniens

definitus

expectans

separatus

Latin adjectives ending in -bilis and -idus were also made from verbs and often give corresponding English adjectives.

terribilis (terreo), terrible timidus (timeo), timid

Give the English adjective corresponding to each of these Latin adjectives.

antiquus aquaticus felinus gloriosus horribilis ornatus

patiens servilis

significans vocalis

REVIEW OF UNIT VIII

- I. Complete each of the following sentences with a form of the relative pronoun.
 - 1. Vir _ vīdī fuit dux noster.
 - 2. Īnsigne __ gerēbat aureum erat.
 - 3. Hic est lapis __ vir necātus est.
 - 4. Virī _ cum ambulābant jūdicēs sunt.
 - 5. Sacerdotes ___ videbimus convenerunt.
- II. In the following sentences a form of one of these words should be supplied for each blank. Select the right word and the right form.

cōnspectus	exercitus	mālum
cornū	impetus	pāstor

- 1. Crēdō esse fīlium rēgis.
- 2. Audīmus Venerī darī.
- 3. Dīcit __ exercitūs contrā hostēs __ facere.
- 4. Crēdō _ ducis mentēs mīlitum confirmāre.
- 5. Silentium __ proelium parārī ostendit.
- III. Find in the list below, the verb that completes each sentence correctly.
 - 1. Cervum, puerī, (you have killed).
 - 2. Bellum in hāc terrā (has been waged),
 - 3. Multa vēstigia (have been seen).
 - 4. Multae virginēs in proeliō (were slain).
 - 5. Castra fortiter (was defended).
 - 6. In urbe, sorōrēs, (you have been seen).
 - 7 Sumus mīlitēs, sed graviter (we have been wounded).
 - 8. Silentiō hastae (were being hurled).
 - 9. In urbem, Anna, (you are being led).
 - 10. Magnum numerum mīlitum (he recognized).

dēfendunt	gestum est	jaciēbantur	vīsae estis
dēfēnsa sunt	interfēcistis	jactae sunt	visa sunt
düceris	interfectae sunt	recognōvit	vulnerāmus
dūciminī	interficiuntur	vidēbitur	vulnerātī sumus

The Story of Iphigenia

The story of Iphigenia, a character in the Iliad, has been often retold, but the most famous account is that of the Greek dramatist Euripides. Some scenes are here given in part.

A DECEITFUL LETTER

Nox erat, et castra Graecōrum, prope urbem Aulıdem posıta, silēbant. In tabernāculō Agamemnonis, ducıs Graecī, erat lūmen clārum. Subitō rēx ad portam tabernāculī vēnit servumque fīdum ad sē vocāvit.

- 5 Servus. Ō domine, vocāvistīne mē?
 - Agamemnōn. Ita; ego dēsīderō hanc epistulam ad uxōrem meam, Clytemnestram, sine morā portārī.
 - Servus. Tibi semper fīdus sum. Cūr, domine, per tōtam noctem numquam tū dormīvistī?
- 10 Agamemnön. Magnam causam dolöris habeö. Ventī adversī per trēs mēnsēs nāvēs nostrās nāvigāre prohibuērunt. Calchās sacerdos mihi nūntiāvit Diānam esse īrātam, magnaque sacrificia postulāre. Meam fīliam, Īphigenīam, sacrificāre jussus sum.
 - Servus. Certē Calchās est vir malus. Īphigenīa nōbīs cāra est.
- 15 Agamemnon. Sed Menelāus, frāter meus, dīxit, "Hoc sacrificio ā tē facto, ventī secundī nos ad urbem Trojam portābunt. Nobiscum et auxilio deorum Trojānos superābis."
 - Servus. Cūr Menelāus fīliam suam non dat? Tū tē tuamque familiam dēfendere dēbēs.
- 20 Agamemnon. Di filiam ejus non postulāvērunt. Itaque maestus ad uxorem meam jam misi epistulam in quā scripsi, "Achillēs filiam nostram, Īphigeniam, in mātrimonium dūcere dēsiderat. Mitte eam sine morā ad castra nostra."
 - Servus. Sed cūr nunc aliam epistulam mittis?
- 25 Agamemnon. Mentem meam mūtāvi. In hāc epistulā quam tibi do scripsi, "Ō conjūnx amāta, servā tē et filiam nostram; periculum magnum est; tenē eam domī."

Servus fīdus, epistulā acceptā, per noctem fūgit.

adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable domi, at home ego, I

maestus, -a, -um, sad, gloomy secundus, -a, -um, favorable; second

USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Thus far the personal pronouns I, you, and we, as subjects of the verb, have been indicated in Latin by the person endings of the verb, $-\bar{o}$, -s, -mus, -tis. But when the importance of the subject is emphasized or a contrast is brought out between subjects which are not in the same person, a personal pronoun in the nominative is used in Latin just as in English. The nominative forms are: ego, I; $t\bar{u}$, you; $n\bar{o}s$, we; $v\bar{o}s$, you (plural).

The cases other than the nominative are used as we should expect, except that the genitive is not used to indicate possession.

DECLENSION OF ego

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	e'go, I	n ōs, we	
Gen.	me'ī, of me	nos'trum, nos'trī, of us	
Dat.	mi'hi, to me, me (as	nō'bīs, to us, us (as	
	indirect object)	indirect object)	
Acc.	mē, me (as direct object)	nos, us (as direct object)	
Abl.	mē, (from, with, by)	nō'bīs, (from, with, by)	
	me	us	

For declension of tū, see page 320, 23.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS

On the previous page you learned the declension of the personal pronouns ego and tū. The genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative forms of these words are used as reflexive pronouns.

Examples of the accusative used as reflexive are given below.

Mē non laudo, I do not praise myself.

Nos non laudāmus, We do not praise ourselves.

Tē non laudās, You do not praise yourself.

Vos non laudātis, You do not praise yourselves.

PRONOUNS WITH cum

When the ablative forms me, te, nobis, and vobis are used as objects of the preposition cum, they usually have cum attached as the final syllable.

mēcum, with me tēcum, with you nobiscum, with us vobiscum, with you

RENDEZVOUS WITH DEATH

Servus portāns epistulam Agamemnonis ā vigilibus captus erat, sed Agamemnon haec non audīverat. Ubi, igitur, audīvit Clytemnestram cum Īphigenīā ad castra appropinquāre, graviter motus erat, quod scīvit fīliam suam ad mortem dūcī. Itaque ad Menelāum vēnerat.

Agamemnon. Heu! Uxor mea filiam nostram mox ad mē dūcet. Ego, rēx potēns sapiēnsque, ad mortem filiam meam mitto! Jam in vincula Īphigenīa conjiciētur. Numquam iterum fēlīx laetusque ero. Hanc calamitātem timēbam. Fāta mē regunt.

10 Menelāus. Dīc eis Achillem ā castrīs abesse; Calchās in tabernāculō manēbit fīliamque non vidēbit.

Agamemnon. Sed Ulixes, vir sapiens, voluntatem deorum scit. Ego scio hunc virum potentem cum inimicis meis se jungere.

Interim Clytemnestra et Īphigenīa, ā mīlite ductae, ad Agamemnonem appropinquāverant.

Clytemnestra. Ecce, Īphigenīa, pater tuus! Laeta, Agamemnōn, tē videō. Propter imperāta tua ad castra pervēnimus.

Īphigenīa. Ō pater, iter erat dūrum. Heu! Tū es maestus! Nonne putās Achillem mē in mātrimonium dūcere dēbēre? Putō Achillem esse virum potentem, sapientem, fēlīcem. Fēlīx erō, uxor ducis clārissimī.

Agamemnōn. Ita, Achillēs vir fortis est. Sed Trōja est longinqua. Īphigenīa. Sciō iter esse longum; bene sciō omne bellum esse ācre. Ubi est Achillēs? Cūr ad mē nōn venit? Cūr nōs nōn salūtat?

²⁵ Agamemnōn. Achillēs cum copiis suis in litore nunc est. Mox aderit.

Hōc dictō, Agamemnōn fēminās in tabernāculum dūcit.

Agamemnōn [tabernāculō relictō]. Heu! Jam miser vīvō! Certē servus meus epistulam ad Clytemnestram nōn portāvit.

conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum,
throw, hurl

imperātum, -ī, N., command, order; imperāta facere, carry out orders, obey commands

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive at, reach

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, direct; rule vigil, vigilis, M., watchman, guard, sentinel vinculum, -ī, N., chain, bond voluntās, -ātis, F., wish, desire

15

20

MEANING OF THE PAST PERFECT

The past perfect tense represents an act which took place before some specified or suggested time in the past. The English past perfect has the auxiliary verb had.

I had carried.

You had carried.

FORMATION OF THE PAST PERFECT ACTIVE

The past perfect active of a Latin verb has the tense sign -erā-, which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are used as in the imperfect. The -ā- of the tense sign is short before the endings -m, -t, and -nt. The past perfect is formed in the same way for all four conjugations.

SINGULAR

portā'veram, I had carried porta'veras, you had carried porta'verat, he, she, it had carried

monu'eram, I had warned monu'erās, you had warned monu'erat, he, she, it had warned

PLURAL

portāverā'mus, we had carried portāverā'tis, you had carried porta'verant, they had carried

monuerā'mus, we had warned monuerā'tis, you had warned monu'erant, they had warned

PAST PERFECT PASSIVE

The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the perfect participle with the imperfect tense of sum. is true of all four conjugations.

SINGULAR

portā'tus eram, I had been carried portā'tus erās, you had been carried

mo'nitus eram, I had been warned mo'nitus erās, you had been

porta'tus erat, he, she, it had been carried been warned

mo'nitus erat, he, she, it had

PLURAL

portā'tī erāmus, we had been carried portā'tī erātis, you had been carried porta'tī erant, they had been carried

warned mo'nitī erātis, you had been mo'nitī erant, they had been

mo'nitī erāmus, we had been

warned

SURPRISE FOR ACHILLES

Māne Achillēs, qui non audiverat Clytemnestram in castra pervēnisse, pro tabernāculo Agamemnonis stetit.

Achillēs [magnā vōce]. Ubi est Agamemnōn quī exercitūs Graecōs agit? Dīc eī Achillem prō tabernāculō stāre. Omnēs sciunt mē ad hoc bellum ā Menelāō arcessītum esse. Jam pugnāre parātus, exercitus meus propter moram longam graviter dolet.

Clytemnestra ē tabernāculō venit.

Achillēs. Quem videō? Certē tū fēmina nōbilis es.

Clytemnestra. Sum Clytemnestra, conjūnx Agamemnonis. Laeta sum quod tū fīliam meam in mātrimōnium dūcēs.

Achillēs. Quid dīcis? Ego sum Achillēs. Quis dīxit mē fīliam tuam in mātrimōnium petīvisse?

Clytemnestra. Quid? Agamemnon scripserat te cupere eam in matrimonium ducere.

15 Achillēs. Ego fīliam tuam numquam arcessīvī.

Servus territus ad Clytemnestram properat.

Servus. Ō rēgīna, mala sunt ōmina! Agamemnōn in animō magnum scelus habet. In animō habet fīliam suam occīdere! Nōn sōlum āram parātam et gladium sed etiam sacerdōtem vīdī. Jam Calchās sacrificium parāverat; nunc virī animālia ad āram dūcunt. Tua

fīlia quoque sacrificābitur.

Clytemnestra. Crēdō conjugem meum īnsānum esse. Quis hoc scelus parāvīt? Achillēs, juvā nōs! Servā fīliam meam, quae uxor tua erit!

25 Achillēs [graviter excitātus]. Ō Clytemnestra, ego fīliam tuam ab omnī impetū dēfendam!

Meōs mīlitēs contrā Agamemnonem agam.

arcessõ, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, summon nõbilis, -e, noble, M. pl. as noun, the nobles

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill, slay

scelus, sceleris, N., crime; scelus facere, to commit a crime

Iphigenia, filia Agamemnonis



PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVES

You have already learned the present active infinitive.

portare, to carry

The perfect active infinitive of porto is portovisse, to have carried.

This infinitive is formed by adding -isse to the perfect stem. The present and perfect active infinitives of the model verbs of the four conjugations are:

Present: portare monere ducere audire
Perfect: portavisse monuisse duxisse audivisse

PASSIVE INFINITIVES

You are familiar with the present passive infinitive.

ı ii iii iv portārī monērī dūcī capī audīrī

The perfect passive infinitive of all verbs is made up of the perfect participle followed by esse.

r iii iv portātus esse monitus esse ductus esse captus esse audītus esse

TENSE OF INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The act expressed by the present infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as occurring at the time shown by the tense of the main verb.

Dîcit se periculum timere, He says that he fears danger.

Dîxit se periculum timere, He said that he feared danger.

The act expressed by the perfect infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as already past at the time shown by the tense of the main verb.

Hostēs fūgisse videō, I see that the enemy have fled. Hostēs fūgisse vidī, I saw that the enemy had fled.

Complete each sentence in the first column with a word or phrase from the second.

1. Juvā (a) ad portam
2. Tēcum ībimus (b) ad templum
3. Jūdex, dūc nōs (c) tē
4. Scīmus vōs sacerdōtēs habēre (d) tibi
5. Causam dolōris ducis nārrābō (e) vōbīscum



Puellam ad locum longinquum
Diana portavit

DIANA TO THE RESCUE

Agamemnōn fīliam suam amātam sacrificāre nōn dēsīderāvīt, sed putāvit deōs hoc per Calcham sacerdōtem jussisse.

Diē sacrificiī mīlitēs omnium exercituum Graecōrum in lītore Īphigenīam multās hōrās expectāvērunt, ventōs secundōs et iter fēlīx multōs mēnsēs petīverant; itaque mortem virginis nōn dolēbant.

Achillēs tamen suōs mīlītēs ad tabernācula sua redīre subitō jusserat. Ulīxēs et Menelāus, ubi audīvērunt Achillem hanc rem nōn probāre, gravīter mōtī erant.

Clytemnestra, clāmōrībus hominum audītīs, sēnsit Īphīgenīam ā mīlitībus arcesīs sītam esse. Agamemnōn tōtam noctem doluerat sed fīliam suam ē tabernāculō ad āram dūcere parābat.

Īphigenīa mātrī maestae dīxit, "Māter amāta, nūllō tempore pater meus mē sacri-

ficāre dēsīderāvit; injūriam non facit; est voluntās deorum. Non ero ignāva; cupio mīlitēs nostros contrā fortūnam malam dēfendī. Brevī tempore exercitūs Graecī ā portū ventīs secundīs nāvigābunt; Graecī victoriam habēbunt; omnēs scient mē pro patriā occīsam esse."

Ubi Agamemnon filiam ad āram dūxit, puella fortis militibus dīxit, "Sentio deos mortem meam cupere. Mortem non recūsābo."

Multae rēs ā sacerdōte parātae erant et puella in ārā posīta est. Subitō magnus clāmor audītus est magnumque lūmen in caelō apparuit (appeared). Dea Diāna aderat. Dea corpus cervae in ārā posīti quod Graecī corpus Īphigenīae esse crēdidērunt. Puellam, nūbe dēnsā tēctam, per caelum ad locum longinquum Diāna portāvit.

brevis, -e, short, brief diēs, diēī, M. and F., day ignāvus, -a, -um, idle; cowardly; M. as noun, coward portus, -ūs, M., harbor rēs, reī, F., thing, affair, fact, matter tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect tempus, temporis, N., time

FIFTH DECLENSION

Nouns of the fifth declension may be recognized by the ending -ēī (-eī after a consonant) of the genitive singular. The nominative singular always ends in -ēs.

Dies, day, is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. The other nouns of this declension are feminine, except one compound of dies.

Dies and res are the only nouns which have all the forms. The few nouns in this declension are almost always used in the singular.

For declension of dies and res, see page 315, 7.

ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

In English we sometimes use a noun without a preposition to tell how long an act or a situation continues.

We stayed in the country three days.

Sometimes we use a preposition with the noun to express this idea.

We stayed in the country for three days.

The expressions *three days* in the first sentence and *for three days* in the second mean exactly the same thing.

In Latin a word which is used to denote duration of time is regularly put in the accusative without a preposition.

Multās hōrās in īnsulā mānsī, I remained on the island many hours (or for many hours).

ABLATIVE OF TIME AT WHICH

The time at which or within which something happens is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

Eō annō pater meus tēctum aedificāvit, My father built a house that year (or in that year).

Paucis hōrīs portum vidēbit, In a few hours he will see the harbor.

Commonly these expressions of time have the preposition in or on or at in English: in that year; on the same day; at the appointed hour.

The ablative of time answers the question "When?" The accusative of duration of time answers the question "How long?"

ENGLISH NOUNS AND LATIN NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

You already know Latin nouns of the first, second, and third declensions which give us English nouns similar in form and meaning. Many fourth-declension words also have related English nouns. Some such words are spelled the same in both Latin and English.

consensus

conspectus

impetus

Other English nouns do not have the ending -us.

adventus, advent

conventus, convent

exitus, exit

From another group of fourth-declension Latin nouns come English nouns ending in -e.

domus, dome

lacus, lake (c has become k)

magistratus, magistrate

Give the English noun which corresponds to each of the following Latin nouns.

aestimatio aquaeductus avaritia census detrimentum doctrina eventus fortitudo senatus temeritas

augurium colonia

REVIEW OF UNIT IX

- I. In the following sentences translate the pronouns.
- 1. He knows that you (pl.) have seen the boys on the shore with me.
- 2. I think that Iphigenia was not sacrificed by the priest.
- 3. They had gone to the seashore for a short time on that day.
- 4. The men with whom you (sing.) contended about that matter have summoned guards.
- 5. Surely the leader knows that we have been in the city all day.
- 6. The goddess by whose order Iphigenia had been seized was Diana.
- 7. The army had refused to recognize the strangers with you (pl.).
- 8. The noble king had ruled for ten years.
- II. Translate the following verbs in the sentences above, tell what each form is, and account for the form.
- have seen (1) was sacrificed (2) had gone (3) have summoned (4)
- have been (5) had been seized (6) to recognize (7) had ruled (8)

III. Translate the following expressions of time in the sentences above: on that day (3) all day (5) for ten years (8)

IV. Give the Latin for the missing word.

- 1. Puella librum (her) habet.
- 6. Puellaelibros (their own) habent.
- 2. Puella librum (their) habet.
- 7. Puella cum amīcīs (her) vēnit.
- 3. Puella librōs (her) habet.
- 8. Puella cum amīcīs (their) vēnit.
- 4. Puella librōs (his) habet.
- 9. Puella cum amīcō (her) vēnit.
- 5. Puerī librōs (their own) habent. 10. Puella cum amīcō (their) vēnīt.

v. Find in the list below, the equivalent of each English phrase in the Latin sentences and translate the complete sentences.

āctum esse	dūxisse	fuisse	parāvisse
arcessīvisse	dēsertum esse	occīdī	trānsīsse

- 1. Crēdimus oppidum ā duce (was abandoned).
- 2. Certē fīlia nobilis (to be killed) non debet.
- 3. Scīmus bellum causam magnī dolōris (has been).
- 4. Servus dīcit sacerdōtem sacrificium (has prepared).
- 5. Menelāus ostendit Helenam ad Graecōs (had gone across).
- 6. Agamemnon dixit se Iphigeniam ad castra (had summoned).
- 7. Achilles dixit exercitum suum ad bellum (had been driven).

VI. Change each italicized word or phrase in the following sentences to a word of similar meaning, but of Latin derivation. For help, see the list of Latin words below the sentences.

- 1. The flyers made many night flights.
- 2. The chief lawmakers were not present.
- 3. Bodily punishment is unlawful in this district.
- 4. The enmity ceased soon after the arrival of the peacemakers.
- 5. The beginning paragraph of the yearly report was in large letters.
- 6. In spite of his kingly bearing he showed a spirit of brotherly comradeshib.
- 7. He replied with boldness that he was doubtful about the truthfulness of the fearful man.

absum	corpus	lēx	respondeō
annus	dubius	nox	rēx
audācia	frāter	pāx	socius
avis	hostis	prīnceps	timidus
caput	initium	regiō	vērus

X Adventures of Ulysses

After the Trojan War, the victors set out for their homes in different parts of Greece. On the way to the island of Ithaca, where his wife and son awaited him, Ulysses had many adventures. These delayed his return for ten years. The experiences of this famous Greek chief are related by the poet Homer in the Odyssey; some of them are retold here.

THE LAND OF FORGETFULNESS

Postquam nāvēs Graecōrum pauca mīlia passuum ā lītore Trōjae prōcessērunt, magna tempestās furere¹ incēpit.

Nāvis Ulīxis, vī² tempestātis ad merīdiem (south) dēlāta,³ ad lītus Libyae appulsa est. Ancorā jactā, Ulīxēs nōnnūllōs⁴ ē sociīs in terram expōnere cōnstituit. Eōs aquam referre et nātūram regiōnis cognōscere jussit.

Dum hī fontem quaerunt, ā a quibusdam incolīs vīsī sunt, quī eos

mīlle AND mīlia

The Latin word for a thousand is mīlle, an indeclinable adjective.

However, in referring to more than one thousand, Latin always uses a noun, mīlia, mīlium, which really means *thousands* and is therefore always followed by a genitive. Mīlia is declined like īnsignia.

Mille pericula vidi, I have seen a thousand dangers.

Duo mīlia hominum vīdī, I saw two thousand men.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE

The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent of space.

Multa mīlia passuum nāvigāvī, I have sailed many miles. Ad hortum suum, quī pauca mīlia passuum aberat, properāvit, He hastened to his garden, which was a few miles away.

- ¹ With tempestas, what is a good translation of furere?
- ² by force, ablative singular of irregular noun vis. See page 315, 8.
- ³ From defero. The conjugation of fero and its compounds is given on the facing page
- 4 some, several. What is the literal translation of non+nullos?
- ⁵ were seeking. The present tense is used with dum meaning while, even though the main verb denotes past tense.
- ⁶ From quidam, a certain, some. For declension, see page 324.

THE VERB fero AND ITS COMPOUNDS

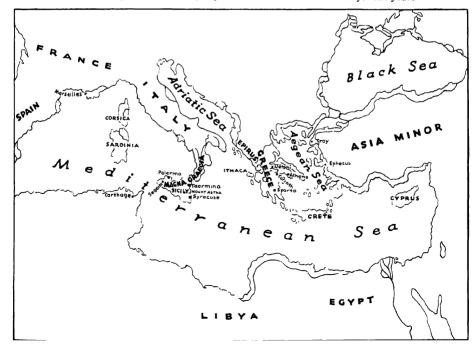
The verb fero, I carry, I bring, is irregular. Its principal parts are: fero, ferre, tuli, latum. In the present indicative it is conjugated as follows:

ACTIVE	SINGULAR	PASSIVE
ferő, I carry	f	eror, I am carried
fers, you carry	f	erris, you are carried
fert, he, she, it carries	f	ertur, he, she, it is carried
	PLURAL	
ferimus, we carry	f	erimur, we are carried
fertis, you carry	f	erimini, you are carried
ferunt, they carry	f	eruntur, they are carried

In the imperfect and future indicative ferō is conjugated as a regular -ō verb of the third conjugation ferēbam, ferēbās, etc.; feram, ferēs, etc. The perfect system is formed like that of all verbs.

Forms of two compounds of ferō—dēferō, carry down, and referō, bring back—appear on page 160. Other compounds are auferō, cōn-ferō, differō, efferō, īnferō. Observe carefully the spelling of the principal parts of these compounds as they occur.

While trying to reach Ithaca, Ulysses sailed the Mediterranean for ten years





Eos ad navem invitos reportavit

benignē accēpērunt. Cibus eōrum hominum paene omnīnō ē quōdam mīrō frūctū cōnstābat,¹ quem lōtum appellābant.

Nautae, simul atque hunc cibum gustāvērunt (tasted), memoriam patriae et sociōrum statım dēposuērunt. In eā terrā amoenā semper manēre et illum cibum dulcem (sweet) edere volēbant.²

Ulixes ab horā septimā³ ad vesperum expectāvit, sed sociī ejus non rediērunt. Id mīrum esse vidēbātur, et alıī complūres nautae in eandem⁴regionem dēnique missī sunt.

Hī ad vīcum, quī non longē aberat, iērunt, ubi comitēs suos mox io invēnērunt. Sed eī redīre ad nāvēs nolēbant.² Illīs⁵ igitur resistere ac manū sē dēfendere incēpērunt, saepe clāmantēs sē numquam ex eo loco abīre velle.². Neque patriam neque domos neque amīcos in memoriā jam habēbant. Nihil praeter lotum et illam terram amoenam dēsīderābant.

Tum nūntiī haec⁶ ad Ulīxem rettulērunt, quī statim ad eum locum sē contulit.⁷ Manūs eōrum vīnxit quī lōtum ēderant et in eā terrā manēre volēbant, et eōs ad nāvem invītōs reportāvit. Deinde ancoram sustulit⁸ et portum relīquit.

- 1 consisted (of).
- ² For volō and nōlō see the facing page. ³ What time was it? On page 271 there
- ³ What time was it? On page 271 there is an explanation of the Roman method of calculating hours.
 - ⁴ A form of idem. See the facing page.
 - Dative with resistere. See page 346, 64.
- ⁶ With rettulërunt (from referō), reported this fact. The neuter plural of hic may often be translated this or this fact.
- ⁷ made his way; literally, brought himself.
- § From tollo, raise, not from a compound of fero.

THE VERBS volā AND nālā

The principal parts of the irregular verbs volō, *I wish*, and nōlō, *I am unwilling*, are: volō, velle, voluī; nōlō, nōlle, nōluī. The stem vowel -o- in volō appears as -e- in the infinitive velle, but the -ō- of nōlō is unchanged in the infinitive nōlle.

Volo is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
volō, I wish	volumus, we wish
vīs, you wish	vultis, you wish
vult, he, she, it wishes	volunt, they wish

In the present indicative nolo is conjugated: nolo, non vis, non vult, nolumus, non vultis, nolumt.

In the imperfect and future indicative, volō and nolō are conjugated as regular -ō verbs of the third conjugation: volēbam, volēbās, etc., volam, volēs, etc.; nolēbam, nolēbās, etc., nolam, nolēs, etc. The perfect system of these verbs is formed like that of all verbs.

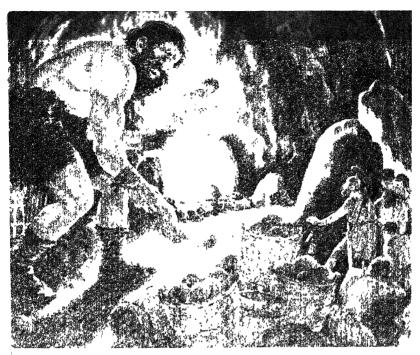
DECLENSION AND USE OF *īdem*

The declension of idem, same, is as follows:

	SI	NGULAR	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nominative:	ī'dem`	e'adem	i'dem
Genitive:	ejus'dem	ejus'dem	ejus'dem
Dative:	eī'dem	$e\bar{\imath}'$ dem	eī'dem
Accusative:	eun'dem	ean'dem	i'dem
Ablative:	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem
	P	LURAL	
Nominative:	eī'dem, ī'dem	eae'dem	e'adem
Genitive:	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
Dative:	eīs'dem, īs'dem	eīs'dem, īs'dem	eīs'dem, īs'dem
Accusative:	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
Ablative:	$e\bar{\imath}s'dem,\bar{\imath}s'dem$	eīs'dem, īs'dem	eīs'dem, īs'dem

As you will observe, the forms of idem are for the most part identical with those of is with the syllable -dem added. Before d a final -m is changed to -n.

Occasionally idem is used as a pronoun meaning the same person (neuter, idem, the same thing). But it is commonly used as an adjective in agreement with a noun.



Duos e numero eorum corripuit

A CLEVER TRICK

Postquam nautae eam tōtam noctem rēmīs contendērunt, postrīdiē ad terram ignōtam vēnērunt. Ibi gigās¹ habitābat, quī tantum² ūnum oculum habēbat. Is crūdēlissimus erat et saepe hominēs dēvorābat. Nōmen ejus erat Polyphēmus.

Ulīxēs et comitēs ejus ingēns antrum³ invēnērunt in quō Polyphēmus noctū dormiēbat, sed is tum ab antrō aberat. Graecī multās rēs quās ibi vīdērunt mīrābantur.⁴

Mox Polyphēmus rediit et Graecōs vīdīt, quamquam hī terrōre paene exanimātī in interiorem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē cēlāre cōnābantur.⁴

Sine morā duōs⁵ ē numerō eōrum corripuit. Tum carnem eōrum avidē⁶ dēvorāvit. Posterō diē duōs aliōs interfectōs dēvorāvit. Deinde

¹ The English adjective gigantic gives two clues—one to the meaning of gigas, the other to its stem Give the meaning and the stem.

² only; an adverb.

³ Anirum is a medical term used for a cavity in the skull.

⁴ A deponent verb. See facing page.

⁵ Two of their number. With ūnus, duo, and some other numerals (and also with quidam) the ablative with ex or dē is used instead of the gentive

⁶ The English derivative is *avidly* What synonym is better here?

DEPONENT VERBS

Some Latin verbs are passive in form but active in meaning, e.g., conor, *I try*; polliceor, *I promise*. These are called *deponent verbs*. They have only three principal parts:

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE
conor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum
polliceor	pollicērī	pollicitus sum

Deponents have only two stems, the present and the participial.

Their present and perfect infinitives are passive in form, active in meaning; the future infinitives are active in both form and meaning.

- I. conārī, to try; conātus esse, to have tried; conātūrus esse, to be about to try
- II. pollicērī, to promise; pollicitus esse, to have promised; pollicitūrus esse, to be about to promise

The present indicative of deponents of the first and second conjugations is formed exactly like the present passive of portō and moneō.

I SINGULAI	II R			
cōnor, I try	polliceor, I promise			
cōnāris, you try	pollicēris, you promise			
cōnātur, he, she, it tries	pollicētur, he, she, it promises			
PLURAL				
cōnāmur, we try	pollicēmur, we promise			
cōnāminī, you try	pollicēminī, you promise			
conantur, they try	pollicentur, they promise			

In the imperfect and future, the use of tense signs and person endings is the same as in the passive of portō and moneō: cōnābar, etc., cōnābor, etc.; pollicēbar, etc., pollicēbor, etc.

The perfect tense of deponent verbs of the first and second conjugations is formed like the perfect passive of portō and moneō.

	**			
SING	ULAR ⁶			
conātus sum, I tried, I have tried	pollicitus sum, I promised, etc.			
cōnātus es, you tried, you have tried	pollicitus es, you promised, etc.			
conatus est, he, she, it tried, etc.	pollicitus est, he, she, it promised, etc.			
PLURAL				
conātī sumus, we tried, we have tried	polliciti sumus, we promised, etc.			

cōnātī sumus, we tried, we have tried pollicitī sumus, we promised, etc.
cōnātī estis, you tried, you have tried pollicitī estis, you promised, etc.
cōnātī sunt, they tried, etc.

ex antrō excessit et ovēs caprōsque (*sheep and goats*) ad montēs ēgit¹ ubi eōs pāscēbat (*he pastured*). Ulīxēs autem dolum callidum fēcit. Magnum pālum, quem praeacūtum effēcerat, in igne posuit.

Tum gigās, quī sub² vesperum in antrum redierat, multum vīnum bibit³ et mox somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulīxēs et comitēs ejus Polyphēmum circumvēnērunt et oculum ejus pālō acūtō trānsfōdērunt (gouged out). Gigās magnōs clāmōrēs sustulit⁴ et in antrō vagātus est, sed quod jam caecus erat, Graecōs capere nōn poterat.⁵

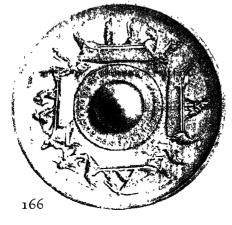
Porta antrī autem magnō saxō obstrūcta est, neque Graecī hoc saxum āmovēre poterant.⁵ Sed posterō diē māne⁶ Polyphēmus saxum āmōvīt et pecudēs ex antrō mīsīt. Tum Graecī effūgērunt. Tūtī ad nāvēs contendērunt et statim profectī sunt.⁷

CONJUGATION OF possum

The verb possum, *I am able* or *I can*, is irregular. It is a compound of sum and the adjective potis, *able*. In the present system in the indicative mood it is conjugated as follows. Notice its similarity to sum.

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
possum	poteram	poterō
potes	poterās	poteris
potest	poterat	poterit
possumus	plural poterāmus	poterimus
potestis	poterātis	poteritis
possunt	poterant	poterunt

The principal parts are possum, posse, potui. The perfect is formed like that of regular verbs: potui, I have been able, potuisti, you have been able, etc.



- 1 drove, from ago.
- 2 toward.
- ³ Compare English winebibber.
- 4 From tollō.
- ⁵ A form of possum, given on this page.
- ⁶ the next morning; literally, on the next day in the morning.
- ⁷ they set out, from the deponent verb proficiscor, proficisci. For its forms, see the conjugation of sequor on the facing page.

A Greek tray showing some of Ulysses' adventures

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

The present tense of deponents of the third and fourth conjugations is formed like the present passive of dūcō and audiō.

III IV SINGULAR

sequeris, you follow sequeris, he, she, it follows

partiris, you share partītur, he, she, it shares

PLURAL

sequimur, we follow sequimini, you follow sequintur, they follow partīmur, we share partīminī, you share partiuntur, they share

The present and perfect infinitives of deponents of the third and fourth conjugations are also passive in form and active in meaning, while the future infinitives are active in both form and meaning.

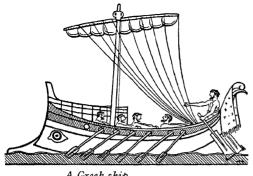
- III. sequi, to follow; secutus esse, to have followed; secuturus esse, to be about to follow
- IV. partīrī, to share; partītus esse, to have shared; partītūrus esse, to be about to share

In the imperfect and future indicative the use of tense signs and person endings is the same as in the passive of the corresponding tenses of dūcō and audiō: sequēbar, sequēbāris, etc., sequar, sequēris, etc.; partiēbar, partiēbāris, etc., partiar, partiēris, etc.

There are also deponent verbs corresponding to the -iō verbs of the third conjugation. An example is prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, proceed. It is conjugated like the passive of capiō: prōgredior, prōgrederis, etc.

The perfect system of all deponent verbs is like that of the regular passive system of other verbs: conātus sum, conātus eram, conātus ero, etc.; pollicitus sum, pollicitus eram, pollicitus ero, etc.; secūtus sum, secūtus eram, secūtus ero, etc.; partītus sum, partītus eram, partītus ero, etc.

Remember that the perfect participle of a deponent verb is active in meaning, as secutus, having followed.



A Greek ship

TOO MUCH WIND

ost multõs dies Ulixes sociique eius ad aliam insulam pervēnērunt, in quā rēx, Aeolus nōmine.1 habitābat. Aeolus ven-5 tos regebat, et insula ejus erat patria ventōrum.

Hīc Graecī benignē ab Aeolō acceptī sunt, et paucōs dies ibi mānsērunt. Septimo die quod omnes e laboribus se receperant, iterum proficīscī volēbant.

Tum rex Ulixi magnum saccum e corio (of leather) confectum dedit. in quō omnēs ventī praeter ūnum inclūsī erant. Hoc dōnum Ulīxēs libenter accepit. Ille ūnus quem rex non inclūserat erat Zephyrus. Meridiē Graeci discessērunt, et Zephyrus eos per flūctūs ferēbat.

Novem dies cursum tenuerunt atque jam in conspectum Ithacae³ 15 vēnerant. Sed comitēs Ulīxis putābant aurum et argentum in eō saccō cēlārī. Hās rēs ınter sē partīrī4 volēbant.

Itaque dum dux eorum dormit, saccum solverunt. Statim e sacco venti ērūpērunt, et magna tempestās coorta est. Ulixēs, ē somnō excitātus, vidīt nāvem in periculō esse et Ithacam post 20 tergum relictam. Ille īrātissimus erat.

Sed nūllum auxilium invēnit, et tempestās Graecos ad īnsulam Aeolī rettulit.6 Aeolus dīxit omnēs deōs Ulīxī et comitibus ejus inimīcos esse, atque Graecos iterum juvāre nolēbat.

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

The ablative without a preposition is used to show in what respect a statement is true.

> Hae gentes inter se lingua different, These nations differ from one another (lit., among themselves) in language.

> In ĭnsulā rēx, Aeolus nomine, habitābat, On the island lived a king named (lit., by name) Aeolus.

¹ Ablative of respect, explained on this page.

² With sē, had recovered.

³ Ulysses' home was on the island of Ithaca, west of the Greek mainland.

⁴ From partior, a deponent verb. What English verb is related?

⁵ What tense is used with dum meaning while?

⁶ From referō.



Magna tempestas coorta est



Deus Mercurius

ESCAPE FROM A SORCERESS

Ulixēs cāsum suum dolēns¹ ā rēgnō Aeolī cum comitibus discessit et ad aliam īnsulam pervēnit, quam Circē, fīlia Sōlis, incolēbat.

Graecī ibi frūmentum petere constituērunt, quod copia frūmentī in nāve deficiebat. Nonnūllī nautae igitur frūmentum pro se et pro sociīs petentes in partem interiorem insulae profectī sunt.

Mox ad villam pulcherrimam vēnērunt. Ibi vocem fēminae cantantis audivērunt. Jānuā

pulsātā, ipsa² Circē Graecōs salūtāvīt et benignē accēpīt.

Sed ūnus ex eīs, Eurylochus nōmine,³ dolum timēns, nōn cum reliquīs intrāvit, sed ad ōstium sedēbat et manēbat. Nautae autem 5 quī intrāverant, cupidī cenandī,⁴ cēnam magnificam parātam invēnērunt.

Sed Circē, quae magicae artis summam scientiam habēbat, vīnum eīs dedit in quō medicāmentum⁵ quoddam posuerat. Tum postquam

DECLENSION AND USE OF ipse

The word ipse means myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, or themselves. It is used for emphasis.

Dux ipse fügit, The leader himself fled.

In this sentence, ipse is masculine singular nominative, to agree with dux. The word ipse always agrees in gender, number, and case with the word to which it refers.

It is translated myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, or ourselves, yourselves, themselves, according to the person, gender, and number of the word to which it refers.

Ipse is declined like ille (p. 67), except that the neuter singular ends in -um in the nominative and accusative. (See page 321, 28.)

¹ grieving over.

² A form of ipse, explained on this page

³ Ablative of respect. See page 168.

⁴ For explanation and declension of the gerund, see the facing page.

⁵ drug, compare English medicine.

Do not confuse the word ipse with the reflexive pronoun. Remember that the reflexive pronoun cannot be omitted without changing the thought of the sentence, whereas ipse merely gives additional emphasis.

THE GERUND

As we have already seen, the English present participle ends in -ing.

The boy standing in the street is my brother.

In the preceding sentence, *standing* tells something about the *boy* and is therefore a participle.

There is, however, another verb form in English which ends in -ing.

I am fond of fishing.

In the sentence above, *fishing* is the object of the preposition of and is therefore used as a noun. Such a verb form used as a noun is called a *gerund*.

The Latin gerund is declined as a neuter noun of the second declension. It is formed on the present stem as it appears in the present participle. It has no nominative and is used only in the singular.

	I	II	III	IV
Gen.	portandi	monendī	dücendī	audiendī
Dat.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō
Acc.	portandum	monendum	dūcendum	audiendum
Abl.	portandō	monendõ	dūcendō	audiendõ

The gerund of capiō is declined like that of audiō: capiendī, etc.

The genitive of a gerund is used with adjectives or nouns and is translated of carrying, of warning, etc.

cupidī cēnandī, desirous of eating

The genitive of the gerund is also frequently employed with the ablative causa, for the sake of, for the purpose of.

effugiendī causā, for the purpose of escaping

The dative of the gerund does not often occur. The accusative is used only with prepositions. The ablative is also used with prepositions. The ablative without a preposition is translated by carrying or with carrying, etc.



Ilysses and his men in the house of Circe

Graecī vīnum bibērunt, Circē capita eōrum virgā (with a wand) aureā tetigit.¹ Statim omnēs ın porcōs conversī sunt.

Eurylochus, quī extrā ātrium sedēbat neque vīnum biberat, sine morā ad Ulīxem contendit atque haec omnia nūntiāvit. Ulīxēs, ubi haec audīvit, gladium cēpit et in īnsulam prōgressus est. Ad vīllam Circae statim accessūrus² erat.

Sed deus Mercurius eum convēnit et dē arte magicā Circae omnia docuit. Herbam quandam quoque eī dedit dīxitque hanc herbam contrā artem magicam maximē valēre.³

Post breve tempus Ulīxēs in cōnspectum villae vēnīt. Ibi Circam vīdit et eam dē comitibus suīs interrogāvit. Circē eum quoque per magicam artem suam in porcum vertere cōnāta⁴ est, sed propter herbam illam⁵ nihil efficere potuit. Deinde Ulīxēs gladium dēstrīnxīt et eam interfectūrus erat. Circē, magnopere territa, veniam petīvīt, et eōs porcōs quī hominēs fuerant in propriam fōrmam hūmānam convertit.

Sine morā omnēs Graecī magnō cum gaudiō ad lītus rediērunt et statim ex īnsulā discessūrī erant. Sed Circē, quae nunc benigna facta erat,⁶ magna beneficia Ulīxī et comitibus ejus dabat; et per ūnum annum ibi mānsērunt.

Tum propter dēsīderium (longing) patriae et amīcorum quī in Ithacā eos expectābant, Ulīxēs comitēsque ex īnsulā discēdendī cupidī erant. Nāvem celeriter refēcērunt, quae tempestāte afflīcta erat, et omnia ad proficīscendum⁸ parāvērunt.

Tum nautae vēla ad ventōs pandērunt et rēmōs rapuērunt. Ventī secundī vēla implēbant, et nāvis per flūctūs celeriter cucurrit.

Sed posteā in nāvīgandō Graecī in alia perīcula incidērunt, et omnēs praeter Ulīxem vītam āmīsērunt.

- 1 From tango, touch
- ² The future active participle is explained on the facing page.
 - ³ With maxime, was very powerful.
- ⁴ Notice that conāta agrees with Circe, its subject.
- ⁵ For special emphasis a form of ille may follow the word it modifies.
 - 6 had become.
 - 7 of departing; a gerund
- ⁸ A deponent verb may have all the forms of the gerund.

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Latin verbs have a future active participle formed on the participial stem. It is declined like the perfect passive participle, from which it differs by having -ūr- before the case ending.

portātūrus, -a, -um, about to carry or going to carry monitūrus, -a, -um, about to warn or going to warn

Some verbs which have no perfect passive participle have a future active participle. The future active participle of such verbs is given as the fourth principal part. The future participle of sum is futurus. The principal parts of sum are sum, esse, fuī, futurus. The fourth of the principal parts of stō is stātūrus.

The future participle is often combined with forms of sum to refer to something which someone intends to do or is about to do.

Mānsūrus eram, I was about to remain, or I intended to remain. Laudātūrus est, He is about to praise, or He intends to praise.

FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

The future active infinitive consists of the future active participle with esse.

portātūrus esse monitūrus esse ductūrus esse audītūrus esse The act expressed by the future infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as future in relation to the time denoted by the main verb.

Puer dīcit frātrem ventūrum esse, The boy says that his brother will come or is going to come.

Puer dixit fratrem venturum esse, The boy said that his brother would come or was going to come.

The future infinitive is regularly translated with *shall* or *will* after a main verb in the present tense and with *should* or *would* after a main verb in any past tense.

Translate the italicized words: 1. The young man said that he had hidden all weapons. 2. About to sail, we sent messages to our friends. 3. We knew that the sailors would sail at daybreak. 4. I believe that our leader will drive us into a dangerous matter. 5. We heard daily that the barbarians would take many towns by storm.

HOME AT LAST!

Decem annōs Ulīxēs circum mūrōs Trōjae pugnāverat. Posteā decem annōs propter īram deōrum in multīs terrīs errāre coāctus erat, quamquam dea Athēna prōmīserat eum ad patriam suam tūtum reditūrum esse.

Dēnique autem post multōs cāsūs Ulīxēs ad Ithacam pervēnit. Nēmō eum recognōvit, quod dea Athēna vestēs ejus et faciem (features) mūtāverat. Omnēs crēdidērunt eum esse mendicum.

Itaque Ulīxēs casam Eumaeī, pāstōris fidēlis, petīvit, sed subitō canēs ferī impetum in eum fēcērunt. Magnā cum difficultāte
10 Eumaeus canēs lapidibus reppulit Ulīxemque servāvit. Celeriter eum in casam dūxit et eī cibum vīnumque dedit.

Tum Ulīxēs, acceptūrus haec dōna, dīxit, "Cūr es mihi, hominī miserō, benignus? Nūllam pecūniam habeō, sed mihi cibum vīnumque dedistī. Dominus tuus erit īrātus; tē culpābit."

Eumaeus autem respondit, "Ille benignus erat et semper mendicōs juvābat; tamen nōn jam domī adest. Vīgintī¹ annōs dominum nostrum expectāvimus. Ejus uxor et fīlius Tēlemachus crēdunt eum ad tēctum suum reditūrum esse."

Tum Ulīxēs dīxit, "Suntne Tēlemachus et rēgīna in rēgiā?"

Eumaeus respondit, "Tēlemachus Ithacam relīquit; dīxit sē patrem suum petītūrum esse. Pēnelopē Ulīxem expectat. Cotīdiē in rēgiā texit. Pallā factā, conjugem alium accipere cōgētur. Itaque interdiū texit; noctū pallam textam retexit.²

"Cotīdiē procī hūc veniunt et animālia, frūmentum, vīnum dominī meī cōnsūmunt, sed mihi pecūniam nōn dant. Jam Pēnelopē territa est, quod procī dīcunt ūnum ē numerō suō brevī tempore eam in mātrimōnium ductūrum esse."

FATHER AND SON

Tēlemachus quidem per omnēs urbēs Graeciae iter fēcerat, sed nēmō prō certō dīcere potuerat patrem Ulīxem esse vīvum.

Dēnique dea Athēna in somniō Tēlemachum dē perīculō mātris suae, Pēnelopae, monuerat; itemque dīxerat procōs malōs in animō eum interficere habere.

Tēlemachus autem ad patriam suam statim redīre cōnstituit. Sed quod sciēbat procōs adventum suum expectāre, in portum nōn intrāre

¹ With annos, For twenty years. For the form of Viginti, see page 319, 22.

potuit. Nāve relictā, ante prīmam lūcem solus ad casam Eumaei, pāstoris fidēlis, processit.

Hīc Eumaeus et mendicus ignem accenderant cıbumque parābant. Vōce hominis audītā, Eumaeus ad portam properāvit.

Ubi Tēlemachum vīdit, juvenem magnō cum gaudiō nōmine appellāvit. Tēlemachus dē mātre et dē procīs atque dē rēgnō et dē multīs et alıīs rēbus rogāvit, dolēbatque quod pater ad Ithacam nōn redierat.

Dēnique dīxit, "Ego propter suspīcionem procorum in casā tuā totum diem manēbo; tū, Eumaee, ī¹ ad tēctum meum et dīc mātrī 10 meae mē tūtum rediisse."

Eumaeus omnēs hās rēs fēcit. Interim Athēna iterum vestem et faciem (*face*) Ulīxis mūtāvit.

Tēlemachus quidem clāmāvit ubi hominem tam mūtātum vīdit, "Tū es deus! Tū nōs juvāre potes! Nōlī² nōs relinquere!"

Ulīxēs fīliō suō respondit, "Nōlī timēre! Nōn deus sum; sum pater tuus, quī post multōs cāsūs rediī. Tempus est breve; necesse est nōs procōs interficere et mātrem tuam līberāre. Tū, Tēlemache, ad rēgiam redī,¹ explōrā omnia; es¹ fortis!

"Paucīs hōrīs ego mendicus ad tēctum veniam. Tum tībi signum dabō. Hōc signō vīsō, ī sēcrētō et portā omnia arma ex ātriō. Sed relinque prope portam duo scūta valida, duās hastās, duōs gladīos; hīs armīs impetum mēcum facere poteris; hodiē procōs occīdēmus."

IMPERATIVE OF $e\bar{o}$ AND sum

The imperatives of eō are ī (singular) and īte (plural). Compounds of eō form their imperatives like the simple verb, for example, trānsī, trānsīte.

The imperatives of sum are es (singular) and este (plural).

Es fortis, Be brave. Este fortes, Be brave.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

A command not to do an act is expressed by noli for the singular and nolite for the plural, followed by the infinitive.

Singular: Nölī redīre, Do not return. Plural: Nölīte redīre, Do not return.

1.5

¹ This imperative form is explained on this page.

² The use of noli in negative commands is explained on this page

HIS OWN WIFE DIDN'T KNOW HIM

Ulixēs, mendicus, veste iterum mūtātā, ad rēgiam vēnerat. Jussū patrīs, Tēlemachus arma parāverat. Ulixēs ipse in ātrīo cum servīs mānsīt guod sciēbat Pēnelopam brevī tempore adfutūram esse.

Pēnelopē, ubi in ātrium intrāvit, omnēs servōs servāsque dīmīsit praeter nūtrīcem longaevam, cui dīxit, "Cāra nūtrīx, ubi omnēs servī discesserint," dūc'ad mē mendicum. Certē iter fēcit in regionibus ipsīs ubi conjūnx meus errāvit."

Jussū nūtrīcis Ulīxēs ad rēgīnam ipsam appropinquāvit. Pēnelopē sine suspīcione eī dīxit, "Noctū et ınterdiū doleo quod Ulīxēs, conjūnx amātus meus, ā terrā Trojānā non rediit. Certē in longinquīs terrīs errāvistī. Vīdistīne eum?"

Ulīxēs Pēnelopae respondit, "Ōlim in Crētā virum quem comitēs Ulīxem appellābant vīdī. Vestem purpuream (*purple*) cum fībulā aureā gerēbat. In hāc fībulā erant figūrae canis et cervī parvī."

Pēnelopē lacrimāvit quod vestem et fībulam recognōvit. Deinde dīxit, "Certē conjugem meum ipsum vīdistī. Illam vestem et illam fībulam Ulīxī ipsa dedī."

Ulīxēs respondit, "Sciō Ulīxem hōc annō ad patriam ventūrum esse."
Pēnelopē, magnō gaudiō mōta, jussit nūtrīcem pedēs mendicī lavāre.
Nūtrīx fīda, ubi pedēs Ulīxis lavāre incēpit, lātam cicātrīcem (scar) recognōvit.

Magnopere excitāta, parvā voce eī dīxit, "Rediistī, Ulīxēs."

Ulīxēs quidem celerīter respondit, "Nōlī clāmāre. Ego sum Ulīxēs. Nōlī appellāre mē nōmine meō."

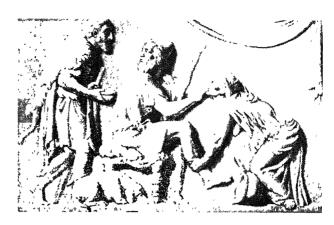
Pēnelopē, quae haec verba nōn audīverat, dīxit, "Crās procī mē conjugem novum dēligere cōgent. Crās arcum in ātrium portārī jubēbō. Ille quī arcum Ulīxis tendere potuerit, mē in mātrimōnium dūcet."



¹ Future active infinitive. See page 173

² For this form, see the facing page

Telemachus and Penelope



Ulysses and the old nurse

MEANING OF THE FUTURE PERFECT

The *future perfect tense* represents an act to be completed before some specified or suggested time in the future.

I shall have finished the work in two weeks.

In English the future perfect is used less often than the other tenses. In Latin it is used somewhat more frequently than in English

FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE

The future perfect active of a Latin verb has the tense sign -eri-, which is added to the perfect stem. The person endings are used as in the present tense. The future perfect is formed in the same way for all four conjugations.

SINGULAR

portă'verō, I shall have carried portă'veris, you will have carried portă'verit, he, she, it will have carried

monu'erō, I shall have warned monu'eris, you will have warned monu'erit, he, she, it will have warned

PLURAL

portave'rimus, we shall have carried portave'ritis, you will have carried porta'verint, they will have carried monue'rimus, we shall have warned monue'ritis, you will have warned monu'erint, they will have warned

Notice that the -i- of the tense sign disappears before -ō- in the first person singular.



Ulysses

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

The future perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the perfect participle of the verb with the future indicative of sum. This is true of all four conjugations.

SINGULAR

portā'tus erō, I shall have been	mo'nitus erō, I shall have been
carried	warned
portā'tus eris, you will have	mo'nitus eris, you will have
been carried	been warned
portā'tus erit, he, she, it will	mo'nitus erit, he, she, it will
have been carried	have been warned

PLURAL

portā'tī erimus, we shall have	mo'nitī erimus, we shall have
been carried	been warned
portā'tī eritis, you will have	mo'nitī eritis, you will have
been carried	been warned
portā'tī erunt, they will have	mo'nitī erunt, they will have
been carried	been warned

PERFECT SYSTEM

You have now met all three tenses of the perfect system: the perfect, the past perfect, and the future perfect.

ACTIVE

Perfect = perfect stem + special person endings (-ī, -istī, etc.). Past perfect = perfect stem + -erā - + regular person endings. Future perfect = perfect stem + -eri - + regular person endings.

PASSIVE

Perfect = perfect passive participle with present tense of sum.

Past perfect = perfect passive participle with imperfect of sum.

Future perfect = perfect passive participle with future of sum.

DOUBLE VICTORY

Postrīdiē eīdem procī ad magnum ātrium properāvērunt. Quisque (each one) quidem crēdidit Pēnelopam sē conjugem dēlēctūram esse. Ulixēs, quī eandem vestem mendicī gerēbat, in ātriō aderat.

Tum procī dīxērunt, "Multōs annōs, Tēlemache, patrem tuum expectāvistī; propter amōrem patris honōrem tibi rēctē dedimus, 5 mātremque tuam in mātrimōnium contrā voluntātem dūcī nōn coēgimus. Sed jam prō certō scīmus Ulīxem numquam reditūrum esse."

Interım Pēnelopē arcum Ulīxis et sagittās, arma gravia, in magnum ātrium portāvit.

Tum procīs dīxit, "Audīte mē, procī nōbilēs. Nūntiāvistis ūnum ē 10 numerō vestrō conjugem meum futūrum esse. Ecce, īdem arcus et eaedem sagittae quae Ulīxēs ōlim portābat! Ille quī hunc arcum tendere potuerit, mē in mātrimōnium rēctē dūcet."

Quamquam omnēs temptāvērunt, nēmō arcum tendere poterat. Subitō mendicus dīxit, "Dā mihi arcum."

Sine difficultāte arcum tetendit; deinde magnā võce clāmāvit, "Multa mīlia passuum nāvigāvī, contrā mīlle pericula mē dēfendī. Jam ego Ulixēs ipse adsum!"

Hīs verbīs audītīs, Tēlemachus arma cēpit et patrī auxilium dedit; eōdem tempore servī fīdī et cīvēs, quī sēcrētō arcessītī erant, ātrium 20 intrāvērunt ācriterque pugnāre incēpērunt. Omnibus procīs interfectīs, Pēnelopē fidēlis ad Ulīxem, conjugem amātum, properāvit.

- I. Use a form of a word in the list below to complete each of the following sentences:
 - 1. Ulīxēs dīcīt sē in rēgiam īre ___ . (is able)
 - 2. Scīmus procōs in casam Eumaeī nōn $_$. (will enter)
 - 3. Nēmo sēnsit mendicum esse Ulīxem ipsum $_$. (could)
 - 4. Nūntiā Tēlemachō Ulīxem rēgiam __ . (has entered)
 - Nēmō, quidem, scit Ulīxem arcum in ātriō __ . (will bend)
 - 6. Cīvēs ātrium ... (entered)
 - Tēlemachus patrī auxilium dare ___. (was able)

intrō possum tendō



CHANGES OF SPELLING IN LATIN COMPOUNDS

You know many Latin compound words made by adding a prefix to a simple word.

absum contradico desisto refero

In these words there is no change in spelling.

In some compounds the last sound of a prefix becomes the same as the first sound of the word to which it is attached.

ad + fero = affero dis + fero = differo ex + fero = efferoWhat Latin words are made from the combinations below?

ad + pello = ad + tuli = ex + fluo = ex + fugio =

Give the meaning of each of the resulting verbs.

This change is called assimilation. It is interesting to notice that the name itself (from ad, to + simils, like) is an example of the change which it describes.

To what Latin compound is each of the following words related?

conferdifferofferreferdeferinferprogresstransfer

In addition to a change in the prefix, there may be a change in the simple word when it becomes part of a compound.

ad + facio = afficio re- + capio = recipio

In both these words -a- has become -i-. When a prefix is added to a word which has short -a- at the end of the first syllable (as in fa-ci-o), this -a- usually becomes -i-.

What will be the spelling of the Latin word made from each of these combinations? Give the meaning of each compound you make.

de + facio = ob + cado = per + facio =de + jacio = per + capio = pro + habeo =

However, if the short -a- of the simple word is followed by a consonant in the same syllable, the -a- often becomes -e-.

ad + captus = acceptus ad + capio = accipio com- + factus = confectus com- + facio = conficio

Give the correct form for each of the following compounds and tell how you made it.

com - + jacio = ex + facio = in + capio = re - + facio = com - + jactus = ex + factus = in + captus = re - + factus = com -

REVIEW OF UNIT X

- I. Find words in the list to complete each sentence.
- 1. Postero die complures homines de (the course) quaerere (began).
- 2. Comites (followed) ducem suum in antrum ubi ingens gigas, Polyphēmus (by name), habitābat.
- 3. Nauta, cupidus (of escaping), ad vīcum proficīscī (was unwilling).
- 4. (For the purpose of making) impetum, Graeci (had gathered) saxa.

contulerant	effugere	incēpērunt	nōmine
contulerint	effugiendī	nõlēbat	secūtī sunt
cursū	faciendī causā	nōmen	sequuntur

- II. In the following sentences, change the number of all nouns and verbs and make other changes necessary.
 - Dormi bene.
 - 2. Frange foedus statim.
 - 3. Removēte spīnās ā pedibus vestrīs.
 - 4. Dūc fugitīvos ad forum.
 - 5. Adorna haec aedificia.
 - 6. Dā mihi aut agrum aut vīllam.
- III. Change the following direct quotations into indirect quotations and account for the new form of the verb in each sentence.
 - 1. Homō dīxit, "Ego tē vidēbam."
 - 2. Puer clāmat, "Ursa equum necat."
 - 3. Puella clāmāvit, "Servī captī sunt."
 - 4. Imperator dīcit, "Mīles urbem cēpit."
 - 5. Fēmina dīxit, "Eī agricolam vocābant."
 - IV. Find in column B the Latin for each English phrase.

- 1. he will have recovered (a) ancoram jaciēbāmus
- 2. I remembered
- (b) ancoram tollent

3. it fails

- (c) in memoriā habuī
- 4. it had been produced
- (d) dēficit
- 5. they will weigh anchor (e) effectum erat
- 6. we were casting anchor (f) se receperit

When Ulysses reached Ithaca, he was welcomed by two faithful servants



XI The Quest of the Golden Fleece

One of the favorite stories of antiquity, handed down by the Greeks and retold by the Romans, dealt with a fleece that had magic powers. To secure this fleece Jason sailed in the famous Argo, with his men, who were called Argonautae (Argo+nautae). You are now going to read about some of his adventures.

THE FLEECE REACHES COLCHIS

eetes, rex Colchidis, vellus aureum a manu Phrixi accepit. Deinde 🦰 fābulam mīram nārrātam ab illō juvene guī advena ad rēgiam vēnerat audīvit.

"Arietem magicum qui hoc vellus gerēbat deīs sacrificāvī," dīxit Phrixus. "Tūtus ad hanc urbem ab ıllō ariete trānsportātus sum. Mea soror Hellē autem territa ā tergō animālis cecidit et in marī āmissa est."

"Cūr ab ariete aureō ita trānsportābāminī?" rēx rogāvit.

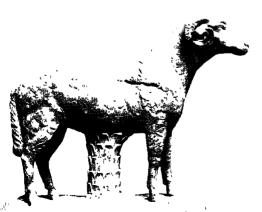
Juvenis maestus respondit, "Fugiēbāmus ā novercā (stepmother) nostrā, quae est fēmina crūdēlis et odiōsa. Cum ılla in animō mē sõlum interficere habēret,¹ soror tamen mea quoque illam timēbat."

"Ubi arietem aureum invēnistis?" Aeētēs iterum rogāvit.

"Mercurius, perīculum vidēns, auxilium dedit," respondit juvenis. "Ille deus benignus nobis arietem mirum dedit, in cujus tergo 15 celeriter fügimus. Maximē tamen doleō quod Hellē mortua est."

Hīs audītīs, rēx juvenem benignē accēpit. Dōnum quod Phrixus portāverat rēgī grātissimum erat. Itaque ille in rēgiā habitāvit et mox in mātrimonium fīliam rēgis dūxit.

Interim donum pretiosum—vellus aureum—in silvā sacrā pendē-20 bat; noctū et ınterdiū dracō ıngēns hoc vellus custōdıēbat. Ōrāculum rēgem monuerat vellus pro salūte rēgnī servārī intāctum dē-



bēre. Multī vellus pulchrum capere temptāverant; omnēs ā dracone interfecti erant.

Itaque, vellere tūtō, Aeētēs crēdidit sē esse fēlīcissimum.

1 This form and usage are explained on the facing page

This marble figure, made by a Roman sculptor, stands in the museum of Toledo, Ohio

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The indicative mood of the verb, as has already been explained, is used to state a fact or to ask a question which implies as answer a statement of fact.

The Latin verb has also a mood called the *subjunctive*. This mood is most frequently used in subordinate clauses. No general statement can be given as to how the Latin subjunctive is translated. Its translation in different kinds of clauses will be explained as needed.

The Latin subjunctive has only four tenses, present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect. The forms of the imperfect are given here.

ACTIVE OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive of all Latin verbs can be formed by adding the regular person endings to the present active infinitive. Notice the long vowels before some of the endings.

I	II	III		IV
		SINGULAR		
portārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audirem
portārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
portāret	monēret	dūceret	caperet	audiret
		PLURAL		
portārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
portārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
portārent	monērent	dücerent	caperent	audīrent

SUBJUNCTIVE IN cum CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

A subordinate clause introduced by cum meaning although has its verb in the subjunctive. The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative.

Cum noverca nostra in animō mē sõlum interficere habēret, soror tamen mea quoque illam timēbat, Although our stepmother intended to kill only me, my sister, too, was afraid of her.

Cum intellegerent dolorem ejus falsum esse, fābulam tamen dē morte puerī fīnxērunt, Although they knew his grief was pretended, still they made up a story about the boy's death.

Frequently tamen is found in the main clause to which a concessive clause is attached.

JASON COMES TO COURT

Erant eō tempore in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, Aesōn et Peliās. Hōrum Aesōn prīmus rēgnum obtinuerat. At post paucōs annōs Peliās, cupiditāte rēgnī adductus,¹ frātrem suum expulit, atque in animō habēbat Jāsonem, Aesonis fīlium, interficere.

Noctū tamen amīcī patris Jāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent,² eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās, cum haec audīvisset, etsī, rē vērā³ magnum gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praebuit et causam mortis quaesīvit. Illī tamen, cum bene intellegerent dolōrem ejus falsum esse, nesciō quam fābulam⁴ dē morte puerī fīnxērunt.

DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

The imperfect or the past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when*. Such a clause describes the situation in which the act of the main clause takes place.

The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative.

Cum ad regem redissent, er renuntiaverunt puerum mortuum esse, When they had returned to the king, they reported to him that the boy was dead.

PASSIVE OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

I	11	I	II	IV
		SINGULAR		
portărer	monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
portārētur	monērētur	dücerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
		PLURAL		
portārēmur	monērēmur	dücerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
portārēminī	monērēminī	dücerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
portārentur	monērentur	dücerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

Observe that -e- is long before the endings of the second person singular and the first and second person plural in both active and passive and in the third person singular of the passive.

influenced by desire for royal power

² In this paragraph there are three uses of the subjunctive; with cum meaning when (ll. 6, 7) and with cum meaning although

^{(1 9).} These uses are explained on this page and on page 183.

³ really, in fact.

¹ some story or other.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF sum and possum

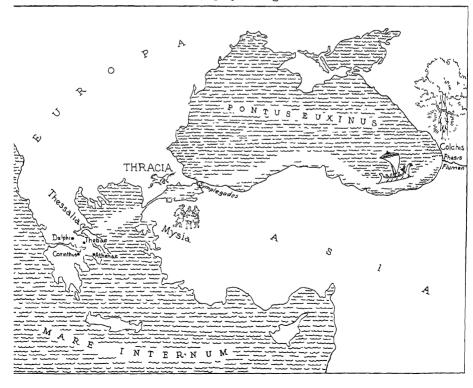
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

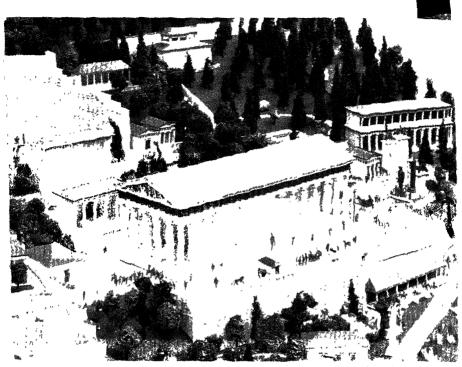
PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The past perfect subjunctive active of all verbs, regular and irregular, is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign -issē.

I	II	111	IV
	SINGU	LAR	
portāvissem portāvissēs portāvisset	monuissem monuissēs monuisset	dūxissem dūxissēs dūxisset	audīvissem audīvissēs audīvisset
PLURAL			
portāvissēmus portāvissētis portāvissent	monuissēmus monuissētis monuissent	dūxissēmus dūxissētis dūxissent	audīvissēmus audīvissētis audīvissent

Voyage of the Argo





A reconstruction of the sacred inclosure at Delphi, where the oracle spoke

Peliās, cum rēgnum tantā vī et fraude, occupātum esset, i perīculum veritus est, et amīcum quendam Delphōs² ad ōrāculum mīsit.

Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs² sē contulit et quam ob causam³ vēnisset¹ dēmônstrāvit.

Örāculum hoc responsum ad rēgem mīsit, "Nūllum est in praesentiā (for the present) perīculum. Sed hominem ūnum calceum gerentem cavē."

Post paucos annos rex Pelias magnum sacrificium facere volebat. Nuntios in omnes partes dimisit et certum diem conveniendio dixit.

Die constituto magnus numerus hominum undique ex agris convenit; inter alios venit Jason, qui a puero apud Centaurum quendam vixerat.

Dum in itinere quoddam flumen transit, unum calceum forte amisit.

Jāsōn ìgitur, cum calceum āmıssum nūllō modō recipere posset,1

- This use of the subjunctive is explained on the facing page
- ² Accusative of place to which. In English we say to the oracle at Delphi See the picture.
 - s for what reason
 - Imperative. What does Cave canem for use of this tense with Dum.
- mean? Romans sometimes put these words in the floor near the front door
- * for the people to assemble, literally, of assembling
 - 6 from boyhood.
- ⁷ Present tense. See page 160, note 5, for use of this tense with **Dum**.

PASSIVE OF THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

H

ıν

	SINGULAR				
portātus essem portātus essēs portātus esset	monitus essem monitus essēs monitus esset	ductus essem ductus essēs ductus esset	audītus essem audītus essēs audītus esset		
	PLURA	AL			
portātī essēmus portātī essētis portātī essent	monitī essēmus monitī essētis monitī essent	ductī essēmus ductī essētis ductī essent	audītī essēmus audītī essētis audītī essent		

The past perfect subjunctive passive is made up of the perfect participle and the imperfect subjunctive of sum.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

TT

1

A direct question is one which repeats the exact words of the speaker.

He asked, "Who was that man?"

The exact words of the speaker are inclosed in quotation marks.

An indirect question is one which repeats the thought, but not the exact words, of the speaker.

He asked who that man was.

Indirect questions depend on words of asking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.

In Latin an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive. The subjunctive in indirect questions is usually translated in the same manner as the indicative.

Quaesīvī quis ille vir esset, I asked who that man was.

Dēmonstrāvit quam ob causam vēnisset, He told why (made known for what reason) he had come.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN cum CAUSAL CLAUSES

A subordinate clause introduced by **cum**, meaning *since*, has its verb in the subjunctive. The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative.

Cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, Jāsōn ūnum calceum gerēns pervēnit, Since he could in no way get back the shoe that was lost, Jason came wearing one shoe.



Jason before the king

ūnum calceum gerēns pervēnit. Quem cum¹ vīdısset, Peliās subitō timore affectus est; intellexit enim oraculum se de hoc viro ipso monuisse.

Hoc igitur ıniit consilium. Sciebat regem Aeetem regnum Colchidis 5 illo tempore obtinere. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum quod Phrixus õlim ibi relīquerat. Constituit igitur Pelias Jasonem ad eum rēgem mittere ut hoc vellus postulāret.2 Cum enim rēs esset magni periculi, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse. Jāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit et quid perficī vellet3 dēmonstrāvit. Jāson autem, etsi bene intellegebat rem esse difficillimam, negotium libenter suscēpit.

THE GOLD SEEKERS

7um tamen Colchis multõrum diērum iter4 ab eō locō abesset, noluit Jāson solus proficisci. Dimisit igitur nuntios in omnes partes, qui causam itineris docerent⁵ et diem conveniendi dicerent.⁵

¹ Translate as 1f Cum eum.

on the facing page.

³ Imperfect subjunctive of volo.

⁴ Accusative of extent, defined by the ² This use of the subjunctive is explained genitive of description. See page 345, 56.

⁵ This use of qui to introduce a purpose clause is explained on the facing page.

Nāvem aedificārī jussit, et Argus quīdam, quī summam scientiam rērum nauticārum¹ habēbat, huic negōtiō² praefectus est. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūmptī sunt; Argus enim magnam dīligentiam praebēbat et nē³ nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermīsit. Ut multitūdō hominum trānsportārētur,⁴ nāvis paulō 5 lātior⁵ erat quam quae aedificārī solitae erant, atque tōta ē rōbore (oak) facta est ut vim tempestātum perferre posset.

EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE

In English we express purpose in different ways.

I went to hear the music. I went in order to hear the music.

I went that (in order that) I might hear the music.

In the first example the infinitive *to hear* tells the speaker's purpose. In the second example the phrase *in order to hear* tells the purpose. The third example uses a subordinate clause to express purpose.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN A CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

In Latin, purpose may be expressed by a subordinate clause with its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is usually introduced by ut.

Vēnī ut tē vidērem, I came to see (lit., that I might see) you.

Jāsonem mittere constituit ut hoc vellus postularet, He decided to send Jason to demand (that he might demand) this fleece.

Sometimes a relative pronoun introduces a purpose clause.

Dīmīsit nūntiōs quī causam itineris docērent, He sent messengers to explain the reason for the journey.

Nuntium ad navem misit qui Jasonem ad regiam vocaret, He sent a messenger to the ship to call Jason to the palace.

The Latin infinitive is not used to express purpose.

To introduce a negative clause of purpose, nē is used.

Mīlitēs missī sunt nē urbs caperētur, Soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.

Jāsōn, ne tantam occāsionem amitteret, ad locum constitutum se contulit, In order not to lose so great an opportunity, Jason made his way to the appointed place.

¹ of the science of navigation.

² For this use of the dative with a compound verb, see page 347, **68**.

³ With quidem, not even.

⁴ Subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

⁵ a little wider; literally, wider by a little.



Intereā ea diēs¹ appetēbat quam Jāsōn per nūntiōs ēdīxerat, et ex omnībus regionībus Graeciae multī quōs aut reī novītās (novelty) aut 5 spēs gloriae movēbat undique convenīebant. Trādunt² in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem, Orpheum — citharoedum³ praeclārissimum, Thēseum, Castorem, et multōs aliōs 10 guōrum nōmīna nōtīssima sunt.

Ex hīs Jāsōn, quōs 4 arbitrātus est ad omnia perīcula parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā (fifty) dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adjūnxit.

Tum, paucos dies commoratus ut ad omnes casus subsidia compararet, navem deduxit et, tempestatem⁵ ad navigandum idoneam nactus, magno cum plausu (applause) omnium solvit.

Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in istā⁶ nāve vehēbantur) ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam ad lītus nāvem appulerant, laetī in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi, cum ab incolīs quaesīvissent quis rēgnum ejus regionis obtinēret, certiorēs factī sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognovērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dīrō quodam supplicio afficī. Ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in fīlios suos praebuerat.

Cujus supplicii hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Jove monstra quaedam, speciē horribili, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpyiae appellābantur, Phīneo summam molestiam (annoyance) afferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum appositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent, 10 Phīneus famē paene mortuus est.

Rēs igītur in hōc locō erant, cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt.
³⁰ Phīneus autem, adventū eōrum audītō, laetissimus erat, sciēbat enim

¹ Here feminine—usually masculine.

² They say or It is commonly reported.

³ one who sang and played the cithara.

^{&#}x27;Subject of esse with antecedent eos. A relative clause in Latin often precedes the antecedent; English idiom requires that the antecedent be translated first.

⁵ weather; sometimes it means bad weather.

⁶ For the forms of iste see page 321, 27.

⁷ Ablative of description. See page 351, 90.

⁸ took a place (reclined) at table The Romans half reclined at table, so Phineus is represented as doing the same thing, though he ruled centuries earlier in a different civilization.

o as soon as it was served

No A very common expression in Latin; literally, since these things were so, but usually better translated as a result or consequently

¹¹ of hunger. What English word is connected with fames?

quantam1 opinionem2 virtūtis Argonautae haberent, nec dubitābat quin sibi auxilium ferrent.

Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit quī Jāsonī persuādēret ut sibi auxilium ferret.⁵ Ad rēgiam cum Argonautae vēnissent, Phīneus

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

Words and phrases of doubt, when accompanied by a negative, are followed by quin and the subjunctive.

> Non dubitavi quin nautae fortes essent, I did not doubt that the sailors were brave.

> Non erat dubium quin hoc fecisset, There was no doubt that he

Phīneus non dubitābat quin Argonautae sibi auxilium ferrent, Phineus did not doubt that the Argonauts would help him.

NOUN CLAUSES OF DESIRE

The subjunctive is sometimes used in clauses introduced by ut, to express desire.

> Lēgātus hortātus est ut auxilium statim mitterētur, The envoy urged that aid be sent at once.

In the sentence above, the clause ut auxilium statim mitteretur is the object of the verb hortatus est. Such a clause is called a noun clause. Noun clauses of desire are used as subjects or objects of verbs meaning to persuade, urge, direct, command, wish, and decide.

When these clauses are negative, they are introduced by ne instead of ut, and they do not contain non.

> Amīcī nostrī hortābantur nē in urbe manērēmus, Our friends urged us not to (that we should not) remain in the city.

The subjunctive in a clause of desire introduced by ut or nē is commonly translated by an English infinitive.

> Ei persuadere conatae sunt ut secum maneret, They tried to persuade him to remain with them.

> Nūntius Jāsonī persuāsit ut Phīneō auxilium ferret, The messenger persuaded Jason to help (bring help to) Phineus.

- quantam is an interrogative introducing page. an indirect question.
- ² reputation—often so translated, being 346, 64. the opinion of others.
 - ³ The use of the subjunctive with ex- clause is explained on this page.
- ¹ The subjunctive haberent shows that pressions of doubt is explained on this
 - ⁴ For this use of the dative, see page
 - ⁵ This use of the subjunctive in a noun

dēmonstrāvit quanto in perīculo suae rēs essent, et promīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse sī illī remedium repperīssent.

Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt. At simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpyiae cēnāculum (dining room) intrāvērunt et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum gladiīs volucrēs petīvērunt. Cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil² prōdesse, Zētus et Calais, quī ālīs īnstrūctī erant, in āera³ sē sublevāvērunt ut dēsuper (from above) impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpyiae, reī novitāte (by the strangeness) perterritae, statim fūgērunt neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

Hōc factō, Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam referret, Jāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vītāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine, quae ā Jove positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenīret.

Hae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant (were floating), et sī quid' in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant.

Postquam igitur de his rebus certior factus est, Jason, sublatis.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN A DEPENDENT CLAUSE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Thus far when you have met indirect discourse, the indirect quotation has consisted of only one clause. In such a sentence the verb is an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative case.

Promisit se iturum esse, He promised that he would go.

But what is indirectly quoted may contain also a dependent clause. Then the verb of the main clause in the quotation is still an infinitive, and the verb of the dependent clause is in the subjunctive.

Prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse sī ille remedium repperīsset, He promised that he would give great rewards if that man found a remedy.

- ¹ The use of the subjunctive in a dependent clause in indirect statement is explained on this page.
- ² With prodesse, profited nothing, i.e., had no effect.
 - ³ Greek accusative form; āēr is masculine.
 - ⁴ A participle, not a noun.

- ⁵ with this design (purpose); explained by the clause which follows.
- ⁶ that no one. Here quis is an indefinite pronoun, not an interrogative. In this use it very often follows sī or nē.
- ⁷ if anything. For this use of quid see note 6.

Guided by the dove, the Argonauts succeed in passing through the Symplegades

ancorīs,¹ nāvem solvit et mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit. Tum in prōrā stāns columbam (dove) quam in manū tenēbat ēmīsit. Illa rēctā viā² per medium spatium tam celeriter volāvit ut priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāderet,³ caudā (tail) tantum āmissā.

Tum rūpēs utrimque (on both 10 sides) discessērunt. Argonautae, bene intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celerītāte positam esse,



nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, bene enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēlīciter 15 ēvēnisse.

WINNING THE FLEECE

Postquam Phīneus tantō timōre⁴ līberātus est, brevī intermissō spatīō⁵ Argonautae nāvem solvērunt. Dēnique, ēreptī ē multīs perīculīs, ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in fīnībus Colchōrum erat. Ibi, cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ²⁰

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF RESULT

A subordinate clause expressing result is regularly introduced by ut, that, and has its verb in the subjunctive. The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative. The negative in a result clause is non.

Columba tam celeriter volāvit ut incolumis evāderet, The dove flew so fast that it escaped unharmed.

¹ Translate freely, weighing anchor.

² straight. What does it mean literally?

³ This use of the subjunctive is explained .on this page.

⁴ For an explanation of this construction, see page 349, 78.

⁵ The three words mean in a short time; literally, a short time having elapsed.

ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur.

Ille, cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrā commōtus est et diū negāvit sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Jāsonem non sine auxilio deorum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, promīsit sē vellus trāditūrum sī Jāson laborēs duos difficillimos prius perfēcisset; et cum is dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula parātum esse, rēx quid agī vellet ostendit.

Prīmum necesse erat¹ Jāsonem jungere duōs taurōs speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant.² Tum, hīs jūnctīs, agrum quendam arāre et dentēs dracōnis serere necesse erat.¹ Hīs audītīs, Jāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, sine ūllā morā rēgī respondit sē negōtium suscipere atque haec omnia cōnficere parātum esse.

At Mēdēa, rēgis fīlia, Jāsonem maximē amāvit, et ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat.³ Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Jāsōn morerētur.

Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa, quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat, hoc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, ex urbe ēvāsit; et postquam in montēs fīnitimōs vēnīt, herbās quāsdam carpsit (she picked). Tum, sūcō expressō, unguentum parāvit quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque (and sinews) cōnfirmāret.

Hōc factō, Jāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō istōs labōrēs cōnfectūrus erat, corpus suum et arma māne oblineret (he should smear).

Jāson, etsī paene omnibus magnitūdine et vīribus corporis praestābat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātionibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris constiterats), statuit tamen sē hoc consilium non neglēctūrum esse.

Mox is dies vēnit quem rex ēdīxerat. Jāson, ne tantam occāsionem āmitteret, ortā lūce, ocum sociīs ad locum constitutum se contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quo taurī inclūsī erant.

15

30

¹ This use is explained on the facing page.

² From ēdō, ēdere, give out; not from edō, edere, eat.

³ was deeply grieved.

⁴ without her father's knowledge; ablative absolute.

⁵ after she had pressed out the juice.

⁶ A relative clause of purpose.

⁷ hunting; literally, huntings, 1.e., several expeditions.

⁸ had consisted, from consto. What are the principal parts of this compound verb?

⁹ at daybreak; ablative absolute, but equivalent to prīmā lūce.



Tum, portīs apertīs, tauros in lūcem trāxit et summā cum difficultāte jugum imposuit.

At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil1 contrā Jāsonem valēre, magnopere mīrātus est; nesciēbat enim fīliam suam auxilium eī dedisse.

Tum Jāson, omnibus aspicientibus, arāre coepit. Tantam dīli- 5 gentiam praebuit ut ante meridiem totum opus conficeret. Hoc factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit; quos ubi accepit, in agrum quem araverat magna cum diligentia sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī erant virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur.

Nondum tamen Jāson totum opus confecerat; imperaverat enim eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs ē dentibus nātōs sōlus interficeret. Post-

IMPERSONAL VERBS

You are familiar with such English expressions as it rains, it thunders, in which the action is not performed by any person. Such verbs are called impersonal. They occur only in the third person singular. Similar verbs occur in Latin.

pluit, it rains

There are also in both English and Latin other impersonal verbs: necesse est, it is necessary; mos est, it is the custom; oportet, it is right (one must); convenit, it is agreed. Such verbs are often followed by an infinitive.

> Necesse erat jungere duös taurös, It was necessary to yoke two bulls.

1 With valere, had no power. What is the usual meaning of valeo?

10



Inter se pugnare coeperunt

quam omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Jāson, lassitūdine exanimātus, quiētī sē trādidit.

Paucās hōrās dormiēbat. Sub¹ vesperum, tamen, ē somnō subitō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut² praedictum erat cognōvit; nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis, gladiīs galeīsque armātī, mīrum in modum³ ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Jāsōn cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa sequī cōnstituit. Saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa) in mediōs virōs conjēcit.

Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum quisque sibi id saxum 10 (nesciō cūr4) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est.

Mox, strictīs (having been drawn) gladiīs, inter sē pugnāre coepē-

¹ Toward.

² With the indicative ut means as or when; in the sense of as, it may be correlative with ita or sīc.

³ The prepositional phrase mīrum in modum is equivalent to mīrō modō.

^{*}for some reason or other; what is the literal translation?

runt, et cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī vulneribus confectī ā Jāsone nūllo negotio interfectī sunt.

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Jāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōn-fēcisse, īrā graviter commōtus est; intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset.¹

Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore² perīculō sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit.

Omnibus igitur ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, cum frātre ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta³ erat sē contulit.

Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Jāsonis sē prōjēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs petīvit ab eō nē in tantō discrīmine mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuerat.

Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per ejus auxilium ē magnō perīculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendī audīvit, 15 hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam prīmum eam in nāve suā āvectūrum esse.

Postrīdiē ejus diēī Jāsōn cum sociīs suīs, ortā lūce, nāvem dēdūxit et, tempestātem idōneam nactī, ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt, quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrāvit.

Eō cum vēnissent, Jāsōn in terram ēgressus est et, sociīs ad mare relictīs, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās viam cēpit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam prōgressus, vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēnsum vīdit.

Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis; nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō 25 quīdam, speciē terribilī, arborem custōdiēbat.

At Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, artis medicae summam scientiam habuit, rāmum quem ex arbore proximā dēripuerat venēnō īnfēcit.

Hōc factō, ad locum appropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus 30 apertīs adventum expectābat, venēnō sparsit. Deinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit, Jāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.

Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, qui ad mare nāvem custō-

¹ Why subjunctive? See page 191.

² Future infinitive of sum, a form often used; here it replaces futuram esse. The subject is the reflexive pronoun sē.

³ The comparatively small size of an-

cient ships made it possible to draw them up on the beach when a landing was made. Hence the terms used in Latin.

⁴ with open jaws.

⁵ From referõ.

diēbant, animō ānxiō reditum Jāsonis expectābant; bene enim intellegēbant id negōtium summī esse perīculī. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā expectāverant, dē ejus salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī¹ cāsus accidisset.

Quae cum ita essent, cēnsuērunt ut auxilium ducī ferre dēbērent. At, dum proficīscī parant, lūmen quoddam subitō cōnspiciunt, mīrum in modum inter silvās refulgēns (shining), et magnopere mīrātī quae causa esset ejus reī, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum² vēnissent, Jāsonī et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis ejus causam esse cognōvērunt.

Ex omnī timōre līberātī, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quod rēs ita fēlīciter ēvēnerat.

Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus conscendērunt et, sublātīs ancorīs, prīmā vigiliā³ solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eo loco manēre.

Tandem post multa perīcula Jāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāve ēgressus, ad rēgem Peliam, quī rēgnum adhūc obtinēbat, statim sē contulit et, vellere aureō mōnstrātō, ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi trāderētur. Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Jāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum esse.

Postquam Jāsōn quid fierī vellet4 ostendit, Peliās prīmum nihil respondit, sed diū tacitus permānsit.

Tandem ita locūtus est, "Cum videās⁵ mē aetāte jam confectum esse, bene scīs rēgnum mox tuum futūrum esse. Peto ut paulisper mihi hanc potentiam relinquās."

Hāc ōrātiōne adductus, Jāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāsset.6

Jāsōn autem post multōs annōs mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum) sub umbrā (shadow) nāvis suae, quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem ubi Jāsōn jacēbat subitō dēlāpsa (falling over), virum īnfēlīcem oppressit.

 $^{^{\}mbox{\tiny 1}}$ some. It is nominative singular modifying cāsus.

² Translate as if Eō cum.

³ For the purpose of reckoning time the Romans divided the time from sunset to sunrise into four equal parts, each one of which was called a "watch." The first watch began at sunset, the third at mid-

night. In this story Roman usage is thought of as having been employed in the time of the Argonauts.

⁴ what he wanted done.

⁵ For present subjunctive forms see page 199.

⁶ A shortened form of the past perfect subjunctive. What is the regular form?

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

The tense sign of the present subjunctive in the first conjugation is $-\bar{e}$ -, which replaces the characteristic letter of the conjugation $(-\bar{a}$ -).

In the second, third, and fourth conjugations the sign of the present subjunctive is -ā-. In verbs of the second conjugation the tense sign is preceded by -e-, and in -iō verbs of the third conjugation and all verbs of the fourth conjugation, it is preceded by -i-.

		•	-	
I	II	11	I	IV
		ACTIVE		
		SINGULAR		
portem	moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portēs	moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
portet	moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
		PLURAL		
portēmus	moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
portētis	moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
portent	moneant	dücant	capiant	audiant
		PASSIVE		
,		SINGULAR		
porter	monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portēris	moneāris	dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
portētur	moneātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur
		PLURAL		
portēmur	moneāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
portēminī	moneāminī	dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
portentur	moneantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

The present subjunctive forms of sum and possum are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sīs	sītis	possīs	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint



LATIN AND ENGLISH NOUNS WITH SUFFIXES

You know many words in both Latin and English made from other words by the addition of suffixes. Latin nouns coming from adjectives often have one of the suffixes -ia, -tia, -tas, -tudo. In some cases, the final vowel of the adjective becomes -i- when the suffix is added.

angustia (angustus) brevitas (brevis), brevity solitudo (solus), solitude

As you see, for some such Latin nouns there are corresponding English nouns.

Latin nouns also came from verbs. Most nouns of this kind were formed from the stem of the perfect passive participle and -or. In such cases, the suffix means one who.

victus (vinco), victor, victor (one who conquers)

In other Latin nouns -or means act or condition. Many such nouns have corresponding English words.

terror, terror (condition of fear) valor, valor

Give the meaning of each of the following Latin nouns and tell from what verb it was made. How does the corresponding English noun compare in meaning with each Latin word?

clamor error narrator oppressor spectator

Some neuter nouns of the second declension were made from Latin verbs by the addition of the suffix -ium. There are English words corresponding to many of these nouns.

aedificium (aedifico), edifice refugium (refugio), refuge

What is the meaning of each Latin noun below? If possible, tell from what Latin word it comes, and give an English derivative.

factor	latitudo	monitor	stipendium
furor	liberator	motor	studium
gratia	libertas	odium	subsidium
imperium	magnitudo	officium	suffragium
laetitia	maleficium	periculum	vigilia

REVIEW OF UNIT XI

- I. In the list below the sentences, find a form (or forms) to complete each sentence. Watch tense, voice, and number.
- 1. Scîtisne quā ratione vellus (may be seized)?
- 2. Peliās ad rēgem Jāsonem mīsit quī vellus (demand).
- 3. Rēx intellēxit quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae (had) et nōn dubitābat quīn vellus (they would seize).
- 4. Perīculum erat tantum ut maximā difficultāte nāvēs saxa (avoided).
- 5. Cum Argonautae in terram (had gone out), ā rēge rogāvērunt ut vellus sibi (should be handed over).
- 6. Argonautae dēmonstrāvērunt quam ob causam (they had come).
- 7. Multīs cum lacrimīs Mēdēa petīvit nē Jāsōn eam in Colchide (leave).
- 8. Cum Jāson vellus aureum (had seen), id capere conatus est.

caperent	habēbant	relinqueret	vēnerant
caperētur	habērent	relinquit	vēnissent
capiātur	postulāret	relīquisset	vīderat
captum erant	postulāvit	trāderētur	vīdisset
ēgressī essent	relinquās	trādētur	vītābant
ēgressī sunt	relinquerēs	trādidit	vītārent

II. In the list below the English phrases find a word or phrase that translates each one.

1. he will persuade me

2.	I believe the queen	7. it please	d him
3.	it is agreed	8. it was no	ecessary
4.	it is raining	9. it will ha	arm the men
5.	it is proper	10. the king	favored him

6. it is the custom

convenit mihi persuādēbit oportet rēx eī favēbat conventum est mös est rēgīnae crēdō pluit eī placuit necesse erat rēgīnam crēdō virīs nocēbit

III. Each of the following verbs has an English derivative ending in either -ant or -ent. From your knowledge of the Latin word, give the meaning of each of these English derivatives.

ascendō	fluō	respondeō
cōnstituō	incipiō	significō
conveniō	1ateõ	sileō
errō	migrō	teneō
expectō	оссиро	vigil ō



The site of Troy today

XII Roman Stories Retold

Many stories have come down to us of the early days of Rome, some from legendary sources, others based on historic facts. The selections here retold show briefly the origin and development of Rome, first as a kingdom, and later as a republic. The fundamental characteristics of the Roman people are revealed in these tales of the men who shaped the destiny of Rome from its beginnings.

THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME

lim in Asiā erat urbs antīqua, quae Trōja appellāta est. Eam urbem Graecī decem annōs obsēdērunt tandemque Trōjā¹ potītī sunt. Priamō rēge fīliīsque ejus interfectīs, urbem dēlēvērunt. Sed Aenēās, quī inter clārissimōs dēfēnsōrēs urbis fuerat, cum paucīs comitibus ex urbe effūgit. Cum profugōs ex omnibus partibus coēgisset, in Ītaliam migrāre cōnstituit.

Post septem annōs vēnit in eam partem Ītaliae ubi erat urbs Laurentum. Latīnī, quī tum eum locum tenēbant, agrōs suōs dēfendere parāvērunt. Sed Latīnus, rēx, postquam in colloquiō orīginem multitūdinis ducisque cognōvit, pācem cum Aenēā fēcit atque posteā eī Lāvīniam fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit.² Trōjānī urbem condidērunt, quam Aenēās ab nōmine uxōris Lāvīnium appellāvit.

¹ This use of the ablative is explained on the facing page.

² The marriage of Aeneas and Lavinia signified the union of the two nations.

Posteā, ut Trōjānī et Latīnī eōdem jūre¹ atque nōmine¹ ūterentur, utramque Latīnōs gentem appellāvit.

Post paucōs annōs autem Aenēās mortuus est, et Lāvīnia inde rēgnāvit, quoad Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, adolēvit. Tum ille propter abundantem Lāvīniī multitūdinem mātrī urbem relīquit. Ipse novam aliam urbem condidit, quae Alba Longa appellāta est. Multī rēgēs post Ascanium imperium Albānum gessērunt.

Quīdam ex hīs, cui² nōmen Proca erat, duōs fīliōs, Numitōrem atque Amūlium, habuit. Numitōrī, quī major³ erat, rēgnum relīquit. Pulsō

ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENT VERBS

Two deponent verbs often used in this book—ūtor, use, and potior, get possession of—take objects in the ablative case.

Eā urbe Graecī potītī sunt, The Greeks got possession of this city.

Manū dextrā semper ūtitur, He always uses his right hand.

Other deponents which are followed by the ablative are fruor, enjoy, fungor, perform, carry out, and vescor, eat.

DATIVE OF POSSESSION

The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative case. The word denoting the thing possessed is then in the nominative as the subject of a form of sum.

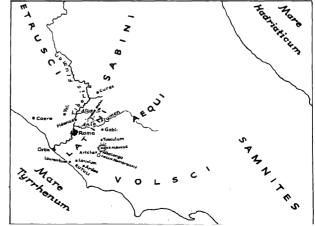
Sunt mihi multī librī, I have many books.

Quidam ex hīs, cui nomen Proca erat, duos filios habuit, One of these, whose name was (who had the name) Proca, had two sons.

The dative of possession emphasizes the fact of ownership rather than the owner.

- ¹ This use of the ablative is explained on this page.
- ² See Dative of Possession on this page.
- ³ older; literally, greater [by birth].

Early Rome and its surroundings



tamen frātre, Amūlius rēgnāvit. Fīlium frātris necāvit; fīliam, quae Rhēa Silvia appellābātur, per speciem honōris sacerdōtem Vestae¹ lēgit.

ROYAL TWINS

Ex hāc fīliā nātī sunt duo fīliī, Rōmulus et Remus. Pater eōrum, ut fāma est,² Mārs deus erat. Sed nec dī nec hominēs mātrem et puerōs ā crūdēlitāte rēgiā dēfendērunt. Sacerdōs in custōdiam data est; puerōs rēx in Tiberim injicī jussit.

Forte Tiberis abundāverat, neque eī quī puerōs ferēbant adīre ad altam aquam poterant. Itaque puerōs in alveō (*little boat*) posuērunt atque in tenuī (*shallow*) aquā relīquērunt.³ Sed alveus in siccō sēdit.⁴ Deinde lupa (*wolf*) ex montibus proximīs ad puerōs vēnit.

Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, eam invēnit puerōs nūtrientem (nursing). Ab eō atque uxōre puerī ēducātī sunt.⁵ Cum prīmum adolēvērunt, vēnārī (to hunt) coepērunt, et in latrōnēs praedā onustōs (loaded) is impetūs facere pāstōribusque⁶ praedam dīvidere.

Dēnique latronēs, īrātī ob praedam āmissam, impetum in Romulum et Remum fēcērunt. Captum Remum rēgī Amūlio trādīdērunt. Pueros praedam ex agrīs Numitoris ēgisse incūsābant. Sīc ad supplicium Numitorī Remus dēditur.

Jam prīdem Faustulus crēdiderat puerōs esse nepōtēs Numitōris. Tum perīculō Remī mōtus, rem Rōmulō aperit. Forte Numitor quoque audīverat frātrēs geminōs esse; tum comparāns et aetātem eōrum et nōbilem animum Remī nepōtem recognōvit.

Lupa et gemini



- ¹ a priestess of Vesta, or a vestal.
- ² according to tradition; literally, as the report is
 - ⁸ Supply eos as object.
- ⁴ drifted ashore; literally, settled on dry ground.
- ⁵ were brought up. Notice that educate is derived from ēducō, -āre, not from ēdūcō, -ere.
- ⁶ Dative of indirect object. What prepositions do we use with the verb divide?
- 7 A good example of how a Latin perfect participle is the equivalent of a whole clause in English.
- * brought as an accusation, with dependent indirect discourse, Puerōs . . . ēgisse; better, accused the boys of, etc.

Rōmulus cum manū pāstōrum in rēgem Amūlium impetum fēcit. Remus aliā parātā manū adjūvit. Ita rēx interfectus est. Imperium¹ Albānum Numitōrī avō ab juvenibus restitūtum est.

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus dīxērunt, "Urbem aedificābimus in eīs locīs ubi expositī atque ēducātī sumus."

Uterque juvenis nōmen novae urbī dare eamque regere cupiēbat. Sed quod geminī erant, nec rēs aetāte dēcernī poterat, auguris ūsī sunt.² Ā Remō prius vīsī sunt sex vulturēs. Rōmulō posteā duodecim sēsē ostendērunt. Uterque ab amīcīs rēx appellātus est atque rēgnum postulābat. Cum īrātī arma rapuissent, in pugnā Remus 10 cecīdit. Ita Rōmulus sōlus imperiō potītus est; conditam³ urbem ā suō nōmine Rōmam appellāvit.

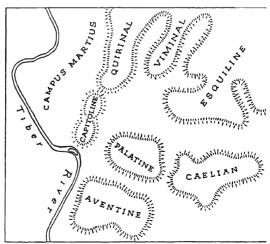
Palātium⁴ prīmum, in quō ipsē erat ēducātus, mūnīvit. Vocātā ad concilium multitūdine, jūra dedit. Creāvit etiam centum senātōrēs, quī honōris causā⁵ patrēs appellātī sunt.

Jam rēs Rōmāna⁶ firma et fīnitimīs cīvitātibus⁷ bellō pār erat. Sed Rōmānī neque uxōrēs neque cum fīnitimīs jūs cōnūbiī⁸ habēbant. Tum Rōmulus quōsdam ex patribus lēgātōs in eās gentēs mīsit quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent. Nusquam benignē lēgātī audītī sunt; nam fīnitimī nōn sōlum Rōmānōs ōdērunt,⁹ sed 20 etiam tantam in mediō crēscentem urbem timēbant. Itaque īrātī Rōmānī vī ūtī statuērunt.

Ad eam rem Rōmulus, lūdīs parātīs, fīnitimōs ad spectāculum invītāvit. Multī convēnērunt ut et lūdōs spectārent et novam urbem vidērent. Sabīnōrum omnis multitūdō inermis cum līberīs ac con- 25 jugibus vēnit.

The Seven Hills

- ¹ Here, absolute power.
- ² they resorted to.
- ³ Equivalent to a relative clause.
- 4the Palatine Hill. This hill was doubtless the location of the earliest settlement made on the site of Rome.
- ⁵ as a mark of distinction. Notice that causa and gratia, meaning for the sake of, stand after the dependent genitive. But Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer use English word order for their motto. Ars gratia artis.
 - 6 I.e., rēs pūblica Romāna.
 - ⁷ Dative with par.
 - 8 right of intermarriage.
 - 9 For this form see page 343, 48.



15



Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit omnēsque intentī in lūdōs¹ erant, tum, signō datō, Rōmānī rapere (seize) virginēs coepērunt. Parentēs virginum profūgērunt clāmantēs Rōmānōs hospitium violāvisse. Nec raptae virginēs aut spem dē sē meliōrem aut indignātiōnem minōrem babēbant. Sed ipse Rōmulus circumībat ostendēbatque id patrum superbiā² Rōmānīs³ faciendum esse.⁴

"Quamquam vī captae estis," inquit, "omnia jūra Rōmānōrum habēbitis."

Jam multō minus perturbātī animī raptārum⁵ erant. At parentēs eārum cīvitātēs fīnitimās, ad quās ejus injūriae pars pertinēbat, ad arma concitābant. Hae cīvitātēs omnēs ā Rōmulō victae sunt.

Novissimum bellum ab Sabīnīs ortum est, quod multō maximum fuit. Sabīnī arcem Rōmānam in monte Capitōlīnō dolō cēpērunt. Rōmānī posterō diē arcem recuperāre cōnātī sunt. Ubi Hostius Hostīlius, ¹⁵ dux exercitūs Rōmānī, cecidit, cōnfestim aciēs Rōmāna pulsa est.

At Rōmulus templum vovit (vowed) Jovī Statorī orāvitque auxilium. Tum, crēdēns precēs suās audītās esse, "Hinc (from here)," inquit, "Rōmānī, Juppiter optimus maximus⁶ nos resistere⁷ ac renovāre pugnam jubet."

¹ on the games.

² because of the haughtiness.

³ This use of the dative is explained on the facing page.

⁴ This form is explained on the facing page.

⁵ of the captured women. An example of a perfect participle used as a noun.

⁶ A set phrase applied to Jupiter. When the phrase is translated, it is necessary to insert *and* between the adjectives.

⁷ to make a stand.

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

Three Latin participles have previously been explained.

Present Active: portans, carrying

Perfect Passive: portātus, having been carried Future Active: portātūrus, about to carry

In addition, the Latin verb has also a future passive participle.

I II III IV

portandus, -a, -um monendus, -a, -um ducendus, -a, -um audiendus, -a, -um capiendus, -a, -um

This participle is formed on the present stem and has the endings -ndus, -nda, -ndum in the nominative singular. It is declined like bonus.

In -iō verbs of the third conjugation and in verbs of the fourth conjugation, the present stem has -ie- in the future passive participle, just as in the present active participle: capiēns, capiendus; audiēns, audiendus.

The future passive participle is often used with forms of the verb sum to denote an act which must be done or ought to be done.

Ostendit id faciendum esse, He explained that this had to

Rex defendendus est, The king must be defended.

DATIVE OF AGENT

With the future passive participle, the word denoting the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly in the dative.

Id Romanis faciendum erat, This had to be done by the Romans.

Expressions which contain a future passive participle are often best translated by changing the verb to the active voice. The Latin dative of agent is then represented in English by the subject of the active verb.

Id Romanis faciendum erat, The Romans had to do this.

Restitērunt¹ Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce jussī.

Tum Sabīnae mulierēs ausae sunt² sē inter tēla volantia īnferre³ ut pācem ā patribus virīsque implōrārent. Ducēs eā rē mōtī nōn modo pācem sed etiam cīvitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt. Rēgnum quoque 5 cōnsociant (united) atque Rōmam faciunt sēdem imperiī.

Multitūdō ita aucta novō nōmine Quirītēs⁴ appellāta est ex Curibus, quae urbs⁵ caput Sabīnōrum erat. Deinde Rōmulus, populō in cūriās trīgintā dīvīsō, nōmina mulierum raptārum cūriīs dedit.

THREE AGAINST THREE

Albānī quoque erant fīnitimī Rōmānōrum. Sine bonā causā impetum magnō exercitū in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt.

Forte in utrõque exercitū erant trigeminī frātrēs, 6 nec aetāte nec vīribus disparēs, Horātii et Cūriātiī. Hī Albānī erant; illī Rōmānī. Frātrēs, ad hanc pugnam dēlēctī, arma capiunt et in medium inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Duo exercitūs in spectāculum anımōs intendunt. Signō datō, ternī juvenēs concurrunt.

Prīmō congressū duo Rōmānī interfectī sunt, et trēs Albānī vulnerātī. Eum Rōmānum quī integer fuit trēs Cūriātiī circumsistere cōnātī sunt. Cum jam Rōmānus paulum fūgisset, respexit atque vīdit trēs Cūriātiōs magnīs intervāllīs sequentēs. Subitō cōnstitit et 20 in proximum Cūriātium impetum facit.

Dum exercitus Albānus Cūriātiōs obsecrat (was entreating) ut frātrī auxilium ferant, Horātius eum interfēcit. Deinde victor secundum frātrem petit.

Tum magnō clāmōre Rōmānī adjuvant mīlitem suum, et ille ad cōn²⁵ ficiendum⁸ proelium parātus erat. Priusquam cōnsecūtus est tertius,
Horātius alterum Cūriātium cōnficit. Jamque singulī supererant,
sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs. Alter integer et ferōx superiōribus
victōriīs erat; alter dēfessus vulnere, animō frāctus, in certāmen
vēnit. Horātius autem certus vincendī⁹ erat. Nec illud proelium fuit.
³⁰ Cūriātium vix sustinentem arma Horātius caedit et jacentem spoliat.¹⁰

- ¹ What is the effect of putting the verb first?
 - ² A semi-deponent. See page 336, 40,
 - 3 With se, to rush in.
 - 4 A term of honor.
- ⁵ We say *a city which*, putting *city* in apposition with the name.
- 6 three brothers who were triplets.
- ⁷ three on each side.
- ⁸ This construction is explained on the facing page.
 - 9 A gerund. See page 171.
- 10 Find in this paragraph five or more words which have English derivatives.

GERUNDIVE

As we saw on page 171, the gerund is a verbal noun. cupidus discēdendī, desirous of departing

The future passive participle is often used as a verbal adjective (gerundive) in a phrase which has the same meaning as a gerund with an object.

Gerund: spēs urbem capiendī, hope of capturing the city Gerundive: spēs urbis capiendae, hope of capturing the city

The word capiendae is a verbal adjective, or gerundive. A gerundive agrees with its noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case. When the gerundive is used, the word it modifies is in the same case as the gerund would have been if it had been used.

The case uses of the gerundive construction are in general the same as those of the gerund.

Genitive: cupidus oppidī expugnandī, desirous of storming the town

difficultātēs bellī gerendī, difficulties of carrying on the war

Accusative: ad lūdos spectandos, for the purpose of seeing (or to see) the games

ad conficiendum proclium, for the purpose of ending (or to end) the battle

Ablative: dē auxiliō <u>mittendō</u>, about <u>sending</u> aid lapidibus portandīs, by carrying stones

The Romans often used the gerundive construction where English usage would lead us to expect a gerund.

DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Notice these distinctions between the gerund and the gerundive:

A noun

A ctive voice

Neuter gender

Used only in the singular

No nominative case

A participle

Passive voice

All genders

Both numbers

All cases

THE HONOR OF A ROMAN

Rōmānī ā Pyrrhō, rēge Ēpīrī, proeliō superātī lēgātōs Tarentum ad eum dē redimendīs captīvīs mīsērunt. Inter lēgātōs Rōmānōs erat C. Fābricius, vir bonus et bellō ēgregius, sed admodum pauper (poor). Pyrrhus, quī cum Rōmānīs pācem facere volēbat, lēgātīs magna dōna obtulīt ut Rōmānīs pācem suādērent.¹ Quamquam haec omnia sprēta sunt, rēx tamen captīvōs dīcitur sine pretiō (ransom) Rōmam mīsisse.

Pyrrhus, Fābriciī virtūtem admīrātus, illī sēcrētō quārtam etiam rēgnī suī partem obtulit sī patriam dēsereret.²

Cui Fābricius ita respondit, "Sī mē virum bonum jūdicās, cūr mē vīs⁴ corrumpere (to corrupt)? Sīn vērō malum, cūr meam amīcitiam cupis?"

Posteā, omnī spē pācis inter Pyrrhum et Rōmānōs conciliandae ablātā, Fābricius cōnsul factus contrā eum missus est.

Cumque vīcīna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus rēgis nocte ad Fābricium vēnit et dīxıt, "Polliceor mē Pyrrhum venēnō necātūrum sī mihi praemium dederīs.3"

Hunc Fābricius vīnctum ad Pyrrhum remīsit atque eum certiōrem fēcit quae medicus pollicitus esset.

Tum rēx admīrātus eum dīxisse fertur, "Ille est Fābricius, quī difficilius (with greater difficulty) ab honore quam sol ā suo cursū potest āvertī."

A TRUE PATRIOT

cum prīmō Pūnicō⁴ bellō Rōmānī contrā Carthāginiēnsēs dē imperiō Siciliae contenderent, M. Atīlius Rēgulus, cōnsul Rōmānus, nāvālī pugnā classem Pūnicam superāvit. Proeliō factō, Hannō, dux Carthāginiēnsis, ad eum vēnit, simulāns sē venīre pācis petendae causā. Vēnit rē vērā ut tempus extraheret (he might gain), dum novae cōpiae ex Āfricā advenīrent.⁵

- 1 to urge peace on the Romans.
 - ² Of what verb is this a form?
- ³ See the facing page for this use and tense of the subjunctive.
- ⁴The Carthaginians were Phoenicians, Pūnicī in Latin. Hence the adjective Pūnicus, *Punic*, is often used to mean Carthaginian.
- ⁵ This use of the subjunctive is explained on page 213



Model of a Carthaginian galley

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The perfect subjunctive, active, is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign -erī-.

I	11	III	IV
portāverim	monuerim	düxerim	audīverim
portāverīs	monueris	dūxerīs	audīverīs
portāverit	monuerit	dūxerit	audīverit
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

The perfect subjunctive of sum is formed in the same manner on the stem fu-: fuerim, fueris, etc.

The perfect subjunctive, passive, is made up of the perfect participle and the present subjunctive of sum.

I	II	III	IV
portātus sim	monitus sim	ductus sim	audītus sim
portātus sīs	monitus sīs	ductus sīs	audītus sīs
portātus sit	monitus sit	ductus sit	audītus sit
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

When the main verb of a sentence denotes present or future time, a subjunctive in a subordinate clause is regularly in the present or perfect tense.

It ut praemium accipiat, He goes to receive (lit., that he may receive) a reward.

Polliceor më Pyrrhum necātūrum sī mihi praemium dederīs, I promise to kill (lit., that I will kill) Pyrrhus if you will give me a reward.

When the main verb denotes past time, the subjunctive in a subordinate clause is regularly in the imperfect or the past perfect.

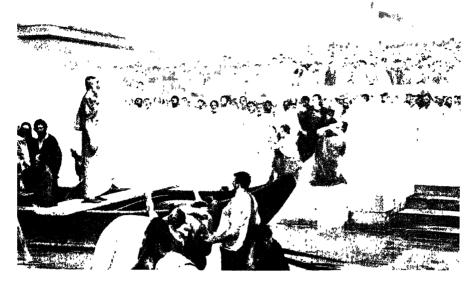
Hostes <u>fügerunt</u> cum <u>victī essent</u>, The enemy fled because they had been defeated.

If the main verb is a perfect which is equivalent to an English present perfect, i.e., translated with *have* or *has*, a dependent subjunctive may be in the present or in the imperfect.

Viderunt quid faciam, They have seen what I am doing.

Hostes acriter pugnaverunt ne vincerentur, The enemy have fought fiercely in order that they might not be conquered.

After a main verb denoting past time a result clause sometimes has its verb in the perfect.



Regulus and the prisoners

Mīlitēs Rōmānī clāmāre coepērunt Rēgulum idem facere oportēre¹ quod Carthāginiēnsēs paucīs ante annīs in² cōnsule quōdam fēcissent. Is cōnsul in colloquium per fraudem vocātus ā Poenīs comprehēnsus erat et in catēnās conjectus.

Hannō, priusquam Rēgulus respondēret, dīxīt, "Sī hoc fēceritis, nihilō³ eritis Poenīs⁴ meliōrēs."

Consul magnā dignitāte respondit, "Fıdēs Romāna, Hanno, tē isto metu līberat."

Dē pāce nōn convēnit quia Poenus ex animō nōn agēbat et cōnsul 10 bellum gerere quam pācem facere mālēbat.⁵

Deinde Rēgulus et collēga (colleague), L. Mānlius Vulsō, in Āfricam prīmī Rōmānōrum ducum trānsiērunt. Dum Rēgulus hiemem in Āfricā agit, vīlicus (overseer) ejus mortuus est, et mercēnārius, rūsticō īnstrūmentō ablātō, fūgit. Hōc nūntiātō, Rēgulus timēbat nē. dēsertō agrō, cibus uxōrī ac līberīs dēesset.

¹ ought to do the same thing. The infinitive is due to the indirect discourse. Its subject is another infinitive with subject accusative, Rēgulum...facere. In line 3, fēcissent is subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in indirect statement. See page 192.

degree of difference. See page 351, 87.

4 than the Carthaginians Instead of quam Pōenī, the ablative of comparison is used. See page 350, 81.

⁶ hired servant What is the meaning of the English adjective from this word?

² in the case of.

^a no; literally by nothing. Ablative of on the facing page.

⁵ For conjugation see page 341, 47.

⁷ This use of the subjunctive is explained on the facing page.

ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated, or expected.

Expectābam dum frāter redīret, I was waiting until my brother should return (or for my brother to return).

Hanno periculum reppulit priusquam Rēgulus respondēret,

Hanno avoided the danger before Regulus answered.

In the first example the verb rediret denotes an act which is expected; hence the subjunctive. In the second example the verb responderet also denotes an act that is expected and is likewise in the subjunctive.

The anticipatory subjunctive is most frequently used with conjunctions meaning until or before. Observe that in the first example above, the conjunction dum is used with the meaning until; in the second example, priusquam means before.

CLAUSES OF FEAR

With verbs of fearing, as well as with other expressions of fear, a dependent clause with its verb in the subjunctive may be used to tell what one fears will happen. Such clauses are introduced by $n\bar{e}$ meaning that or by ut meaning that . . . not. (Occasionally $n\bar{e} \dots n\bar{o}n$ is used instead of ut.)

With English expressions of fear the conjunction *that* is sometimes omitted.

I am afraid he will not arrive today.

In Latin the conjunction ne or ut is always used.

Remember that with other subjunctive clauses ut means that and $n\bar{e}$ means that . . . not, while in clauses of fear the translations are exactly reversed.

Rēgulus timēbat <u>nē</u> cibus uxōrī dēesset, Regulus feared that his wife would lack food (food would be lacking for his wife).

Timēmus ut copia cibī sit, We fear that there may not be a supply of food.

In a clause of fear the Latin present subjunctive has the same force as the English future.

Timeō ut hodiē perveniat, I am afraid that he will not arrive today.

Itaque ā consulibus petīvit ut sibi successor mitterētur. At senātus constituit reī pūblicae¹ interesse eum in Āfricā manēre. Senātus autem agrum Rēgulī colī pūblicē et cibum conjugī ejus ac līberīs darī jussit.

Proximō annō Rēgulus, arbitrātus Carthāginiēnsēs jam sē dēdere parātōs esse, ad colloquium eōs invītāvit. Laetī vēnērunt, ut dē pāce agerent. Sed, cum postulāta Rēgulī audīvissent, cōnstituērunt condiciōnēs tam dūrās recūsāre bellumque renovāre.

Eō ferē tempore quīdam Graecus, nōmine Xanthippus, reī² mīlitāris perītissīmus, Carthāginem vēnīt. Carthāginīensībus persuāsit ut sē ducem facerent. Quō factō, fortūna mūtāta est; nam nōn solum exercitum Rōmānum vīcērunt, sed etiam Rēgulum imperātōrem cēpērunt.

Paucīs post annīs,³ cum iterum dē pāce agere constituissent, Rēgulum cum lēgātīs Romam mīsērunt quī Romānīs pācem suādēret et dē commūtandīs captīvīs ageret.

Jūre jūrandō autem adstrictus est (he was bound) ut, nisī dē captīvīs impetrāret, redīret4 ipse Carthāginem.

Is, cum Rōmam vēnisset, ēgit aliter ac⁵ Poenī mandāverant; nam senātuī suāsit nē pācem cum Poenīs faceret. Dīxit enim illōs frāctōs tot cāsibus spem nūllam habēre; cum haec ita essent, senātum pācem recūsāre dēbēre. Reddī captīvōs negāvit esse ūtile; juvenēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē jam cōnfectum senectūte (by old age). Dīxit etiam malum exemplum⁶ futūrum esse, sī captīvī Rōmānī redimerentur.

Senātus eō auctōre⁷ pācem recūsāvit Poenōsque captīvōs retinuit.

25 Rēgulus ut captīvus⁸ conjugem parvōsque nātōs⁹ ā sē remōvit¹⁰ Carthāginemque rediit. Ibi crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs necātus esse dīcitur.

- ¹ Genitive with interest. See page 346,61. ² Objective genitive with peritissimus.
- ² Objective genitive with peritissimus See page 345, **57**.
- ³ An ablative of degree of difference with post. See page 351, 87. We have also had post paucos annōs.
- ⁴ bound himself by an oath to return; implied indirect discourse (he said he would return) requires subjunctive for the verb in the subordinate clause, nisi... impetraret.
- ⁵ After aliter and similar words, ac is translated *than*.
- ⁶ A Roman soldier was expected to fight to the death rather than be taken prisoner.
 - ⁷ by his advice; ablative absolute.
- ⁸ as a captive; i.e., not the equal of free Romans.
 - 9 children.
 - 10 shunned

In the early days of Rome, values were estimated at so many oxen. That is why an ox is shown on this crude piece of metal.

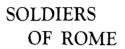


REVIEW OF UNIT XII

- I. Complete these sentences with correct Latin words.
- 1. Circē, eā rē (moved), porcōs in hūmānam fōrmam convertit.
- 2. Argonautae (the king) non resistent.
- 3. Trōjānī, (of fighting) cupidī, agrōs occupāre temptābunt.
- 4. Dux (the city) hostium potītus est, quod hostēs (swords) nōn ūsī sunt.
- 5. (By fighting) exercitus hostes superat.
- II. Translate these sentences and explain the uses of the verbs in each one.
 - 1. Jāson nautās convocāre dēbet.
 - 2. Jāsonem nautās convocāre oportet.
 - 3. Nautae Jāsonī convocandī sunt.
- III. Translate the following sentences and explain the differences in construction.
 - 1. Spēs superandī Rōmam omnēs Sabīnōs cēpit.
 - 2. Spēs Rōmae superandae omnēs Sabīnōs cēpit.
- IV. Select the word, phrase, or clause which completes each sentence correctly.
 - 1. Trōjānī urbem condidērunt, quae (Alba Longa, Lāvīnium, Rōma) appellāta est.
 - 2. Māter Rōmulī et Remī erat (Lāvīnia, Proca, Rhēa Silvia).
 - 3. Rōmulus lēgātōs in cīvitātēs fīnitimās mīsit (ad bellum gerendum, quī societātem cōnūbiumque peterent, ut lūdōs spectārent).
 - 4. Horātius (animō frāctus, certus vincendī, dēfessus vulnere) in certāmen vēnit.
 - 5. Pyrrhus, Fābriciī virtūtem admīrātus, dīxit, "Tibi quārtam rēgnī meī partem dabō, sī (mē virum bonum jūdicās, patriam dēseruerīs, Rōmānīs pācem suāserīs)."
 - 6. Rēgulus timēbat (nē cibus uxōrī ac līberīs dēesset, nē in catēnās conjicerētur, ut senātus pācem cum Poenīs faceret).



Soldiers foraging and building camp



An eagle once the standard of a legion



A Roman soldier



Tombstone of a Roman centurion buried in Britain



Soldiers at work



Caesar, newly appointed governor of the Roman Province, was faced with the problem of restless neighbors. The Helvetians, a large tribe of Celtic Gauls living in the mountains of northern Switzerland, were planning a mass migration westward from their tiny homeland. To have thousands of people on the move with an uncertain destination was a threat not only to the Roman Province but to the Gallic allies of Rome. Caesar's encounters with these emigrants in conferences and on the battlefield are described in the early chapters of his Commentaries on the Gallic War.

GAUL AND ITS PEOPLE

allia est omnis¹ dīvīsa in partēs trēs; ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae, quī ā nōbīs Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garunna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.²

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt; minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe³ veniunt, quī ea important⁴ quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent⁵; praetereā sunt proximī Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs⁶ fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī⁶ in eōrum⁶ fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit⁷ ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garunnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; ¹⁵ attıngit etiam ab⁸ Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit⁹ ad septentriōnēs.

Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem.

- 1 as a whole.
- ² Singular, because the Marne and the Seine are thought of as one boundary.
- ³ With minime, very seldom; what is the literal translation?
 - ⁴ A compound of what two Latin words?
- ⁵ Translate ad . . . pertinent, tend to break down character.
- ⁶ For what name does each of the pronouns suis, ipsī, ĕorum stand? Remember that the reflexive suus refers to the subject of its clause.
- 7 What single English word will translate initium capit?
 - ⁸ on the side of.
 - 9 it faces.

Aquītānia ā Garunnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeos montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentrionēs.

A NATION OUTGROWS ITS BOUNDARIES

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,¹ rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvibus persuāsit² ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.

"Perfacile³ est," inquit, "cum virtūte omnībus⁴ praestēmus, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.⁵"

Facilius eis persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur; ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Itaque fīēbat ut⁷ minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā dē causā hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō⁸ multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, cōnstituērunt⁹ ea ¹⁰ quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum (of pack animals) et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coemere, sēmentēs (sowings) quam maximās facere ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī ²⁵ suppeteret (might be available), cum proximīs cīvitātībus pācem et

¹ in the consulship of; ablative absolute. The year was 61 B.C.

² On pages 218, 219, and 220 persuādeō is used four times; it commonly takes a dative (indicating the person persuaded), which is translated as a direct object, and it is usually followed by a noun clause of desire, introduced by ut (or nē), in which the verb is best translated by an infinitive.

³ The prefix per attached to an adjective gives it the force of a superlative; as a predicate adjective, Perfacile modifies potīrī.

⁴ Dative with compound of prae; translate as direct object.

⁵ to gain the supreme control; imperio, object, is the ablative because of potīrī, which is itself the subject of est.

⁶ Use the map on page 221 to check the boundaries given by ūnā ex parte, alterā ex parte, tertiā ex parte. What would be quārtā ex parte?

⁷ And so it happened that. The use of the subjunctive in a noun clause of fact and the forms of fiō are given on the facing page.

⁸ in proportion to.

⁹ Find the four infinitives which depend on constituerunt.

¹⁰ Object of comparare.

amīcitiam confirmāre. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectionem lēge confirmant.

Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret; pater enim ejus rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat

THE IRREGULAR VERB $f \bar{\imath} \bar{o}$

The verb facio has no passive forms in the present system. The missing passive is replaced by the irregular verb fio, *I become*, *I am made*. The principal parts are fio, fieri, factus sum.

INDICATIVE										
PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE						
fīō		fīēbam	fīēbāmus	fīam	fiēmus					
fīs		fīēbās	fīēbātis	fīēs	fīētis					
fit	fīunt	fīēbat	fīēbant	fīet	fīent					
SUBJUNCTIVE										
PRESENT		IMP	IMPERFECT							
fīam	fīāmus	fierem	fierēmus							
fīās	fīātis	fierēs	fierētis							
fīat	fīant	fieret	fierent							

The perfect system of faciō in the passive is formed regularly: factus sum, factus eram, etc.

NOUN CLAUSES OF FACT

The third person singular of fīō is often translated it results (freely, the result is). A verb meaning it happens, it results, it comes about may have as subject a clause introduced by ut with its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is called a noun clause of fact. The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative.

Saepe accidit ut fratrem tuum in urbe videam, It often happens that I see your brother in the city.

Fiebat ut minus lātē vagārentur, The result was (It resulted) that they roamed less widely.

Such a clause may be used as the object of a verb meaning to bring about, to make, to cause.

Hoc effecit ut castra tūta essent, This fact brought it about that the camp was safe (i.e., made the camp safe).

et ā senātū populī Rōmānī¹ amīcus appellātus erat. Itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

"Perfacıle est," inquit, "cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum. Nōn est dubium quīn4 tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possint. Meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō."

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et jūs jūrandum dant⁶ et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae imperiō sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium⁷ ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere⁸ coēgērunt. Sī damnārētur (he should be convicted), igne eum cremātūrī erant (they were going to burn).

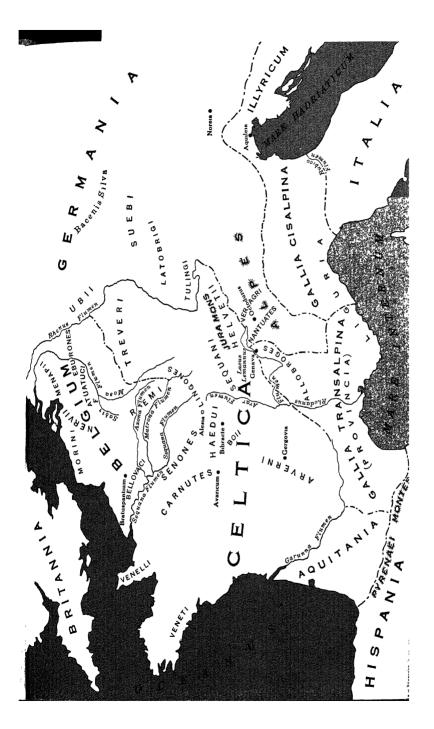
Diē constitūtā causae dictionis, Orgetorīx ad jūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad¹o hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātosque¹¹ suos, quorum magnum numerum habēbat, eodem condūxit; per eos, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit.

Cum cīvitās, 12 ob eam rem incitāta, armīs jūs suum exsequī (to en20 force) cōnārētur multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs
cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est. Multī ex Helvētiīs arbitrantur
ipsum sē interfēcisse.

- ¹ The genitive populi Rōmānī is to be taken with senātū.
- ² What infinitive, modified by Perfacile, is the subject of est?
 - 3 What is the tense of obtenturus?
- 4 that, in a noun clause with a negative expression of doubt. See page 359, 119.
- ⁵ With plurimum, are the strongest [people]; what is the literal translation?
- Translate inter . . . dant, they gave a pledge and [swore] an oath to one another; literally, they give faith and an oath among themselves.
- ⁷ through informers; literally, through information. Compare the modern phrase, "through the underground"
- 8 to plead his case. Orgetorix was under arrest for treason.
 - o On the day set for the trial.
 - 10 about, as elsewhere, with numerals
- ¹¹ Orgetorix had a large personal following: familiam, personal retainers; clientes, dependents; obseratos, debtors, people who owed him money or service.
- ¹² The government intended to match force with force.



Roman soldiers



LET US PASS

Post ejus mortem nihilō minus¹ Helvētiī ē fīnibus suīs exīre cōnantur. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad² duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, cremant. Haec fēcērunt ut, domum reditiōnis (of returning) spē sublātā,³ parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda⁴ essent. Trium mēnsium⁵ molita cibāria⁶ sibi quemque domō efferre jubent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, ut, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque incēnsīs, ūnā cum⁷ eīs proficīscantur. Boiōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, sociōs recipiunt.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus⁸ domō exīre possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur⁹; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat ut facile perpaucī prohibēre¹⁰ possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius¹¹ atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs¹² locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.

Consilium erat Helvētiorum vel persuādēre Allobrogibus, quī nūper pācātī erant et nondum bono animo¹³ in populum Romānum vidēbantur, vel vī cogere ut per suos fīnēs iter darent. Omnibus rēbus ad profectionem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v Kal. Apr. ¹⁴ L. Pīsone, A. Gabīnio consulibus.

¹ nevertheless; literally, less by nothing. Compare English none the less.

² Compare English about twelve in number (to the number of twelve).

³ by destroying the hope of returning, ablative absolute. What are the principal parts of tollo?

⁴ Gerundive of subeo.

⁵ for three months; i.e., to last three months. Where do quemque and sibi place the responsibility?

⁶ ground food, meal.

⁷ along with; ūnā is an adverb.

⁸ Omit in translating.

⁹ could be drawn.

¹⁰ Supply eos as object.

¹¹ much easier; literally, easier by much.

¹² several; literally, not none.

¹³ kindly disposed; ablative of description in the predicate with videbantur.

¹⁴ For ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs, five days before the Kalends [first] of Aprīl, i.e., March 28. See page 272. The Helvetians laid their plans in 61 B.C. and spent two years in preparation for the migration.

Caesarī¹ cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe² proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itinerībus³ in Galliam Ulterīōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit.

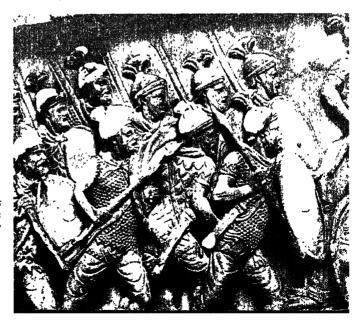
Prōvinciae tōtī⁴ quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat⁵ (erat omnīnō in Galliā Ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem quī erat ad ⁵ Genavam jubet rescindī (to be broken down).

Ubi de ejus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, legātōs ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos cīvitātis. Hī dīxērunt Helvētiōs habēre in animo sine ūllo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāvērunt ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facere io licēret.6

Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum⁷ exercitumque ejus ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum missum; concēdendum⁸ igitur nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō temperātūrōs (would refrain) ab injūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat.

Tamen, quod mīlitēs quōs imperāverat nōndum convēnerant, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum⁹; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr.¹⁰ reverterentur.

- ¹ Caesar is the newly appointed governor of Transalpine Gaul, the Province.
 - ² Rome.
- 3 by the longest possible journeys.
- ⁴ On the entire province, dative with imperat.
 - 5 he levied.
 - 6 that they be allowed; see page 354, 105.
- ⁷ Find the perfect passive infinitives in this sentence and notice that **esse** is omitted with all of them.
 - 8 it (the privilege) should be granted.
- ⁹ Supply esse, would take time for deliberating, or to deliberate.
- ¹⁰ at the Ides of April, i.e., by April 13 See page 272.



Roman soldiers advancing on the enemy

YOU SHALL NOT PASS

Intereā ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram, mīlia passuum XIX, mūrum¹ in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit (he distributed), castella mūnit, quō² facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

⁵ Ubi lēgātī ad eum diē constitūto revertērunt, negat³ sē more et exemplo populī Romānī posse iter ūllī per provinciam dare et, sī vim facere conentur, prohibitūrum⁴ ostendit.

Helvētiī eā spē dējectī non numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, perrumpere conātī sunt. Eorum aliī nāvēs jūnxerant ratēsque (and rafts) complūrēs fēcerant; aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdo flūminis erat, trānsīre conābantur.

Sed operis mūnītiōne⁸ et mīlitum concursū (*ihe attack*) et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Ūna per Sēquanōs via relinquēbātur, quā Sēquanīs invītīs⁹ propter angustiās¹⁰ īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum¹¹ suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt ut eō dēprecātōre¹² ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne¹³ apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus¹⁴ studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās¹⁵ volēbat.

Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat16 ut per fīnēs suōs Hel-

- ¹ Not a stone wall, but an earthwork made in great part by cutting down the top of the river bank so as to leave a steep front.
- ² Used instead of ut to introduce a clause of purpose containing a comparative.
- ³ The usual Latin for say . . . not. In translating, it is best to take the negative with posse.
- ⁴ The full expression would be sē eōs prohibitūrum esse.
- ⁵ disappointed in that hope. Notice that spē is ablative of separation, as is also conatu, line 13.
- ⁶ With non, sometimes; what is the literal translation? Compare nonnulli (not none), some.
 - 7 to force a passage.

- * by the strength of the fortification; what is the literal translation?
- ⁹ against the wish of the Sequanians; ablative absolute. What is the literal translation?
- $^{10}\,\mathrm{The}$ narrow passage along the bank of the Rhône, described on page 222, lines 13-15.
 - 11 Since.
- 12 through his intercession; literally, he [being] the supporter (or spokesman).
- 13 Because of his popularity and liberality.
- ¹⁴ revolution; dative with studebat. What is the literal translation?
 - 15 bound [to him].
- 16 prevailed on the Sequanians. The object of impetrat is the noun clause ut ... patiantur, to allow, etc.

vētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit¹—Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et injūriā trānseant.

Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiōs habēre in anımō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere; hī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium 5 fīnibus absunt, quae² cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret,³ hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inımīcī, partī prōvinciae patentī (*lying open*) maximēque frūmentāriae⁴ fīnitimī futūrī erant.⁵

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī⁶ quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit. Ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus⁷ contendit duāsque ibi 10 legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et proximō itinere in Ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnībus īre contendit.

Ibi Ceutrones et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur.

Complūribus⁸ hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenīt; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs⁹ exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

HELP FOR THE INVADED

Helvētiī jam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur.¹⁰

Haeduī, cum sē suaque¹¹ ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt quī auxilium rogent.¹²

- ¹ brought it about that they exchanged hostages. Through favors to neighboring chieftains Dumnorix is building up a strong personal, political, and war machine.
 - ² The antecedent of quae is cīvitās.
 - 3 If this should be done.
- ⁴ open territory and [country] especially fruitful in grain. Capture of this region would be a threat to the food supply of the Province.
 - 5 would be.
- ⁶ Dative with the compound praeficit, which has Labiënum as direct object.
- ⁷ forced marches. Caesar relied greatly on the elements of speed and surprise.

- $^8\,\mathrm{With}\,$ proeliis, while his and pulsis together form an ablative absolute.
- ⁹ Caesar has now led an armed force into foreign territory without an order of the Senate.
- While Caesar was marching to Aquileia and back, the Helvetians, though they had kept their pledge to the Sequanians (l. 2, above), invaded the country of the Haeduans, the homeland of Dumnorix, and began devastating it.
- ¹¹ themselves and their possessions. Why did they have so many possessions? Compare the pioneers in our country.
- 12 to ask for help; subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

15

20

"Ita nōs," inquiunt, "omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus¹ ut paene ın cōnspectū exercitūs vestrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint."

Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quibus² trāns Rhodanum vīcī possessiōnēsque erant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt³ et dēmōnstrant sē praeter agrī solum (soil) nihil habēre reliquum.

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar non expectāre statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociorum consūmptīs, in Santonos Helvētiī pervenīrent.⁴

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum fluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte (slowness) ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat⁵ jūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus jūnctīs trānsībant, trēsque jam partēs cōpiārum trādūxerant.

Caesar dē tertiā vigiliā⁶ cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus⁷ magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās⁸ abdidērunt

Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum mīserat.⁹

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars¹o cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat,¹¹ ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.¹²

Quā in rē Caesar non solum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās injūriās ultus est¹³; nam Tigurīnī interfēcerant L. Pīsonem lēgātum, avum L. Pīsonis, socerī (*father-in-law*) Caesaris, eodem proelio quo Cassium.

- ¹ Translate with Ita nos, etc. We have always so deserved of the Roman people
 - ² Dative of possession. See page 203.
- ³ The phrase fugā sē recipiunt is equivalent to fugiunt.
- * should come; an anticipatory subjunctive with dum, until. See page 213.
- ⁵ in what direction it flows; an indirect question; ut . . . possit, a result clause
 - 6 in the third watch, just past midnight.
- ⁷ attacking them impeded and off guard. The Helvetians did not know that the Roman army was in the neighborhood.

- ⁸ The accusative is used because of the motion implied in abdiderunt.
- ⁹ This refers to the disaster inflicted nearly fifty years earlier, mentioned on page 223, lines 12-13.
 - 10 Translate as if ea pars quae.
- ¹¹ With such a word as calamitas or injūria as object, this word means *inflict* . . on. Why is populo dative?
 - 12 first paid the penalty.
- ¹⁸ From ulcīscor. Caesar claims to derive great satisfaction from wiping out this old insult to his wife's family.



The Roman army marching out of camp

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrāvit¹ atque ita exercitum trādūxit. Helvētiī repentīnō ejus adventū commōtī sunt; ille enim ūnō diē flūmen trānsierat, id quod² ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant. Lēgātōs igitur ad eum mīsērunt, quī pācem peterent. Hujus lēgā- 5 tiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō³ dux Helvētiōrum fuerat

Caesar lēgātīs respondit, "Ego memoriā teneō īnsıgnem calamıtātem quam Helvētiī populō Rōmānō in bellō Cassiānō intulērunt. Ipse autem dēpōnere nōn possum memoriam recentium injūriārum, quod⁴ vōs Helvētiī mē invītō iter per Prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod ¹¹o Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvistis.⁵ Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs mihi dabitis, et sī Haeduīs sociīsque eōrum, item sī Allobrogibus dē injūriīs satisfaciētis,⁵ vōbīscum pācem faciam."

Dīvicō, prīnceps lēgātiōnis, respondīt, "Ita Helvētiī ā majōribus suīs īnstitūtī sunt" ut obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint"; ejus 15 reī populus Rōmānus est testis."

Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prō-

¹ he arranged for a bridge to be built

² a task which.

³ Referred to on page 223, lines 12-13.

⁴ the fact that. Caesar sums up his reasons for refusing Divico's request.

⁵ Referred to on pages 225-226.

⁶ make reparation to.

⁷ have been taught.

^{*} are accustomed, consuerint is a contracted form of consueverint. The perfect of consuesco is translated as present

vinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs¹ coāctum habēbat,² praemittit quī videant³ quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.⁴ Quī,⁵ cupidius⁶ novissimum agmen însecūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt, et pauci de nostris cadunt.

Ouō proeliō sublātī7 Helvētiī, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum propulerant, audācius subsistere (to stand their ground) non numquam et novissimo agmine8 proelio nostros lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar suos ā proelio continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs populātionībusque prohibēre.9

Ita dies circiter xv iter fecerunt ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum¹⁰ non amplius quīnīs (five) aut sēnīs (six) mīlibus passuum interesset.11

AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH

▼nterim cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum¹² quod Haeduī essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitābat.

Nam propter frigora (cold), quod Gallia sub septentrionibus posita est, non modo frumenta in agrīs mātura non erant, sed ne pābuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat.13 Eo autem frumento14 quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat (he had conveyed), proptereā¹⁵ ūtī minus¹⁶ poterat quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nolebat.

Diem ex die ducunt Haedui¹⁷; conferri, comportari, adesse¹⁸ dicunt. Ubi sē diūtius¹⁹ dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocāvit eorum prīncipēs, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat.

- ¹ Caesar has now joined forces with the Gallic tribes which were threatened by the Helvetians. Caesar's soldiers were mainly
- ² had collected. The participle coactum agrees with quem in line 19, page 227.
- ³ A clause of purpose. What is the antecedent of qui?
 - ⁴ An indirect question.
- ⁵ These. When a form of qui begins a sentence, it may be translated as though it were a form of is, ea, id.
 - 6 too eagerly.
 - 7 elated by this battle.
 - 8 from their rear line.
- 9 With satis habebat, regarded it as infinitives. sufficient for the present to prevent the

- enemy from plundering and pillaging.
- 10 Supply agmen.
- 11 there was a distance of not more than five or six miles.
- 12 Caesar is caught without supplies of food, for the reasons given in the next paragraph.
 - 13 was available.
- 14 Ablative with deponent infinitive ūtī. See page 203.
 - Take with quod, line 23.
 - 16 Equivalent to non.
- 17 The Haeduans put |him| off day after
- 18 Supply frümentum as subject of these
 - 19 too long.

In hīs erant Dīviciācus et Liscus, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum¹ appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus (annually) et vītae necisque in suōs² habet potestātem.

Tum Caesar graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum frūmentum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, hostibus tam propinquīs,³ ab eīs nōn 5 sublevētur, praesertim cum, magnā ex parte⁴ eōrum precibus adductus, bellum suscēperit.

Tum dēmum Liscus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod³ anteā tacuerat prōpōnit, "Sunt nōnnūllī quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat,⁶ quī prīvātim (as private citizens) plūs possint⁷ 10 quam ipsī magistrātūs.

"Propter hōrum sēditiōsam (seditious) atque improbam (disloyal) ōrātiōnem multitūdō frūmentum nōn cōnferunt quod dēbent.

"'Praestat,'' inquiunt,'' 'sī jam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possumus, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; sī Helvē- 15 tiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs' lībertātem sine dubiō ēripient.'

"Ab eīsdem tua cōnsilia quaeque ın castrīs geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur; hōs coercēre (restrain) nōn possum. Quīn etiam¹¹ intellegō quantō cum perīculō hanc necessāriam rem tibi ēnūntiāverim, et 20 ob eam causam quam diū potuī tacuī."

- 1 vergobret, title of the chief magistrate of the Haeduans
 - ² over his fellow citizens.
 - 3 with the enemy so near.
 - 4 to a great extent.
 - ⁵ For id quod.
- ⁶ is very great Subjunctive in a descriptive clause. See page 358, **115** (a).
- ⁷ have more influence. Also subjunctive in a descriptive clause.
- * The subject is the infinitive perferre; translate, It is better to endure, etc.
- ⁹ The subject is *they*, referring to the troublemakers of the preceding lines.
 - 10 from the Haedwans.
 - 11 More than that.













Nervii

i Ambiani Gallic coins

Viromanduı

A coin of Dumnorix

TWO BROTHERS

aesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī (was meant) sentiēbat, sed quod plūribus praesentibus¹ eās rēs jactārī (discussed) nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō² ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Liscus dīcit līberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerīt, quī ita respondērunt, "Ipse est Dumnorīx, summā audāciā," magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā," cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta (bought up) habet, proptereā quod, illō licente, contrā licērī audet nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit.

"Magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptūs semper alit et circum sē habet; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs plūrimum potest, atque hujus potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō in mātrimōnium dedit.

"Ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre" et propinquās suās in aliās cīvitātēs in mātrimōnium dedit. Favet Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem (relationship); ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ejus dēminūta (lessened) et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris est restitūtus. Rōmānīs superātīs, summam spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī habet; imperiō¹⁰ populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā grātiā quam habet dēspērat."

- 2 In translating, supply eo.
- ³ Ablative of description.

- b private property.
- 7 resources for bribery.
- 8 at his own expense
- half sister (sister on his mother's side)
- 10 under the rule

in the presence of so many, ablative absolute.

^{*}mposts, taxes on imports and exports, vectigalia, general taxes and revenues. Instead of collecting taxes directly from the taxpayers, the government accepted bids from wealthy men or corporations who paid a lump sum to the treasury and then collected as much as they could squeeze out of the people

Presumably the bidding for the taxes was open, but Dumnorix was so powerful that no one dared bid against him, and he secured the right for a small price

 $^{^{5}}$ Present participle of the deponent liceor, bid

Initium fugae equitātūs paucīs ante diēbus, ut Caesar in quaerendō repperīt, factum erat ā Dumnorīge atque ejus equitibus (nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesarī¹ Haeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquus equitātus erat perterritus.

Ad hās suspīciōnēs² certissimae rēs³ accēdēbant, quod Dumnorīx 5 per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxerat, quod obsidēs inter eōs⁴ dandōs cūrāverat,⁵ quod ea omnia nōn modo injussū⁶ Caesaris et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcerat, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsābātur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar statuit aut in Dumnorīgem animadvertere¹ aut cīvitātem in eum animadvertere jubēre. Hīs omnībus rēbus ūnum repugnābat,⁵ quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, jūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē ejus suppliciō animum Dīviciācī offenderet⁵ verēbātur. Itaque

DATIVE OF PURPOSE

Sometimes a noun in the dative is used to denote the purpose which something serves or is intended to serve.

Equitatum auxilio miserant, They had sent the cavalry as and (lit., for aid).

The dative of purpose is sometimes employed where English usage would require a predicate nominative.

Haec fāma auxiliō erit, This reputation will be a help.

DATIVE OF REFERENCE

The dative is sometimes used to denote the person or thing with reference to whom or to which an act is done or a situation exists.

Equitatum auxilio Caesari Haedui miserant, The Haeduans had sent the cavalry as aid (lit., for aid) to (or for) Caesar.

- ¹ to aid Caesar. Here auxiliō is dative of purpose; Caesarī, dative of reference. These are explained on this page.
- ² Concerning Dumnorix' treachery, cited hostages. hostages. without without without the facing page.
- ³ most clearly proved facts; explained in detail in the quod clauses.
- ⁴ It will help you to understand this paragraph if you know to whom or what each pronoun refers. Ask yourself who or
- what is meant by each form of ipse, is, and sē.
- ⁵ he had arranged for an exchange of hostages.
 - ⁶ without the order.
 - ⁷ punish; in translating, omit in.
- ⁸ was opposed; unum is explained by the quod clause.
- 9 Subjunctive in a noun clause, object of verēbātur.

priusquam quicquam cōnārētur,¹ Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī jubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat,² cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit (reminded) quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātım quisque dē eō apud sē³ dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine ejus offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere jubeat.

Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus (*embracing*) orāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret.⁴

"Sciō," inquit, "illa esse vēra, neque quisquam⁵ ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris⁶ capit, proptereā quod, cum ego ipse⁷ grātiā plūrimum possem domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille⁸ minimum propter adulēscentiam poterat.⁹ Per mē frāter meus crēvit (grew powerful); nunc opibus ac nervīs¹⁰ nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam meam, sed paene ad perniciem (ruin) meam ūtitur. Commoveor tamen et amōre frāternō et opīniōne vulgī. Quod sī quid eī ā tē gravius acciderit, cum ego ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum esse; quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur."

Cum haec plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prehendit; cōnsōlātus rogat ut fīnem ōrandī faciat. Caesar tantī ejus apud sē grātiam esse¹¹ ostendit ut et reī pūblicae injūriam et suum dolōrem ejus voluntātī ac precibus¹² condōnet (pardons). Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat (blames) ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit. Monet ut in reliquum tempus¹³ omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita¹⁴ sē Dīviciācō frātrī¹⁵ condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

¹ An anticipatory subjunctive. See page 357, **113** (a).

² in whom he had the highest confidence in all matters.

³ to himself (Caesar).

⁴ would not take too severe action against his brother; what is the literal translation?

⁵ and no one; what is the literal translation?

⁶ With plus.

⁷ Diviciacus.

⁸ Dumnorix.

⁹ Observe the strong contrast here between plūrimum possem and minimum poterat.

wealth and resources; ablative with utitur. Name some other verbs that take the ablative.

¹¹ Translate tanti . . . esse, was worth so much to him.

¹² out of regard for his wish and prayers.

¹³ for the future.

¹⁴ Neuter plural as noun, the past.

¹⁵ for the sake of his brother.

AN OFFICER'S ERROR

E ōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus¹ hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis (what) esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent² mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre,³ cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter 5 cognōverant summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit⁴ ostendit.

Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā 10 in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

Prīmā lūce summus mons ā Labiēno tenēbātur. Ipse ab hostium castrīs non longius mīlle et quingentīs passibus⁷ aberat, neque,⁸ ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus erat.

Tum Cōnsidius, equō admissō, ad eum accurrit atque dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit et aciem īnstruit.

Labiēnus monte occupātō, nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinē- 20 bat; Caesar enim eum adventum suum expectāre jusserat ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret.

Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum¹⁰ quod¹¹ nōn vīdisset prō vīsō¹² sibi renūntiāsse.

Eō diē quō cōnsuērat¹³ intervāllō¹⁴ hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

- ¹ Remember that this phrase takes indirect discourse.
- ² A relative clause of purpose. The verb has as its object the indirect question quālis esset, etc. Supply explorātorēs as antecedent of quī.
- ³ with praetorian rank. Labienus had been assigned to Caesar's staff with the honorary designation pro praetore, as if he had held the office of praetor.
- * what his plan was; what is the literal translation?
- ⁵ in military affairs. The genitive is dependent on the adjective peritissimus.

- ⁶ Supply exercitü.
- 7 How many paces made a mile?
- 8 With aut . . . aut, and neither . . . nor.
- 9 with his horse at a gallop.
- 10 thoroughly frightened; what is the literal translation?
 - 11 For id quod.
- ¹² as seen. It seems strange that an experienced officer should mistake Roman insignia for enemy standards and in his fright make a completely false report.
 - ¹³ Contracted form of consueverat.
- 14 at the customary interval; i.e., five or six miles.

Postrīdiē ejus diēī,¹ quod omnīnō bīduī frūmentum² supererat, reī frūmentāriae³ prōspiciendum exīstimāns, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit, ac Bibracte, oppidum Haeduōrum, īre contendit. Nam hoc oppidum longē maximum et cōpiōsissimum (best supplied) erat atque nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs (runaway slaves) L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis⁴ equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine⁵ īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

BATTLE AND VICTORY

Postquam id animum advertit,6 copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitatumque qui sustineret hostium impetum mīsit.

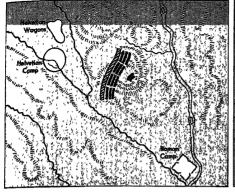
Ipse interim in colle mediō⁷ triplicem aciem⁸ īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō jugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā Citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit; impedīmenta sarcināsque⁹ in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum¹⁰ ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī jussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, cōnfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange¹¹ factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

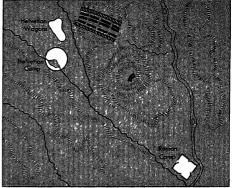
Caesar prīmum suum¹² deinde omnium ex conspectū removit equos ut, aequāto omnium perīculo, spem fugae tolleret. Cohortātus inde suos proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē loco superiore pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt (broke up). Eā disjectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs (drawn), in eos impetum fēcērunt.

Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō¹⁴ quod plūra¹⁵ eōrum

- ¹ In translating, omit ejus diēī This idiom gives somewhat the effect of our "the very next day."
 - ² a two days' supply of grain.
- ³ Dative with prospiciendum [esse], he must look out for.
- ⁴ decurion, commander of a group of ten horsemen.
- ⁵ on the rear line. The Helvetians were now following Caesar.
- ⁶ The phrase animum advertit is equivalent to animadvertit, and takes id as a direct object
 - 7 halfway up the hill. See diagram.
- ⁸ Each of the lines consisted of about eight ranks.
 - 9 baggage and packs. See page 227.

- 10 Supply locum.
- ¹¹ A close formation of infantry, in which the men of each rank were protected by the shields of the men in front of them as well as by their own shields
 - 12 Supply equum.
 - 13 When that was dispersed.
- 14 The Gauls were greatly hindered in the battle for the reason that, literally, It was a great hindrance to the Gauls in battle that. The subject of erat is the noun clause quod...erant, etc.
- 15 in many cases. In the phalanx formation shields were overlapped, so that it was possible for a javelin to pierce at one time two of the wicker or wooden shields which the Gauls carried





Plan of the battle The solid black lines represent Romans; the shaded lines. Gauls

scūta ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxa et colligāta (fastened together) erant; nam cum ferrum sē īnflexisset,¹ neque id ēvellere (pull out) neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant. Multī igitur, diū jactātō bracchiō,² praeoptāvērunt (preferred) scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore³ pugnāre.

Tandem vulnerıbus dëfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat ($was\ close\ by$) cırcıter mīlle passuum spatıō, eō 4 sē recipere coepērunt.

Captōs monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs 10 praesidiōs erant, ex itinerer nostrōs abs latere apertō aggressī circumveniēbant. Id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre (to renew) coepērunt. Rōmānī signa bipertītō intulērunts; prīma et secunda aciēs ut victīs acsummōtīs¹o resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.¹¹ Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī¹² sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt; alterī¹² ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē

¹ when the iron head had bent (itself) After several shields had been pierced by one javelin, the pulling and tugging of the who carried the shields would bend the long iron tip

² after their arms had been jerked about

³ with unprotected bodies.

⁴ An adverb.

⁵ The verb here means reach or gain

⁶ as a rear guard, praesidiō, dative of purpose, novissimīs, dative of reference

⁷ forthwith, at once, literally, from their

march, 1e, without waiting for the usual battle formation.

⁸ on.

⁹ advanced in two divisions,

¹⁰ Referring to the Helvetians, while venientes refers to the Boil and the Tulingi.

¹¹ they fought a long and stubborn double battle, literally, it was fought long and stubbornly in a two-headed battle

¹² The words alterī... alterī may be translated one party (the Helvetians).. the other (the Boil and the Tulingi).

contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum¹ ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem² vidēre nēmō potuit.

Ad multam noctem³ etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est,⁴ proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs objēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs trāgulās subjiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant.

Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt. In fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum⁵ nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent.

Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve⁶ aliā rē juvārent⁷; aliter sē eōs eōdem locō quō⁸ Helvētiōs habitūrum.⁹ Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

DEFEAT AND SURRENDER

Helvētii omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum¹o eum in itinere convēnissent,¹¹ sē ad pedēs prōjēcērunt suppliciterque (and humbly) locūtī flentēs pācem petīvērunt. Caesar eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre jussit. Eō¹² postquam pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

Dum ea¹³ conquīruntur¹⁴ et conferuntur, cırciter hominum mīlia vī ejus pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur prīmā nocte¹⁵ ē castrīs Helvētiorum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānorum contendērunt.

Quod¹⁶ ubi Caesar resciit (*discovered*), quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs¹⁷ ut conquīrerent et redūcerent,¹⁸ sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent,¹⁹ impe-

¹ although.

² an enemy in flight, or an enemy's back.

³ Until late at night.

⁴ they fought or the battle raged.

⁵ of the dead

⁶ Here translated or.

⁷ not to assist, a noun clause (introduced by nē) depending on the idea of command in litterās nūntiōsque mīsit.

⁸ in the same position as.

⁹ Indirect discourse.

¹⁰ Translate as if Cum ei.

¹¹ Usually intransitive, but transitive here with eum as direct object.

¹² An adverb.

¹³ Neuter because its antecedents are of different gender.

¹⁴ While these were being hunted up.

¹⁵ at nightfall.

¹⁶ this; object of resciit.

¹⁷ Translate in the order imperāvit hīs per fīnēs quōrum.

¹⁸ Supply eos as object.

¹⁹ if they wished to be free of guilt before him.

rāvit; reductōs¹ in hostium numerō habuit²; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī jussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs,³ domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent (might withstand), Allobrogibus imperāvit ut 5 eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent. Ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere jussit.

Id eā maximē ratione⁴ fēcit, quod noluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre nē⁵ propter bonitātem (fertility) agrorum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiorum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae, provinciae, Allobrogibusque essent. Bolos in fīnibus Haeduorum collocāvit; id enim petēbant Haeduī, quī Bolos ēgregiā virtūte⁶ esse cognoverant; posteā eos in parem jūris lībertātisque condicionem atque⁷ ipsī erant recēpērunt.

In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae⁸ repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs⁹ ¹⁵ cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō¹⁰ cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset¹¹ eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot (how many) puerī, senēs, mulierēsque.

Quārum omnium ratiōnum summa erat capitum¹² Helvētiōrum mīlium cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlium xxxvi, Latobrīgōrum xiv, Rauracōrum xxiii, Boiōrum xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā (ninety) duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia ccclxviii.

Eōrum quī domum rediērunt 13 cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

- ¹ Agreeing with eos (to be supplied).
- ² treated them as enemies; i.e., he put them to death or sold them as slaves.
- ³ all the crops having been lost. They had burned all the grain except what they took with them. See page 222, lines 4-5.
- 4 for this reason; explained by the noun clause quod noluit, etc., that he did not wish, etc.
 - 5 for fear that.
 - 6 Ablative of description.
- ⁷ With parem, the same as. With words meaning like or unlike, atque (ac) may mean as or than.
 - 8 lists.
- o in the Greek alphabet. The Gauls had no alphabet of their own, but they had learned the Greek letters from traders. The language of the records was Gallic.

- 10 detailed record; what is the literal translation?
- ¹¹ The indirect question introduced by qui depends on ratio; qui takes its gender from its antecedent numerus.
- 12 of persons. The word may be omitted in translation. Compare our use of "head" in speaking of cattle.

A Gallic coin



LATIN AND ENGLISH VERBS AND LATIN NOUNS MADE FROM VERBS

You have already met pairs of related Latin nouns and verbs. In some cases, the verb came from the noun.

arma, armo custos, -odis, custodio hiems, hiemo jus, juris, juro Some Latin verbs are compounds of a noun and a verb.

animus+adverto, turn = animadverto, turn the mind to, observe bellum+gero = belligero, wage war fumus+ago=fumigo, make smoke, fumigate

What verb was made from navis + ago? What does it mean? Latin nouns also came from verbs. The perfect participle of some verbs became a noun, ending in -um (second declension) or -us (fourth declension), and showing a close connection in meaning between the

respondeo, responsum exeo, exitus

Some Latin nouns denoting means or result were also made from verbs. They may end in -culum, -men, -mentum, or -trum.

miror, miraculum instruo, instrumentum specio, specimen moneo, monstrum

Some Latin nouns showing action came from verbs and end in -io. The corresponding English word usually ends in -ion.

ago, actus, actio, action agita, agitatio, agitation

With what Latin verb is each of the following nouns connected? What does the noun mean?

aditus conspectus dictio oratio spectaculum

The perfect participle of some first-conjugation verbs made from nouns gave us English verbs ending in -ate.

donatum (donum), donate nominatum (nomen), nominate

From the perfect participial stem of some verbs of other conjugations there also came an English verb.

affligo, afflictum, afflici inficio, infectum, infect

Give the English verb from the perfect participle of each verb.

ago hiberno rejicio sentio simulo

noun and verb.

REVIEW OF UNIT XIII

- I. Change the following quotations to indirect discourse.
- 1. Caesar pollicitus est, "Mihi ea rēs cūrae erit."
- 2. Mātrēs familiae ita dīxērunt, "Non est fas Germānos superāre."
- 3. Dīviciācus respondet, "Fortūna Sēquanōrum est mıserior quam reliquōrum."
- II. Find a participial phrase in each of the following sentences and translate it into an English subordinate clause.
- 1. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit.
- 2. Sēdēs habeō in Galliā ā Gallīs concessās.
- 3. Quibus rēbus commōtus, Caesar ad Ariovistum contendit.
- 4. Ipse, triplicī aciē īnstrūctā, usque ad castra hostium accessit.
- 5. Caesar, hāc condiciōne acceptā, salūtem suam tamen Gallōrum equitātuī committere nōn audēbat.
- III. Complete each sentence with the correct word or words and give a reason for your choice.
- 1. Caesar (huic legioni, hac legione, hanc legionem) confidebat.
- 2. Haec mihi sunt (cūrās, cūrae, cūra).
- 3. (Hīberna, Hībernōrum, Hībernīs) Labiēnum praeposuit.
- 4. (Reliquīs, Reliquīs, Reliquī) fugae facultās datur.
- 5. Caesar mātūrandum esse (ā sē, sibi, suī) exīstimāvit.
- IV. For each word or phrase give an English synonym related to a Latin word with the same meaning.

1.	a line from the center	9.	gossip	17.	prisoner
	to the circumference	10.	harshness in	18.	shortness
	of a circle		speech	19.	shouting
2.	a quarrel	11.	height	20.	skin
3.	chilly	12.	hidden	21.	suggest a candi-
4.	decoration	13.	letter		date for office
5.	entrust	14.	locality	22.	training
6.	epidemic sickness	15.	place of burial	23.	without hope
7.	finger	16.	planner of	24.	worship
8.	full		buildings		

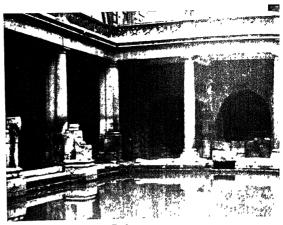
ROMAN BRITAIN



A Roman grave maτkeτ







The pool at Bath



Cinerary urns with faces





The military operation which Caesar undertook in his expedition from Gaul to Britain was a major responsibility

CROSSING THE CHANNEL

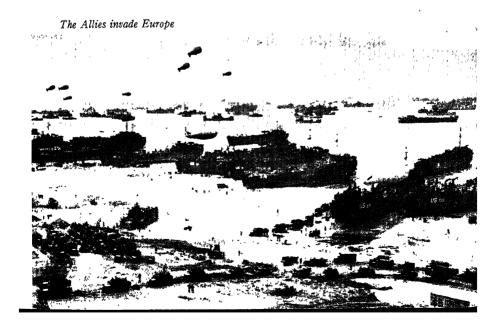
for a commanding officer. Almost exactly two thousand years later, the invasion of Normandy offered a similar challenge to General Dwight D. Eisenhower, although the operation was, of course, on a far greater scale, and its results of much more vital importance to the world.

Many interesting comparisons can be made between Caesar's expedition to Britain and the invasion of Normandy. Both operations involved crossing the English Channel, a narrow but treacherous body of water, and both invading forces met strong resistance to the establishment of a beachhead.

Caesar knew practically nothing about the terrain in Britain or about the currents and tides or about the hostile inhabitants. Our forces had detailed maps of the various landing places in Normandy as well as all information possible about harbors, currents, and tides. They had photographs of the region, taken from airplanes. They had the Underground to help them after they landed.

The Roman general made the crossing late in August, an unfavorable time, especially since there was a full moon when tides are unusually high. The Allied Forces, acting on the day-to-day advice of expert meteorologists, made the crossing at a favorable time in June.

Caesar's transports carried no landing craft and drew so much water that they could not come close to shore. Moreover, his legion-





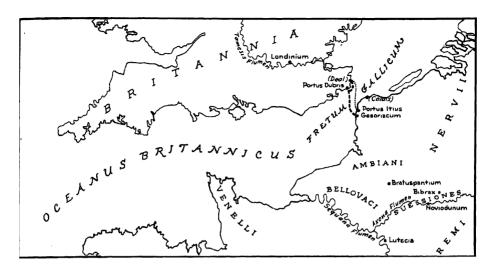
Allied soldiers swarm ashore

aries were not trained for landing operations or for action offshore. Our forces had men trained for action in landing. Specially constructed equipment and even artificial harbors had been provided.

The number of Caesar's ships, the size of his army, and the exact point at which he would land could not be concealed from the Britons. To know how many ships he had and where he would land, all they had to do was follow the Roman fleet along the coast. The Allied Forces, however, were able to keep secret the actual place of their main attack, so that the enemy had to keep large bodies of troops in a number of places in case the first landing should be merely a diversion.

The disadvantage of the attack was Caesar's, since the mobility of his foes enabled them to confront him wherever he tried to land. The Allied troops had to contend with elaborate defenses, but reports from the intelligence service gave them an idea of what to expect.

There are many questions about Caesar's expedition which we cannot answer. But we do know the answer to this one: Why did Caesar make such a dangerous expedition into a hostile, unknown country so late in the season? There was an important military reason—the Britons had sent aid to the Gauls, and if the Romans were to hold Gaul, they could not leave themselves exposed to possible attack from across the Channel. Caesar's expedition was in the nature of a reconnoitering trip; he wanted to learn what he could about the people and the country which must someday be conquered.



Caesar Visits Britain

UNIT

After the Helvetran campaign, Caesar had to fight and conquer many tribes of Gaul. His greatest struggle was with the Belgians, who had organized a formidable league to drive the Romans out of Gaul. This league had the active support of Britons across the channel.

PREPARATION FOR AN INVASION

xiguā parte aestātis reliquā,¹ Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis 7. Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus² nostrīs inde subministrāta auxīlia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus anni³ ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore⁴ 5 arbitrābātur sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, adıtūs cognōvisset; quae omnıa ferē Gallīs erant ıncognita.5 Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō6 adit quisquam, neque his ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regionēs quae sunt contrā Galliam notum est.

- ¹ Ablative absolute, to be translated as a concessive clause coordinate with etsī... hiemes—Although only a small part of the summer remained, . . . [and] in spite of the fact that the winters are early
- ² With subministrāta [esse], had been supplied to our enemies.
 - 3 It was customary for Roman soldiers
- to go into winter quarters before cold weather set in.
- 4 it would be (fore = futurum esse) of great advantage to him.
- ⁵ unknown. This statement is not quite accurate. The coastal tribes, at least, had some knowledge of Britain
 - 6 there; an adverb.

Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātõribus,¹ neque quanta² esset īnsulae magnitūdō neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur neque quī essent ad majōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs³ reperīre poterat.

Ad haec cognōscenda,⁴ priusquam perīculum faceret,⁵ idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum⁶ cum nāve longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam prīmum revertātur.

Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus (passage). Hūc⁷ nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et quam⁸ superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum⁹ fēcerat classem jubet convenīre.

Interim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare.¹⁰

Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus¹¹ hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittīt et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebātibus superātīs, rēgem ibi¹² cōnstituerat, cujus et virtūtem et cōnsilium¹³ probābat et quem sibī fidēlem esse arbitrābātur,¹⁴ cujus²⁰ que auctōritās in hīs regionibus magnī habēbātur,¹⁵ mittit.

Huic imperat¹⁶ quās possit adeat cīvītātēs¹⁷ hortēturque ut populī Romānī fidem sequantur,¹⁸ sēque celeriter eo ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus, perspectīs regionibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuīt¹⁹ quī nāve ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere non audēret, quīnto diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

- ¹ Translate the ablative absolute with after.
- ² The indirect questions depend on reperire, line 4. Before invading Britain, Caesar was trying to get information about the island from Gallic traders who had been there.
- ³ With qui, which harbors were suitable. Possibly the traders knew a great deal about Britain, but were unwilling to help a foreigner who planned an invasion.
 - ⁴ To be taken with praemittit, line 7.
 - 5 should incur any risk.
- ⁶ The clause is equivalent to C. Volusēnum, quem idōneum (a suitable man) esse arbitrābātur.
- ⁷ This harbor was Gesoriacum (now Boulogne). See map, page 243.
 - 8 The antecedent is classem, line 12.
 - 9 This refers to a small revolt of some

- coastal tribes of Gaul. For the location of the Veneti, see map, page 221.
- 10 to obey. Why is this verb followed by a dative? See page 346, 64.
 - 11 making liberal promises.
- 12 Meaning among the Atrebates.
- 13 discretion.
- ¹⁴ Caesar is giving his reasons for entrusting Commius with an important mission. Later Commius disappointed Caesar by heading a revolt (52 B.C.).
- 15 was highly regarded. What is the literal translation?
- 16 These orders are expressed by the subjunctives adeat, hortētur, nūntiet, in noun clauses.
 - 17 to go to whatever states he could.
 - 18 but themselves under the protection.
- 19 so far as opportunity could be given to one, equivalent to as much as a man could.







Side, front, and back views of a Roman helmet It probably had a plume

Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō¹ excūsārent, quod² hominēs barbarī³ et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis⁴ imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur.

Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātionēs Britanniae anteponendās jūdicābat, magnum eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs, eos in fidem recipit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat⁶ quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant⁷ XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII⁸ ventō tenēbantur quōminus⁹ in eundem portum venīre possent; 15 hās equitibus tribuit.

Reliquum exercitum Q. Tıtūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque ın eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre jussit.

- 1 for their attitude in the bast.
- ² on the ground that.
- 3 [being] uncivilized men . . they, etc.
- ⁴The custom of sparing and protecting those who voluntarily surrendered to the Romans. Apparently the Morini had expected either death or slavery.
- ⁵ that these unimportant matters ought not to interfere with (be placed ahead of) [the expedition to] Britain. Britanniae is dative, indirect object of a compound made with ante.
- ⁶ the additional warships which he (Caesar) had. The noun nāvium is gentive of the whole, and the entire quod clause serves as an object of the verb distribuit.
- ⁷ With Hūc, In addition to these, there were.
- *Caesar sailed from Gesoriacum; the cavalry from Portus Itius, eight miles north of there. See map, page 243.
- ⁹ With possent, so that they could not. The conjunction introduces a noun clause with tenebantur. See page 359, 119 (2).

OPERATION CHANNEL

Is constitutis rēbus, nactus idoneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriorem portum progredī et nāvēs conscendere et sē sequī jussit. Ā quibus cum paulo tardius esset administrātum,¹ ipse horā diēī circiter quārtā² cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus³ expositās hostium copiās armātās conspexit. Cujus locī haec⁴ erat nātūra, atque ita montibus mare continēbātur⁵ utī ex locīs superioribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam (in no way) idoneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs⁶ eo convenīrent,² ad horam nonam in ancorīs expectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlītum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit monuitque ut reī mīlitāris ratīō maximēque ut marītimae rēs postulārent,8 ut, cum celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent,9 ad nūtum (at a nod) et ad tempus¹⁰ omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur.¹¹

Hīs dīmissīs, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō (*level*) lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

At barbarī, cōnsıliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō¹² equitātū et ²⁰ essedāriīs (*charioteers*), quō plērumque genere¹³ in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant.

Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō¹⁴ cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus¹⁵ autem ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul

When they had proceeded to carry out these orders, though a little too slowly; i.e., too slowly to take advantage of the favoring winds which carried Caesar to Britain. A change of wind kept the cavalry in port for three days.

² About 10 A.M.

³ The cliffs at Dover, 28 miles across the Channel from Boulogne (Gesoriacum).

⁴ such.

 $^{^{5}}$ so narrow was the seashore below the cliffs.

⁶ The cavalry transports.

⁷ Anticipatory subjunctive. How then will dum be translated?

⁸ With ut rei, as the rules of war and especially as naval operations demand.

⁹ The cum clause beginning in line 13 means inasmuch as they have [to do with] rapid and irregular movements.

¹⁰ on the instant.

¹¹ The noun clause ut . . . administrārentur is the object of monuit, line 12, that . . all things be done

 $^{^{12}}$ Ablative absolute. Translate as a verb in the active voice.

¹³ a kind [of troops] which.

¹⁴ in deep water.

¹⁵ Translate militibus . . . desiliendum, our soldiers, however, in unfamiliar places, with hands encumbered [by weapons] and weighed down by a great (heavy) weight of armor, had to leap down from the ships; militibus in line 23 is dative of agent with desiliendum.

et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum¹ et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī² aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conjicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs (well-trained) incitārent.

Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hujus omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī non eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior³ et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior,⁴ paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī⁵ atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī jussit⁶; quae rēs⁻ magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt.

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cūnctantibus (delaying), maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī⁸ x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus (having called on) deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs" (comrades), nisi vultis¹⁰ aquilam hostibus prōdere. Ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.¹¹"

Hoc cum võce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāve projēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē¹² nē tantum dēdecus (*disgrace*) admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāve dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent,¹³ subsecūtī hostibus appropinguāvērunt.

- 1 had to get a foothold.
- ² while they (the enemy).
- ³ less familiar. The warships of the Romans had oars and differed in shape from the trading vessels that visited Britain. The Britons themselves used small wicker boats covered with the skins of animals.
- ⁴ which were more easily managed; literally, whose motion was freer for use.
- ⁵ stationed near the unprotected flank of the enemy (on the right side).
- ⁶ Governs five infinitives with subjects in the accusative—the first three with nāvēs, and the last two with hostēs.
 - 7 this maneuver.

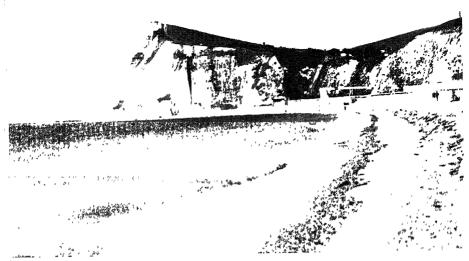
- 8 the man who.
- 9 From what Latin words is this derived?
- 10 From volō. See page 163.
- 11 I shall have performed.
- 12 encouraging one another.
- 13 Also [the soldiers] from the nearest ships, when they had seen these.





A coin found in Britain

1.5



The beach at Dover today

WINNING A BEACHHEAD

Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre¹ neque firmiter īnsistere² neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāve,³ quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat,⁴ magnopere perturbābantur.

Hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs,⁵ ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāve ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs, impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant,⁶ aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs⁷ tēla conjiciēbant.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās⁸ longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia⁹ mīlitibus complērī jussit¹⁰ et, quōs¹¹ labōrantēs cōnspexerat,¹⁰ hīs subsidia submittēbat.¹⁰

- 1 to keep ranks.
- ² With firmiter, to stand firmly.
- ³ men from different ships (one from one ship, another from another).
- ⁴ gathered about whatever standards they happened on. In battle Roman soldiers were accustomed to fixed positions, shown by their standards.
 - ⁵ Ablative absolute denoting cause.
 - 6 large bands surrounded small groups.
 - 7 against the main body.

- ⁸ skiffs, small messenger boats belonging to the warships.
- scouting boats, light, swift-sailing vessels used in reconnoitering. They were camouflaged with green paint, and the sailors wore green clothing. Both the scaphae and the speculatoria nāvigia could be rowed into shallow water.
- Notice the change in tense. The perfect denotes a single act; the past perfect and imperfect denote repeated acts.
- 11 The antecedent is his.

Nostrī, simul¹ in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque² longius³ prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere⁴ nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.⁵

Hostēs proeliō superātī, sımul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs sēsē datūrōs quaeque imperāsset⁶ factūrōs⁷ pollicitī sunt.

Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnīt, quem suprā dēmonstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.

Hunc illī ē nāve ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō⁸ Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjēcerant. Tum, proeliō factō, remīsērunt et in petendā pāce ejus reī culpam in multitūdinem⁹ contulērunt et propter imprūdentiam¹⁰ ut ignōscerētur¹¹ petīvērunt.

Caesar questus¹² quod, cum ultrō in continentem, lēgātīs missīs, pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere¹³ imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt.

Intereā suōs in agrōs remigrāre (*to return*) jussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

A TEMPORARY SETBACK

Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam¹⁴ est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs xvIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō

- ¹ Equivalent to simul atque.
- ² but . . . not.
- 3 very far.
- 4 reach.
- ⁵ In this [respect] alone did Caesar's usual good fortune fail him.
 - 6 What is the uncontracted form?
 - ⁷ Supply esse.
 - 8 as (in the character of) an ambassador.
- ⁹ Probably the leaders had been equally responsible.
 - 10 ignorance (of the rights of envoys).
- in that they be pardoned. Verbs governing the dative are used impersonally in the passive.
 - 12 From queror.
 - 13 Supply se as subject.
 - 14 Equivalent to quarto die postquam.

dējicerentur; quae tamen,¹ ancorīs jactīs, cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō (necessarily) adversā² nocte³ in altum prōvectae (having set out) continentem petīvērunt.

Eādem nocte⁴ accidit ut esset lūna plēna (full), quī diēs maritimōs aestūs⁵ maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit⁶; nostrīsque⁷ id erat incognitum² (unknown). Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat,² neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī⁸ aut auxiliandī (of aiding) dabātur.

Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs; reliquae cum essent, fūnibus (ropes), ancorīs, reliquīsque armāmentīs (rigging) āmissīs, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs (useless), magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.

Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae¹⁰ quibus reportārī possent, et omnia dēerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat¹¹ hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

Dedication of a marker at the spot where Caesar landed



- ¹With ancorīs jactīs, which may be translated by a principal clause, nevertheless (in spite of the storm), they cast anchor, [but] since the boats (quae) began to fill, etc
- ² What English word do we get from adversa? From incognitum? From afflictābat?
- on the face of the night, literally, with the night against them.
 - 4 August 30.
- ⁵The tides rise to the height of nineteen feet at Dover and twenty-five feet at Boulogne. In the Mediterranean the tides are so slight as to be hardly noticeable.
- ⁶ With quī diēs, a time which always causes
- 7 Caesar could not have known this either A more modest writer might have written Caesari instead of nostris.
 - 8 of managing (the ships).
 - 9 Modifying perturbātio.
- ¹⁰ For on the one hand there were no other ships, etc. Translate et in line 14, on the other hand, and et in line 15, then, too.
- 11 it was evident to all The subject of constabat is the infinitive oportere.

Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs dēesse¹ intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte (the smallness) cognōscerent,² quae hōc³ erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū⁴ esse dūxērunt,³ rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod, hīs superātīs aut⁶ reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant.

Itaque, rūrsus conjūrātione factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et 10 suos clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

CAESAR PREPARES FOR ANYTHING

At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū⁷ nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod⁸ obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id⁹ quod accidīt suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in ¹⁵ castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum¹⁰ māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae¹¹ ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī jubēbat.

Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvībus āmissīs, reliquīs¹² ut nāvīgārī satīs commodē posset effēcit.¹³

Lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit¹⁴ eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctiī,¹⁵ īnfirmīs (weakened) nāvibus, hiemī nāvigātiōnem subjiciendam¹⁶ nōn exīstimābat.

Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem 25

- 1 that the Romans lacked.
- ² In translating, repeat the conjunction cum.
- son this account, an ablative of degree of difference
 - the best thing to do.
 - ⁵ Equivalent to putāvērunt.
 - b or at least.
- ⁷ The word has here the rare meaning of *accident*, or *disaster*
 - * from the fact that.
- ⁹ The words fore id are equivalent to id futurum esse.

- ¹⁰ The words quae . . . nāvēs, eārum are equivalent to eārum nāvium quae.
- As antecedent supply ea, the subject of comparari.
- 12 Put ahead of its normal position for emphasis.
- 13 made it possible for the voyage to be made rather satisfactorily by the rest.
- 11 demanded of them twice the number.
- 15 as the time of the equinox was drawing
- 16 the voyage should be exposed to stormy weather.

20



Libation pan found in Britain

nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt, sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae,¹ capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā² dēlātae sunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legionum hīberna constituit. Eo duae omnīno cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicātio ā senātū dēcrēta est.4

1 Supply ceperunt.

2 to the south (of Boulogne); what is the literal translation?

³ Supply hoc facere.

4 This thanksgiving, in spite of the op-

position of Caesar's enemies at Rome, was even longer than the previous one. The length of the celebration shows the importance which the Romans attached to these campaigns and the influence of Caesar's political supporters

LATIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES

In English many adverbs are formed by adding -ly to adjectives: slow, slowly; careful, carefully. In Latin, also, most adverbs are formed from adjectives.

Many adverbs are formed from first- and second-declension adjectives by the addition of -ē to the base: lātus, wide; lātē, widely. What is the adverb from cārus? From longus?

Adverbs are also made from third-declension adjectives by the addition of -ter or -iter to the base (-er if base ends in -nt): ācer, ācriter.

From what adjectives do these adverbs come?

fortiter

graviter

sapienter

The neuter accusative of an adjective is sometimes used as an adverb.

facile, easily multum, much

The adverb corresponding to magnus is magnopere, to bonus is bene. Some adverbs do not have a corresponding adjective: saepe, often, numquam, never, and many others.

The ablative case of some nouns and adjectives is used adverbially.

dextra (supply manu)

forte

noctu

sponte

REVIEW OF UNIT XIV

- I. From the list below, select the proper translation for each italicized word.
- 1. The men called by their leader brought the ship to land.
- 2. As soon as he laid down his burden, he undertook a similar task.
- 3. Finally he could hardly see; nevertheless, his great strength sustained him.

appellātī onus simile tamen vīs appellēbant opus simul atque tandem vix

II. In each group below, find two words that do not belong there and give the reason.

A		В	
decem	quīnque	decimus	quārtus
duo	trēs	diūtius	quintus
novus	ūnus	nõnnüllus	secundus
quattuor	vigilia	prīmus	tertius

III. Find in group B the ordinal numeral that corresponds to each cardinal numeral in group A.

IV. For each of the adjectives in the A list below, find the related adverb in the B list and tell what it means.

A		В	
ācer	fortis	minimē	audācter
audāx	lāt us	facillimē	benignē
benignus	longus	lātē	longē
bonus	minimus	optimē	fortiter
celer	optimus	ācriter	timidē
certus	potentissimus	potentissimē	bene
facillimus	timidus	celeriter	certē

v. By adding prefixes to the verbs below, make as many compound Latin verbs as you can.

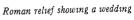
capiō faciō ferō mittō veniō

VI. Give a Latin verb connected with each noun.

amor factor nāvis sacrificium dux imperātor pugna terror



THE ROMANS IN GAUL

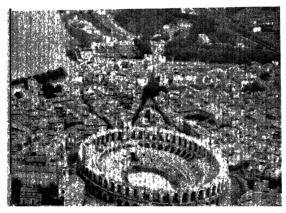








An ancient Roman theater in modeτn Paris



In Arles, France, once a Roman town, this ancient amphitheater is still in use today

In most of the Commentaries it is Caesar, the general, who is making a record of his military expeditions. Here it is Caesar, the man, who is giving his observations of the strange customs of the people he encountered during the trips.

TWO WAYS OF LIFE—PRIESTHOOD AND KNIGHTHOOD

In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō¹ atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum haˈbētur locō,² quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō.

Plērīque, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitūdine tribūtorum aut injūriā potentiorum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant³ nobilibus; 5 quibus⁴ in hos eadem omnia sunt jūra quae dominīs in servos.

Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.⁵ Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt,⁶ sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta cūrant, religiōnēs⁷ interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī⁸ sunt apud eōs⁹ honōre. ¹⁰ Nam ferē dē omnībus contrōversīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est facīnus admissum, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte,¹⁰

- ¹ are of any account, or importance.
- ² are regarded almost as slaves, what is the literal translation?
 - 3 Not from dīcō.
 - 4 Dative of possession.
 - 5 knights, the aristocrats of the Gauls
 - 6 have charge of sacred rites. The Druid

priests wore a distinguishing robe of white. They held the oak tree and the mistletoe in the greatest reverence, and performed their sacrifices in oak groves

- 7 religious matters
- 8 The Druids
 9 The Gauls.
- 10 inheritance



Druids of ancient Gaul

dē fīnibus contrōversia est, eīdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,¹ sacrificiīs interdīcunt.²

Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum,³ hī numerō impiōrum (of the wicked) ac scelerātōrum habentur; hīs omnēs dēcēdunt,⁴ aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt nē quid ex contāgiōne (contact) incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus jūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut, sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt.

Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media⁶ habētur, cōnsīdunt⁷ in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs (*decisions*) jūdiciīsque pārent.

Disciplīna⁸ in Britanniā⁹ reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse¹⁰ exīstimātur, et nunc¹¹ quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō¹² discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Druidēs ā bellō abesse consuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte¹³ multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus¹³ propinquīsque mittuntur.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum¹⁴ ēdiscere (to memorize) dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūllī xx in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea¹⁵ litterīs mandāre, cum¹⁶ in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus,¹⁷ Graecīs litterīs utantur. Id mihi¹⁸ duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam

- 1 does not abide by their decision.
- ² they exclude. Supply dative of reference (ei); interdicunt also takes an ablative of separation (sacrificiis).
- ³ Who are excluded from the sacrifices; literally, To whom it is thus forbidden.
- * avoid. What is the connection in thought with contagione, line 7?
 - ⁵ Translate sī quī, whoever.
 - 6 the center (of).
 - ⁷ hold their meetings.
- ⁸ The system. Notice how the meaning of disciplina differs from that of discipline.
- ⁹ It is more probable that the Britons had originally received the Drudical system from the Continent, but little 18

- positively known about Druidism. Stones forming "Druid circles" are still standing in England.
 - 10 to have been carried over.
 - 11 and so even now.
- 12 there; an adverb; equivalent to in Britanniam.
- ¹³ Observe the contrast in suā sponte and ā parentibus.
- ¹⁴ of verses, lines of poetry containing the substance of the Druidical teaching.
 - 15 Meaning quae discunt.
 - 16 although.
 - 17 accounts.
- ¹⁸ Caesar rarely used the first person in his writings.



A Gallic feast

efferrī velint, neque eōs quī discant litterīs cōnfīsōs¹ minus memoriae studēre²; quod ferē plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō³ litterārum dīligentiam in discendō ac memoriam remittant.

Imprīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, ⁴ non interīre animās (souls), sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad alios⁵; atque hoc maximē ad virtūtem ⁵ excitārī⁵ putant, metū mortis neglēcto. Multa praetereā dē stellīs atque eorum motū, dē mundī ac terrārum⁷ magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deorum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant (they discuss) et juvenībus trādunt.⁸

Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus⁹ atque aliquod ¹⁰ bellum incidit (quod¹⁰ ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī injūriās īnferrent aut illātās repellerent¹¹), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque¹² est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs (dependents) clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

- 1 relying on writing
- ² pay less attention to the memory.
- ³ Equivalent to auxiliō; translate, by depending on. Is this statement logical?
 - 4 to convince [men].
- ⁵ pass from one body to another. Belief in the transmigration of souls, common among the ancients, still appears in some oriental religions.
- 6 that [men] are incited.
- 7 the universe and the earth.
- 8 Equivalent to docent.
- 9 need
- 10 Explained by the uti clause.
- ¹¹ inflict wrongs on others, or defend themselves against injustices from others.
- 12 Translate ut quisque, etc., the more distinguished a man is, the more, etc.

THE GODS MUST BE APPEASED

Tātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdīta¹ religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōnībus morbīs (with diseases) quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur aut prō victīmīs hominēs² immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque (and as assistants) ad ea sacrificia druidībus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā³ hominis nisi hominīs vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōs immortālēs plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque⁴ ejusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia.

Aliī ingentī magnitūdine simulācra⁵ habent, quōrum contexta vīminībus⁶ membra vīvīs hominībus complent; quibus incēnsīs, cir-

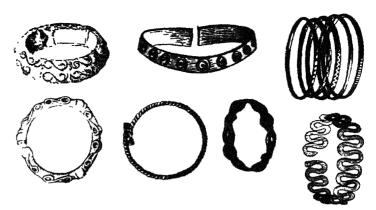
Supplicia eōrum qui in fūrtō (theft) aut in latrōciniō (robbery) aut in aliquā⁷ noxiā (crime) sint comprehēnsī grātiōra⁸ dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum ejus generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium⁹ supplicia dēscendunt.

Deōrum¹º maximē Mercurium colunt; hujus sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt¹¹; hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem; hunc ad quaestūs¹² pecūniae mercātūrāsque (and trade) habēre vim maximam arbitrantur.

Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Jovem et Minervam. Dē hīs 20 eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem mor-



- 1 given over, or devoted
- ² Object of immolant and immolatūros.
- ³ Primitive tribes often sacrificed animals—and even human beings—in connection with funeral rites or ceremonies designed to cure diseases
 - 4 also on behalf of the state.
 - 5 images Supply hominum.
 - 6 woven of willow shoots.
 - 7 Here equivalent to aliā aliquā.
 - ⁸ especially pleasing.
 - 9 of the innocent.
- ¹⁰ Equivalent to E deis; with maxime. Caesar gives the names of Roman gods to Gallic gods who resembled them. He identifies Mercury with the Gallic god Woden.
- 11 they call.
- ¹² acquisition. The plural indicates the different kinds of moneymaking and business.



Bracelets of metal were worn by Gauls, both men and women

bōs dēpellere,¹ Minervam operum² atque artıficiōrum³ initia trādere,⁴ Jovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmıcāre cōnstıtuērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent.⁵ Cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt.

Multīs in cīvitātībus hārum rērum extrūctōs cumulōs (mounds) locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quisquam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita6 tollere audēret, gravīssimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

STRANGE GALLIC CUSTOMS

allī sē omnēs ab Dīte⁷ patre⁸ prōgnātōs⁹ praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium¹⁰ fīniunt¹¹; diēs nātālēs (birthdays) et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.

In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs,¹² nisi cum adolēvērunt ut¹³ mūnus mīlitiae (*of military service*) sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerīlī aetāte¹⁴ in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere¹⁵ turpe dūcunt.

- 1 drives away diseases.
- ² of handicτafts.
- 3 of trades.
- 4 teaches.
- ⁵ they vow [that they will sacrifice], ea quae is explained by animālia and reliquās rēs.
- ⁶ Supply in cumulis. Explain the meaning here of capta and posita.
- ⁷ Pluto. The name Dis is sometimes used for the god of the underworld.
 - ⁸ as a father; predicate.

- ⁹ sprang from, or descended. They asserted that they were aborignes, i.e., that they were not descendants of immigrants from any other region.
- ¹⁰ The English "fortnight" (fourteen nights) is a survival of the practice of reckoning time by nights instead of days.
 - 11 mark off, or measure.
 - 12 Subject of adire.
 - 13 so that
 - 14 of vouthful age.
 - 15 to appear at his father's side.

Virī,¹ quantās pecūniās² ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus² commūnicant. Hujus omnis pecūniae conjūnctim ratiō habētur,³ frūctūsque⁴ servantur. Uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.

Virī in uxōrēs,⁵ sīcutī in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ejus propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit,⁶ dē uxōribus⁷ in servīlem modum quaestiōnem⁸ habent et, sī compertum est,⁹ igne atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās (tortured) interficiunt.

Fūnera (funerals) sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse (to have been dear) arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam¹o servī et clientēs quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs esse (to have been beloved) cōn15 stābat, jūstīs fūnebribus¹¹ cōnfectīs, ūnā cremābantur.¹²

Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,¹³ sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre¹⁴ ac fāmā¹⁵ accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt¹⁶ occultant, quae esse ex ūsū jūdicāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

- 1 Husbands.
- ² Plural, on account of the plural Virī.
- ³ An account is kept jointly The husband must match the wife's dowry and keep both funds separate from other property.
- ⁴ proceeds or income. Much of this property was livestock or other salable things. The survivor inherited the joint property.
- ⁵ According to Roman law the head of the family had such power over his children, but not over his wife
- ⁶ Meaning if the circumstances of his death were such as to bring his wife under suspicion.
- ⁷ This indicates that polygamy was practiced among the Gauls, though probably only by the nobility.
- * an inquiry after the slave manner. At Rome, only in the case of slaves was torture used to force a confession.
 - g if proof of guilt is discovered
 - 10 before our time
 - 11 with proper funeral rites.
- ¹² Cremation was not the universal practice. Many Gallic skeletons have been found in France.
- 13 have a legal enactment.
- 14 by gossip, or hearsay.
- 15 by current report, which may be true.
- 16 what seems best.



A Gallic goddess



Life in a German village

THE GERMANS WERE DIFFERENT

ermānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt; nam neque druidēs¹ habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student.² Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē (obviously) opibus juvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam. Reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt.³

Vīta omnis in vēnātionibus atque in studis rei mīlitāris consistit. \bar{A} parvīs⁴ laborī ac dūritiae (hardship) student.

Agricultūrae non student, majorque pars eorum vīctūs (food) in lacte (milk), cāseo (cheese), carne consistit.

Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; 10 sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum⁵ quīque⁶ ūnā coiērunt (*have united*) quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī⁷ attribuunt, atque annō post aliō⁸ trānsīre cōgunt.

Ejus reī multās afferunt causās⁹: nē assiduā consuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā¹⁰ commūtent; nē lātos finēs parāre ¹⁵

- ¹ The Germans had no exclusive priestly class as the Gauls had, but they had priests and priestesses who offered sacrifices and interpreted omens.
- ² The meaning is lay stress on, or attach importance to.
 - 3 have not even heard of.
 - 4 From childhood.
 - ⁵ to families and relatives.
 - 6 Individuals and small groups of men
- who did not belong to the same stock united themselves for this purpose.
- ⁷ Genitive with quantum; translate, as much land as.
- ⁸ to another place; an adverb equivalent to alium in locum.
- 9 For this annual change in location, four reasons are each introduced by nē, and a fifth by ut.
 - 10 for agriculture.

studeant potentiōrēs¹ atque humiliōrēs² possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius³ ad frīgora⁴ atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte⁵ plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātīs fīnibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc6 proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere. Simul hōc8 sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae in10 cursiōnis (raid) timōre sublātō.

Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint⁹ et vītae necisque habeant⁹ potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs jūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.¹⁰

Latrocinia (robberies) nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā finēs cujusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea juventūtis (the youths) exercendae ac dēsidiae (idleness) minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in concilio dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur, 11 consurgunt (rise up) eī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine laudantur maximē; quī ex hīs secūtī non sunt in dēsertorum ac proditorum (of traitors) numero dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur. 12

Hospitem violāre fās non putant; quī¹³ quācumque dē causā ad eos vēnērunt ab injūriā prohibent sānctosque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent, cibusque commūnicātur.¹⁴

- ¹ Subject of studeant.
- ² Object of expellant.
- 3 with more care.
- 4 cold
- ⁵ in a contented frame of mind—viewed as the means by which the common people are kept in order.
 - ⁶ Explained by expulsos . . . consistere.
 - 7 characteristic.

- 8 Explained by timore sublato.
- 9 Subjunctive in a purpose clause.
- 10 settle.
- 11 let them volunteer. The subjunctive represents a command in direct discourse. Its subject is [ei] qui sequi velint.
- 12 all confidence is taken away.
- 13 those who.
- 14 Supply cum his.



Germans forging tools

LATIN WORDS WITH MANY ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

Some Latin words are interesting to us because of the large number of English derivatives they yield. Such a word is laboro, from which we get several English words.

labor, noun or verb, work
laborer, noun made with suffix, one who works
laborious, adjective made with suffix, requiring work
laboratory, noun made with suffix, place where work is done
elaborate, adjective made with prefix and suffix, worked out with care
elaborately, adverb made with suffix, in an elaborate way

From curro, run, we have several English words.

current, adjective from present participle, running, passing currency, noun from present participle, money (that which passes from one to another)

concur, verb made with prefix, agree, (run with) excursion, noun made with prefix, trip (a running out)

Explain the derivation of the following words.

cursory incur precursor discourse occur recur

Give several English words from each of the following Latin verbs and explain the derivation and meaning of each word.

cado, casurus nascor, natus sequor, secutus loquor, locutus patior, passus video, visus

Many Latin nouns also have English derivatives. Give the meaning of each word.

terra	' navis	poeta
terrace	naval	poet
terrain	navigate	poetical
terrestrial	navigation	poetically
terrier	navy	poetry
torritores		

What English words can you think of that are connected with each of the following Latin nouns?

arma	caput, -itis	tempus, -oris
ignis	salus, -utis	voluntas, -atis

- I. In the list below the sentences, find the Latin which translates each italicized phrase.
 - 1. In Gaul there were two classes of men besides slaves.
 - 2. One class was that of the druids; the other, that of the knights.
 - 3. The druids were in charge of religious rites.
 - 4. The druids judged disputes and decreed punishments.
 - 5. The most severe punishment was excommunication.
 - 6. The other class were the knights.
 - 7. All the knights were engaged in war.

alterum equitum alterum genus disciplīnae causā hominum genera duo in bellō versābantur poena gravissima poenās constituerant rēbus dīvīnīs intererant religionēs interpretābantur reliquae gentēs

II. Make five true statements by combining three phrases—one from each group.

- Druidēs
- (i) ab hāc consuetudine
- (a) cūrant

- 2. Gallī
- (ii) est

(b) multum differunt

- 3. Galliae virī
- (iii) Graecīs litterīs
- (c) nūllus commūnis magistrātus

- 4. Germānī
- (iv) in uxōrēs et līberōs
- (d) ūtantur

- 5. In pāce
- (v) sacrificia püblica
- (e) vītae necisque potestātem habent

III. Which groups in the list below contain words of similar meanings? Of opposite meanings?

- 2. What was the relationship between hospes and advena?
- 3. In the group under facinus, which word represents the least serious offense? Which was the most serious?
- 4. In the group under fas est, which expression shows the most important obligation?

advena, -ae	facinus, facinoris	licet	cēlō, -āre
amicus, -ī	fraus, fraudis	permissum est	occultō, -āre
hospes, -itis	maleficium, -ī		orderio, and
ōrātiō, -ōnis	scelus, sceleris	exanimō, -āre interficiō, -ficere	commūtō, ~āre permaneō, -ēre
sermō, -ōnis	fās est	necō, -āre	1
poena, -ae	necesse est oportet	tribuō, -ere	extrā
praemium, -ī		attribuō	intrā

After trying for six years to win back the independence they had lost through Caesar's conquests, the Gallic states, with a few exceptions, united their forces and elected Vercingetorix commander in chief. Serious disturbances at Rome and a revolt of the Haeduans against Roman authority encouraged the Gauls in an attempt to throw off the Roman yoke.

THE FIRES OF REVOLT BLAZE UP

efectione (revolt) Haeduorum cognitā, bellum augētur. Lēgātionēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum¹ grātiā, auctoritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur (they strive). Nactī obsidēs quos Caesar apud eos dēposuerat, horum supplicio dubitantēs terrent. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat rationēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā, contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperiī trādātur; et rē in controversiam dēductā, totīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur.

Conveniunt undique frequentēs (*in great numbers*). Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs² rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant ¹⁰ imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī,³ quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dējectōs prīncipātū. Queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caes- ¹⁵ aris indulgentiam in sē requīrunt (*miss*), neque tamen, susceptō bellō, suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent.

¹ Translate with valent, so far as they can do so.

2 to the votes

3 The Remi and the Lingones.

Barbarian cavalry





Vercingetorix—a modern statue on the site of Alesia

Invītī summae speī¹ adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Virıdomārus, Vercingetorīgī pārent.

Ille² imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs,

diemque eī reī constituit. Omnēs equitēs,
quīndecim mīlia numero, celeriter convenīre jubet. Peditātū³ quem anteā habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmitātū, perfacile esse Romānos dēterrēre nē pābulentur; aequo modo animo sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant⁵ aedificiaque incendant, quā reī familiāris jactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē consequī videant.

Hīs constitūtīs rēbus, Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, qui sunt finitimi provinciae, decem mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs DCCC. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis

bellumque inferre Allobrogibus jubet.

Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs (secret) nūntiīs lēgātionibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse (had settled down) spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

- 1 most promising.
- ² Vercingetorix.
- ³ From its derivation, what is the meaning of this word?
- * he was well supplied.
- ⁵ they must not hesitate to destroy their own crops. You will remember that the Helvetians did this several years before.







Two coins of Caesar showing Vercingetorix—on the left, with hands bound; on the right, after six years of imprisonment

HIGH HOPES PROVE VAIN

Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs¹ prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare² lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur.³

Helviī, suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī, pelluntur; et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī fīliō, prīncipe cīvītātis, complūribusque salīs interfectīs, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs, crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs, magnā cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur.

Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et, interclūsīs omnibus itineribus, nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs⁴ quī inter eōs pugnāre cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs (veterans) equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs⁵ castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsīdit; convocātīsque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum, vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs

- 1 to meet all these dangers.
- ² A distant relative of the commander.
- 3 were opposed [to the enemy].
- 4 light infantry.
- ⁵ With nouns that are plural in form but singular in meaning, such as castra, the distributive numerals are used instead of the cardinals (here trīnīs, three, instead of trībus).



Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī; majōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs, reversūrōs¹ neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs.¹

Proinde in agmine impedītos adoriantur.² Sī peditēs suīs auxilium 5 ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relictīs impedīmentīs, suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īrī³; nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo⁴ extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō majōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrorī hostibus futūrum.

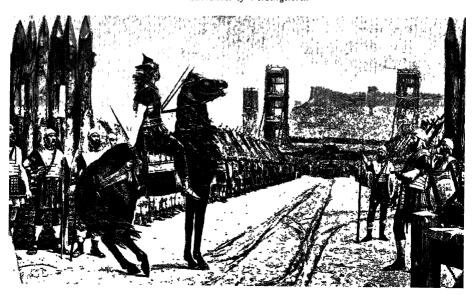
Conclāmant equitēs sānctissimō jūre jūrandō cōnfirmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, ad parentēs, ad uxōrem aditum habeat quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.⁵

Probātā rē atque omnibus ad jūs jūrandum adāctīs, 6 posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū, duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt; ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertītō (into three parts) dīvīsum contrā hostem īre jubet. Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur.

Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō

- ¹ The subject refers to the Romans.
- ² For a subjunctive expressing an exhortation in the direct form ("let us attack").
- ³ The infrequently used future passive infinitive—they would lose both their property and their prestige.
- 4 Adverb
- ⁵ had not ridden, instead of perequitaverit, a perfect subjunctive.
 - 6 bound by oath
 - ⁷ Equivalent to uno tempore.

Surrender of Vercingetorix





Roman soldiers have captured two of the enemy and wounded a third man

signa înferri Caesar aciemque converti jubēbat; quae res et hostes ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostros spē auxiliī confirmābat.

Tandem Germānī¹ ab dextrō latere summum jugum nactī hostēs loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus' copiis consederat, persequuntur compluresque inter- 5 ficiunt. Quā rē animadversā, reliqui, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs.

Trēs nobilissimi Haedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitave proximis comitiīs² habuerat, et Cavarıllus, quī post dēfectionem (revolt) Lita- 10 vicci pedestribus copiis praefuerat, et Eporedorix, quo duce, ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēguanīs bello contenderant.

Fugātō omnī equitātū, Vercingetorīx copiās suās, ut pro castrīs collocaverat, reduxit protinusque Alesiam, quod³ est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi 15 et sē subsequī jussit.

Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duabus legionibus praesidio relictis, secutus hostes quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimo agmine interfectīs, altero diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū hostibusque per- 20 territīs, quod equitātū, quā maximē partī exercitūs confidebant, erant pulsī, hortātus ad laborem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre4 īnstituit.

circumvallation actually consisted of two walls, more or less parallel to each other. which completely surrounded the town. The inner wall was a defense against the Gauls inside the city; the outer protected the Romans from the Gallic reinforceto surround with a wall. Caesar's ments summoned by Vercingetorix.

¹ Auxiliaries in the Roman army.

² in the last elections.

³ Here the relative agrees in gender with a predicate noun (oppidum), instead of with its antecedent.

REVIEW OF UNIT XVI

1. Discuss these questions.

- 1. Where did Caesar get cavalry? Why not from the Province?
- 2. How did Vercingetorix rouse the Gauls?
- 3. How did Caesar outmaneuver the Gallic cavalry?
- 4. Why did Vercingetorix march to Alesia?
- 5. How did Caesar prepare for a siege?
- 6. After a long siege the Romans starved out the Gauls. Are you sympathetic with Caesar or Vercingetorix?
- 7. Was there justification for Caesar's treatment of the Gauls throughout the story?
- 8. Did Caesar really conquer Britain?
- 9. In the parts of the *Commentaries* you have read, does Caesar appear as a great general? Cite instances.

II. What is the meaning of each of these idioms?

- 1. ad diem
- 2. ad sõlis occāsum
- 3. aeguō animō
- 4. dē quārtā vigiliā
- 5. fās est
- 6. multō diē
- 7. nihilō minus
- 8. novissimum agmen
- 9. paucis ante annis
- 10. paucis ante diebus

- 11. paucīs post annīs
- 12. post multos annos
- 13. post paucos dies
- 14. posterō diē
- 15. postrīdiē ejus diē
- 16. primā lūce
- 17. quā dē causā
- 18. suā sponte
- 19. sõlis occāsū
- 20. sub vesperum

Hunting lions in North Africa. Mosaic from Leptis Magna



THE ROMAN CALENDAR Our calendar comes

troduced in 45 B.C. by Julius Caesar. This Julian calendar was corrected in 1582 by Pope Gregory XIII, but in some countries it was not displaced by the Gregorian calendar until the twentieth century.

Before Caesar's changes, the Roman calendar was based on the lunar month—the interval between one new moon and the next. But no lunar calendar fits the solar year exactly, because twelve lunar months make only about 355 days, while the solar year has about 3651/4 days. To make up this difference the Romans added days after the twenty-third of February in some years. Caesar established a year of 365 days with an extra day every fourth year.

In Caesar's time the Roman months were *Januarius*, *Februarius*, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Quintilis, Sextilis, September, October, November, and December. Later Quintilis was changed to Julius in honor of Julius Caesar, and Sextilis was changed to Augustus.

In giving dates, the Romans counted the days backward from three points in each month: Kalendae (the Kalends), Nonae (the Nones), and *Idus* (the Ides).

The first day of each month was the Kalends; the first of January was thus Kalendae Ianuariae. The Ides were the thirteenth day of each month except March, May, July, and October, when they were the fifteenth. The Nones were nine days before the Ides. Since the Romans counted both the first and last days, the Nones were the eighth day by our method of reckoning. Therefore, in those months in which the Ides were the thirteenth, the Nones were the fifth; when the Ides were the fifteenth, the Nones were the seventh.

The day before each date-point was designated as pridie. So, for instance, March 6 was pr. Non. Mar., in its abbreviated form.

In Roman times the daylight was divided into hours, each hour being one twelfth of the time between sunrise and sunset. In June, when days are longest, the Roman hour was seventy-five minutes In December the hour was only about forty-five minutes long.

The Romans divided the night into four watches, varying in length according to the season of the year.

You can find the English hour by adding six to the Roman hour; e.g., the fourth hour by Roman time would be the tenth hour with us.

THE SPAN OF LATIN

For nearly fifteen centuries after the great political organization that was the Roman Empire declined in vigor and faded in the West, Latin remained the language of the humanities, science, law, philosophy, and religion. Since all literate men could read Latin, it became the international tongue.

Not until the eighteenth century did Latin cease to be the language of serious communication among educated people. The vernacular languages, such as French and English, had begun to develop their literatures much earlier, but the substitution of national languages for international Latin was far from absolute. The noun vocabulary of Latin remained—the bricks of meaning, as it were, with new mortar—so that today the English nouns used in serious discussion in many fields of human thought and action are almost all derived from Latin.

Unit XVII of *College Latin* is made up of representative selections carrying on the tradition of western thought from classical times to the present. They include examples of some of the important ideas, disciplines, and sciences that characterize western civilization—together with the actual words of honored men who virtually thought in Latin.

Had the authors of the selections in this unit each written in the vernacular of his country, Einhard would have expressed his ideas in German; Bishop Isidore in Spanish; Copernicus in Polish; Erasmus and Spinoza in Dutch; Descartes in French; Pope Leo in Italian; Bacon, Harvey, and Newton in English. But all could understand what was written in Latin, which had survived as the "language of western thought."

Latin has spread over the whole world



THE CREATION OF THE WORLD

After St. Jerome (340-420 AD.), a scholarly father of the Church, had spent many years studying Hebrew and Greek, he translated the Bible into Latin His translation—known as the Vulgate—remained the official version for centuries

erant super faciem abyssi; et spiritus Dei ferebatur super aquas.

Dixitque Deus, "Fiat1 lux." Et facta est lux.

Et vidit Deus lucem quod² esset bona; et divisit lucem a tenebris.

Appellavitque lucem diem, et tenebras noctem; factumque est vespere et mane dies unus.³

Dixit quoque Deus, "Fiat¹ firmamentum in medio aquarum; et dividat¹ aquas ab aquis."

Et fecit Deus firmamentum, divisitque aquas quae erant sub firma- 10 mento ab his quae erant super firmamentum. Et factum est ita.

Vocavitque Deus firmamentum, caelum; et factum est vespere et mane dies secundus.

Dixit vero Deus, "Congregentur aquae quae sub caelo sunt in locum unum; et appareat (let appear) arida." Et factum est ita.

Et vocavit Deus aridam, terram; congregationesque (gathering together) aquarum appellavit maria. Et vidit Deus quod esset bonum.

Et ait (*He said*), "Germinet⁵ terra herbam virentem (*green*) et facientem semen (*seed*), et lignum⁶ pomiferum⁷ faciens fructum juxta (*according to*) genus suum, cujus semen in semetipso (*itself*) sit super ²⁰ terram." Et factum est ita.

Et protulit terra herbam virentem et facientem semen juxta genus suum, lignumque⁶ faciens fructum, et habens unumquodque (each one) sementem secundum (according to) speciem suam. Et vidit Deus quod esset bonum.

Et factum est vespere et mane dies tertius.

- ¹ Volitive subjunctive; see page 355, 106.
- ² After classical times quod was used instead of ut to introduce noun clauses.
- ³ Literally, were made one day. Vespere and mane are nouns.
 - 4 Let . . . be gathered together.
 - ⁵ Let . . bring forth
 - 6 Here equivalent to arbor, tree
 - ⁷ fruit-bearing; pomum + fero.

St. Jerome at his desk



CONFESSIONS OF A SAINT

St. Augustine (354-430 A.D.) was one of the greatest of the early Church fathers. His writings made him well known in his time, and his fame as a religious and a philosopher has continued to this day. His chief works are The City of God and Confessions, from which this brief extract is taken. St. Augustine's Latin is that of an educated man of his day. Although there had been many changes in usage from classical forms, his writing is not difficult to read.

In hoc principio, Deus, fecisti caelum et terram¹; in verbo tuo, in filio tuo, in virtute tua, in sapientia tua, in veritate tua, miro modo dicens, et miro modo faciens. Quis comprehendet? Quis enarrabit? Quid est illud quod interlucet² mihi, et percutit cor (heart) meum sine lesione (injury), et inhorresco et inardesco³? Inhorresco in quantum dissimilis ei sum; inardesco in quantum similis ei sum. Sapientia, sapientia ipsa est, quae interlucet mihi, discindens nubilum meum,⁴ quod me rursus coöperit deficientem⁵ ab ea caligine⁶ atque aggere poenarum mearum.

Quoniam sic infirmatus est in egestate (need) vigor meus, ut non sufferam bonum meum, donec (till) tu, Domine, qui propitius factus es omnibus iniquitatibus meis, etiam sanes omnes languores meos, quia et redimes de corruptione vitam meam et coronabis me in miseratione et misericordia, et satiabis in bonis desiderium meum, quoniam renovabitur juventus mea sicut aquilae. Spe enim salvi facti sumus, et promissa tua per patientiam expectamus.

Audiat⁹ te intus (*inwardly*) sermocinantem (*discoursing*) qui potest. Ego fidenter ex oraculo tuo clamabo, "Quam magnificata sunt opera tua, Domine, omnia in sapientia fecisti, et illa¹⁰ principium, et in eo principio fecisti caelum et terram."



- ¹ Compare page 273, line 1.
- ² shines through.
- ³ I shudder and begin to glow
- 4 parting the cloud.
- 5 which again envelops me as I faint.
- 6 murky gloom.
- 7 shalt heal all my diseases.
- 8 with loving kindness and tender mercies.
- 9 Volitive subjunctive; see page 355, 106.
- 10 Supply sapientia est.

St. Augustine

A HYMN OF PRAISE

The authorship of the Te Deum is attributed to Bishop Nicetas, who lived in Dacia (modern Rumania) about 400 A.D. It is one of the most famous hymns ever written, and its popularity is shown by its continued use to the present day.

Te Deum laudamus, te Dominum confitemur.1

Te aeternum Patrem omnis terra veneratur.²

Tibi omnes angeli, tibi caeli³ et universae potestates,

Tibi cherubim et seraphim⁴ incessabili (incessant) voce proclamant.

Sanctus, sanctus, Dominus Deus Sabaoth.⁵

Pleni sunt cael13 et terra majestatis gloriae tuae.

Te gloriosus apostolorum chorus,6

Te prophetarum laudabilis numerus,

Te martyrum candidatus⁷ laudat exercitus.

Te per orbem terrarum sancta confitetur ecclesia (the Church),

Patrem immensae (infinite) majestatis,

Venerandum⁸ tuum verum et unicum (only) Filium.

Sanctum quoque Paraclitum Spiritum (the Holy Ghost).

Tu rex gloriae, Christe,

Tu Patris sempiternus (everlasting) es Filius. 15

Tu ad liberandum suscepturus hominem

Non horruisti virginis uterum.9

Tu, devicto mortis aculeo,10

Aperusti credentibus regna caelorum.

Tu ad dextram Dei sedes in gloria Patris. 20

Judex crederis¹¹ esse venturus.

- ¹ From confiteor, -eri, acknowledge [as].
- ² From veneror, -ari, worship, adore.
- ³ the heavens; caeli as masculine plural is common in church Latin.
- ⁴ Hebrew plurals; English uses the same words.
 - ⁵ A Hebrew word: of [the heavenly] hosts.
- ⁶ The ... company of apostles; i.e., the followers of Jesus.
 - 7 clothed in white.
 - ⁸ who must be adored.
- ⁹ Tu...uterum, When you were about to undertake the liberation of mankind, you did not fear to be born of a virgin.
- 10 when you had overcome the sharpness of death.
- 11 Equivalent to credimus te.

The Te Deum is illustrated in the façade of Rockefeller Memorial Chapel at the University of Chicago, with its statues of angels, saints, apostles, and martyrs



CIVIL LAW

Justinian (483-565)—titular head of the Eastern Empire—conquered and ruled also a great part of the Empire of the West. His most lasting accomplishment was Corpus Juris Civilis, the codification of Roman law which was done under his direction by a lawyer named Tribonianus. The influence of Justinian has been felt in all legal work since his time.

Justitia est constans et perpetua voluntas jus suum cuique tribuens. Juris prudentia est divinarum atque humanarum rerum notitia (knowledge), justi atque injusti scientia....

Juris praecepta sunt haec: honeste vivere, alterum non laedere 5 (to injure), suum cuique tribuere. Hujus studii duae sunt positiones (branches), publicum¹ et privatum. Publicum jus est quod ad statum² rei Romanae spectat, privatum, quod ad singulorum utilitatem (advantage) pertinet....

Jus naturale est quod natura omnia animalia docuit. Nam jus istud non humani generis proprium est, sed omnium animalium, quae in caelo, quae in terra, quae in mari nascuntur. Hinc descendit maris atque feminae³ conjugatio,⁴ quam nos matrimonium appellamus, hinc liberorum procreatio et educatio; videmus etenim (for) cetera quoque animalia istius juris peritia⁵ censeri.

Jus autem civile vel gentium⁶ ita dividitur: omnes populi, qui legibus aut moribus reguntur, partim suo proprio, partim communi omnium hominum jure utuntur; nam quod quisque populus ipse sibi jus constituit, id ipsius proprium¹ civitatis est vocaturque jus civile, quasi jus proprium ipsius civitatis; quod vero naturalis ratio inter omnes homines constituit, id apud omnes populos peraeque (alike) custoditur vocaturque jus gentium, quasi quo jure omnes gentes utuntur, et populus itaque Romanus partim suo proprio, partim communi omnium hominum jure utitur . . .

Quaedam enim naturali jure communia sunt omnium, quaedam publica, quaedam universitatis, quaedam nullius, pleraque singulorum, quae variis ex causis cuique acquiruntur, sicut ex subjectis apparebit.

Et quidem naturali jure communia sunt omnium haec: aer et aqua

¹ Supply jus.

² welfare.

³ male and female; maris is genitive singular of mas.

⁴ Here used for conjugium, union.

⁵ by knowledge of this law.

⁶ international law; literally, the law of nations.

⁷ community.

⁸ from what follows.

profluens et mare et per hoc litora maris. Nemo igitur ad litus maris accedere prohibetur, dum¹ tamen villis et monumentis et aedificiis abstineat, quia non sunt juris gentium, sicut et mare. Flumina autem omnia et portus publica sunt; ideoque² jus piscandi (of fishing) omnibus commune est in portibus fluminibusque. Est autem litus maris, 5 quatenus hibernus fluctus maximus excurrit³....

Litorum quoque usus publicus juris gentium est, sicut ipsius maris; et ob id quibuslibet⁴ liberum est casam ibi imponere, in qua se recipiat, sicut retia siccare⁵ et ex mari deducere. Proprietas (*property*) autem eorum potest intellegi nullius esse, sed ejusdem juris esse, cujus et 10 mare et quae subjacent mari, terra vel arena. Universitatis sunt, non singulorum veluti (as) quae in civitatibus sunt, ut theatra, stadia et similia et si quae alia sunt communia civitatum....

Ferae igitur bestiae et volucres et pisces (fish), id est omnia animalia, quae in terra, mari, caelo nascuntur, simul atque ab aliquo capta 15 fuerint, jure gentium statim illius esse incipiunt. Quod enim ante nullius est, id naturali ratione occupanti conceditur. Nec interest, feras bestias et volucres utrum in suo fundo (farm) quisque capiat, an in alieno; plane qui in alienum fundum ingreditur venandi aut aucupandi gratia, potest a domino, si is providerit, prohiberi ne 20 ingrediatur. Quidquid autem eorum ceperis, eo usque tuum esse intellegitur, donec tua custodia coercetur; cum vero evaserit custodiam tuam et in naturalem libertatem se receperit, tuum esse desinit (ceases) et rursus occupantis fit. Naturalem autem libertatem recipere intellegitur, cum vel oculos tuos effugerit vel ita si in conspectu tuo, 25 ut difficilis sit eius persecutio. . . .

Gallinarum (of hens) et anserum (of geese) non est fera natura idque ex eo possumus intellegere, quod aliae sunt gallinae, quas feras vocamus, item alii anseres, quos feros appellamus. Ideoque² si anseres tui aut gallinae tuae aliquo casu turbati turbataeve³ evolaverunt, licet ³0 (granted that) conspectum tuum effugerint, quocumque tamen loco sint, tui tuaeve esse intelleguntur; et qui lucrandi (of making a profit) animo ea animalia retinet, furtum (theft) committere intellegitur.

¹ *pτovided*; see page 357, **114**.

² and therefore.

³ as far as the highest tide reaches in winter.

⁴ to anybody.

⁵ to dry his nets.

⁶ for the purpose of hunting or fowling.

⁷ as long as.

 $^{^8}$ The enclitic -ve is a short form of vel, or.

DAY AND NIGHT

In 636 Isidore, Bishop of Seville, made an encyclopedia of knowledge—Origines (Etymologies)—which became a textbook. But the ambitious bishop's knowledge was fragmentary and his guesses about the history of word meanings were often fantastic.

Dies est praesentia solis, sive sol supra terras, sicut nox sol sub terris. Ut enim dies aut nox sit causa est aut supra terram sol, aut sub terris. Dies legitimus (proper) viginti quattuor horarum, usque dum dies et nox spatia sui cursus ab oriente usque ad alium orientalem solem caeli volubilitate concludat.

Abusive¹ autem dies unus spatium ab oriente sole usque ad occidentem. Sunt autem diei spatia duo, interdianum² atque nocturnum; et est dies quidem horarum viginti quattuor, spatium autem horarum duodecim. Vocatus autem dies a parte meliore.³ Unde et in usu est ut sine commemoratione noctis numerum dicamus⁴ dierum, sicut et in lege divina scriptum est: "Factum est vespere et mane dies unus."⁵

Dies secundum⁶ Aegyptios incohat (*begins*) ab occasu solis; secundum Persas ab ortu solis; secundum Athenienses a sexta hora diei⁷; secundum Romanos a media nocte. . . .

Dies dicti a deis, quorum nomina Romani quibusdam sideribus (stars) sacraverunt. Primum enim diem a Sole appellaverunt, qui princeps est omnium siderum, sicut et idem dies caput est cunctorum (all) dierum. Secundum a Luna, quae Soli et splendore (brilliance) et magnitudine proxima est, et ex eo mutuat (borrows) lumen. Tertium ab stella (planet) Martis, quae Vesper (evening star) vocatur. Quartum ab stella Mercurii, quam quidem candidum (bright) circulum dicunt. Quintum ab stella Jovis, quam Phaëthontem ajunt. Sextum a Veneris stella, quam Luciferum asserunt, quae inter omnia sidera plus lucis habet. Septimus ab stella Saturni, quae sexto caelo locata, triginta annis fertur (is said) explere cursum suum. . . .

Partes diei tres sunt: mane, meridies, et suprema. Mane lux matura et plena, nec jam crepusculum 10 ... Meridies dicta quasi 11 medidies, hoc est medius dies.... Suprema est postrema pars diei, quando (when) sol cursum suum in occasum vertit; dicta quod superest ad

```
1 incorrectly.
```

² davtime.

³ from the better half.

⁴ speak of.

⁵ Genesis I, 5; see page 273, line 6.

⁶ Preposition; according to.

⁷ Roman time. See page 271.

⁸ Actually, the days were named for stars (planets), not for gods.

⁹ Translate freely, they call.

¹⁰ twilight.

¹¹ as though.

partem ultimam diei.... Hodie quasi hoc die; et quotidie, non cotidie, ut sit quot diebus. Cras quod est postea. Hesternum (yesterday) est pridie; et dictum hesternum ab eo quod jam dies ipse sit a nobis extraneus¹ et praetereundo² alienus. Pridie autem quasi priori die.... Nox a nocendo³ dicta, eo quod oculis⁴ noceat.

PORTRAIT OF A KING

In the ninth century A.D. Charlemagne ruled over a large part of Europe The life of the Emperor, written by Einhard, his secretary, is an example of medieval biography.

Corpore⁵ [Carolus Magnus] fuit amplo atque robusto (strong), statura eminenti, quae tamen justam non excederet (nam septem suorum pedum⁶ proceritatem (height) ejus constat habuisse mensuram), apice capitis rotundo, oculis praegrandibus ac vegetis,⁷ naso (nose) paululum mediocritatem (moderate size) excedenti, canitie (gray hair) 10 pulchra, facie (expression) laeta et hilari. Unde formae auctoritas ac dignitas tam stanti quam sedenti plurima acquirebatur.... Incessu (gait) firmo totaque corporis habitudine virile, voce clara quidem, sed quae minus corporis formae conveniret⁸....

Exercebatur assidue (*incessantly*) equitando ac venando,⁹ quod illi ¹⁵ gentilicium (*natural*) erat; vix ulla in terris natio invenitur quae in hac arte Francis¹⁰ possit aequari. Delectabatur¹¹ etiam vaporibus aquarum naturaliter calentium (*warm*).

frequenti natatu¹² corpus exercens; cujus adeo peritus fuit ut nullus ei juste ²⁰ valeat anteferri....

- ¹ Equals externus, outside.
- ² because it has passed, literally, by passing, a gerund.
 - 3 noxious; literally, injuring.
- ⁴ Dative with noceat. Many of the author's derivations are fanciful.
- ⁵ Ablative of description; see page 351, 90.
 - ⁶ seven times the length of his foot.
 - ⁷ with veту large, quick eyes.
 - 8 not in keeping with the size of his body
 - 9 by riding and hunting.
- ¹⁰ Before becoming Emperor of Rome, Charlemagne was king of a Germanic people called Franks.
 - 11 he was pleased.
 - 12 by frequent swimming.

Charlemagne



In cibo et potu (drink) temperans¹.... Inter cenandum (while dining) aut aliquod acroama² aut lectorem (reader) audiebat. Legebantur ei historiae et antiquorum res gestae. Delectabatur et libris Sancti Augustini praecipueque his qui De Civitate Dei praetitulati sunt....

Erat eloquentia copiosus³ et exuberans poteratque quicquid (whatever) vellet apertissime exprimere.⁴ Nec patrio (native) tantum sermone contentus, etiam peregrinis (foreign) linguis discendis operam impendit.⁵ In quibus Latinam ita didicit⁶ ut aeque illa ac¹ patria lingua orare sit solitus; Graecam vero melius intellegere quam pronuntiare poterat.

THE GREAT CHARTER

One of the earliest documents in history which recognized the rights of the individual was Magna Charta, given by King John of England to the barons, at Runnymede, in 1215. Since it defines the demands the king could make on the barons and the rights he guaranteed them, Magna Charta has become a symbol of freedom based on law.

Jullus liber homo capiatur, 8 vel imprisonetur (imprisoned); . . . nec super eum mittemus 9 nisi per legale (legal) judicium parium suorum, vel per legem terrae. Nulli vendemus, nulli negabimus, 15 aut differimus 10 rectum (right) aut justitiam. Omnes mercatores habeant 8 salvum et securum exire 11 ab Anglia, et venire in Angliam, morari et ire per Angliam, tam per terram quam per aquam, ad emendum et vendendum. . . . Quare volumus et firmiter (strongly) praecipimus . . . quod homines in regno nostro habeant et teneant 20 omnes . . . libertates, jura et concessiones, bene et in pace, libere et quiete, plene et integre, sibi et haeredibus (heirs) suis . . . in omnibus rebus et locis, in perpetuum. . . . Juratum est autem, tam ex parte nostra, quam ex parte baronum (of the barons), quod haec omnia . . . bona fide et sine malo ingenio servabuntur. . . . Data per manum 25 nostram, in prato (meadow) quod vocatur Runnimede . . . quinto decimo die Junii, anno regni nostro septimo decimo.

^{1 [}he was] temperate.

² entertainment; acroama, a Greek neuter, is accusative singular.

³ With eloquentia, a fluent speaker.

^{&#}x27; 4 to express.

⁵ undertook the task.

⁶ From disco.

⁷ With aeque, as well as.

⁸ For the subjunctive see page 355, 106.

⁹ we shall not pass sentence on him.

¹⁰ nor delay [granting to anyone].

¹¹ Used as a noun, modified by salvum and securum; venire, morari, and ire (ll. 16-17) are also used as nouns.

SCIENTIFIC INVENTIONS TO COME

 I_n his writings the English scientist and philosopher Roger Bacon (1214?-1294) predicted many devices that have actually been made in modern times.

arrabo igitur nunc primo opera artis et naturae miranda, ut postea causas et modum eorum assignem¹; in quibus nihil magicum est, ut videatur quod omnis magica potestas sit inferior his operibus et indigna (worthless).

Et primo per figuram et rationem² solius (*alone*) artis. Nam in- 5 strumenta navigandi possunt fieri sine hominibus remigantibus (*rowing*) ut naves maximae, fluviales et marinae, ferantur unico (*only one*) homine regente, majori velocitate quam si plenae essent hominibus.³

Item currus possunt fieri ut sine animali moveantur cum impetu inaestimabili, ut aestimamus currus falcati⁴ fuisse, quibus antiquitus ¹⁰ pugnabatur. Item possunt fieri instrumenta volandi ut homo sedeat in medio instrumenti revolvens aliquod ingenium (device) per quod alae artificialiter (cleverly) compositae aëra verberent (beat) ad modum avis volantis.

Item instrumentum, parvum in quantitate (size) ad elevandum 15 et deprimendum pondera quasi infinita, quo nihil utilius est in casu. Nam per instrumentum altitudinis trium digitorum et latitudinis eorundem et minoris quantitatis, posset homo se ipsum et socios suos ab omni periculo carceris eripere et elevare et descendere....

Possunt etiam instrumenta fieri ambulandi in mari vel fluminibus 20 usque ad fundum⁶ absque (without) periculo corporali. Nam Alexander Magnus⁷ his usus est ut secreta maris videret, secundum (afterwards) quod Ethicus⁸ narrat astronomus. Haec autem facta sunt antiquitus et nostris temporibus facta sunt, ut certum est; nisi sit instrumentum volandi, quod non vidi nec hominem qui vidisset 25 cognovi; sed sapientem qui hoc artificium excogitavit explere cognosco. Et infinita quasi talia fieri possunt; ut pontes ultra flumina sine columna vel aliquo sustentaculo (support), et machinationes et ingenia inaudita.

- ¹ I may designate.
- ² through the shaping and planning.
- 3 I.e., had large crews.
- 4 Better, falcatos, equipped with scythes
- ⁵ for raising and lowering.

- 6 all the way to the bottom.
- ⁷ According to medieval legend, Alexander the Great attempted to have the depth of the sea measured.
- 8 Ethicus Ister, supposed author of a description of the world.

RELIGION AND THE CLASSICS

Desiderius Erasmus (1466?-1536), a Dutch priest who devoted his life to study and writing, has been called the greatest man of the Renaissance. This selection is from his Colloquia, a series of dialogues on current topics—comparable to a modern panel discussion

EUSEBIUS. Sacris quidem litteris ubique prima debetur auctoritas, sed tamen ego non numquam offendo (find) quaedam vel dicta a veteribus (the ancients) vel scripta ab ethnicis (pagans) etiam poetis, tam caste (chastely), tam sancte, tam divinitus (divinely) ut mihi non possim persuadere, quin pectus illorum, cum illa scriberent, numen aliquod bonum agitaverit. Et fortasse (perhaps) latius se fundit Spiritus Christi, quam nos interpretamur. Et multi sunt in consortio sanctorum, qui non sunt apud nos in catalogo. Fateor affectum meum² apud amicos; non possum legere librum Ciceronis³ quin aliquoties exosculer codicem⁴ ac venerer (revering) sanctum illud pectus, afflatum (inspired) caelesti numine.

Contra, cum hos quosdam recentiores lego, de republica, oeconomica, aut ethica praecipientes, Deum immortalem! Quam frigent⁵ prae illis. Immo quam (*More than that*) non videntur sentire quod scribunt, ¹⁵ ut ego citius patiar⁶ perire totum Scotum,⁷ cum aliquot (*several*) sui similibus, quam libros unius Ciceronis aut Plutarchi. Non quod illos (*the former*) in totum damnem, sed quod ex his (*the latter*) sentiam me reddi meliorem; cum ex illorum lectione surgam,⁸ nescio quomodo (*somehow*) frigidius (*more coldly*) affectus erga (*toward*) veram virtutem, ²⁰ sed irritatior ad contentionem. Quare ne vereri,⁹ quicquid (*whatever*) istuc (*it*) est, proponere.

CHRISTIANUS. Cum plerique libri M. Tulli, quos scripsit de philosophia, divinitatis quiddam spirare (*breathe*) videntur, tum ille quem senex scripsit de Senectute, plane (*clearly*) mihi videtur cygneus



- 1 in the communion of saints.
- ² I acknowledge my point of view.
- ³ I.e., Cicero's Old Age, Friendship, Moral Duties, and Tusculan Disputations.
 - * without frequently kissing the book.
 - 5 How cold they are!
 - 6 so that I should rather permit.
- ⁷ John Duns Scotus, an Irish or Scottish theologian of the thirteenth century.
 - ⁸ I rise from reading the former.
 - 9 don't fear; here ne = nolite.

Erasmus

cantus, quemadmodum Graecis est in proverbio.¹ Eum hodie relegi, atque haec verba, quoniam prae ceteris arridebant² edidici.³

"Si quis deus mihi largiatur ut ex hac aetate repuerascam et in cunis vagiam, 4 valde (vehemently) recusem; nec vero velim (would I wish), quasi decurso spatio, 5 ad carceres a calce (the goal) revocari. 5 Quid enim habet vita commodi? Quid non potius laboris? Sed non habeat sane, 6 habet certe tamen aut satietatem aut modum (restriction). Non libet (it is not pleasing) enim mihi deplorare vitam, quod multi et hi docti saepe fecerunt. Nec me vixisse paenitet, 7 quoniam ita vixi, ut frustra me natum 8 non existimem; et ex vita ista discedo 10 tamquam ex hospitio (inn) non tamquam e domo. Commorandi enim natura deversorium nobis, non habitandi, 9 dedit. O praeclarum diem, cum in illud animorum concilium coetumque (meeting-place) proficiscar et cum ex hac turba et colluvione 10 discedam!" 11

NEPHALIUS. Non minus elegans est quod apud Platonem loquitur 15 Socrates: "Animum humanum in hoc corpore, velut (*just as*) in praesidio, positum esse, unde fas non sit discedere injussu imperatoris, nec diutius in eo immorari (*to linger*) quam visum sit (*seems best*) ei qui collocaverit."

CHRISTIANUS. Quam felices sunt qui tali animo mortem expectant! 20 Proinde mihi nihil umquam legisse videor apud ethnicos, quod aptius quadret¹² in hominem vere Christianum. Quam quod Socrates, paulo post bibiturus¹³ cicutam (the hemlock), dixit Critoni. "An opera," inquit, "nostra sit probaturus deus nescio; certe sedulo (assiduously) conati sumus ut illi placeremus. Est mihi tamen bona spes quod 25 ille conatus nostros boni sit consulturus.¹⁴"....

NEPHALIUS. Profecto (*indeed*) mirandus animus in eo qui Christum et Sacras Litteras¹⁵ non noverat! Proinde, cum hujus modi quaedam lego de talibus viris, vix mihi tempero (*I restrain*) quin dicam, "Sancte Socrates, ora pro nobis."

- ¹ a swan song, as the Greeks have it in their proverb. According to legend, swans are mute until they are at the point of death.
 - 2 they pleased me.
 - 3 I learned by heart.
- 4 should permit me to become a child again and cry in my cradle.
 - 5 having run my race.
 - ⁶ Really, if it has not [pain].
 - ¹ I don't regret having lived.
 - 8 Supply esse.

- ⁹ Contrast deversorium commorandi, a temporary lodging, with deversorium habitandi, a residence.
 - 10 from this disorder and defilement.
- ¹¹ Cicero, De Senectute XXIII, 83-84.
- 12 is more perfectly suitable to; literally, squares more conveniently to.
- 13 just before drinking; literally, about to drink a little later.
- 14 will consider. The subject is ille (God), the object conatus.
 - 15 Sacred Writings, Scriptures.

THE UNIVERSE IN MOTION

Nikolaus Copernicus (1473-1543) was a Polish astronomer who was strongly opposed to the current idea that the earth was the center of the universe. In De Revolutionibus Orbium Caelestium, from which this extract comes, he develops the theory that the earth and other heavenly bodies revolve around the sun.

Jam quidem demonstratum est terram quoque globi formam habere; videndum¹ arbitror, an etiam formam ejus sequatur² motus (motion) et quem locum universitatis (universe) obtineat, sine quibus non est³ invenire certam apparentium in caelo rationem.⁴ Quamquam in medio mundi (of the universe) terram quiescere inter auctores plerumque convenit,⁵ ut inopinabile (inconceivable) putent sive etiam ridiculum contrarium sentire (to think), si tamen attentius rem consideremus, videbitur haec quaestio nondum absoluta (resolved) et idcirco (for that reason) minime contemnenda. Omnis enim quae videtur secundum lo locum⁵ mutatio, aut est propter spectatae rei motum, aut videntis, aut certe disparem utriusque mutationem.

Nam inter mota aequaliter ad eadem non percipitur motus,⁷ inter visum dico et videns. Terra autem est unde caelestis ille circuitus aspicitur et visui reproducitur (*is represented*) nostro. Si igitur motus aliquis terrae deputetur (*is attributed*) ipse in universis quae extrinsecus (*outside itself*) sunt, idem apparebit, sed ad partem oppositam, tamquam praetereuntia (*things passing by*), qualis est revolutio quotidiana (*daily*) imprimis.⁸ Haec enim totum mundum videtur rapere, praeterquam (*except*) terram quaeque circa ipsam sunt.⁹

Atqui (but now) si caelum nihil de hoc motu habere concesseris, terram vero ab occasu in ortum volvi, 10 quantum 11 ad apparentem in sole et luna et stellis ortum et occasum, 12 si quis serio (seriously) animadvertat, inveniet haec sic se habere. Cumque (since, however)

- 1 we must examine.
- 2 results from.
- ³ Supply possibile.
- 4 a fixed system of phenomena in the sky.
- 5 most authorities seem to agree.
- 6 in regard to position.
- ⁷ a motion [seen] among equal motions in the same direction is not perceived; a moving railway car seen from another moving railway car is a good example.
 - 8 Si ... imprimis may be translated
- freely: If then some motion is attributed to the earth, the same motion will be apparent in the universe outside of the earth, as though things are passing by at the same rate, but in the opposite direction, of which the daily revolution of the earth is a prime example.
- ⁹ terram ... sunt, the earth and the objects surrounding it.
 - 10 Present passive infinitive.
- 11 Object of animadvertat; how much is due to.
 - 12 Supply solis.

caelum sit, quod continet et caelat¹ omnia, communis universorum locus, non statim apparet, cur non magis contento quam continenti, locato quam locanti motus attribuatur.²

CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD

For hundreds of years physicians and anatomists accepted Galen's theories about the circulation of the blood. In the seventeenth century William Harvey wrote Exercitatio Anatomica de Motu Cordis et Sanguinis in Animalibus (1628), a correct explanation, with scientific proofs, of how the blood circulates.

Duo sunt quasi eodem tempore motus, unus auricularum, alter ventriculorum.³ Nec enim simul omnino fiunt; sed praecedit ⁵ motus auricularum, et subsequitat (follows) cordis,⁴ et motus ab auriculis incipere, et in ventriculos progredi visus est. Cum jam languidiora omnia emoriente corde,⁵ et in piscibus (fishes), et in frigidioribus sanguineis (cold-blooded) animalibus inter hos duos motus, tempus aliquod quietis intercedit, ut cor quasi süscitatum⁵ motui ¹⁰ respondere videtur, aliquando (sometimes) tardius, et tandem ad mortem inclinans (sinking) cessat motu suo respondere, et quasi capite dumtaxat leviter annuit,⁷ et obscure (imperceptibly) adeo movetur, ut potius motus signum praebere pulsanti auriculae videatur.

Sic prius⁸ desinit (ceases) cor pulsare, quam auriculae, ut auriculae ¹⁵ supervivere (to outlive) dicantur, et primus omnium desinit pulsare sinister ventriculus, deinde ejus auricula, demum dexter ventriculus, ultimo (quod etiam non ait Galen⁹) reliquis omnibus cessantibus et mortuis, pulsat usque¹⁰ dextra auricula, ut ultimo (longest) in dextra auricula vita remanere videatur. Et dum sensim emoritur¹¹ cor videre ²⁰ licet, post duas vel tres pulsationes auricularum liquando (by dissolution) quasi expergefactum (aroused) correspondere, ¹² et unum pulsum lente (slowly) et aegre peragere, ¹³ et moliri (struggle).

- ¹ Of Greek origin; hides (holds in a hollow).
- ² cur . . . attribuatur, why motion should not be attributed more to the contents than to the container, to the thing located than to its location.
- ³ one of the auricles, another of the ventricles.
- ⁴ From cor, cordis, n., heart; supply motus.
- ⁵ Cum . . . corde, When in a dying heart all things are becoming languid.

- 6 as if aroused
- 7 only nods its head slightly, as it were.
- ⁸ Translate with quam.
- ⁹ Galen's writings on medicine had great influence in the classical and medieval periods.
 - 10 without interruption.
 - 11 while it is gradually dying.
 - 12 to respond.
 - 13 to carry through with an effort.

PROOF OF MAN'S EXISTENCE

Modern philosophy is said to begin with René Descartes (1596-1650). In order to discover the basic elements of truth, he decided to doubt all beliefs and opinions and seek something that could be proved. In the end he decided that the one certain fact is that man is conscious that he thinks. In his Opera Philosophica, from which we have an excerpt, he sums this up in Cogito; ergo sum.

E nitar¹ tamen, removendo illud omne quod vel minimum dubitationis admittit, nihilo secius quam si² omnino falsum esse comperissem, pergamque porro donec³ aliquid certi, vel si nihil aliud, saltem (at least) hoc ipsum pro certo, nihil esse certi, cognoscam.

Nihil nisi punctum petebat Archimedes,⁴ quod esset firmum et immobile, ut integram terram loco dimoveret; magna quoque speranda sunt,⁵ si vel minimum quid invenero quod certum sit et inconcussum (incontrovertible).

Suppono igitur omnia quae video falsa esse; credo nihil umquam extitisse eorum quae mendax memoria repraesentat. Nullos plane (simply) habeo sensus; corpus, figura, extensio, motus, locusque sunt chimerae. Quid igitur erit verum? Fortassis (perhaps) hoc unum, nihil esse certi.

Sed unde scio nihil esse diversum ab iis omnibus quae jamjam recensui, de quo ne minima quidem occasio sit dubitandi? Numquid est aliquis deus, vel quocumque nomine illum vocem (I call), qui mihi has ipsas cogitationes immittit¹¹? Quare veri hoc putem, cum forsan ipsemet illarum auctor esse possim¹²? Numquid ergo (therefore) saltem ego aliquid sum? Sed jam negavi me habere ullos sensus, et ullum corpus; haereo (I hesitate) tamen; nam quid inde? Sumne ita corpori sensibusque alligatus (bound), ut sine illis esse non possim? Sed mihi persuasi, nihil plane esse in mundo (in all the world), nullum caelum, nullam terram, nullas mentes, nulla corpora. Nonne igitur etiam me non esse? Immo (No) certe ego eram si quid mihi persuasi;

- 1 I shall make an effort.
- ² nihilo secius quam si, just as if.
- 3 I shall proceed until.
- ⁴ Archimedes is supposed to have said that he could move the earth if he could find a point outside it to stand on.
 - 5 we must also have high hopes.
 - ⁶ From existo.
 - ⁷ fallacious; compare mendacious (lying).
- ⁸ impossible ideas. The chimera was a legendary monster. (See picture on page 80.)
 - ⁹ I have recently considered.
- 10 Is there not? Numquid is an interrogative adverb used with direct questions.
- 11 mihi . . . immittit, puts these thoughts into my mind.
- ¹² forsan ... possim, perhaps I myself may be.

sed est deceptor nescio quis, summe potens, summe callidus,¹ qui de industria (with ingenuity) me semper fallit. Haud dubie igitur ego etiam sum, si me fallit; et fallat quantum potest, numquam tamen efficiet, ut nihil sim quamdiu (as long as) me aliquid esse cogitabo,² adeo ut omnibus satis superque pensitatis³ denique statuendum sit 5 hoc pronuntiatum (proposition), Ego sum, ego existo, quoties⁴ a me profertur, vel mente concipitur,⁵ necessario esse verum.

GOD, MAN, AND NATURE

The Spanish Jew Benedict Spinoza (1632-1677), who lived in Amsterdam, published his treatise De Deo et Homine Ejusque Valetudine simultaneously in Dutch and Latin. Spinoza saw the universe as a single reality—at once nature and God, not nature presided over by God.

Cum viderimus hominem, quippe (certainly) totius a qua pendet regiturque⁶ naturae partem,⁷ ex se ipso ad salutem valetudinemque suam nihil efficere posse; videamus jam quaenam (what) utilitates ex ¹⁰ hisce⁸ propositionibus nobis profluant⁹; et hoc eo magis, quia¹⁰ non dubitamus quin quibusdam non parum displiciturae sint.¹¹

Primo, sequitur inde, quod ab illo quod perfectissimum est, ita pendeamus, ut tamquam totius, i.e., ejus¹² pars, nostrum etiam adhibeamus¹³ ad efficienda tot bene ordinata (ordered) et perfecta opera ¹⁵ quae ab ea pendeant, inde—dico—sequitur nos vere famulos (attendants), immo (even more) servos Dei esse, maximamque nostram esse perfectionem hoc necessario esse.

Secundo, etiam haecce cognitio (knowledge) efficit, ut, praecipua (excellent) aliqua re peracta (accomplished), de ea non superbiamus 20 (we take pride) quae superbia causa est ut, aliquid magni nos reputantes (ascribing to) et quasi nihilo amplius egentes (needing), sistamus ubi

- ¹ summe potens = potentissimus; summe callidus = callidissimus.
- ² Descartes is famous for this theory—Cogito; ergo sum.
- ³ With omnibus, if I think over everything.
 - 4 as often as.
 - 5 is conceived mentally.
- ⁶ A telescoped expression; on which he depends and by which he is governed.
 - ⁷ In apposition with hominem, subject

- of posse; being a part of the whole of nature.
- ⁸ Hicce, haecce, hocce are emphatic forms of hic, haec, hoc.
- ⁹ we may derive; literally, may flow forth to us.
 - 10 hoc . . . quia, more for the reason that.
 - 11 will be displeasing.
 - 12 of Him (God).
 - 13 we also contribute our share.

jam sumus¹; quod directe pugnat cum² perfectione nostra, in eo consistente,³ quod semper progredi conari debemus. Sed e contrario,⁴ omnia quae agimus Deo contribuamus (we attribute), quippe qui prima solaque causa est omnium quae agimus efficimusque.

- Tertio, cognitio haecce, praeter verum proximi amorem, quem in nobis excitat,⁵ nos ita constituit, numquam ut eum odie habere⁶ nec in eum irati esse possimus, cupiamus autem eum adjuvare et ad meliorem statum (condition) perducere, quae omnes talium hominum actiones sunt, magnam qui perfectionem essentiamve⁷ habeant.
- Quarto, haecce cognitio in rei publicae salutem tendit, quippe qua judex partibus unius prae alterius studere nequeat (cannot) et unum punire (to punish) coactus ut alterum premio afficiat, intentione illud faciat unum tantopere quam (as much as) alterum adjuvandi.

Quinto, cognitio haecce nos liberat a tristitia, desperatione, invidia, terrore, aliisque malis passionibus, quae, ut postea dicemus, ¹¹ Gehenna (*Hell*) ipsa sunt.

Sexto, cognitio haecce nos eo (so far) perducit, Deum ut non timeamus, ut alii Diabolum (the Devil), 12 ne quid mali iis faciat. Quomodo (How) enim Deum timere possimus qui ipsum summum bonum est, 20 et a quo omnia quandam essentiam habentia sunt 13 id quod sunt, ut et (also) nos ipsi ab eo sumus, in eo viventes.

Septimo, cognitio haecce eo etiam perducit, ut Deo omnia attribuamus, eum solum amemus, quia augustissimus et perfectissimus est. Itaque ut ei nos sacrificemus; in proprie¹⁴ et vera religio et aeterna ²⁵ nostra salus et beatitudo (*bliss*) consistunt, sola enim perfectio et ultimus servi finis instrumentique¹⁵ hic est, ut officium illi mandatum (*entrusted*) bene perficiat; e.g., quando (*when*) faber in opere quodam fabricando (*doing*) securi (*hatchet*) sua se optime adjustum videt,¹⁶ securis illa ad finem perfectionemque suam ita pervenit. Si vero

- 2 it militates against.
- 3 which consists in this.
- 4 on the contrary.

- 6 to hate; literally, to hold hatefully.
- 7 or intrinsic character.

¹ quae superbia causa est ut ... sistamus ubi jam sumus, pride which causes us ... to come to a standstill.

⁵ praeter . . . excitat, in addition to the fact that it inspires us with a real love for our neighbor.

 $^{^{8}}$ in . . . tendit, promotes the greatest common good.

⁹ in order to reward another; literally, to affect another with a reward.

¹⁰ With adjuvandi, with a view to helping.

¹¹ as we shall presently say.

¹² Supply timeant.

¹³ omnia ... sunt, all things having a certain state of being. Occasionally the verbal aspect of a participle has force enough to take an object

¹⁴ in proprie, exclusively.

¹⁵ final end of a slave and a tool.

¹⁶ sees that he has been well served.

cogitare sibi vellet, "Securis haecce mihi admodum bene serviit"; itaque jam quiescere eam sineret,¹ nec quemdam amplius usum ab ea postularet; securis illa tunc (*lhen*) a fine sua removeretur, nec securis amplius esset. Ita est homo, quamdiu (*so long as*) pars naturae est, leges naturae sequi debet, quod Dei servitium, i.e. religio, est et 5 quamdiu hoc facit sua valetudine gaudet. Si vero Deus, ut ita dicam, vellet homines non amplius ei servituros esse,² aeque hoc valeret ac si³ eos valetudine privaret (*depriving*) eosque destrueret (*annihilating*) quia omne quod sunt in eo consistit, Deo ut serviant.

TIDES

The English scientist and mathematical genius Sir Isaac Newton (1642-1727) made many contributions to the field of physics, one of which was the formulation of the law of gravity. His greatest work is Principia Mathematica, from which this selection comes. A comparison of Newton's writings with those of Copernicus (p. 284), shows the great advance in science that had been made in two centuries. This progress was accelerated by the fact that all the material was published in Latin, so that it could be read immediately by scholars in different lands.

are singulis diebus tam lunaribus quam solaribus⁴ bis intumescere ¹⁰

(to rise) debere⁵ ac bis defluere (to fall) patet, in maribus profundis et liberis, appulsum luminarium⁶ ad meridianum⁷ loci minori quam sex horarum spatio⁸ sequi, ut fit in maris Atlantici et Aethiopici tractu toto orientali inter Galliam (France) et Promontorium Bonae Spei ut⁹ et in maris Pacifici litore Chilensi et Peruviano; in ¹⁵ quibus omnibus litoribus aestus in horam circiter secundam, tertiam, vel quartam incidit, nisi ubi motus¹⁰ ab oceano profundo (deep) per loca vadosa¹¹ propagatus (generated) usque ad horam quintam, sextam, septimam, aut ultra retardatur.

Horas numero (I reckon) ab appulsu luminaris utriusque ad me-20

- ¹ let it rest; sineret is subjunctive in a conditional sentence.
 - 2 to serve.
 - 3 that would be equivalent to.
- 4 singulis . . . solaribus, every lunar and solar day. A day is, of course, one complete revolution of the earth. The length of the solar day seems to vary with the seasons, but the mean solar day is 23 hours, 56 minutes. The lunar day is 24 hours, 50 minutes.
 - ⁵ debere depends on patet (it is evident),

- and is followed by intumescere, defluere, and sequi.
- ⁶ the approach of the luminaries, i.e., the sun and moon.
- ⁷ meridian; not south, as in classical Latin.
 - 8 With minori, by an interval shorter.
 - 9 Omit in translation.
 - 10 Subject of retardatur.
- ¹¹ With retardatur, per loca vadosa = locis vadosis; is retarded by the shallow channels.

ridianum loci, tam infra horizontem quam supra, et per (by) horas diei lunaris intellego vigesimas quartas (twenty-fourth) partes temporis quo luna motu apparente diurno ad meridianum loci revertitur. Vis solis vel lunae ad mare elevandum maxima est in ipso appulsu luminaris ad meridianum loci. Sed vis eo tempore in mare impressa manet aliquamdiu (a little while) et per vim novam subinde impressam¹ augetur, donec (until) mare ad altitudinem maximam ascenderit, id quod fiet spatio horae unius duarumve (or two) sed saepius ad litora spatio horarum trium circiter vel etiam plurium si mare sit vadosum.

Motus autem bini, quos luminaria duo excitant, non cernentur distincte, sed motum quendam mixtum efficient. In luminarium conjunctione² vel oppositione conjungentur eorum effectus (forces) et componetur fluxus et refluxus³ maximus. Haec ita sunt in mari aperto. Nam in ostiis fluviorum (of rivers) fluxus majores

CAPITAL AND LABOR

15 ceteris paribus tardius ad apicem⁴ venient.

When Leo XIII became Pope in 1878, he found Europe in turmoil—politically, because of strong nationalistic feelings which were to culminate in two world wars; economically, because of the influence of Marxism and socialism. In Rerum Novarum (1891) the Pope, as head of the Roman Catholic Church, stated the opposition of the Church toward revolutionary socialism, and defined the relations of capital and labor. An extract from this encyclical is given.

Rerum novarum semel (once) excitata cupidine, quae diu quidem commovet civitates, illud erat consecuturum ut commutationum studia a rationibus politicis in oeconomicarum cognatum genus aliquando defluerent.⁵ Re vera nova industria incrementa (developments) novisque euntes itineribus artes⁶; mutatae dominorum et mercenariorum rationes mutuae⁷; divitiarum in exiguo numero affluentia (abundance), in multitudine inopia; opificum (of Labor) cum de se confidentia major, tum inter se necessitudo conjunctior,⁸ praeterea versi in deteriora mores,⁹ effecerunt (have brought it about), ut certamen erumperet.

¹ still acting upon it.

² conjunction; the meeting or passing of two or more celestial bodies in the same degree of the zodiac. Opposition is the situation of a celestial body directly opposite to another, or separated from it by 180°.

I flood and ebb will be brought on.

⁴ height.

⁵ in . . . defluerent, should at some time pass into the related field of economics.

⁶ new discoveries of science.

⁷ relations of wage-earners.

⁸ their closer connection.

⁹ moral degeneration.

In quo quanta rerum momenta vertantur,¹ ex hoc apparet, quod animos habet acri expectatione suspensos (tense); denique ingenia exercet doctorum, concilia prudentum (of practical men), contiones (assemblies) populi, legumlatorum,² judicium, consilia principum, ut jam causa nulla reperiatur tanta, quae teneat hominum studia 5 (interests) vehementius.

Itaque, proposita nobis Ecclesiae (of the Church) causa et salute communi, quod alias consuevimus, venerabiles fratres, datis ad vos litteris de imperio politico, de libertate humana, de civitatum constitutione Christiana, aliisque non dissimili genere, quae ad refutandas 10 opinionum fallacias opportuna videbantur, idem nunc faciendum de conditione opificum (of Labor) isdem de causis duximus. Genus hoc argumenti non semel jam per occasionem attigimus; in his tamen litteris totam data opera³ tractare (to treat) quaestionem apostolici muneris conscientia (consciousness) monet, ut principia emineant (may 15 stand forth clearly), quorum ope, ut veritas atque aequitas postulant, dimicatio dirimatur.4

Causa est ad expediendum difficilis, nec vacua (free from) periculo. Arduum⁵ siquidem (indeed) metiri jura et officia, quibus locupletes (the rich) et proletarios (the proletariat) eos qui rem,⁶ et eos qui operam ²⁰ conferant,⁶ inter se oportet contineri. Periculosa vero contentio,⁷ quippe (in fact) quae ab hominibus turbulentis (quarrelsome) et callidis ad pervertendum judicium veri concitandamque seditiose multitudinem passim detorquetur.⁸ Utcumque (however) sit, plane (clearly) videmus, quod (as) consentiunt universi, infimae sortis hominibus⁹ ²⁵ celeriter esse atque opportune consulendum, cum pars maxima in misera calamitosaque (and ruinous) fortuna indigne (undeservedly) versentur.

Nam veteribus artificum collegiis¹⁰ superiore saeculo (*century*) deletis, nulloque in eorum locum suffecto praesidio,¹¹ cum ipsa insti- 30 tuta legesque publicae avitam (*ancestral*) religionem exussent,¹² sensim (*gradually*) factum est ut opifices (*workers*) inhumanitati dominorum

- 1 such great changes hinge.
- ² From lex + latus (fero); of lawmakers.
- 3 as opportunity is given.
- 4 the controversy may be settled.
- ⁵ It is difficult; supply est.
- 6 those who contribute capital, i.e., locupletes; those who contribute labor, i.e., proletarios.
- 7 It is a struggle: supply est.
- 8 is constantly distorted.
- 9 for men of the lowest economic level.
- 10 the old guilds of the workmen; translate with deletis, as ablative absolute.
- ¹¹ nullo . . . praesidio, no protective organization having been supplied in their place.
 - 12 since they have destroyed.

effrenataeque (unbridled) competitorum cupiditati solitarios atque indefensos (defenseless) tempus tradiderit. Malum auxit usura vorax,¹ quae non semel Ecclesiae judicio damnata, tamen ab hominibus avidis et quaestuosis (self-seeking) per aliam speciem exercetur eadem; huc accedunt et conductio operum² et rerum omnium commercia fere in paucorum redacta potestatem, ita ut opulenti ac praedivites³ perpauci prope servile (of slavery) jugum infinitae proletariorum multitudini imposuerint.

THE LANGUAGE OF FLOWERS

One of the continued uses of Latin is in botanical classifications. The scientific name of a plant and its description are put into Latin. Technical botanical terms—many borrowed from Greek—are treated as Latin words with appropriate endings. Most of these are easily understood from familiar Latin words. Two examples follow.

Planta subarborescens perennis viscida; folia oblongo-oblanceolata lanceolata-ellipticave sessilia vel brevipetiolata petiolis alatis, basi subauriculata paulo decurrentia; inflorescentia paniculiformis pedicellis in fructu conspicue curvatis; flores magni corollarum apicibus in alabastris manifestis; corolla infundibularis paulo flexa, limbo faucibusque conjunctis campanulatis; stylum et stamına inclusa ad partem inferiorem corollae accedentia.

Pelphinium alatum. Caulibus ad 1 m. altis simplicibus vel paulo ramosis supra vel ad apicem minute puberulis, racemis pedunculatis obscure glandulosis; foliis praesertim ad medium caulis restrictis 4-5 partitis, segmentis plus minusve divisis; floribus intense caeruleis; folliculis approximatis erectis obscure pubescentibus haud glandulosis; seminibus alatis.

¹ rapacious usury.

² contract labor.

³ powerful and very rich men.

Titus Maccius Plautus (c. 254-184 BC.), the greatest author of Latin comedy, wrote the Menaechmi, the most important scenes of which are given here. This plot has been often used, notably in Shakespeare's A Comedy of Errors and in The Boys from Syracuse.

MENAECHMI

THE PLAY TAKES PLACE ON A STREET IN EPIDAMNUS

ACT I SCENE I

(MENAECHMUS I AND PENICULUS MEET IN FRONT OF THE HOUSE OF MEN I.)

Menaechmus I. Euax, jurgio¹ hercle² tandem uxorem abegi ab janua.

Ubi sunt amatores mariti³? Dona quid cessant⁴ mihi

Conferre omnes congratulantes, quia (because) pugnavi fortiter?

Hanc modo uxori intus pallam surripui⁵; ad scortum (my mistress) fero.

Sic hoc decet, dari facete verba custodi catae.6

Hoc facinus pulchrumst, hoc probumst, hoc lepidumst, hoc factumst fabre (cleverly);

Meo malo⁸ a mala abstuli hoc, ad damnum⁹ deferetur.

Averti praedam (loot) ab hostibus nostrum salute socium. 10

Peniculus. Heus (hello), adulescens, ecqua (any) in istac¹¹ pars inest praeda mihi? 10 Men. I. Perii, in insidias deveni (I have fallen). Pen. Immo¹² in praesidium; ne time (don't be afraid).

Men. I. Quis homost? Pen. Ego sum. Men. I. O mea commoditas, O mea opportunitas, 13

Salve (greetings). Pen. Salve. Men. I. Quid agıs? Pen. Teneo dextra 15 genium (guardian angel) meum.

- 1 by outshouting her, lit., by argument.
- ² With Euax, By Jove, this is wonderful! Hercle, by Hercules, Pol or Edepol, by Pollux, are frequently used by Plautus.
 - 3 intriguing husbands.
 - 4 Why are . . . waiting?
- 5 I stole this cloak from my wife inside there.
- ⁶ Sic . . . catae, So it is fitting for my crafty ball-and-chain to be cheated.
- ⁷ Plautus often adds -st (for est) or -s (for es) to a word; e.g, pulchrumst, is

- fine; probumst, is honorable; lepidumst, is agreeable.
 - ⁸ at a loss to myself.
- ⁹ Figuratively, my sweetheart; literally, damnation.
- 10 nostrum . . . socium = nostrorum . . . sociorum, for the welfare of our allies.
- 11 that; ablative with praeda. Iste and ille with c added are old colloquial forms.
- 12 No, you haven't.
- ¹³ My right-hand man, my Johnny on the spot.

- Men. I. Non potuisti magis per tempus¹ mi² advenire quam advenis.
- Pen. Ita ego soleo; commoditatis omnis articulos (angles) scio.
- Men. I. Vin³ tu facinus luculentum⁴ inspicere? Pen. Quis id coxit coquus⁵? Iam sciam, si quid titubatumst,6 ubi reliquias7 videro.
- 5 Men. I. Dic mi, enumquam (ever) tu vidisti tabulam pictam in pariete,8 Ubi aquila Catameitum raperet aut ubi Venus Adoneum—?
 - Pen. Saepe, sed quid (how) istae picturae ad me attinent (concern)? Men. I. Age (come) me aspice.
 - Ecquid assimulo similiter⁹? (HE SPREADS THE CLOAK LIKE AN EAGLE'S WINGS.)

 Pen. Qui istic est ornatus¹⁰ tuus?
 - Men. I. Dic hominem lepidissimum esse me. Pen. Ubi essuri sumus¹¹?
 - Men. I. Dic modo hoc quod ego te jubeo. Pen. Dico, "Homo lepidissime. 12"
 - Men. I. Ecquid audes de tuo istuc addere¹³? Pen. Atque hilarissime.
 - Men. I. Perge porro.14 Pen. Non pergo hercle, nisi scio qua gratia 15
- Litigium (quarrel) tibist cum uxore; eo mi abs te caveo cautius. 16
 - Men. I. Clam uxoremst ubi pulchre habeamus¹⁷; hunc comburamus¹⁸ diem.
 - Pen. Age sane igitur, quando aequum oras, 19 quam mox incendo rogum?

 Dies quidem jam ad umbilicumst dimidiatus mortuus. 20
 - Men. I. Te morare,²¹ mihi cum obloquere.²² Pen. Oculum ecfodito per solum Mihi,²³ Menaechme, si ullum verbum faxo,²⁴ nisi quod jusseris.
 - Men. I. Concede (come) huc a foribus. 25 (HE MOVES AWAY) Pen. Fiat. Men. I. Etiam concede huc. Pen. Licet.
 - Men. I. Etiam nunc concede audacter ab leonino cavo.26
 - Pen. Eu edepol ne tu, ut ego opinor, esses agitator probus.27
- 25 Men. I. Quidum (how so)? Pen. Ne te uxor sequatur, respectas identidem.²⁸ Men. I. Sed quid ais²⁹? Pen. Egone? Id enim quod tu vis, id ajo²⁹ atque id nego.
 - 1 more opportunely.
 - 2 mi = mihi.

- 3 Vin = visne.
- ⁴ Literally, a splendid thing. Menaechmus means the theft of the cloak. Peniculus thinks he means a grand feast.
 - 5 What cook cooked it?
 - 6 if there's been any slip.
- ⁷ the left overs; the remnants of feasts were a reward of hangers-on.
 - 8 a picture painted on a wall.
 - ⁹ Do I make myself anything like them?
 - ¹⁰ A noun; decoration.
- 11 When are we going to eat?
- 12 very charming; vocative, modifying homo, as does also hilarissime, very funny.
- ¹³ Do you dare to add anything further of your own?
 - 14 Go on.
 - 15 the reason why.
 - 16 more cautiously.

- ¹⁷ There's a place my wife doesn't know about where it will be nice.
- ¹⁸ We shall cremate; the metaphor refers to the death of a day. After the cremation on a funeral pyre (rogum), there will be a feast.
- 19 Well, then, since what you say is fair enough.
- ²⁰ The day is already half-dead; lit., dead up to the navel.
 - 21 You're the one that's causing the delay.
 - 22 you interrupt.
 - ²³ You can dig my eye out by the roots.
 - 24 faxo = faciam.
 - 25 From foris, door.
 - 26 the lion's den.
- ²⁷ Well, I think you would certainly make a fine charioteer. (Chariot drivers constantly looked back to see if others were gaining.)
 - 28 repeatedly.
 - ²⁹ See page 343, 48.

Men. I. Tibi fuant¹ quaecumque me vis; ita edepol recte omnia

Elocutu's (you have spoken). Nam ab uxore hanc pallam surripui mea;

Nunc ad amicam deferetur hanc meretricem Erotium.

Mihi, tibi atque illi jubebo jam adparari prandium (lunch). Pen. Eu2!

Men. I. Inde usque ad diurnam stellam crastinam potabimus.3

Pen. Eu expedite fabulatu's.4 Jam fores ferio5? Men. I. Feri.

Vel mane⁶ etiam. Pen. Mille passuum commoratu's cantharum.⁷

Men. I. Placide pulta.8 Pen. Metuis credo, ne fores Samiae9 sint.

Men. I. Mane, mane, obsecto (I beg you) hercle. Eapse eccam¹⁰ exit. O, solem vides¹¹

Satin ut occaecatust¹² prae hujus corporis candoribus (beauty)?

(MEN. I AND PEN CROSS THE STREET.)

5

10

20

25

SCENE II

(EROTIUM COMES OUT OF HER HOUSE)

Erotum. Anıme mi, Menaechme, salve. Pen. Quid ego? Er. Extra numerum¹³ es mihi.

Men. I. Sustine hoc,¹⁴ Penicule; exuvias facere¹⁵ quas vovi volo.

Pen. Cedo, sed obsecro (I beg you) hercle, salta (dance) sic cum palla postea. 15

Men. I. Ego saltabo? Sanus hercle non es. Pen. Egone an tu magis?

Si non saltas, exue (take it off) igitur. Men. I. Nimio (too much) ego hanc periculo

Surripui hodie. *Pen.* Meo quidem animo ab Hippolyta subcingulum (*girdle*) Hercules haud aeque magno umquam abstulit periculo.

Men. I. Cape tibi hanc, quando una vivis meis morigera moribus. 16

Er. Hoc animo decet animatos esse amatores probos. 17

Pen. Qui quidem ad mendicitatem properent se detrudere. 18

Men. I. Quattuor minis19 ego emi istanc anno20 uxori meae.

Pen. Quattuor minae perierunt plane (clearly), ut ratio redditur.

Men. I. Scin²¹ quid volo ego te accurare²²? Er. Scio. Curabo quae voles.

Men. I. Jube igitur tribus nobis apud te23 prandium accurarier.24

- ¹ Equivalent to sint; with Tibi, May you have.
 - 2 Good!
- ³ We shall drink [from now] until morning; lit., until tomorrow's day star.
 - 4 You're right.
 - 5 Now shall I knock?
 - ⁶ From maneo.
 - 7 You've put the cup a mile away.
 - 8 Knock softly.
 - 9 of Samian pottery, common tableware.
 - 10 Look, she herself.
 - 11 Ah, see the sun!
 - 12 Isn't it positively dimmed?
 - 13 Supply amicorum, of my friends.
 - 14 Hold this thing (the cloak).

- ¹⁵ to offer up the winnings, referring to the custom of offering part of a victor's winnings to the gods.
- 16 since you alone are living according to my way of life.
- ¹⁷ It is fitting that true lovers should be so disposed.
- 18 Anyway, those who are eager to drive themselves to beggary.
- ¹⁹ The *mina* was a Greek coin worth about \$18.00.
 - 20 a year ago.
 - 21 Scin = scisne.
 - 22 to prepare.
 - 23 at your house.
 - 24 Equivalent to accurari, to be prepared.

Er. Quando vis, veni; parata res erit. Men. I. Propera modo. Sequere¹ tu. Pen. Ego hercle vero te et servabo et te sequar, Neque hodie ut te perdam, meream deorum divitias mihi.²

(ALL GO OUT.)

ACT II HALF AN HOUR LATER SCENE I

(MEN II, MESSENIO, AND PORTERS WITH LUGGAGE IN FRONT OF EROTIUM'S HOUSE)

Menaechmus II. Voluptas nullast nautis, Messenio,

- Major meo animo, quam cum ex alto procul
 Terram conspiciunt Messenio. Major, non dicam dolo,
 Si adveniens terram videas, quae fuerit tua
 Sed quaeso, quam ob rem nunc Epidamnum venimus?
 An quasi mare omnes circumimus insulas?
- 10 $Men.\ II.$ Fratrem quaesitum⁷ geminum germanum (own) meum.

Messenio. Nam quid modi futurumst illum quaerere⁸?

Hic annus sextust, postquam ei rei operam damus.⁹

Histros (Istrians), Hispanos, Massiliensis, Illyrios,

Mare superum¹⁰ omne Graeciamque evoticam¹¹

- Orasque Italicas omnes, qua aggreditur mare,
 Sumus circumvecti; si acum (a needle), credo, quaereres,
 Acum invenisses, si appareret, jam diu.
 Hominem inter vivos quaeritamus (ive are seeking) mortuum;
 Nam invenissemus jam diu, si viveret
- 20 Men. II. Ergo istuc¹² quaero certum qui faciat mihi, Qui sese dicat scire eum esse emortuum; Operam praeterea numquam sumam quaerere.¹³ Verum (lruly) aliter vivus numquam desistam exsequi; Ego illum scio quam cordi (heart) sit carus meo.
- Mes. In scirpo nodum¹⁴ quaeris. Quin¹⁵ nos hinc domum Redimus, nisi si historiam scripturi sumus?
 Men. II. Dictum facessas; datum edas; caveas malo.¹⁶
 Molestus ne sis, non tuo hoc fiet modo.¹⁷ Mes. Em (Look), Illo enim verbo esse me servum scio:
- Non potuit paucis plura plane (clearly) proloqui.
 - ¹ Imperative, addressed to Peniculus.
 - ² I wouldn't lose you today for all the wealth of heaven.
 - ³ Supply voluptas est.
 - 4 With non, frankly.
 - ⁵ Still, I ask [you].
 - 6 as if [we were] the sea.
 - ⁷ To seek; see page 365, 143.
 - ⁸ When shall we (will there be an end of trying to) find him? modi depends on quid, what end; quaerere = quaerendi and depends on modi.
 - 9 that we are giving attention.

- O The Adriatic
- ¹¹ Graeciam exoticam = Magnam Graeciam, i.e., southern Italy and Sicily.
 - 12 Therefore, with regard to that.
- ¹³ After that I will never again undertake the task of trying to find him.
- ¹⁴ a knot in a bulrush—something non-existent.
 - 15 Why don't we . . . ?
- 16 Do what you're told, eat what you're given, look out for trouble.
- ¹⁷ Don't be a nuisance; this isn't going to be done to suit you.

Verum tamen nequeo¹ contineri quin loquar.

Audin² Menaechme? Cum inspicio marsuppium,³

Viaticati hercle admodum aestive sumus.4

Ne (surely) tu hercle, opinor (I think), nisi domum reverteris,5

Ubi nil⁶ habebis, geminum dum quaeres, gemes (you will groan).

Nam itast haec hominum natio; in Epidamniis

Voluptarii atque potatores7 maximi;

Tum sycophantae et palpatores⁸ plurimi

In urbe hac habitant; tum meretrices mulieres9

Nusquam perhibentur blandiores gentium.10

Propterea huic urbi nomen Epidamno inditumst,11

Quia nemo ferme (almost) huc sine damno (harm) devertitur.

Men. II. Ego istuc cavebo. 12 Cedo dum (just hand over) huc mihi marsuppium.

Mes. Quid eo vis? Men. II. Jam abs te metuo de verbis tuis.

Mes. Quid metuis? Men. II. Ne mihi damnum in Epidamno duis. 13

Tu magnus amator mulierum es, Messenio,

Ego autem homo iracundus, animi perditi14;

Id utrumque, 15 argentum quando (when) habebo, cavero,

Ne tu delinquas16 neve ego irascar17 tibi.

Mes. Cape atque serva; me libente¹⁸ feceris.

SCENE II

(EROTIUM ENTERS)

Er. Sed ubi illest, quem coquus ante aedes esse ait19? Atque eccum (him) video,

Qui mi est usui et plurimum prodest.

Item hinc ultro fit, ut meret, potissimus (the most influential man) nostrae domi ut sit;

Nunc eum adibo; atque ultro adloquar.

Animule mi,20 mihi mira videntur

Te hic stare foris (out of doors), fores cui pateant,

Magis quam domus tua domus cum haec tua sit.

Omne paratumst, ut jussisti

Atque ut voluisti, neque tibi

- 1 Nequeo = non possum.
- ² Audin = audisne.
- ³ Purse; compare marsubial.
- * We are prepared for our journey in a summerish fashion; i.e., lightly, as summer clothes are light.
 - ⁵ Future perfect active.
 - 6 nil = nihil.
- ⁷ Supply sunt; There are lovers of luxury and heavy drinkers.
 - 8 swindlers and spongers.
 - 9 courtesans.
- ¹⁰ nowhere in the world are said to be more enticing.

- ¹¹ is given. The pun on Epidamno and damno is characteristic of Plautus.
 - 12 I'll be careful about that.
 - 13 duis = des.
- ¹⁴ But I am an irascible man, with a hopelessly bad temper.
 - 15 both these dangers.
 - 16 that you don't do wrong.
 - 17 that I don't get angry at you.
- ¹⁸ for all I care! Messenio is really aggreeved.
- 19 the cook said was in front of the house. (Erotium is speaking from inside the door.)
 20 my darling.

10

15

20

25

Est ulla mora intus (within).

Prandium, ut jussisti, hic curatumst;

Ubi libet (it is agreeable), ire licet accubitum (to the table).

Men. II. Quicum haec mulier loquitur? Er. Equidem tecum. Men. II. Quid

Fuit umquam aut nunc est negoti¹? Er. Quia pol te unum ex omnibus Venus me voluit magnificare (to make much of), neque id haud immerito tuo.² Nam ecastor³ solus benefactis tuis me florentem (prosperous) facis

Men. II. Certe haec mulier aut insana aut ebriast (she is drunk), Messenio,

Quae hominem ignotum compellet (addresses) me tam familiariter.

Mes Dixin4 ego istaec5 hic solere fieri? Folia nunc cadunt,

Praeut, si triduum hoc (from now) hic erimus; tum arbores in te cadent.

Nam ita sunt hic meretrices; omnes elecebrae argentariae 7

Sed sine me dum8 hanc compellare. Heus mulier, tibi dico Er. Quid est?

In Epidamno. Mes. In Epidamno? Qui huc in hanc urbem pedem, 10

Nisi hodie, numquam intro tetulit? Er Heia, delicias facis. 11

Mi Menaechme, quin, amabo, is intro? 12 Hic tibi erit rectius (better).

Men. II. Haec quidem edepol recte appellat meo me mulier nomine.

Nimis (very much) miror, quid hoc sit negoti. Mes. Oboluit (she smells)

Huic istuc, quod habes. *Men. II*. Atque edepol tu me monuisti probe (*rightly*). Accipe dum (*then*) hoc; jam scibo, ¹³ utrum haec me mage (*more*) amet an marsuppium.

- 25 Er. Eamus (Let's go) intro, ut prandeamus (to lunch) Men. II. Bene vocas; tam gratiast. 14
 - Er. Cur igitur me tibi jussisti coquere (to cook) dudum 15 prandium?
 - Men. II. Egon¹⁶ te jussi coquere? Er. Certe, tibi et parasito tuo
 - Men. II. Cui, malum, 17 parasito? Certe haec mulier non sanast satis.
- 30 Et. Peniculo. Men. II. Quis istest Peniculus? Qui extergentur baxeae18?
 - Et. Scilicet (of course) qui 19 dudum tecum venit, cum pallam mihi Detulisti, quam ab uxore tua surripuisti. Men. II. Quid est?
 - ¹ Partitive genitive with Quid; see page 345, **55.** In Plautus' time the genitive singular of nouns ending in -ium or -ius was regularly -i instead of -ii.
 - ² and not that you didn't have anything to do with that!
 - ³ The twin demi-gods Castor and Pollux were often called the Gemini. The English expression *By Jiminy!* may have come from gemini.
 - 'Dixin = nonne dixi.
 - 5 such things.
 - ⁶ in comparison [with what would be likely to happen]
 - 7 gold-diggers, lit., silver-spongers.
 - 8 With imperative sine, then let me.

- ⁹ The same place, compare *ibid*.
- 10 With intro tetulit, set foot inside.
- 11 Ha-ha! You're joking
- 12 Why don't you go in, please?
- ¹³ Scibo = sciam. In Plautus' time, third and fourth conjugation verbs often had future forms like first and second conjugation verbs.
 - 14 tam = tamen. No, thank you.
 - 15 a while ago.
 - ¹⁶ Egon = ego + ne.
 - 17 An oath; For what parasite?
- 18 Lit., a little tail, a brush. Qui... baxeae, The one with which shoes are brushed?
 - 19 the one who.

Tibi pallam dedi, quam uxorı meae surripui? Sanan¹ es? Certe haec mulier cantherino ritu astans somniat.²

Er. Qui (Why) libet ludibrio habere³ me atque ire infitias⁴ mihi Facta quae sunt? Men. II. Dic quid est id quod negem, quod fecerim?

Eta. Pallam te hodie mihi dedisse uxoris. Men II. Etiam nunc nego. Ego quidem neque umquam uxorem habui neque habeo, neque huc Umquam, postquam natus sum, intra portam penetravi (have I set) pedem. Prandi (I breakfasted) in navi, inde huc sum egressus; te conveni. Eta. Eccere! Perii misera, quam tu mihi nunc navem narras? Men. II. Ligneam, Saepe tritam (scraped), saepe fixam (pegged), saepe excussam malleo. Quasi supellex pellionis, palus palo proximust.

Er. Jam amabo (please), desiste ludos faceres atque i hac (this way) mecum simul.

Men. II. Nescio quem, mulier, alium hominem, non me quaeritas. Er. Non ego te novi, Menaechmum, Moscho prognatum (born of) patre,

Qui Syracusis perhibere⁹ natus esse in Sicilia,

Ubi rex Agathocles¹⁰ regnator fuit, et iterum Phintia, Tertium Liparo, qui in morte regnum Hieroni tradidit,

Nunc Hierost? Men. II. Haud falsa, mulier, praedicas. Mes. Pro Juppiter,

Nunc Hierost? Men. 11. Haud faisa, muner, praedicas. Mes. Pro Juppitel Num¹¹ istaec mulier illinc¹² venit, quae te novit tam cate¹³?

Men. 11. Hercle opinor, pernegari¹⁴ non potest. Mes. Ne feceris.

Periisti, si intrassis intra limen. 15 Men. II. Quin tu tace modo; Bene res geritur; assentabor, 16 quicquid (whatever) dicet, mulieri, Si possum hospitium nancisci. Jam dudum, mulier, tibi Non imprudens adversabar 17; hunc metuebam, ne meae Uxori renuntiaret de palla et de prandio.

Nunc, quando vis, eamus intro. Er. Etiam parasitum manes?

Men. II. Neque ego illum maneo neque flocci facio, 18 neque si venerit, Eum volo intromitti (to be admitted). Er. Ecastor haud invita fecero. Sed scin quid te amabo ut facias 19? Men. II. Impera quid vis modo.

Er. Pallam illam quam dudum dederas, ad phrygionem (embroiderer) ut deferas, 30 Ut reconcinnetur²⁰ atque ut opera (trimmings) addantur quae volo.

Men. II. Hercle qui (how) tu recte dicis; eadem opera ignorabitur, Ne uxor cognoscat te habere, si in via conspexerit.

Er. Ergo mox auferto tecum,21 quando abibis. Men. II. Maxime.

- ¹ Equivalent to Esne sana?
- ² is asleep standing up, horse fashion.
- 3 do you want to make fun of.
- ire infitias = infitiari, to deny.
- 5 Look!
- 6 recalked; lit., beaten with a hammer.
- 7 like a furrier's rack, peg close to peg.
- 8 making jokes.
- ⁹ Second person passive; with Qui, you, who are said.
- ¹⁰ Agathocles ruled Syracuse 317 to 289 B.C.; Hiero 265 to 215. Phintias and Liparo are unknown.

- 11 Implying a negative answer.
- 12 from there.
- 13 well.
- 14 be denied any further.
- 15 if you have crossed the threshold.
- ¹⁶ I will agree with the woman (an aside to Messenio).
 - 17 I have knowingly opposed
 - 18 nor do I care a hair for him.
 - 19 do you know what I want you to do?
 - 20 to have it made over.
 - 21 Then, take it away with you soon.

10

15

20

Er. Eamus intro. Men. II. Jam sequar te; hunc volo etiam colloqui.

Eho (hey), Messenio, accede huc. Mes. Quid negotist? Men. II. Suscipe.

Mes. Quid eo opust¹? Men. II. Opus est. Scio ut me dices.² Mes. Tanto nequior.³

5 Men. II. Habeo praedam; tantum incepi operis.4 I, quantum⁵ potes.

Abduc istos in tabernam actutum deversoriam.6

Tu facito⁷ ante solem occasum ut venias adversum⁸ mihi.

(MEN. II AND ER. ENTER THE HOUSE MES. AND PORTERS GO OUT)

ACT III SEVERAL HOURS LATER SCENE I

(MEN. II COMES OUT OF ER.'S HOUSE. PEN. JOINS HIM.)

Men. II. Quis hic est, qui adversus it mihi? Pen. Quid ais, homo

Levior quam pluma (a feather), pessime et nequissime,9

10 Flagitium hominis, 10 subdole 11 ac minimi preti?

Quid de te merui, qua me causa perderes (did you lose me)?

Ut (How) surripuisti te mihi dudum de foro;

Fecisti funus¹² me absente prandio?

Cur ausu's facere, cui ego aeque heres eram13?

15 Men. II. Adulescens, quaeso (I ask you), quid tibi mecumst rei,

Qui (Why) mihi male dicas14 homini hic ignoto insciens?

An tibi malam rem¹⁵ vis pro male dictis¹⁶ dari?

Pen. Pol eam¹⁷ quidem edepol te dedisse intellego.

Men. II. Responde, adulescens, quaeso, quid nomen tibist?

20 Pen. Etiam derides (you mock), quasi nomen non noveris?

Men. II. Non edepol ego te, quod sciam,18 umquam ante hunc diem

Vidi neque novi; verum certe, quisquis (whoever) es,

Si aequum facias, mihi odiosus ne sis.

Pen. Menaechme, vigila. Men. II. Vigilo hercle equidem, quod sciam.

25 Pen. Non me novisti? Men. II. Non negem, si noverim.

Pen. Tuum parasitum non novisti? Men. II. Non tibi

Sanumst, adulescens, sinciput (brain) ut intellego.

Pen. Responde. Surripuistin uxori tuae

Pallam istanc hodie ac dedisti Erotio?

30 Men. II. Neque hercle ego uxorem habeo, neque ego Erotio

Dedi nec pallam surripui. Satin¹⁹ sanus es?

- 1 What's the reason for it?
- 2 what you will call me.
- ³ So much the worse [for you]!
- ⁴ I have begun so strong a fortification. He means that he is sure of the booty (the cloak), because he has charmed the girl.
 - B as fast as.
- ⁶ Take those fellows (the sailors carrying the baggage) to an inn at once.
 - ⁷ Equivalent to fac.
 - 8 to meet.

- ⁹ Vocative like pessime, modifying homo; you good-for-nothing.
 - 10 a disgrace to mankind.
 - 11 Supply homo; you deceitful fellow.
 - 12 did you hold the funeral [of the food].
 - 13 [a feast] to which I had an equal right.
 - 14 you insult.
 - 15 a blow.
 - 16 for insults.
 - 17 eam = malam rem.
 - 18 so far as I know.
 - 19 Satin (for Satisne) = nonne.

Pen. Numquam edepol quisquam me exorabit, quin tuae

Uxori rem omnem jam, ut sit gesta, eloquar.1

Omnes in te istaec recident² contumeliae.

Faxo³ haud inultus prandium comederis.⁴

Men. II. Quid hoc est negoti? Satin, ut quemque conspicor,

Ita me ludificant⁵? Sed concrepuit (creaked) ostium.

(PEN GOES OUT.)

5

10

15

20

25

30

SCENE II

(EROTIUM'S MAID COMES OUT OF THE HOUSE.)

Ancilla. Menaechme, amare ait te multum Erotium,6

Ut hoc una opera7 sibi ad aurificem (goldsmith) deferas,

Atque huc ut addas auri pondo unciam (ounce)

Jubeasque spinter novum reconcunnarier.8

Men. II. Et istuc et aliud, si quid curari volet,

Me curaturum dicito,9 quicquid volet.

Anc. Scin, quid hoc sit spinter? Men. II. Nescio, nisi aureum.

Anc. Hoc est, quod olim clanculum ex armario10

Te surripuisse ajebas uxori tuae.

Men. II. Numquam hercle factumst. Anc. Non meministi (you remember), obsecto?

Redde igitur spinter, si non meministi. Men. II. Mane.

Immo (yes) equidem memini; nempe (certainly) hoc est quod illi dedi.

Istuc¹¹; ubi illae armillae¹² sunt, quas una¹³ dedi?

Anc. Numquam dedisti. Men. II. Nam (but) pol hoc una dedi.

Anc. Dicam curare¹⁴? Men. II. Dicito (Say), "Curabitur."

Et palla et spinter faxo referantur simul.

Anc. Amabo, mi Menaechme, inaures (earrings) da mihi

Faciendas pondo duum nummum, stalagmia, 15

Ut te libenter videam, cum ad nos veneris.

Men. II. Fiat. Cedo (Hand over) aurum; ego manupretium¹⁶ dabo.

Anc. Da sodes (please) abs te; poste¹⁷ reddidero tibi.

Men. II. Immo (No), cedo abs te; ego post tibi reddam duplex. 18

Anc. Non habeo. Men. II. At tu, quando habebis, tum dato. 19

Anc. Numquid (anything) vis? (SHE GOES INTO THE HOUSE.)

- 1 will persuade me not to tell . . .
- ² will fall back.
- 3 I'll fix you!
- 4 not with impunity you'll have consumed.
- ⁵ Is everyone I see going to make a fool of me this way?
 - ⁶ Evotium earnestly begs you.
 - 7 at the same time (as the robe).
- ⁸ the bracelet cleaned and mended; lit., made over new.
 - 9 Equivalent to dic, say.
 - 10 secretly from the treasure-chest.

- 11 That's the one.
- ¹² bracelets, in the form of a serpent, worn high on the arm; the spinter was of elastic metal mesh, worn on the left arm.
 - 13 An adverb; at the same time.
- 14 Elliptical; Shall I say you will take care of it?
- 15 drops of four drachmas' weight; duum and nummum are old genitives.
 - 16 the price of making them.
 - 17 poste = postea.
- ¹⁸ Menaechmus is teasing, as if he wanted to borrow money.
 - 19 dato = da.

Men. II. Haec me curaturum dicito1-

Ut, quantum possint quique liceant, veneant.2

Jamne abiit intro? Abiit, operuit (she has shut) fores.

Di me quidem omnes adjuvant, augent,3 amant.

Sed quid ego cesso (wait for) dum datur mi occasio

Tempusque, abire ab his locis lenoniis (vile)?

Propera. Menaechme: fer pedem, profer gradum.4

Demam hanc coronam⁵ atque abjiciam ad laevam⁶ manum,

Ut, si quis sequatur, hac (from here) me abiisse censeant.

10 Ibo et conveniam servum, si potero, meum,

Ut haec quae bona dant di mihi, ex me sciat.

(THEY ALL GO OUT)

ACT IV SCENE I

(MEN. I AND PEN ENTER)

1.5

20

Men. I. Di illum omnes perdant (confound); ita mihi

Hunc hodie corrupit (he has wasted) diem;

Meque adeo,7 qui hodie forum

Umquam oculis inspexi meis.

Diem corrupi optimum.

Jussi adparari prandium,

Amica exspectat me, scio.

Ubi primumst licitum, ilico (there)

Properavi abire de foro.

Iratast credo nunc mihi:

Placabit palla quam dedi,

Quam hodie uxori abstuli atque detuli huic Erotio.

Pen. Ouid ais? . . . Properato⁸ absente me comesse prandium;

Post⁹ ante aedes cum corona me derideto ebrius. 10

Men. I. Neque edepol ego prandi neque hodie huc intro tetuli pedem.

Pen. Tun negas? Men. I. Nego hercle vero. Pen. Nihil hoc homine audacius.

Non ego te modo hic ante aedes cum corona florea¹¹

Vidi astare, cum negabas mihi esse sanum sinciput

Et negabas me novisse, peregrinum (foreigner) aibas¹² esse te?

Men. I. Quin ut dudum diverti¹³ abs te, redeo nunc demum domum.

Pen. Novi ego te. Non mihi censebas esse, qui¹⁴ te ulciscerer;

Omnia hercle uxori dixi. Men. I. Quid dixisti? Pen. Nescio.

Eam ipse roga.

- 1 say that I'll see that they-
- ² are sold as soon as possible at any price they will bring.
 - 3 increase my fortune.
 - ⁴ Lift up your feet! Be quick!
 - ⁵ I shall remove this garland.
- ⁶ to the left. (By tradition, an exit to the left led to the town or forum; to the right, to the sea or out of town.)

- ⁷ And me, too; supply di perdant.
- ⁸ With comesse, *Hurry and eat lunch* (an aside).
 - 9 Post=postea.
- 10 laugh at drunkenly.
- 11 of flowers.
- 12 aibas = ajebas; see page 343, 48
- 13 Why, since I slipped away a little while ago.
 - 14 Ablative; qui = qua re or qua ratione.

Men. I. Male mi¹ uxor sese fecisse censet, cum exclusit foras,²
Quasi non habeam, quo intromittar, alium meliorem locum.
Si tibi displiceo (I offend), patiundum,³ at placuero huic Erotio,
Quae me non excludet ab se, sed apud se occludet (shuts me in) domi.
Nunc ibo, orabo ut mihi pallam reddat, quam dudum dedi.
Aliam illi redimam meliorem Heus ecquis hic est janitor¹?
Aperite atque Erotium aliquis² evocate ante ostium (PENICULUS GOES OUT)

SCENE II

(EROTIUM COMES OUT OF HER HOUSE)

Er. Quis hic me quaerit? Men. I. Sibi inimicus magis quam aetati tuae.6

Et. M1 Menaechme, cur ante aedes astas? Sequere intro. Men. I. Mane.

Scin quid est, quod ego ad te venio? Er Scio, ut tibi ex me sit volup. ⁷ 10 Men. I. Immo edepol pallam illam, amabo te (please), quam tibi dudum dedi,

Mihi eam redde; uxor rescivit⁸ rem omnem, ut factumst, ordine.

Ego tibi redimam bis tanto pluris pallam, quam voles.9

Er. Tibi dedi equidem illam, ad phrygionem ut ferres, paulo prius Et illud spinter, ut ad aurificem ferres, ut fieret novum.

Men I. Mihi tu ut dederis pallam et spinter? Numquam factum reperies. Nam ego quidem postquam illam dudum tibi dedi atque abii ad forum, Nunc redeo, nunc te postillac¹⁰ video. Er. Video, quam rem agis;

Quia commisi (I was trusting), ut me defraudes, ad eam rem affectas viam. 11

Men. I. Neque edepol te defraudandi causa posco; quin (but) tibi

Dico uxorem rescivisse. Er. Nec te ultro oravi ut dares;

Tute12 ultro ad me detulisti, dedisti eam dono mihi;

Eandem nunc reposcis; patiar. Tibi habe, aufer, utere (use it),

Vel tu, vel tua uxor, vel etiam in loculos compingite.13

Tu huc post hunc diem pedem intro non feres, ne frustra sis.14

Quando tu me bene merentem tibi habes despicatui, 15

Nisi feres argentum, frustra me ductare non potes. 16

Aliam posthac invenito, 17 quam habeas frustratui. 18 (SHE GOES OUT)

Men. I. Nimis iracunde 19 hercle tandem Heus tu, tibi dico, mane.

Redi. Etiamne astas? Etiam audes mea reverti gratia²⁰?

Abiit intro, occlusit (closed up) aedes. Nunc ego sum exclusissimus²¹;

Neque domi neque apud amicam mihi jam quicquam creditur.

Ibo et consulam hanc rem amicos, quid faciendum censeant. (HE GOES OUT)

- 1 an injustice to me.
- ² when she shut [me] out.
- 3 it must be endured
- ⁴ Hello, who is the doorman here? (He knocks on the door.)
 - ⁵ With Aperite, Open the door, somebody.
 - 6 aetati tuae = tibi.
 - 7 you'll have a pleasant time with me.
 - 8 has found out.
- ⁹ I'll buy you a cloak worth twice as much, whichever one you want.
 - 10 for the first time since then.

- 11 you are directing your efforts.
- 12 You yourself.
- 13 lock it up in a chest.
- 14 don't fool yourself.
- 15 to be despised.
- 16 you can't cheat me.
- 17 after this, find.
- 18 you may cheat.
- 19 [You speak] too hastily.
- 20 Won't you please come back for my sake.
- ²¹ really shut out. (Erotium has slammed the door.)

15

25

ACT V SCENE I

(THE DOCTOR AND THE OLD MAN ENTER)

Medicus. Quid esse illi morbi (illness) dixeras? Narra, senex.

Num larvatus (bewitched) aut cerritus (crazy)? Fac sciam.

Num eum veternus (lethargy) aut aqua intercus (dropsy) tenet?

Senex. Quin ea te causa duco, ut id dicas mihi

5 Atque illum ut sanum (well) facias. Med. Perfacile id quidemst.

Sanum futurum,1 mea ego id promitto fide.

Sen. Magna cum cura ego illum curari volo.

Med. Quin suspirabo plus sescenta in die2;

Ita ego eum cum cura magna curabo tibi.

10 Sen. Atque eccum (see) ipsum hominem. Observemus, quam rem agat.³
(THEY STEP BACK INTO THE NICHE PROVIDED ON THE STAGE FOR EAVESDROPPERS)

SCENE II

(MEN. I ENTERS, BEFORE THE CLOSE OF HIS SPEECH SEN. AND MED. COME OUT)

Men. I. Edepol ne hic dies perversus atque adversus mi obtigit4;

Ouae me clam ratus sum⁵ facere, omnia ea fecit palam

Parasitus, qui me complevit flagiti et formidinis,6

Meus Ulixes,7 suo qui regi tantum concivit mali8;

Quem ego hominem, siquidem⁹ vivo, vita evolvam sua¹⁰—

Sed, ego stultus sum, qui illius esse dico, quae meast¹¹; Meo cibo et sumptu (*expense*) educatust. Anima privabo virum.¹²

Condigne¹³ autem haec meretrix fecit, ut mos est meretricius:

Ouia rogo, palla ut referatur rursum ad uxorem meam.

20 Mihi se ait dedisse. Eu edepol¹⁴ ne (indeed) ego homo vivo miser.

Sen. Audin¹⁵ quae loquitur? Med. Se miserum praedicat. Sen. Adeas velim.¹⁶ Med. Salvus sis, Menaechme. Quaeso, cur apertas (do you bare) bracchium? Non tu scis, quantum isti morbo nunc tuo facias mali?

Men. I. Quin tu (Why don't you) te suspendis? Sen. Ecquid (What) sentis? Med. Quidni¹⁷ sentiam?

Non potest haec res ellebori jugero obtinerier.18

Sed quid ais, Menaechme? Men. I. Quid vis? Med. Dic mihi hoc quod te rogo;

- 1 that he will get well.
- 2 my frequent visits will make me buff.
- 3 what he's doing.
- Good gracious, this has been a perverse and troublesome day for me; lit., this . . . day has happened to me.
 - 5 I intended.
 - 6 with shame and fear.
 - ⁷ My clever fellow; Ulysses was crafty.
- ⁸ who (like Ulysses) stirred up so much trouble for his king; i.e., for his patron.
 - 9 if indeed.
 - 10 I'll kill; lit., I'll roll him out of life.

- 11 who say that that is his which is mine; he means the life of Peniculus.
- 12 I'll exterminate the fellow; lit., I'll deprive the man of his life.
 - 13 very properly.
 - 14 Good gracious!
 - 15 Audin = Audisne (to the doctor).
 - 16 I want you to go to him.
 - 17 What do I think?—rhetorical question.
- ¹⁸ This cure (res) cannot be effected with an acre of hellebore. In ancient times hellebore was used as medicine for insanity.

Album an atrum vinum potas¹? Men. I. Quin tu is in malam crucem²? Med. Jam hercle occeptat insanire primulum.3 Men. I. Quin tu me interrogas. Purpureum panem an puniceum soleam ego esse an luteum4? Soleamne esse aves squamosas (scaly), piscis pennatos⁵? Sen. Papae (How strange)! Audin tu, ut deliramenta (nonsense) loquitur? Quid cessas6 dare Potionis aliquid, priusquam percipit insania? Med. Mane modo; etiam percontabor (I will ask) alia. Sen. Occidis fabulans. Med. Dic mihi hoc. Solent tibi umquam oculi duri fieri? Men. I. Quid? Tu me locustam⁸ censes esse, homo ignavissime⁹? Med. Dic mihi, enumquam (ever) intestina tibi crepant (rumble), quod sentias? Men. I. Ubi satur¹⁰ sum, nulla crepitant; quando esurio, ¹¹ tum crepant. Med. Hoc guidem edepol haud pro (like) insano verbum respondit mihi Perdormiscin¹² usque ad lucem? Facilen tu dormis cubans¹³? Men. I. Perdormisco, si resolvi (I have paid) argentum, cui debeo-15 Oui te Juppiter dique omnes, percontator, perduint.14 Med. Nunc homo insanire occeptat; de illis verbis cave tibi. Sen. Immo Nestor¹⁵ nunc quidemst de verbis, praeut dudum fuit¹⁶: Nam dudum uxorem suam esse ajebat rabiosam (mad) canem. Men. I. Ouid ego dixi? Sen. Insanu's, inquam (I say). Men. I. Egone? 20 Sen. Tu istic, qui mihi Etiam me junctis quadrigis minitatu's prosternere.17 Egomet (I myself) haec te vidi facere; egomet haec te arguo. 18 Men. I. At ego te sacram coronam surripuisse Iovis scio Et ob eam rem in carcerem te esse compactum (locked ub) scio: 25 Et postquam es emissus, caesum virgis sub furca scio¹⁹: Tum patrem occidisse et matrem vendidisse etiam scio. Satin haec pro sano²⁰ male dicta male dictis respondeo? Sen. Obsecto hercle, medice, propere (quickly), quicquid facturu's, face, Non vides hominem insanire? Med. Scin quid facias optimumst? 30 Ad me face ut deferatur. Sen. Itane censes? Med. Quippini²¹? Ibi meo arbitratu²² potero curare hominem. Sen. Age, ut libet.²³ ¹ Do you drink white or red (lit., black) 13 when you lie down. wine? 14 May Jupiter and all the gods condemn

- ² Why don't you go to the devil?
- ³ By George, he's beginning to rave a little already.
- 4 whether I'm accustomed to eat purple, red, or yellow bread. Esse is from edo, not sum.
 - 5 feathered fish.
 - 6 Why do you hesitate?
 - ⁷ You're killing [me] with your chatter.
 - 8 locusta, a kind of shellfish (a pun).
 - 9 you fool.
- 10 full of food.
- 11 when I'm hungry.
- 12 Do you sleep through?

- you, you inquisitive fellow.
- 15 Nestor was the wise old adviser of the Greeks at Troy.
 - 16 compared with what he was before.
- 17 Yes, you, who threatened that you'd throw me under your horses' feet.
 - 18 I make these charges against you.
- 19 I know you've been flogged; lit., I know you've been beaten with rods under the fork (an instrument of torture).
 - 20 as a sane man.
 - 21 Why not?
 - 22 as I think best.
 - 23 Well, as you like.

- Med. Elleborum potabis faxo1 aliquos viginti dies.
- Men. I. At ego te pendentem fodiam stimulis2 triginta dies.
- Med. I, arcesse homines, qui illunc (him) ad me deferant. Sen. Quot sunt satis?
- 5 Med. Proinde ut insanire video,3 quattuor, nihilo minus.
 - Sen Jam hic erunt. Adserva tu istunc, medice. Med. Immo ibo domum Ut parentur, quibus paratis opus est. Tu servos jube.

Hunc ad me ferant. Sen. Jam ego illic faxo erit. Med Abeo. Sen. Vale.

Men. I. Abiit socerus,7 abiit medicus; solus sum. Pro Juppiter,

Quid illuc est,8 quod me hisce9 homines insanire praedicant?

Nam equidem, postquam (since) natus sum, numquam aegrotavi10 unum diem.

Neque ego insanio neque pugnas neque ego lites coepio 11

Salvus salvos alios video, novi ego homines, adloquor.

An12 illi perperam13 insanire me ajunt, ipsi insaniunt?

Quid ego nunc faciam? Domum ire cupio; uxor non sinit,¹⁴

Huc autem nemo intromittit; nimis proventumst nequiter. 15

Hic ero usque16; ad noctem saltem, 17 credo, intromittar domum.

(MED AND SEN GO OUT)

SCENE III

(FOUR SLAVES ENTER AND SEIZE MEN I)

Sen. Per ego vobis deos atque homines dico, ut imperium meum Sapienter habeatis curae, quae imperavi atque impero 18

Facite illic homo jam in medicinam ablatus sublimen sit, 19

Nisi quidem vos vestra crura (legs) aut latera nihili penditis.20

Cave quisquam, quod illic minitetur, vestrum flocci fecerit.21

Quid²² statis? Quid dubitatis? Jam sublimen raptum oportuit.²³

Ego ibo ad medicum; praesto ero illi, 24 cum venietis. *Men. I.* Occidi (*I'm dying*).

- ¹ You will drink hellebore, I promise you; i.e., a remedy for insanity.
 - ² I'll prick you with goads as you hang.
- ³ In proportion to his madness; ltt., Accordingly, as I see him rave.
 - 4 Watch him.

20

- ⁵ to make the necessary preparations; lit., to prepare what must be prepared.
 - 6 I'll see that he's there.
 - i socerus = socer, father-in-law.
 - 8 Why is it?
 - 9 hisce = hi.
 - 10 have I been sick.
 - 11 nor do I start fights or quarrels.
- 12 Translate as or, joining the two questions.
 - 13 falselv.

- 14 From sino, allow.
- 15 things have turned out horribly; lit., it has turned out very badly.
 - 16 I'll stay right here
 - 17 at all events.
- 18 ut... impero, that you wisely take good care to follow my orders He sententiously addresses the lorarii, slave-floggers.
- 19 have that man carried to the clinic on your shoulders (lit., aloft).
 - 20 you don't give a hang for.
- ²¹ (Let each of you) beware of paying any attention to what he threatens.
 - 22 Why?
- ²³ he ought already to have been hoisted on your shoulders.
 - 24 I'll be there ahead of you.

Ouid hoc est negoti? Quid illisce1 homines ad me currunt, obsecro?

Ouid vultis vos? Quid quaeritatis2? Quid me circumsistitis?

Ouo rapitis me? Quo fertis me? Perii. Obsecro vestram fidem (help),

Epidamnienses, subvenite,3 cives. Quin me mittitis4?

(MES ENTERS AND DRIVES OFF THE SLAVES.)

Mes. Pro di immortales, obsecro, quid ego oculis aspicio meis?

Erum meum ındignissime nescio qui sublimen ferunt.5

Men. I. Ecquis suppétias mi audet ferre⁶? Mes. Ego, ere (master), audacissime.

O facinus indignum et malum, Epidamnii cives, erum

Meum hic in pacato oppido luci deripier7 in via,

Qui liber ad vos venerit.

Mittite istunc.⁸ Men. I. Obsecro te, quisquis es, operam mihi ut des,⁹

Neu sinas10 in me insignite (plamly) fieri tantam injuriam.

Mes. Immo et operam dabo et defendam et subvenibo sedulo.11

Numquam te patiar perire, me perirest aequius.

Eripe oculum istic, 12 ab umero qui tenet, ere, te obsecro.

Hisce ego jam sementem in ore faciam pugnosque obseram.¹³

Maximo hercle hodie malo vestro istunc fertis¹⁴; mittite.

Men. I. Teneo ego huic oculum. Mes. Face ut oculi locus¹⁵ in capite appareat.

Vos scelesti (rogues), vos rapacis (rascals), vos praedones (thieves). Lorarii. 20 Periimus.

Obsecto hercle. Mes. Mittite ergo (then). Men. I. Quid me vobis tactiost16?

Pecte pugnis.¹⁷ Mes. Agite, abite, fugite hinc in malam crucem.¹⁸

Em tibi¹⁹ etiam (MEN. KICKS THE LAST ONE) quia postremus (*last*) cedis, hoc praemi feres.

Nimis bene ora commetavi²⁰ atque ex mea sententia.

Edepol, ere, ne tibi suppetias temperi adveni modo.21

Men. I. At (Now) tibi di semper, adulescens, quisquis es, faciant bene;

Nam absque te esset,22 hodie numquam ad solem occasum viverem.

Mes. Ergo (Then) edepol, si recte facias, ere, me emittas manu.23

¹ illisce = illi. The slaves are trying to rush him off his feet.

- ² are you looking for?
- 3 come to my aid.
- 4 Why don't you let me go?
- ⁵ Some fellows—I don't know who—are carrying off my master on their shoulders. What a crime!
 - 6 Who's brave enough to help me?
- ⁷ should be seized by daylight; the subject of the infinitive deripier is erum.
 - ⁸ Let him go.
- ⁹ I beseech you, whoever you are, to give me help.
 - 10 and don't let.
 - ¹¹ I will come to your aid eagerly.

- 12 from that fellow.
- 13 I'll now make a sowing in their faces and plant my fists.
- 14 By Hercules, you're carrying him off today at very great loss to yourselves.
 - 15 eye-socket.
 - 16 Why do you touch me?
 - 17 Work them over with your fists.
 - 18 out of here to the devil.
 - 19 Take that! Lit., That for you!
- ²⁰ I have given their faces a good going-over.
- 21 surely I came to your aid just in the nick of time.
 - 22 were it not for you.
 - 23 you will set me free.

5

10

15

25

Men. I. Liberem ego te? Mes. Verum (yes), quandoquidem 1 ere, te servavi. Men. I. Quid est?

Adulescens, erras. Mes. Quid, erro? Men. I. Per Jovem adjuro patrem Me erum tuum non esse. Mes. Non taces? Men. I. Non mentior²;

5 Nec meus servus umquam tale fecit quale tu mihi.3

Mes. Sic sine igitur, sı tuum negas me esse, abire liberum.

Men. I. Mea quidem hercle causa liber esto4 atque ito5 quo voles.

Mes. Nemp' jubes⁶? Men. I. Jubeo hercle, si quid imperist in te mihi.⁷

Mes. Salve, mi patrone. "Cum tu liber es, Messenio,

10 Gaudeo."—Credo hercle vobis.—Sed, patrone, te obsecro,

Ne minus imperes mihi,9 quam cum tuus servus fui.

Apud te habitabo et, quando ibis, una tecum ibo domum.

Men. I. Minime. Mes. Nunc ibo in tabernam, vasa (baggage) atque argentum tibi

Referam. Rectest obsignatum in vidulo marsuppium

Cum viatico¹⁰; id tibi jam huc afferam. Men. I. Affer strenue (quickly).

Mes. Salvum tibi ita, ut mihi dedisti, reddibo. Hic me mane. 11

Men. I. Nimia mira mihi quidem hodie exorta sunt 12 miris modis.

Alii me negant eum esse qui sum atque excludunt foras, 13

20 Etiam hic servum se meum esse aibat quem ego emisi manu.

Is ait se mihi allaturum cum argento marsuppium.

Id si attulerit, dicam ut a me abeat liber quo volet,

Ne tum, quando sanus factus sit, a me argentum petat.

Socer et medicus me insanire ajebant. Quid sit, mira sunt.14

Haec nihilo esse mihi videntur setius quam somnia.15

Nunc ibo intro ad hanc meretricem, quamquam suscenset mihi, 16

Si possum exorare, 17 ut pallam reddat, quam referam domum.

(MEN. I GOES INTO EROTIUM'S HOUSE. THE SLAVES RUN AWAY.)

SCENE IV

(MEN. II AND MES. ENTER.)

Men. II. Men¹⁸ hodie usquam convenisse te, audax, audes dicere, Postquam adversum mi imperavi ut huc venires? Mes. Quin modo¹⁹

- 1 since.
- ² I'm not telling a lie.
- 3 did for me what you have done.
- 4 be; imperative.
- ⁵ go; imperative.
- 6 Is that an order?
- if I have any control over you.
- ⁸ patron. Since a manumitted slave did not have citizenship, he required the help and protection of a citizen. His former master usually became his patron.
 - 9 give me orders as freely.

- ¹⁰ The purse with your money is locked up tight in the trunk.
 - 11 Wait for me here.
- 12 Too many strange things have happened to me today.
 - 13 shut the door in my face.
 - 14 mira sunt = mirum est.
 - 15 like a dream.
 - 16 she is angry with me.
 - 17 persuade her.
 - 18 men = me + ne, sign of a question.
 - 19 Not only that, but,

Eripui homines qui ferebant te sublimen quattuor,

Apud hasce aedes.1 Tu clamabas deum2 fidem atque hominum omnium,

Cum ego accurro teque eripio vi pugnando ingratiis.3

Ob eam rem, quia te servavi, me amisisti4 liberum.

Cum argentum dixi me petere et vasa, tu quantum potest

Praecucurristi obviam⁵ ut, quae fecisti, infitias⁶ eas.

Men. II. Liberum ego te jussi abire? Mes. Certe. Men. II. Quin certissimumst Mepte⁷ potius fieri servum, quam te umquam emittam manu.

(MEN. II GOES OUT.)

10

15

25

SCENE V

(MEN. I. MES., AND MEN. II ENTER. MEN. I SPEAKS ANGRILY TO ER.)

Men. I. Si vultis per oculos jurare, nihilo hercle ea causa magis

Facietis ut ego hinc hodie abstulerim pallam et spinter, pessimae.

Mes. Pro di immortales, quid ego video? Men. II. Quid vides? Mes. Speculum tuum.8

Men. II. Quid negotist? Mes. Tuast imago; tam consimilest quam potest.

Men. II. Pol profecto (certainly) haud est dissimilis, meam cum formam noscito.9

Men. I. O adulescens, salve, qui me servavisti, quisquis es.

Mes. Adulescens, quaeso hercle, eloquere (tell) tuum mihi nomen, nisi piget. 10

Men. I. Non edepol ita promeruisti11 de me, ut pigeat quae velis

Obsequi.¹² Mihist¹³ Menaechmo¹⁴ nomen. Men. II. Immo¹⁵ edepol mihi.

Men. I. Siculus (Sicilian) sum Syracusanus. Men. II. Eadem urbs et patriast 20 mihi.

Men. I. Quid ego ex te audio? Men. II. Hoc quod res est. Mes. Novi equidem hunc; erus est meus.

Ego quidem hujus servus sum; sed me esse hujus16 credidi.

Ego hunc censebam te esse; huic etiam exhibui negotium.17

Quaeso ignoscas, si quid stulte dixi atque imprudens tibi.

Men. II. Delirare mihi videre. 18 Non commeministi 19 simul

Te hodie mecum exire ex navi? *Mes.* Enim vero aequum postulas.²⁰ Tu erus es: tu servum quaere. Tu salveto: tu vale.

- 1 in front of this very house.
- ² Equivalent to deorum.
- 3 against their wills.
- 4 you have let me go.
- 5 you ran ahead to meet me.
- ⁶ you might deny.
- ⁷ Equivalent to me ipsum.
- ⁸ Your double; lit., your image (as in a mirror).
 - 9 I recognize.
- 10 If it's not too much trouble; lit., If it isn't annoying.

- 11 vou have deserved.
- 12 to do as a favor.
- 13 Mihist = mihi + est.
- 14 Dative in apposition with Mihi; My name is Menaechmus.
 - 15 No, it isn't!
- ¹⁶ The first hujus indicates Menaechmus I, the second hujus, Menaechmus II.
- 17 I caused him trouble.
- 18 You seem to me to be raving mad.
- 19 Don't you remember?
- 20 Fair enough!

Hunc ego esse ajo Menaechmum. *Men. I.* At ego me. ¹ *Men. II.* Quae haec fabulast?

Tu's Menaechmus²? Men. I. Me esse dico, Moscho prognatum patre.³

Men. II. Tun⁴ meo patre's prognatus? Men. I. Immo equidem, adulescens, meo.

Tuum tibi neque occupare neque praeripere postulo.5

Mes. Di immortales, spem insperatam date mihi, quam suspicor.

Nam nisi me animus fallit, hi sunt gemini germani⁶ duo;

Nam et patrem et patriam commemorant pariter quae fuerint sibi.

Sevocabo erum. Menaechme. Men. I et II. Quid vis? Mes. Non ambos volo, Sed uter vestrumst advectus⁸ mecum navi. Men. I. Non ego.

Men. II. At ego. Mes. Te volo igitur. Huc concede (Come here). Men. II. Concessi. Quid est?

Mes. Illic homo9 aut sycophanta10 aut geminus est frater tuus.

Nam ego hominem hominis¹¹ similiorem numquam vidi alterum, Neque aqua aquae nec lacte¹² est lactis, crede mi, usquam similius Quam hic tuist tuque hujus autem; post (besides) eandem patriam ac patrem Memorat. Meliust nos adire atque hunc percontarier.¹³

Men. II. Hercle qui14 tu me admonuisti15 recte et habeo gratiam.

Perge operam dare, 16 obsecto hercle; liber esto, si invenis

Hunc meum fratrem esse. Mes. Spero. Men. II. Et ego item spero fore.

Mes. Quid ais tu? Menaechmum, opinor, te vocari dixeras.

Men. I. Ita vero. Mes. Huic item Menaechmo nomen est. In Sicilia Te Syracusis natum esse dixisti; hic natust ibi.

Moschum tibi patrem fuisse dixti¹⁷; huic itidem¹⁸ fuit.

Nunc operam¹⁹ potestis ambo et mihi dare et vobis simul.

Men. I. Promeruisti ut ne quid ores, quod velis quin impetres.²⁰ Tam quasi²¹ me emeris argento, liber servibo²² tibi.

Mes. Spes mihist vos inventuros23 fratres germanos (real) duos

- 30 Geminos, una matre natos et patre uno uno die.
 - 1 But I say that I am.
 - ² Tu's = tu es.
 - 3 the son of my father, Moschus.
 - 4 Tun = tu + ne, the sign of a question.
 - ⁵ I don't wish to claim your father, пот to take him away from you.
 - 6 brothers.
 - ⁷ I will call my master aside.
 - 8 the one of you who was transported.
 - 9 That fellow.
 - 10 a fraud.
 - ¹¹ Plautus uses the genitive with similis and dissimilis, where we might expect the dative.
 - 12 milk.

- 13 to interrogate; equivalent to percontari in classical Latin.
 - 14 With Hercle, By George, how.
 - 15 you have advised.
- ¹⁶ Help me a little more; lit., continue to give help.
 - 17 dixti = dixisti.
 - 18 likewise.
 - 19 With dare, to help.
- ²⁰ You have earned the right to get what you want, anything you ask; lit., You have deserved not to ask for anything you want without getting it.
 - 21 Just as if.
 - 22 For serviam, I will serve.
 - ²³ Supply esse for the future infinitive.

- Men. I. Mira memoras. Utinam (Oh that) efficere, quod pollicitu's, possis.
- Mes. Possum. Sed nunc agite uterque id quod rogabo, dicite.
- Men. I. Ubi libet (it pleases you), roga; respondebo, nil reticebo¹ quod sciam.
- Mes. Est tibi nomen Menaechmo? Men. I. Fateor.2 Mes. Est itidem tibi?
- Men. II Est Mes Patrem fuisse Moschum tibi ais? Men. I Ita vero 5 Men. II Et mihi.
- Mes. Esne tu Syracusanus? Men. I. Certe. Mes. Quid tu? Men. II. Quippini?
- Mes. Optime usque adhuc conveniunt signa. Porro (Then) operam date Quid longissime meministi, dic mihi, in patria tua?
- Men. I Cum patre ut abii Tarentum ad mercatum, postea Inter homines me deerrare a patre atque inde avehi.
- Men II. Juppiter supreme, serva me. Mes. Quid clamas? Quin taces? Quot eras annos natus cum te pater a patria avehit?
- Men. I. Septuennis⁷; nam tunc dentes mihi cadebant primulum.⁹

 Neque patrem numquam postilla (thereafter) vidi. Mes. Quid? Vos tum patri
- Filii quot eratis? Men. I. Ut nunc maxime memini (I remember), duo.
- Mes. Uter eratis, tu an ille, major? Men. I. Aeque¹⁰ ambo pares.
- Mes. Qui (How) id potest? Men. I. Gemini ambo eramus. Men. II. Di me 20 servatum volunt.¹¹
- Mes Sı interpellas, 12 ego tacebo. Men. II. Potius taceo. Mes. Dic mihi: Uno nomine ambo eratis? Men. I. Minime; nam mihi hoc erat, Quod nunc est, Menaechmo; illum tum vocabant Sosiclem.
- Men. II. Signa agnovi¹³; continer quin complectar non queo. ¹⁴
 Mi germane ¹⁵ gemine frater, salve (welcome); ego sum Sosicles.
- Men. I Quo modo igitur post Menaechmo nomen est factum tıbi?
- Men. II Postquam ad nos renuntiatumst te deerrasse¹⁶ a patre

Et surruptum¹⁷ ab homine ignoto et patrem esse mortuum,

Avus noster mutavit¹⁸; quod tibi nomen est, fecit mihi. 19

- Men. I. Credo ita esse factum ut dicis. Sed mi hoc responde. Men. II. Roga. Men. I. Quid erat nomen nostrae matri? Men II. Teuximarchae. Men. I. Convenit (It fits).
 - 1 I will hold back nothing.
 - ² I admit it.
- ³ What is your earliest memory? Lit., What do you remember most distantly?
- 4 on a business trip; lit., to the market place
 - ⁵ From de+erro, that I wandered away.
 - 6 was carried off.
 - ⁷ Equivalent to septem + annos.
 - 8 then.
- ⁹ With cadebant, were just beginning to fall out.

- 10 Omit in translation
- 11 The gods are on my side! Lit., wish me saved
 - 12 you interrupt.
 - 13 I recognize the proofs.
 - 14 I cannot refrain from embracing him.
 - 15 My very own
 - 16 For te deerravisse, you wandered away.
 - 17 Supply esse; you were picked up.
 - ¹⁸ Supply **nomen** as object.
 - 19 the name you had, he made mine,

10

15

O salve, insperate, multis annis post quem conspicor.

Men. II. Frater, et tu, quem ego multis miseriis, laboribus Usque adhuc quaesivi quemque ego esse inventum gaudeo.

Mes. Numquid me morare, quin ego liber, ut justi, sim²?

5 Men. I. Optimum atque aequissimum orat, frater; fac causa mea.

Men. II. Liber esto. Men. I. Cum tu's liber, gaudeo, Messenio.

Mes. Sed meliorest opus auspicio,3 ut liber perpetuo (permanently) sim.

Men. II. Quoniam haec evenerunt, frater, nostra ex sententia,4

In patriam redeamus ambo. Men. I. Frater, faciam ut tu voles.

Auctionem hic faciam et vendam quidquid est. Nunc interim Eamus intro, frater. Men. II. Fiat. Mes. Scitin quid ego vos rogo?

Men. I. Quid? Mes. Praeconium mi ut detis. Men. I. Dabitur. Mes. Ergo nunc jam

Vis conclamari auctionem⁶? *Men. I.* Fore (that it will be) quidem die septimo.

Mes. Auctio fiet Menaechmi mane sane septimi.7

Venibunt⁸ servi, supellex, fundi, aedes, omnia.

Venibunt, quiqui licebunt, praesenti pecunia.10

Venibit uxor quoque etiam, si quis emptor (buyer) venerit.

Vix credo auctione tota capiet quinquagesies.¹¹
Nunc, spectatores, valete et nobis clare plaudite (applaud).

- ¹ Greetings! I'd given up hope [of finding you].
- ² justi=jussisti. You aren't putting off my being free, as you ordered, are you?
 - 3 But I need better auspices.
 - 4 to our way of thinking.
 - 5 that you let me be auctioneer.

- 6 do you want the auction announced?
- 1 the morning of the seventh day.
- 8 There will come up for sale.
- 9 household goods, real estate, buildings.
- 10 for whatever they will bring, spot cash.
- ¹¹ \$125,000; i.e., an impossible amount—comic exaggeration.



Roman actors wearing comic masks

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

FIRST A	ND	SECO	ND DECLE	ENSIONS	
1 ā-stems	2 o-stems				
SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
Nom. rosa Gen. rosae Dat. rosae Acc. rosam Abl. rosā	amīcus amīcī amīcō amīcum amīcō	puer puerī puerō puerum puerō	ager agrī agrō agrum agrō	virī virī virō virum virō	templum templī templō templum templō
PLURAL			PLURAL		
Nom. rosae Gen. rosārum Dat. rosīs Acc. rosās Abl. rosīs	amīcī amīcōrum amīcīs amīcōs amīcīs	puerī puerōrum puerīs puerōs puerīs	agrī agrōrum agrīs agrōs agrīs	virī virōrum virīs virōs virīs	templa templörum templīs templa templīs

The vocative singular of -us nouns ends in -e: amīce. The vocative singular (and sometimes the genitive singular) of fīlius and of proper nouns in -ius ends in ī: fīlī.

All nouns ending in -um in the nominative singular are neuter.

The accusative singular of a neuter noun has the same form as the nominative singular, and the accusative plural has the same form as the nominative plural. The nominative and accusative plural always end in -a.

THIRD DECLENSION MASCILLINE AND FEMILIALE CONSONANT STEMS

3	MASCULINE AND FEMININE	CONSONANT STEM	<i>as</i>
	SINGULA	R	
Nom. lēx Gen. lēgis Dat. lēgī Acc. lēgem Abl. lēge	mīles mīlitis mīlitī mīlitem mīlite	fräter frätris frätri frätrem frätre	homō hominis hominī hominem homine
Nom. lēgēs	PLURAL mīlitēs	frātrēs	hominēs
<i>Gen.</i> lēgum <i>Dat.</i> lēgibus <i>Acc.</i> lēgēs <i>Abl.</i> lēgibus	mīlitum mīlitibus mīlitēs mīlitibus	frātrum frātribus frātrēs frātribus	hominum hominibus hominēs hominibus

Some masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension have the nominative ending -s. If the stem ends in -c or -g, the combination of the final -c or -g

of the stem with -s gives -x: dux, nominative from the stem duc-; lex, nominative from the stem leg-. If the stem ends in -d or -t, the final consonant is dropped before -s: laus, nominative from the stem laud-.

In words of more than one syllable, short e of the final syllable of the nominative regularly appears as i in the other cases: nominative mīles, genitive mīlitis; prīnceps, prīncipis.

Nouns with stems ending in -tr have the nominative ending in -ter: frater from the stem fratr-; mater from the stem matr-.

Nouns with stems ending in -din and -gin replace -in of the stem by -ō in the nominative: virgō from the stem virgin-; multitūdō from the stem multitūdin-. The nominative homō is also formed by replacing -in of the stem by -ō.

4 NEUTER CONSONANT STEMS

	SINGULA	AR	
Nom. flümen Gen flüminis Dat. flüminī Acc flümen Abl. flümine	caput	corpus	iter
	capitis	corporis	itineris
	capiti	corporī	itinerī
	caput	corpus	iter
	capite	corpore	itinere
	PLURA	L	
Nom flümina Gen. flüminum Dat. flüminibus Acc. flümina Abl. flüminibus	capita	corpora	itinera
	capitum	corporum	itinerum
	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus
	capita	corpora	itinera
	capitubus	corporibus	itineribus

5 I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

SINGULAR

	MASCULIN	E AND FEMINI	NE		NEUTER	
Gen. Dat. Acc.	collis collis colli collem colle	nūbēs nūbis nūbī nūbem nūbe	nox noctis nocti noctem nocte	însigne însignis însignî însigne însignī	exemplar exemplāris exemplārī exemplar exemplārī	animal animālis animālī animal animālī
PLURAL						
Gen. Dat. Acc.	collēs collium collibus collēs, ~īs	nūbēs nūbium nūbibus nūbēs, -īs	noctēs noctium noctibus noctēs, -īs	īnsignia īnsignium īnsignibus īnsignia	exemplāria exemplārium exemplāribus exemplāria	animālia animālium animālibus animālia
Abl.	collibus	nūbibus	noctibus	īnsignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus

Masculine and feminine i-stems and mixed stems include two classes:

⁽¹⁾ nouns having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative;

⁽²⁾ nouns having two consonants before the ending of the genitive singular. Exceptions are: pater, mater, frater.

The ablative singular of turris and sometimes of ignis and a few other words ends in -ī instead of -e. The accusative singular of turris is turrim.

Neuter i-stems end in -e, -al, or -ar.

6 FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems 7. FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

	MASC. A	ND FEM.	N	EUT.	N	ASC. ANI	FEM.	
	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
Gen. Dat.	exercitus exercitūs exercituī, -ū exercitum exercitū	exercitūs exercituum exercitibus exercitūs exercitibus	cornū cornūs cornū cornū cornū	cornua cornuum cornibus cornua cornibus	diēs diēī diēī diem diē	diēs diērum diēbus diēs diēbus	rēs reī reī rem rē	rēs rērum rēbus rēs rēbus

8 IRREGULAR NOUNS

FEM. MASC. AND FEM.	
SING. PL. SING. PL. SI	INGULAR PLURAL
Nom. vīsvīrēsbōsbovēsNom. doGen. —vīriumbovisboumGen. doDat. —vīribusbovībūbus, bōbusDat. doAcc. vimvīrēs, -īsbovembovēsAcc. doAbl. vīvīribusbovebūbus, bōbusAbl. do	omūs domuum, domōrum omuī, domō domibus omum domōs, domūs

The noun domus has forms of both the second and the fourth declensions.

ADJECTIVES

9 FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. bonus Gen. bonī Dat. bonō Acc. bonum Abl. bonō	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Nom. miser Gen. miserī Dat. miserō Acc. miserum Abl. miserō	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Nom. pulcher Gen. pulchrī Dat. pulchrō Acc. pulchrum Abl. pulchrō	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrärum	pulchrörum
	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchris	pulchrīs
	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchräs	pulchra
	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchris	pulchrīs

THIRD DECLENSION

10

THREE TERMINATIONS-I-STEMS

S	INGULAR			PLURAL	
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASO	. FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen ācris	ācris	ācris	ācriun	a ācrium	ācrium
Dat. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribu	s ācribus	ācribus
Acc. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl. ācrī	ācrī	ăcrī	ācribu	s ācribus	ācribus
11	7	WO TERMINA:	TIONS IST	PMC	
11	,	WO IERMINA.	110NS1-S1	LMS	
sı	NGULAR			PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM	. NE	UT.	MASC.	AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. omnis	om	ne	or	nnēs	omnia
Gen. omnis		nis		nnium	omnium
Dat. omnī	om			nnibus	omnibus
Acc. omnem	om		-	nnēs	omnia
Abl. omnī	om	nī	on	nnibus	omnibus
12	o	NE TERMINA	TIONI-STE	MS	
		SINGU	JLAR		
MASC. AND FEM.	. NE	UT.	MASC.	AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. fēlīx	fēlī	x	po	tē n s	potēns
Gen. fēlīcis	fēlī	cis	po	tentis	potentis
Dat. felicī	fēlī		po	tentī	potentî
Acc. fēlicem	fēlī			tentem	potēns
Abl. fēlīcī	fēlī	cī	, bo.	tentī, -e	potentī, -e
		PLUF	RAL		

Nom. fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	potentēs	potentia
Gen. fēlīcium	fělicium	potentium	potentium
Dat. fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentibus
Acc. fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	potentês	potentia
Abl. fēlīcibus	fēlīcibus	potentibus	potentia

13 ONE TERMINATION—CONSONANT STEM

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM. Nom. vetus Gen. veteris Dal. veteri Acc. veterem Abl. vetere	NEUT. vetus veteris veterī vetus vetere	MASC. AND FEM. veterēs veterum veteribus veterēs veteribus	NEUT. vetera veterum veteribus vetera	
		101011545	Acterrana	

SINGULAR PLURAL

MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
Gen. portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
Dat. portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
Acc. portantem	portāns	portantés	portantia
Abl. portante, -ī	portante, -ī	portantibus	portantibus

15 REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

lātus lātior, lātius lātissimus, fortis fortior, fortius fortissimus,	TIVE
fēlīx fēlīcior, fēlīcius fēlīcissimus	, -a, -um
miser miserior, miserius miserrimus,	, -a, -um
facilis facilior, facilius facilimus, -	, -a, -um

16 IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

17 DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

SINGU	LAR	PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Gen. lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
Dat. lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Acc. lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Abl. lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Nom. —— Gen. —— Dat. —— Acc. —— Abl. ——	plüs¹	plūrēs	plūra
	plüris	plūrium	plūrium
	——	plūribus	plūribus
	plüs	plūrēs	plūra
	plüre	plūribus	plūribus

¹ Used in singular as noun only.

alius, -a, -ud	nūllus, -a, -um
sõlus, -a, -um	alter, -era, -erum
ūllus, -a, -um	neuter, -tra, -trum
ūnus, -a, -um	uter, -tra, -trum
tõtusaum	

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom	. sõlus	sõla	sõlum	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	sõlīus	sōlīus	sõlīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
Dat.	sōlī	sōlī	sõlī	utrī	utrī	utrī
Acc.	sõlum	sõlam	sõlum	utrum	utram	utrum
Abl.	sōlō	sõlā	sõlõ	utrō	utrā	utrō

The plurals are like those of bonus and pulcher.

ADVERBS

20 IRREGULAR COMPARISON

Pos.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.	Pos.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
lātē fortiter ācriter facile	lātius fortius ācrius facilius	lātissimē fortissimē ācerrimē facillimē	bene male magnopere multum parum prope saepe diū	melius pejus magis plūs minus propius saepius dūtius	optimē pessimē maximē plūrimum minimē proximē saepissimē diūtissimē

NUMERALS

21 DECLENSION OF DUO, TRES, AND MĪLIA

19 REGULAR COMPARISON

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	NEUT.
duōrum	duae duārum	duo duõrum	trēs trium	tria trium	mīlia mīlium
 duōbus duōs, duo	duābus duās	duõbus duo	tribus trēs, trīs	tribus tria	mīlibus mīlia
duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

In the singular, mille, thousand, is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a neuter noun, and is modified by the genitive of the noun denoting the persons or things which are numbered.

Cardinal numbers answer the question, "How many?" as one, two, three, ūnus, duo, trēs. Ordinal numbers answer the question, "In what order?" as first, second, third; prīmus, secundus, tertius. Distributive numbers answer the question, "How many at a time?" as one at a time or singly, two by two, three by three, singulī, bīnī, ternī.

Dilli, torni.			
ROMAN			
NUMERALS	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES
I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II	duo, duae, duo	secundus, alter	bĩnī
III	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī, trīnī
IV	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V	quinque	quintus	quīnī
VI	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII	octō	octāvus	octônī
IX	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X	decem	decimus	dênī
ΧĪ	ündecim	ūndecimus	ündēnī
XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternî dênî
XIV	quattuordecim	guārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV	guīndecim	quintus decimus	quînî dênî
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sëni dëni
XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus	duodēvīcēnī
XIX	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	ūndēvīcēnī
XX	viginti	vīcēsimus	vicēni
XXI	ūnus et vīgintī,	vīcēsimus prīmus	vīcēnī singulī
32221	vīgintī ūnus	vioosiiius piilius	Treom bangan
XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus	duodētrīcēnī
	vīgintī octō		
XXIX	ūndētrīgintā	ūn dētrīcēsimus	ündētrīcēnī
	vīgintī novem		
XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsimus	trīcē n ī
XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī
LXXX	octögintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī
XC	nōnāgintā	nonāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī
С	centum	centēsimus	centēnī
CI	centum (et) ūn us	centēsimus	centēnī singulī
	,	(et) prīmus	
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī
CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus	trecēnī
CCCC	quadringentî	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī
D	quingenti	quingentēsimus	quīngēnī
DC	sescentī	sescentēsimus	sescēnī
DCC	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī
DCCC	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingênî
DCCCC	nōngentī	nõngentēsimus	nongēnī /
\mathbf{M}	mīlle	mīllēsimus	singula mīlia
$\mathbf{M}\mathbf{M}$	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīlia

The ordinal numerals often end in -ensimus instead of -esimus.

PRONOUNS PERSONAL

23

FIRST PERSON

SECOND PERSON

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom. ego Gen. mei Dat. mihi Acc. mē	nōs nostrum, nostrī nōbīs nōs	, tū tuī tibi tē	võs vestrum, vestrī võbīs võs
Abl. më	nōbīs	tē	võbīs

There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually is, he, ea, she, id, it) or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by a reflexive pronoun.

24	M E FIRST	O SOSEIVES PERSON	You	EXIVE ンプログ D PERSON	High	PERSON
Av.	sing.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
Gen.		nostrī	tuī	vestrī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	võbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	⊽ōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
Abl.	шĕ	nōbīs	tē	võbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

25 For idem, ipse, qui (relative or interrogative), quis, quisque, aliquis, quidam, and quisquam—all which may be used as either pronouns or adjectives—see pages 321-324.

26

POSSESSIVES

REFERRING TO SINGULAR ANTECEDENT

Ist pers. meus, -a, -um, my
2d pers. tuus, -a, -um, your (of one person)
2d pers. suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (reflexive)

3d pers. suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (reflexive) ejus (gen. sing. of is), his, her, its (not reflexive)

REFERRING TO PLURAL ANTECEDENT

1st pers. noster, -tra, -trum, our

2d pers. vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one person)

3d pers. suus, -a, -um, their (reflexive) eõrum, eārum, eõrum (gen. pl. of is), their (not reflexive)

The vocative singular masculine of meus is mī.

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester are used as adjectives, agreeing with the thing possessed.

WORDS USED AS PRONOUNS OR ADJECTIVES

27		DEMONS	STRATIVES		
MASC.	SINGULAR FEM.	hic, h	aec, hoc / thee (Mer- MASC.	IN SPACE FEM.	time or thoght) the present, NEUT. ILO
Nom. hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen. hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	horum naces ed
Dat. huic	huic	huic	hīs	his	his the fallennes
Acc. hunc	hanc hāc	hoc hōc	hōs hīs	hās hīs	haec his
Abl. hōc	nac	1100	. 13	4.0 a *	1
		> 1/a	those (furth	The The	one thre or
		he, she	it they	,	رطما بدرصماله
Nom. ille	illa	ilľud	illīʻ	illae	illa the other
Gen. illius	illīus	illīus	illörum	illārum	illörum
Dat. illi	ıllī illam	illi illud	illīs illōs	illīs illās	illis the tomer
Acc. illum Abl. illö	illā	illö	illīs	illïs	illis the latter
2101. 1110	1114	. 14 . 4.	11		San Control of the Co
		ان المراكب	rais these		
		neisi	re, it, they.		
Nom. is	ea	id '	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen. ejus	ejus	ejus	eõrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat. eī	eī eam	eī id	eīs, iīs eōs	eīs, iīs eās	eīs, 1īs ea
$egin{array}{ll} Acc. & { t eum} \ Abl. & { t eo} \end{array}$	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iis
1101. 00	V2	ن ال	tono	,	,
		iste.	ista, istud		Harde Straff
		he.shi	2 Lt theey.		in solution to
Nom. iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista CIOSR NO
Gen. istīus	istīus istī	istīus - istī	istõrum istīs	istārum istīs	istorum person istos allueixed
<i>Dat.</i> istī <i>Acc.</i> istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista ,
Abl. istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istis
					Your
		Very	the very		
28	him	THE I	NTENSIVE	emelves	
	him singular	esect, her	dely crosect, "	PLURAL	•
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen. ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsörum	ipsārum	ipsõrum
Dat. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN-ADJECTIVE

		The same, the very one,	The Brand Day Habita Tolk
Dat. Acc.	MASC. defi ejusdem eidem eundem eödem	FEM. eadem ejusdem eīdem eandem eādem	NEUT. idem ejusdem eīdem idem eōdem
		PLURAL	
Nom.	MASC. eīdem,	FEM. eaedem	NEUT. eadem
Gen. Dat. Acc.	idem eörundem eīsdem, isdem eōsdem eīsdem, isdem	eārundem eīsdem, īsdem eāsdem, eīsdem,	eörundem eïsdem, Isdem eadem eïsdem, Isdem

The nominative plural of the masculine is sometimes spelled iidem, and the dative and ablative plurals are sometimes spelled iisdem.

30 PLURAL SINGULAR NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. FEM. MASC. quae quae quod quī Nom. qui quae quōrum quārum quōrum cujus cujus Gen. cujus quibus quibus quibus cui Dat. cui cui quae quās quōs quod quam Acc. quem quibus quibus quibus quō quā Abl. quō

31 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN ?

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. quis quid Gen. cujus cujus Dat. cui cui Acc. quem quid Abl. quô quō	quī	quae	quae
	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	quibus	quibus	quibus
	quōs	quās	quae
	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

SIN	GULAR			PLURAL	
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. quī, quis Gen. cujus Dat. cui Acc. quem Abl. quō	quae cujus cui quam quā	quod cujus cui quod quō	quī quōrum quibus quōs quibus	quae quārum quibus quās quibus	quae quōrum quibus quae quibus

The interrogative adjective in the singular is the same as the relative pronoun (322, 30), except that the nominative masculine may be either quis or qui. The plural of the interrogative adjective is the same as that of the interrogative pronoun (322, 31).

33

INDEFINITES

Each one	UNS Dack		ADJECTIVES	
every one	•	SINGULAR		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. quisque Gen. cujusque Dat. cuique Acc. quemque Abl. quoque	quidque cujusque cuique quidque quōque	quisque cujusque cuique quemque quoque	quaeque cujusque cuique quamque quāque	quodque cujusque cuique quodque quōque

The plural is seldom used.

Some	eone, som	singular	nething, a	myone, ou	thing
liquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod	
licujus	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus	

Dat. alicui alicui alicui alicui alicui alicui Acc. aliquem aliquid aliquem aliquam aliqu	Acc. aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliqua m	aliquod alicuju alicui aliquod aliquo
---	--------------	---------	---------	---------------------	---

		PLURAL		
Nom. aliquī	aliqua	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen. aliquõrum	aliquōrum	aliquõrum	aliquārum	aliquõrum
Dat. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc. aliquos	aliqua	aliquos	aliquās	aliqua
Abl. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

INDEFINITES—continued

A Certain, Some a Rind of

Someone, Some Shiring

sc.

NEUT.

quaedam Nom. quidam Gen. cujusdam cujusdam cuidam Dat. cuidam quandam Acc. quendam quādam Abl. quōdam

quiddam (quoddam) cujusdam

cuidam

quiddam (quoddam)

quōdam

PLURAL

quaedam quaedam Nom. quīdam quōrundam quārundam Gen. quorundam quibusdam quibusdam Dat. quibusdam quaedam quāsdam Acc. quōsdam quibusdam quibusdam Abl. quibusdam

The forms in parentheses are used as adjectives.

Anjone, anything, anything at all.

MASC. AND FEM.

Nom. quisquam

Gen. cujusquam Dat. cuiquam Acc. quemquam

Abl. quōquam

NEUT.

quicquam, quidquam

cujusquam cuiquam

quicquam, quidquam

quōquam

The plural is not found.

VERBS

FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum

34

ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

portō, I am carrying, I carry portās, you are carrying, you carry portat, he is carrying, he carries portem portës portet

PLURAL

portāmus, we are carrying, we carry portātis, you are carrying, you carry portant, they are carrying, they carry

portēmus portētis portent

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR

portābam, I was carrying portābās, you were carrying portābat, he was carrying

portārem portārēs portāret

PLURAL

portābāmus, we were carrying portābātis, you were carrying portābant, they were carrying portārēmus portārētis portārent

FUTURE

SINGULAR

portābō, I shall carry portābis, you will carry portābit, he will carry (None)

PLURAL

portābimus, we shall carry portābitis, you will carry portābunt, they will carry

> PERFECT SINGULAR

portāvī, I have carried, I carried portāvistī, you have carried, etc. portāvit, he has carried, etc. portāverim portāverīs portāverit

PLURAL

portāvimus, we have carried, etc. portāvistis, you have carried, etc. portāvērunt, -ēre, they have carried, etc. portāverīmus portāverītis portāverint 34-cont.

INDICATIVE

PAST PERFECT SINGULAR

SUBJUNCTIVE

portaveram, I had carried portāverās, you had carried portaverat, he had carried

portāvissem portāvissēs portāvisset

PLURAL

portăverămus, we had carried portăverătis, you had carried portaverant, they had carried

portāvissēmus portāvissētis portāvissent

FUTURE PERFECT

SINGULAR.

portāverō, I shall have carried portaveris, you will have carried portaverit, he will have carried

(None)

PLURAL

portaverimus, we shall have carried portāveritis, you will have carried portaverint, they will have carried

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Sing. portă, carry Plu. portāte, carry FUTURE

Sing. 2. portātō, you shall carry 3. portăto, he shall carry

Plu. 2. portătote, you shall carry

3. portanto, they shall carry

INFINITIVE

Pres. portare, to carry

Perf. portavisse, to have carried

Fut. portătūrus esse, to be going to carry

GERUND

Gen. portandi, of carrying

Dat. portando, to, for carrying Acc. portandum, carrying

Abl. portando, from, by carrying

PARTICIPLE

Pres. portans, carrying

Fut. portătūrus, going to carry

SUPINE

Acc. portātum, to carry

Abl. portătu, to carry

INDICATIVE

PRESENT SINGULAR

portor, I am being carried portaris, -re, you are being carried portatur, he is being carried SUBJUNCTIVE

م من المراجع المراجع المناطقة المنطقة ا المنطقة المنطقة

porter portēris, -re portētur

INDICATIVE

PLURAL

portāmur, we are being carried portāminī, you are being carried portantur, they are being carried SUBJUNCTIVE

portēmur portēminī portentur

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR

portābar, I was being carried portābāris, -re, you were being carried portābātur, he was being carried I might be carried

portārer portārēris, -re portārētur

PLURAL

portābāmur, we were being carried portābāminī, you were being carried portābantur, they were being carried portārēmur portārēminī portārentur

FUTURE

SINGULAR

portābor, I shall be carried portāberis, -re, he will be carried portābitur, he will be carried

(None)

PLURAL

portābimur, we shall be carried portābiminī, you will be carried portābuntur, they will be carried

PERFECT

SINGULAR

portatus sum, I have been carried portatus es, you have been carried portatus est, he has been carried I may have been carried

portātus sim portātus sīs portātus sit

PLURAL

portātī sumus, we have been carried portātī estis, you have been carried portātī sunt, they have been carried I might have been portati situs camiedportati sitis
portati sint

PAST PERFECT

SINGULAR

portātus eram, I had been carried portātus erās, you had been carried portātus erat, he had been carried portātus essem portātus essēs portātus esset

PLURAL

portăti erāmus, we had been carried portăti erātis, you had been carried portăti erant, they had been carried portātī essēmus portātī essētis portātī essent

FUTURE PERFECT

SINGULAR

portătus erō, I shall have been carried portătus eris, you will have been carried portătus erit, he will have been carried (None.)

PLURAL

portătī erimus, we shall have been carried portătī eritis, you will have been carried portătī erunt, they will have been carried

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Sing. portare, be carried Plu. portamini, be carried

FUTURE

Sing. 2. portător, you shall be carried

3. portător, he shall be carried

Plu. 2. ____

3. portantor, they shall be carried

INFINITIVE

Pres. portări, to be carried

Perf. portatus esse, to have been carried

Fut. portatum irī, to be about to be carried

PARTICIPLE

Perf. portātus, having been carried Fut. portandus, to be carried

SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum capiō, capere, cēpī, captum audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum

36 ACTIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT SINGULAR

moneō dūcō capiō audiō monēs dūcis capis audīs monet dūcit capit audit

PLURAL

monēmus dūcimus capimus audīmus monētis dūcitis capitis audītis monent dūcunt capiunt audiunt

> IMPERFECT SINGULAR

monēbam dūcēbam capiēbam audiēbam monēbās dūcēbās capiēbās audiēbās monēbat dūcēbat capiēbat audiēbat

PLURAL

monēbāmus dūcēbāmus capiēbāmus audiēbāmus monēbātis dūcēbātis capiēbātis audiēbātis monēbant dūcēbant capiēbant audiēbant

> FUTURE SINGULAR

monēbō dūcam capiam audiam monēbis dūcēs capiēs audiēs monēbit dūcet capiet audiet

PLURAL

monēbimus dūcēmus capiēmus audiēmus monēbitis dūcētis capiētis audiētis monēbunt dūcent capient audient

> PERFECT SINGULAR

monuī dūxī cēpī audīvī monuistī dūxistī cēpistī audīvistī monuit dūxit cēpit audīvit

PLURAL

monuimus dūximus cēpimus audīvimus monuistis dūxistis cēpistis audīvistis monuērunt, -ēre dūxērunt, -ēre cēpērunt, -ēre audīvērunt, -ēre

36-cont.

PAST PERFECT

SINGULAR

monueram	düxeram	cēperam	audīveram
monuerās	düxerās	cēperās	audīverās
monuerat	düxerat	cēperat	audīverat

PLURAL

monuerāmus	dūxerāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
monuerātis	dūxerātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
monuerant	düxerant	cēperant	audiverant

FUTURE PERFECT

SINGULAR

monuerō	dūxerō	cēperō	audīverō
monueris	dūxeris	cēperis	audīveris
monuerit	dūxerit	cēperit	audīverit

PLURAL

monuerimus	dūxerimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
monueritis	dūxeritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
monuerint	düxerint	cēperint	audiverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

moneam	dŭcam	capiam	audiam
moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat

PLURAL

moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
moneant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR

monèrem	dücerem	caperem	audīrem
monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
monēret	düceret	caperet	audīret

PLURAL

monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
monērent	dücerent	caperent	audīrent

PERFECT

monuerim, etc. duxerim, etc. ceperim, etc. audiverim, etc.

PAST PERFECT

monuissem, etc. dūxissem, etc. cēpissem, etc. audīvissem, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT SINGULAR

		SINGULA	II.		
	monē	dūc¹	cape	audī	
		PLURA	L.		
	monēte	dūcite	capite	audīte	
		FUTUR	E		
		SINGULA			
	2. monētō	dūcitō	capitō	audītō	
	3. monētō	dūcitō	capitō	audītō	
		PLURAI			
	2. monētōte	dūcitōte	- capitōte	audītõte	
	3. monento	dûcuntō	capiuntō	audiuntö	
PARTICIPLE					
		PRESEN'	r		
	monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns	
	monitūrus	FUTURE			
	moniturus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus	
		INFINITI	VE.		
		PRESENT	r		
	monēre	dücere	capere	audire	
		PERFECT	•		
	monuisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audīvisse	
			-		
	14 =	FUTURE			
	monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	captūrus esse	audītūrus esse	
GERUND					
	Gen. monendi	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī	
	Dat. monendō	dűcendő	capiendō	audiendō	
	Acc. monendum	dūcendum	capiendum	audiendum	
	Abl. monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō	
		SUPINE			
	Acc. monitum	ductum	captum	audītum	
	Abl. monitū	ductū	captū	audītū	
_			•		

¹ This is an irregular form. The imperative forms of mitto are mitte, mittite, etc., which illustrate the regular formation in the third conjugation.

PASSIVE 37

INDICATIVE

PRESENT SINGULAR

audior capior dūcor moneor audīris, -re caperis, -re monēris, -re dūceris, -re andītur capitur monētur dücitur

PLURAL

audīmur monêmur dücimur capimur audīminī capiminī düciminī monēminī audiuntur capiuntur dücuntur monentur

> IMPERFECT SINGULAR

audiēbar dücēbar capiëbar monēbar capiēbāris, -re audiēbāris, -re monēbāris, -re dūcēbāris, -re audiēbātur capiēbātur dűcébátur monēbātur

PLURAL

audiēbāmur capiēbāmur dűcēbāmur monēbāmur audiēbāminī capiēbāminī monēbāminī dūcēbāminī audiēbantur dūcēbantur capiēbantur monēbantur

FUTURE

SINGULAR

audiar capiar monêbor dūcar audiēris, -re monēberis, -re dūcēris, -re capiēris, -re audiētur capiētur dücētur monēbitur

PLURAL

audiēmur monēbimur dücēmur capiēmur capiēminī audiēminī dūcēminī monēbiminī audientur dücentur capientur monēbuntur

> PERFECT SINGULAR

ductus sum captus sum audītus sum monitus sum audītus es ductus es captus es monitus es audītus est ductus est captus est monitus est

PLURAL

audītī sumus moniti sumus ductī sumus capti sumus captī estis audītī estis ducti estis monitī estis audītī sunt monitī sunt ducti sunt captī sunt

PAST PERFECT

SINGULAR

captus eram audītus eram ductus eram monitus eram audītus erās monitus erās ductus erās captus erās captus erat audītus erat monitus erat ductus erat

PLURAL

audītī erāmus moniti erāmus ductī erāmus capti erāmus audītī erātis monitī erātis ductī erātis captī erātis audītī erant moniti erant ducti erant captī erant

FUTURE PERFECT

	SINGUI	LAR			
monitus erō monitus eris monitus erit	ductus erō ductus eris ductus erit	captus erō captus eris captus erit	audītus erō audītus eris audītus erit		
	PLUR.	AL			
monitī erimus monitī eritis monitī erunt	ductī erimus ductī eritis ductī erunt	captī erimus captī eritis captī erunt	audītī erimus audītī eritis audītī erunt		
	SUBJUNG	CTIVE			
	PRESE	NT			
	SINGU	LAR			
monear moneāris, -re moneātur	dūcar dūcāris, -re dūcātur	capiar capiāris, -re capiātur	audiar audiāris, -re audiātur		
	PLUR	AL			
moneāmur moneāminī moneantur	dűcāmur dűcāminī dűcantur	capiāmur capiāminī capiantur	audiāmur audiāminī audiantur		
	IMPER	FECT			
	SINGU	LAR			
monērer monērēris, -re monērētur	dūcerer dūcerēris, -re dūcerētur	caperer caperēris, -re caperētur	audīrer audīrēris, -re audīrētur		
	PLUR	AL			
monērēmur monērēminī monērentur	dücerēmur dücerēminī dücerentur	caperēmur caperēminī caperentur	audīrēmur audīrēminī audīrentur		
	PERF	ECT			
	SINGU				
monitus sim, etc.	ductus sim, etc.	captus sim, etc.	audītus sim, etc.		
PLURAL					
monitī sīmus, etc.	ductī sīmus, etc.	captī sīmus, etc.	audītī sīmus, etc.		
PAST PERFECT					
	SINGU		4=.		
monitus essem, etc.	ductus essem, etc.	captus essem, etc.	audītus essem, etc.		
	PLUR	IAL			
monitī essēmus, etc.	ductī essēmus, etc.	captī essēmus, etc.	audītī essēmus, etc.		

37-cont.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

	FRESER		
	SINGUL	AR	
monēre	dücere	capere	audīre
	PLURA	L	
moněminî	dūciminī	capiminī	audīminī
		•	
	FUTUR	E	
	SINGUL	AR	
2. monëtor	dūcitor	capitor	audītor
3. monētor	dūcitor	capitor	audītor
		-	
	PLURA	L	
2. ———			
3. monentor	dûcuntor	capiuntor	audiuntor
	PARTICIF	PLE	
	PERFEC	Т	
monitus	ductus	captus	audītus
			444145
	FUTUR	F	
monendus	dūcendus	capiendus	audiendus
Monondas	ducciidus	capiendus	AUGICIGUS
	INFINITI	VE	
	D 2002	-	
monērī	PRESEN'		
moneri	auci	capī	audīrī
•	PERFEC	=	
monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	audītus esse
	FUTURE	3	
monitum īrī	ductum īrī	captum īrī	audītum īrī

38

SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

A group of forms representing one person and number of a verb in all the tenses is called a synopsis. The synopsis of porto in the first person singular of the indicative and subjunctive, active and passive, is as follows:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE		
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Fut. Perf. P. Pf.	portö portābam portābō portāvī portāveram portāverō	portem portārem portāverim portāvissem	portor portābar portābor portātus sum portātus eram portātus erō	porter portārer portātus sim portātus essem

Principal parts: cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
partior, partīrī, partītus sum

INDICATIVE

ı ıı ııı ıv

PRESENT SINGULAR

conor polliceor sequor partior conaris, -re polliceris, -re sequeris, -re partiris, -re conatur pollicetur sequitur partitur

PLURAL

cōnāmur pollicēmur sequimur partīmur cōnāminī pollicēminī sequiminī partīminī cōnantur pollicentur sequuntur partiuntur

IMPERFECT

conābar, etc. pollicēbar, etc. sequēbar, etc. partiebar, etc.

FUTURE

conabor, etc. pollicebor, etc. sequar, etc. partiar, etc.

PERFECT

conātus sum, etc. pollicitus sum, etc. secūtus sum, etc. partītus sum, etc.

PAST PERFECT

conatus eram, etc. pollicitus eram, etc. secutus eram, etc. partitus eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

conatus ero, etc. pollicitus ero, etc. secutus ero, etc. partitus ero, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

coner, etc. pollicear, etc. sequar, etc. partiar, etc.

IMPERFECT

conarer, etc. pollicerer, etc. sequerer, etc. partirer, etc.

PERFECT

conātus sim, etc. pollicitus sim, etc. secutus sim, etc. partītus sim, etc.

PAST PERFECT

conatus essem, etc. pollicitus essem, etc. secutus essem, etc. partitus essem, etc.

39—cont. IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

conare pollicere sequere partire

FUTURE

conator pollicetor sequitor partitor

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

conārī pollicērī sequí partīrī

PERFECT

conatus esse pollicitus esse secutus esse partitus esse

FUTURE

conaturus esse polliciturus esse secuturus esse partiturus esse

PARTICIPLE

PRESENT

conans pollicens sequens partiens

PERFECT

conatus pollicitus secutus partitus

FUTURE ACTIVE

conāturus polliciturus secuturus partiturus

FUTURE PASSIVE

conandus pollicendus sequendus partiendus

GERUND

conandi, etc. pollicendi, etc. sequendi, etc. partiendi, etc.

SUPINE

Acc. cōnātum pollicitum secūtum partītum Abl. cōnātū pollicitū secūtū partītū

40 SEMIDEPONENT VERBS

The present system of semideponent verbs is active, and the perfect system passive.

Principal parts: audeo, audere, ausus sum, dare

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed

fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, trust

PRESENT SYSTEM

PERFECT SYSTEM

Pres. audeō, I dare

Imperf. audēbam, I was daring

Fut. audēbō, I shall dare

Perf. ausus sum, I have dared

P.Pf. ausus eram, I had dared

F. Pf. ausus erō, I shall have dared

CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: sum, esse, fui, futurus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT SINGULAR PLURAL

sum, I am sumus, we are es, you are estis, you are est, he is sunt, they are

IMPEREECT

SINGULAR. PLURAL eram, I was erāmus, we were erās, you were erātis, you were erat, he was erant, they were

FUTURE

SINGULAR

erō, I shall be eris, you will be erit, he will be

PLTIRAL.

erimus, we shall be eritis, you will be erunt, they will be

PERFECT

fui, I was, I have been fuistī, you were, you have been fuit, he was, he has been

fuimus, we were, we have been fuistis, you were, you have been fuerunt, -ere, they were, they have been

PAST PERFECT

SINGULAR

fueram, I had been fuerās, you had been fuerat, he had been

PLURAL

fuerāmus, we had been fuerātis, you had been fuerant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fuero, I shall have been fueris, you will have been fuerit, he will have been

fuerimus, we shall have been fueritis, you will have been fuerint, they will have been

SUBJUNCTIVE

PR	ESENT	IMPE	RFECT	PI	RFECT	PAST P	ERFECT
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
sim sīs sit	sīmus sītis sint	essem essēs esset	essēmus essētis essent	fuerim fuerīs fuerit	fuerīmus fuerītis fuerint	fuissem fuissēs fuisset	fuissēmus fuissētis fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

FUTURE

SING. PL. es, be este, be SINGULAR

PLURAL

2. estō, be, you shall be 3. esto, let him be, he shall be estote, be, you shall be sunto, let them be, they shall be

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futurus, about to be

Pres. esse, to be

Perf. fuisse, to have been

Fut. futurus esse or fore, to be about to be

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

Principal parts: possum, posse, potuī

INDICATI	VE		SUBJUNCTIVE		
	PR	ESENT			
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL		
possum	possumus	possim	possīmus		
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis		
potest	possunt	possit	possint		
-	_				
	IMP:	ERFECT			
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL		
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus		
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis		
poterat	poterant	posset	possent		
FUTURE					
poterō, etc.	poterimus, etc.	(None)			
	PER	FECT			
potui, etc.	potuimus, etc.	potuerim, etc.	potuerīmus, etc.		
	PAST I	PERFECT			
potueram, etc.	potuerāmus, etc.	potuissem, etc.	potuissēmus, etc.		
FUTURE PERFECT					
potuerō, etc.	potuerimus, etc.	(None)			
	INFI	NITIVE			
Pres.	posse	Perf. potu	isse		

43 CONJUGATION OF PRŌSUM

Principal parts: prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī

INDICA	TIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
		PRESENT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
prōsum prōdes prōdest	prõsumus prõdestis prõsunt	prōsim prōsīs prōsit	prēsīmus prēsītis prēsint
product	prosent	prosit	prosint

The remaining forms of the present system are conjugated like sum, with the prefix prod. The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem profu-.

CONJUGATION OF FERO

Principal parts: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

	PRESE	ENT	
Active		P a ssi	ve
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, -re	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
	IMPER	FECT	
ferēbam, etc.	ferēbāmus, etc.	f erēbar, etc.	ferēbāmur, etc.
·			
	FUTU		
Acti	ve	Passi	ve
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
feram, etc.	ferēmus, etc.	ferar, etc.	ferēmur, etc.
- ,	•		
	PERF	ECT	
tulī, etc.	tulimus, etc.	l ātus sum, etc.	lātī sumus, etc.
,			
	PAST PE	RFECT	
tuleram, etc.	tulerāmus, etc.	lātus eram, etc.	lātī erāmus, etc.
·			
	FUTURE PERFECT		
tulerō, etc.	tulerimus, etc.	lātus erō, etc.	lātī erimus, etc.
	SUBJUN	CTIVE	
	PRESI	CNIT	
		ferar, etc.	ferāmur, etc.
feram, etc.	ferāmus, etc.	Terai, etc.	Toramar, occ.
	IMPER	EECT	
		ferrer, etc.	ferrēmur, etc.
ferrem, etc.	ferrēmus, etc.	Terrer, etc.	101101111111111111111111111111111111111
PERFECT			
4.4		lātus sim, etc.	lātī sīmus, etc.
tulerim, etc.	tulerīmus, etc.	latus sim, etc.	
	PAST PE	REECT	
1. 12		lätus essem, etc.	lātī essēmus, etc.
tulissem, etc.	tunssemus, etc.	natas ossum, stati	•
		AMILE	
IMPERATIVE			
Acti	ve		Passive
Pres. fer	ferte	Pres. ferr	
Fut. 2. fertö	fertöte	Fut. fert	
3. fertõ	feruntō	fert	or feruntor
			-

44-cont.

it

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE PASSIVE

Pres. ferreferrīPerf. tulisselātus esseFul. lātūrus esselātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

ACTIVE PASSIVE

 $egin{array}{lll} \emph{Pres.} & \emph{ferens} & \emph{Perf.} & \emph{lātus} \\ \emph{Fut.} & \emph{lātūrus} & \emph{Fut.} & \emph{ferendus} \\ \end{array}$

GERUND SUPINE

ferendī, etc. Acc. lātum Abl. lātū

45 CONJUGATION OF EO

Principal parts: eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

eat

eant

PRESENT

SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL

eō imus eam eāmus
is itis eās eātis

IMPERFECT

eunt

ībam, etc. ībāmus, etc. īrem, etc. īrēmus, etc.

FUTURE

ībō, etc. ībimus, etc. (None)

PERFECT

iī, īvī iimus, īvimus ierim, īverim ierīmus, īverīmus

etc. etc. etc. etc.

PAST PERFECT

ieram, īveram ierāmus, īverāmus īssem, īvissem īssēmus, īvissēmus

etc. etc. etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

iero, īvero ierimus, īverimus

etc. etc.

 IMPERATIVE
 INFINITIVE
 PARTICIPLE

 Pres. ī
 ī ite
 Pres. ire
 Pres. iens (gen. eunti

Pres. ī īte Pres. īre Pres. iēns (gen. euntis)
Fut. 2. ītō ītōte Perf. īsse, iisse Fut. itūrus

3. Ito note Ful. iturus

Ful. iturus

GERUND

eundi, etc.

Principal parts: fīō, fierī, factus sum

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

vultis

volunt

vīs

vult

			PRESENT		
SINGULAR	3	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
fīō			fīam	fīāmus	
fīs fit		fiunt	fīās fīat	fīātis fīant	
ш		Hullt	1141	Hant	
		1	IMPERFECT		
fīēbam		fīēbāmus	fierem	fierēmus	
			FUTURE		
fīam		fīēmus	(None)		
110211		11021100	(1.10110)		
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE					
			PERFECT		
SINGU	LAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLUR	AL
factus sw	m, etc.	factī sumus, etc.	factus sim, et	c. factī sīmu	ıs, etc.
		P	AST PERFECT		
factus era	am, etc.	factī erāmus, etc	. factus essem,	etc. factī essē	mus, etc.
		FU	TURE PERFECT		
factus er	ō, etc.	factī erimus, etc.	(None)		
IMPE	RATIVE		INFINITIVE	PART	ICIPLE
Pres. fī	fīte	P ₂	es. fierī	Porf	factus
1 763. 11	IIIC	Pe	erf. factus esse		faciendus
		r ı	a. iactum iri		
47	COI	NJUGATION OF	VOLŌ AND ITS C	COMPOUNDS	
Principal	l parts:	volō, velle, voluī	nõlõ, nõlle, nõl	uī mālō, 1	mālle, māluī
			INDICATIVE		
SINGULAR	PLURAI	L SINGULAI	PRESENT PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
volō	volumu		nõlumus	mālō māvīs	mālumus māvultis

nõn vultis

nõlunt

nōn vīs

nön vult

māvultis

mālunt

māvīs

mävult

47-cont.

IMPERFECT

volēbam, etc.

mālēbam, etc. nölēbam, etc.

FUTURE

volam, etc.

nölam, etc.

mālam, etc.

PERFECT

voluī, etc.

nölui, etc.

māluī, etc.

PAST PERFECT

volueram, etc.

nõlueram, etc.

mālueram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

voluero, etc.

nöluerö, etc.

māluerō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

velim, etc.

nölim, etc.

mālim, etc.

IMPERFECT

vellem, etc.

nöllem, etc.

māllem, etc.

PERFECT

voluerim, etc.

nöluerim, etc.

māluerim, etc.

PAST PERFECT

voluissem, etc.

nōluissem, etc.

māluissem, etc.

IMPERATIVE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

Pres. nölü Fut. 2. nölütö

nölīte nölītōte

3. nolīto

nōluntō

INFINITIVE

Pres. velle Perf. voluisse

nõlle nõluisse

mälle māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. volēns

nõlēns

A few verbs are defective, that is, they lack some forms which are found in the conjugation of other verbs. The most important are ajō, I say, I assent; inquam, I say; coepī, I began; meminī, I remember; ōdī, I hate.

The forms of ajo most commonly used are found in the present indicative, and are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. ajō	
2. ais	
3. ait	aiunt

A few other forms, including the whole of the imperfect indicative and the second and third persons singular of the present subjunctive, are sometimes found.

The only forms of inquam in common use are found in the present indicative. They are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. inquam	
2. inquis	
3. inquit	inquiunt

The verbs memini and odi have no present, imperfect, or future forms. The perfects are used with present meanings, the past perfects with imperfect meanings, and the future perfects with future meanings.

The present system of coepī is also wanting, but the tenses have their regular meanings (perfect, past perfect, and future perfect). The present, imperfect, and future are supplied by the forms of incipiō.

The passive forms of coepī are commonly used instead of the active when the dependent infinitive is passive (always so by Caesar and Cicero).

INDICATIVE

Perf.	coepī, I began	ōdī, <i>I hate</i>	meminī, I remember
Past Perf.	coeperam, I had begun	ōderam, I hated	memineram, I remembered
Fut. Perf.	coepero, I shall have begun	ōderō, I shall hate	meminero, I shall remember

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf.	coeperim	ōderim	meminerim
Past Perf.	coepissem	ōdissem	meminissem

IMPERATIVE

Sing. mementō, remember Plu. mementōte

INFINITIVE

Perf. Fut.	coepisse, to have begun coeptūrus esse, to be about to begin	ödisse, to hate ösürus esse, to be about to hate	meminisse, to remember
	decide to organi	400000 10 11410	

PARTICIPLES

Perf.	coeptus, begun	osus, hating or hated
Fut.	coepturus, about to begin	ösürus, likely to hate

SYNTAX

The grammatical principles presented in the following pages are those which are especially important for the work of the second year. The mood and case uses treated include only those which are found in the reading or exercises of this book.

AGREEMENT

49 OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES

An adjective or a participle agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

magna urbs, a great city magnae partis, of a great part magnis periculis, in great dangers

50 OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō quem vidēs amīcus meus est, The man whom you see is my friend.

51 OF APPOSITIVES

A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun which it explains.

Agricola, vir benignus, pueros laudat, The farmer, a kind man, praises the boys.

52 OF VERBS

A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

Puer laborat, The boy works. Pueri laborant, The boys work.

NOUNS

53 THE NOMINATIVE CASE

The nominative is the case of the subject or of the predicate noun used with a finite¹ verb.

Puella canit, The girl sings. Fräter tuus est agricola, Your brother is a farmer.

a) The predicate nominative is used with the verb sum and with the passive voice of verbs meaning to name, call, appoint, choose, and the like.

Is rex tyrannus appellatus est, This king was called a tyrant.

¹ That is, any verb form which shows person and number.

THE GENITIVE CASE

54 GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

The genitive is used to denote the possessor.

Liber pueri repertus est, The boy's book has been found.

55 GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to name the whole to which the part belongs.

Trēs partēs copiarum jam trādūxerant, They had already led across three parts of their forces.

a) This use often occurs with a neuter pronoun.

Mihi mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā Caesarī negōtiī sit, It seems strange to me what business Caesar has in my Gaul.

b) The ablative with $d\bar{e}$ or ex is sometimes used in place of the genitive of the whole; regularly so with cardinal numerals and quidam.

duos e numero, two of the number

56 GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

homō magnae virtūtis, a man of great courage

a) The genitive is sometimes employed in this construction to denote measure.

trīduī viam, a journey of three days spatium non amplius pedum DC, a space of not more than 600 feet

57 OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

Nouns and adjectives which denote action sometimes take a genitive which shows the object of the action.

spem salūtis, hope of safety amor lībertātis, love of liberty

58 SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

Nouns which denote action sometimes take a genitive to indicate the person who does the act.

adventus Caesaris, the arrival of Caesar

The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed, or the persons or objects making up a collective noun.

exercitus virōrum fortium, an army of brave men

60 GENITIVE WITH VERBS

The verbs memini and reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget, frequently take a genitive as object.

Virtûtis vestrae non obliviscor, I do not forget your courage.

a) If the object of these verbs is a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

Römānī haec semper meminerint, The Romans will always remember these things.

61 GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS

The impersonal verbs interest and refert may take a genitive to denote the person concerned.

Menēnius ostendit omnium interesse concordiam habēre, Menenius pointed out that it was to the interest of all to have harmony.

THE DATIVE CASE

62 DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT

The indirect object is in the dative.

Fēmina puerō epistulam dat, The woman gives the boy a letter.

63 DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning kind, friendly, dear, pleasing, hostile, near, and some others.

Fīlius tuus sorōribus benignus est, Your son is kind to (his) sisters.

64 DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SPECIAL MEANING

The meaning of some Latin verbs requires a dative, though they are translated into English by verbs with a direct object. The following words are used frequently.

cēdō, yield
cōnfīdō, trust (give trust)
crēdō, trust (give trust)
faveō, favor (show favor)
imperō, order (give orders)
noceō, harm (do harm)
parcō, spare (show mercy)

pāreō, obey (be obedient)
placeō, please (be pleasing)
resistō, resist
studeō, desire (be favorable,
be eager)
suādeō, persuādeō, persuade
(make pleasing)

The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative, with the word denoting the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of sum.

Puero gladius est, The boy has a sword, The sword is the boy's. cui nomen Proca erat, whose name was Proca.

66 DATIVE OF PURPOSE

A noun in the dative is sometimes used to denote the purpose which something serves or is intended to serve.

Hunc librum dōnō mīsī, I sent this book as a gift (literally, for a gift).

67 DATIVE OF REFERENCE

The dative is sometimes used to denote the person with reference to whom an act is done or a situation exists. This use is especially common in expressions which contain a dative of purpose.

Legiō equitātuī auxiliō missa est, The legion was sent as aid (literally, for aid) to the cavalry.

68 DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

Verbs compounded with ante, ob, prae, and sub frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of ad, circum, com, in, inter, post, prō, and super.

Legioni praeest, He is in command of the legion.

a) If the simple verb from which the compound is formed is a transitive verb, the compound may take both the accusative and the dative.

Labienum castrīs praefēcit, He placed Labienus in charge of the camp.

69 DATIVE OF AGENT

With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly denoted by the dative.

Id Romanis faciendum erat, This had to be done by the Romans.

a) With a verb which has a dependent dative of some other kind, the dative of agent is sometimes replaced by the ablative of agent (79) to avoid confusion in the meaning of the sentence.

Tibi ā mē grātia referenda est, I must show you gratitude.

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

70 ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT

The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.

Silvam vidēmus, We see the forest.

71 ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

The accusative without a preposition is used to tell how long an act or a situation continues.

Multās hōrās in īnsulā mānsī, I remained many hours on the island.

72 ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE

The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space.

Puer quinque milia passuum ambulāvit, The boy walked five miles.

73 ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

The accusative of domus and of names of cities, towns, and small islands is used without a preposition to denote place to which.

Exercitus Romam redibit, The army will return to Rome.

a) With other words in this construction, a preposition, ad or in, is used.

Exercitus in urbem redibit, The army will return to the city.

74 ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative case. Among the most important of these are ad, ante, apud, circum, contrā, inter, ob, per, post, praeter, propter, trāns. (See also 156-157.)

Is poēta inter barbarōs diū habitāvit, This poet lived a long time among barbarians.

75 ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE

The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

Explorator dixit urbem incensam esse, The scout said the city had been burned.

Verbs of *naming*, *calling*, *appointing*, *thinking*, and the like may have, in addition to the direct object, a second accusative telling what the person or thing denoted by the object is named, called, appointed, etc.

Frātrem tuum praetōrem creāvimus, We have elected your brother praetor.

77 TWO ACCUSATIVES WITH COMPOUNDS

Compounds of trans sometimes take two objects, one governed by trans, the other by the simple verb.

Legionem flümen trādūxī, I led the legion across the river.

With the passive of such verbs the object governed by the preposition may be retained.

Legio flumen traducta est, The legion was led across the river.

THE ABLATIVE CASE

78 ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Verbs meaning to separate, remove, deprive of, be absent, be free from, desist, and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with ab or ex.

Hoc conatu destiterunt, They desisted from this attempt.

79 ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

The ablative of domus and of names of cities, towns, and small islands is used without a preposition to express the idea of place from which.

Lēgātus Genavā profectus est, The envoy set out from Geneva.

a) With other words in this construction a preposition, ab, de, or ex, is used.

Lēgātus ex oppido profectus est, The lieutenant set out from the town.

80 ABLATIVE OF AGENT

With passive verbs the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is in the ablative with ā or ab.

Explorator a militibus captus est, The scout was captured by the soldiers.

With the comparative form of an adjective (occasionally of an adverb), if quam is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is in the ablative without a preposition.

Non amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, He was not more than eighteen miles away.

a) If quam is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is in the same case as the thing compared.

Puella est altior quam puer, The girl is taller than the boy.

82 ABLATIVE OF PLACE

The ablative with in denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. (But see also 94.)

In eis montibus multa animālia reperiuntur, Many animals are found in these mountains.

83 ABLATIVE OF TIME

The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

Eō annō pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit, My father built a new house that year.

84 ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

The ablative with the preposition cum is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act.

Cum amīcō ambulō, I walk with a friend.

a) The ablative of accompaniment also denotes the person with whom one is contending.

Cum Germānīs bellum gessērunt, They waged war with the Germans.

b) The preposition cum may be omitted in military expressions, if the noun in the ablative is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

Multīs mīlitibus flūmen trānsiī, I crossed the river with many soldiers.

Cum tribus legionibus flumen trānsiī, I crossed the river with three legions.

85 ABLATIVE OF MANNER

The ablative, frequently with the preposition cum, is used to express manner.

Magnā cum cūrā (or Magnā cūrā) omnia parāvimus, We have prepared everything with great care.

a) Some common words have no preposition in this construction. Among these are jūre, justly (with justice), injūriā, unjustly (with injustice), meritō, deservedly (with merit), cāsū, accidentally (by chance).

86 ABLATIVE OF MEANS

A word which denotes the means used to accomplish an act is in the ablative without a preposition.

Gallī gladiīs pugnābant, The Gauls fought with swords.

a) The route by which one goes may be denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

Breviore itinere rediimus, We returned by a shorter route.

87 ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree of difference between two things.

Arbor decem pedibus altior mūrō (or quam mūrus) est, The tree is ten feet higher than the wall.
paucīs post annīs, a few years later, literally, after by a few years

88 ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

Duce captō, hostēs fūgērunt, The leader having been captured, the enemy fled.

a) An ablative absolute is frequently translated by a clause introduced by when, after, if, since, although, or by a prepositional phrase. Thus, the ablative absolute in the preceding example may be translated, When the leader had been captured or After the capture of the leader.

89 ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, The Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in courage.

90 ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

homō magnā virtūte, a man of great courage

a) In many phrases, such as the example above, either the ablative or the genitive of description (56) may be used. But physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative, and measure always by the genitive.

91 ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

The ablative is sometimes used to express cause.

Hostes timore fugere coeperunt, The enemy began to flee on account of fear.

a) Sometimes a preposition (ab, dē, or ex) is used with the ablative of cause.

Ex commutatione rerum dolent, They grieve because of the change of circumstances.

b) Cause is often expressed by propter or ob with the accusative.

propter timorem, on account of fear

92 ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENT VERBS

The deponents utor, use, fruor, enjoy, fungor, perform, potior, gain possession of, and vescor, feed upon, take their objects in the ablative.

Trojānī et Latīnī eodem jūre atque nomine ūsī sunt, The Trojans and Latins used the same law and name.

a) Occasionally the genitive is used with potior instead of the ablative.

Urbis potīrī cupiunt, They wish to gain possession of the city.

93 THE VOCATIVE CASE

The vocative denotes the person addressed.

Ubi, Marce, pater tuus est? Marcus, where is your father?

a) The vocative regularly stands after one or more words of the sentence.

94 THE LOCATIVE CASE

With names of cities, towns, and small islands and with domus, place where is denoted by the locative case. The locative has the same form as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions. In the singular of nouns of the third declension and in all plural nouns it has the same form as the ablative.

Romae, at Rome Bibracte, at Bibracte

domī, at home Athēnīs, at Athens

ADJECTIVES

95 ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

An adjective which is directly connected with the noun which it modifies is called an attributive adjective.

vir fortis, a brave man

arbor alta, a tall tree

96 PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

An adjective which is connected with its noun by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a predicate adjective.

Vir fortis est, The man is brave.

97 SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives and participles are sometimes used as substantives (nouns or pronouns). Words meaning many, all, others, few, and the like are especially common in this use.

Multī tē laudant, Many praise you. Omnia parāta sunt, All things are prepared.

In military expressions nostrī is used to mean our men or our soldiers. Other possessives are sometimes used with a similar meaning, as tuī or vestrī, your men, your soldiers.

98 ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

Among the most common adjectives which tell what part of an object is meant instead of telling what kind, are summus, medius, īmus, and extrēmus. Notice that the genitive is not used with these words; the English translation is a noun, followed by of.

summus mons, the highest part (top) of the mountain medius collis, the middle of the hill medio colle, halfway up (on the middle of) the hill

99 ADJECTIVES WITH ADVERBIAL FORCE

Sometimes an adjective modifying the subject or object is best translated by an adverb.

Invītī vēnērunt, They came unwillingly.

100 TRANSLATION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs are commonly translated by the corresponding English forms. But sometimes the comparative is translated by a positive form preceded by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by a positive form preceded by *very*.

altior, rather high

altissimus, very high

VERBS

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

101 INDICATIVE IN MAIN CLAUSES

The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply that the answer expected is a statement of fact.

Caesar aciem înstruxit, Caesar drew up a line of battle.

Quid Considius dixit? What did Considius say?

102 INDICATIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

The indicative is used in subordinate clauses after the conjunctions quamquam, although, postquam, after, ubi, when, and some others.

Postquam id animadvertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subduxit, When he noticed this, Caesar drew up his troops on the nearest hill.

103 RELATIVE CLAUSES

A clause introduced by a relative pronoun commonly takes its verb in the indicative, except in the special uses described later. (See especially 107 a, and 115.)

Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, They are nearest the Germans, who live across the Rhine.

NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES WITH QUOD

A clause introduced by quod meaning that, with its verb in the indicative, is sometimes used as the subject or object of a verb, or in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

Haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Haeduos appropinquare cognoverant, This consideration also influenced them—[the fact] that they knew the Haeduans were approaching.

a) Sometimes quod is translated as to the fact that, and the clause it introduces then serves as an adverbial modifier, loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

105 IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*, and occur only in the third person singular.

Pluit, it rains

a) The impersonal expressions necesse est, it is necessary, mos est, it is the custom, oportet, it is right (one ought), convenit, it is agreed, licet, it is permitted, are commonly followed by the infinitive. With licet and necesse est a dative often occurs which becomes the subject in an English translation.

Licet Helvētiīs id facere, The Helvetians are permitted to do this (literally, It is permitted to the Helvetians to do this).

b) Certain intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the passive, the subject in translation being suggested by the meaning of the verb.

Diū et ācriter pugnātum est, The fight was long and fierce (literally, It was fought long and fiercely).

This use is particularly common with the Future Passive Participle. When the Dative of Agent occurs in this construction, it is translated into English as the subject.

Caesarī properandum est, Caesar must hasten (literally, It must be hastened by Caesar).

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

106 SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE (VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE)

The subjunctive is used to express an act as willed by some person.

Cum volet, congrediatur, When he wishes, let him come on.

a) The negative used with the volitive subjunctive is $n\bar{e}$.

Nē diūtius maneāmus, Let us not remain longer.

107 CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

A subordinate clause which expresses purpose has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is commonly introduced by **ut** or (if negative) by **nē**.

Dīmīsit igitur nūntios ut causam itineris docērent, Therefore he sent out messengers to explain the reason for the journey.

Mīlitēs missī sunt nē urbs caperētur, Soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.

a) Sometimes a purpose clause is introduced by a relative pronoun. This form of purpose clause is found chiefly after mitto and its compounds, and after relinquo and a few other verbs.

Puerum mittam quī tē adjuvet, I will send a boy to help you (literally, who shall help you).

b) The clause of purpose may be translated by a simple infinitive, by an infinitive with *in order*, or by a clause with *that* or *in order that*. The following translations are possible for the sentence Vēnī ut tē vidērem:

I came to see you. I came that I might see you. I came in order to see you. I came in order that I might see you.

108

A purpose clause which contains a comparative form of an adjective or adverb is usually introduced by quō instead of ut.

Castella munit quo facilius eos prohibère posset ne transeant, He fortified strongholds in order that (by which) he could more easily prevent them from crossing. A subordinate clause which expresses result has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is introduced by ut, or occasionally by a relative pronoun. The negative is non.

Columba tam celeriter volāvit ut incolumis ēvāderet, The dove flew so fast that it escaped unharmed.

Est nēmō tam sapiēns quī numquam erret, There is no one so wise that he never errs.

Tempestates tantae erant ut ex portu proficisci non auderemus, The storms were so great that we did not dare to set out from the harbor.

110 NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES OF DESIRE

Verbs expressing an idea of desire, such as those meaning to command, urge, persuade, request, and the like, may take as object (or as subject in the passive) a clause introduced by ut or nē with its verb in the subjunctive.

Nüntius Jāsonī persuāsit ut rēgī auxilium ferret, The messenger persuaded Jason to bring the king help.

Mīlitibus imperāvit nē saxa jacerent, He ordered the soldiers not to throw stones.

- a) These clauses are frequently translated by an infinitive with a subject, as in the examples above.
- b) Such expressions as jūs est, there is a law, and consilium est, the plan is, may be followed by a substantive clause telling what the law or plan is to which reference is made.
- c) The verbs jubeō, order, and vetō, forbid, regularly take an infinitive with subject accusative, instead of a clause with the subjunctive. Verbs meaning to wish sometimes take the infinitive with subject accusative.

Legionem flumen transire jussit, He ordered the legion to cross the river.

111 NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES OF FACT

Verbs meaning to accomplish and impersonal verbs meaning it happens, it results, it remains, and the like, take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by ut. The negative is non.

Itaque fiebat ut minus lātē vagārentur, So it came about that they wandered less widely.

a) Such expressions as mos est, the custom is, may be followed by a substantive clause with ut, telling what the custom is to which reference is made.

112

CLAUSES OF FEAR

Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by $n\bar{e}$ translated that or ut translated that . . . not.

Rēgulus timēbat nē cibus uxōrī ac līberīs dēesset, Regulus feared that food for his wife and children might be lacking.

Timeō ut sē fortiter dēfendat, I fear that he will not defend himself bravely.

a) Sometimes nē... non is used instead of ut with words of fear.

Timeo në së non defendat, I fear that he will not defend himself.

b) Such expressions as periculum est may take the same construction as that used with words of fear.

Perīculum est nē cohors capiātur, There is danger that the cohort will be captured.

c) The present subjunctive in clauses depending on words of fear is often translated by the English future indicative.

113 ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated or expected.

Vēnit ut tempus extraheret dum novae copiae ex Āfrica advenīrent, He came that he might gain time until fresh troops might arrive from Africa.

- a) The anticipatory subjunctive is used mainly after words meaning until or before (dum, antequam, priusquam). Occasionally this use is found after cum meaning when.
- b) Sometimes the indicative is used after words meaning *until* or *before*, to state a new fact which is of importance in the narrative or to represent an actual event as looked back upon.

114 CLAUSES OF PROVISO

The conjunctions dum, modo, and dummodo, when meaning provided, provided that, or if only, take the subjunctive.

Urbs salva erit, dum tū exeās, The city will be safe, provided you withdraw.

115 SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION

A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is sometimes used to describe the antecedent of the relative.

Pauci erant qui arma ferre non possent, There were a few who could not bear arms.

115-cont.

- a) Such clauses are used when the antecedents are indefinite or negative and with expressions of existence and nonexistence, such as sunt quī, there are those who, est nēmō quī, there is no one who.
- b) A clause of description which is parenthetical in character or which has a personal pronoun or a proper noun as antecedent takes the indicative.

116 CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

A subordinate clause introduced by cum meaning since has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum boves caudis in antrum traherentur, putavit Herculem hos non inventurum esse, Since the cattle were dragged into the cave by their tails, he thought Hercules would not find them.

a) Sometimes a causal clause with its verb in the subjunctive is introduced by a relative pronoun.

Fēlīx es quī tot amīcos habeās, You are fortunate, since you have (literally, who have) so many friends.

117 CUM CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

A subordinate clause introduced by cum meaning although has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum bovës conspiceret, Cacum vix cernere potuit, Although he saw the cattle, he could hardly see Cacus.

a) The principal clause with which a concessive clause is connected frequently, but not always, contains the adverb tamen.

Hercules, cum intellegeret periculum magnum esse, tamen negotium suscēpit, Although Hercules knew that the danger was great, nevertheless he undertook the task.

b) A concessive clause is sometimes introduced by a form of the relative pronoun.

Tum Cethēgus, quī paulō ante aliquid respondisset, repente conticuit, Then Cethegus, although he (literally. who) had made some reply a little before, suddenly became silent.

118 CUM DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

The imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by cum meaning when. Such a clause describes the situation at the time of the main act.

Cum paulum sē ex timōre recēpisset, clāmāvit sē velle monstrum in Orcum redūcī, When he had recovered a little from his terror, he cried that he wished that the monster would be led back to the underworld.

a) If the clause with cum is used to make definite the time denoted by the adverb tum or any other word of time, it takes the indicative.

Tum cum hostes impetum faciebant, auxilium non missum est, At the time when the enemy were making an attack, help was not sent.

b) If the verb of the cum clause denotes repeated action, it is commonly in the indicative. In such clauses cum is sometimes translated whenever.

Cum nāvem hostium vīderant, ad eam properābant, Whenever they saw a ship of the enemy, they hurried toward it.

c) The present or future indicative, and occasionally the perfect indicative, may be used with cum meaning when.

119 CLAUSES WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

1) Words and phrases of doubt, when accompanied by a negative, are followed by quin and the subjunctive.

Non dubito quin Belgae fortes sint, I do not doubt that the Belgians are brave.

Non est dubium quin hoc fecerit, There is no doubt that he did this.

2) Verbs of hindrance, prevention, and check are followed by a subjunctive clause introduced by quīn, quōminus, or nē. Quīn is used only after a negative, nē only after an affirmative clause, and quōminus after either an affirmative or a negative clause.

Hostes impedivimus ne (or quominus) transirent, We prevented the enemy from crossing.

Hostes non impedivimus quin (or quominus) transirent, We did not prevent the enemy from crossing.

Rex non dubitabat quin Argonautae sibi auxilium ferrent, The king did not doubt that the Argonauts would bring him help.

120 INDIRECT QUESTIONS

An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

Jāson dēmonstrāvit quam ob causam vēnisset, Jason explained why (for what reason) he had come.

121 SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

Columba tam celeriter per medium spatium volāvit ut priusquam rūpēs conflixerint incolumis ēvāderet, The dove flew through the space in the middle so fast that it escaped unharmed before the rocks came together. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause to indicate that it is a quotation, although no main clause of indirect discourse stands in the context.

Servos qui ad eos perfügissent poposcit, He demanded the slaves who had fled to them (who he said had fled to them).

123 CAUSAL CLAUSES WITH QUOD, QUIA, AND QUONIAM

Clauses of reason introduced by quod, quia, and quoniam take the indicative to denote a reason given directly by the speaker or writer. Such clauses, however, take the subjunctive if the reason is given as a quotation from someone else or from the thought or utterance of the writer or speaker at another time.

Profectus est quod verēbātur, He set out because he was afraid. Grātiās consulī ēgērunt quod rem pūblicam servāvisset, They thanked the consul because (as they said) he had saved the state.

124 IMPERATIVE MOOD

The imperative mood is used to express commands.

Dēsilīte, commīlitones, Jump down, comrades.

a) While the English imperative is used only in the present tense and in the second person, the Latin imperative has a future as well as a present. The future has the second and third persons; the present has only the second person.

125 NEGATIVE COMMANDS

Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are commonly expressed by the imperative of nolo (nolo, nolote) with the infinitive of the verb denoting the act forbidden.

Noli hic manere, Do not remain here.

a) Sometimes the perfect subjunctive with $n\bar{e}$ is used to express a negative command.

Në hic manseris, Do not remain here.

INFINITIVE

126 COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

An infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb. When thus used, it denotes another action of the same subject as that of the verb on which it depends.

Omnës redire volunt, All wish to return.

127

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

An infinitive, with or without accusative subject, may be used as the subject of many impersonal verbs and also of **est** with a predicate adjective or noun.

> Eum manēre oportet, He ought to stay. Mē īre necesse est, I must go.

a) The subjunctive is sometimes used with necesse est and with a few verbs which commonly take the infinitive.

128 INFINITIVE WITH ACCUSATIVE SUBJECT

1) An infinitive with accusative subject is used with words of saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing, and the like (Indirect Discourse).

Caesar dīcit Belgās omnium Gallōrum fortissimōs esse, Caesar says the Belgians are the bravest of all the Gauls.

2) An infinitive with accusative subject is regularly used with jubeō, order, vetō, forbid, and sometimes with patior, permit, cōgō, compel, volō, wish, nōlō, be unwilling, mālō, prefer.

Dux milites impetum facere jussit, The leader ordered the soldiers to make an attack.

129 HISTORICAL INFINITIVE

Occasionally an infinitive is used in narration as the equivalent of the imperfect indicative or of the perfect denoting a simple past act.

Nostrī prīmō fortiter pugnāre, At first our men fought bravely.

a) The subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative case.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

130 NONCOMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

A conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false has both verbs in the indicative.

- Sī hostēs tūtī effūgērunt, nostrī eōs capere nōn cōnātī sunt, If the enemy escaped safely (literally, safe), our men did not try to capture them.
- a) Sometimes an imperative or a subjunctive expressing will is used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of this type instead of an indicative.

Sī pācem cupitis, arma trādite, If you wish peace, surrende your arms.

A future more vivid conditional sentence refers to future time and gives no indication as to the attitude of the speaker or writer toward the fulfillment of the condition. The verbs are in the future (or future perfect) tense.

Sī auxilium mittētur, oppidum dēfendētur, If aid is (literally, shall be) sent, the town will be defended.

- a) The verb of the condition in a sentence of this type is commonly translated by the present indicative with future meaning, as in the example above. Sometimes the future with *shall* is used.
- b) The future perfect may be used in either clause to represent an act as occurring before some expressed or implied future time.
- c) The future more vivid conditional sentence is merely a non-committal conditional sentence in future time.

132 FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

A future less vivid conditional sentence refers to future time, and implies doubt on the part of the writer or speaker as to the fulfillment of the condition. The conclusion refers to a future act or situation as conceivable or imaginable without asserting that it will take place or be realized. The verbs are in the present (or perfect) subjunctive.

Sī mīlitēs flümen trānseant, multī interficiantur, If the soldiers should cross the river, many would be killed.

a) The perfect may be used in either clause to show that an act, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

133 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

A conditional sentence which implies that the condition is not true has its verbs in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive, the imperfect to refer to present time and the past perfect to refer to past time.

Sī Haeduī majōrēs cōpiās habērent, oppida dēfenderent, If the Haeduans had larger forces, they would defend the towns.
Sī Haeduī majōrēs cōpiās habuissent, oppida dēfendissent, If the Haeduans had had larger forces, they would have defended the towns.

Commonly the tense of the verbs in the two clauses is the same, but the imperfect may be used in one clause and the past perfect in the other, if the sense requires.

Indirect discourse is used with words of saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, and the like. The use of moods is as follows:

- 1) A main clause expressing a statement has its verb in the infinitive with subject accusative.
- 2) A main clause expressing a command has its verb in the subjunctive.
 - 3) All subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

Promīsit se vellus trāditūrum esse sī Jāson labores prius perfecisset, He promised that he would give up the fleece if Jason would first do the tasks.

135 PARTICIPLES

The Latin verb has four participles: present active, perfect passive, future active, and future passive.

a) Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs. The perfect participle of a deponent is usually active in meaning, but it is occasionally used as a passive.

136 PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The present active participle denotes an act taking place at the same time as the main verb. It is less frequently used than the English present participle. For declension see page 317, 14.

Nostrī in hostēs advenientēs impetum fēcērunt, Our men made an attack on the enemy [as they were] coming up.

a) The English present participle is often used with a form of to be to make the progressive form of the verb. Thus, he is marching, we were standing. The Latin present participle is never so used.

137 PERFECT PARTICIPLE

The perfect passive participle denotes an act which took place before the time of the main verb. It is declined like bonus, page 315, 9.

Legiō ā Caesare praemissa castra mūniēbat, The legion, having been sent ahead by Caesar, was fortifying the camp.

138 FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The future active participle is used chiefly with forms of sum to denote an act which someone intends to do or is about to do. It is declined like bonus, page 315, 9.

Bellum cum Gallis gestüri erant, They intended to (or were about to) wage war with the Gauls.

The future passive participle is used chiefly with forms of sum to denote an act which ought to be done or must be done by someone. It is declined like bonus.

Id Romanis faciendum erat, This had to be done by the Romans, or The Romans had to do this.

a) The future passive participle of a deponent verb is passive in meaning.

140 GERUND

The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of the singular number.

a) The genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with an adjective or noun. With the ablative causa it expresses purpose.

cupidus cēnandī, desirous of dining resistendī causā, for the purpose (sake) of resisting

- b) The dative of the gerund is rarely used.
- c) The accusative of the gerund is frequently used as the object of the preposition ad to express purpose. It is never used as a direct object.

ad proficiscendum, for setting out, to set out

d) The ablative of the gerund is used to express means or cause, or as object of the prepositions ab, $d\bar{e}$, ex, in.

pugnando, by fighting

in quaerendo, on inquiring

The infinitive is used to supply the place of the missing nominative of the gerund. The infinitive is also used instead of the gerund as an accusative of direct object.

141 GERUNDIVE

The future passive participle is often used as a verbal adjective in a phrase which has the same meaning as a gerund with an object. Such a verbal adjective is called a gerundive.

spēs urbis capiendae, hope of capturing the city

a) The case uses of the gerundive are in general the same as those of the gerund.

cupidus oppidī expugnandī, desirous of storming the town auxiliī ferendī causā, for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid ad eās rēs cōnficiendās, for accomplishing these things dē auxiliō mittendō, about (concerning) sending aid lapidibus portandīs, by carrying stones

142

DISTINCTION BETWEEN GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

The following distinctions between the gerund and the gerundive are to be observed:

GERUND

GERUNDIVE
An adjective

A noun
Active in meaning
Neuter gender
Used only in the singular

Passive in meaning All genders Both numbers

No nominative

All cases

a) The genitive of the gerund, and also the ablative, when used without a preposition, sometimes take a direct object. But no form of the gerund standing as the object of a preposition can have a direct object. The gerundive must be used instead.

143 SUPINE

The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative. The accusative is used to express purpose in clauses in which the finite verb expresses motion.

Lēgātos mittunt rogātum auxilium, They sent envoys to ask aid.

a) Only three words commonly occur in the ablative: dictū, factū, and vīsū. They are used as ablatives of respect with a few adjectives.

mīrābile dictū, remarkable to say (believe it or not) optimum factū, the best [thing] to do horribile vīsū, horrible to see

144 TENSES

The tenses of the Latin indicative are the present, imperfect, future, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. In the subjunctive only the present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect are found.

145 PRESENT

The present tense, as in English, denotes present time.

- a) In a narrative of past events the present indicative is sometimes used to present the situation more vividly to the reader or the hearer. This is called the historical present.
- b) The present subjunctive is sometimes used with future force. This is especially common in clauses of fear.
- A clause introduced by dum meaning while takes its verb in the present indicative.

Dum haec geruntur, ex urbe profectus sum, While this was going on, I set out from the city.

a) Dum meaning as long as may take any tense of the indicative which the sense requires.

147

IMPERFECT

The imperfect tense represents a past act in progress or a past situation continuing.

- a) The imperfect indicative is sometimes used to denote a customary act or one of frequent occurrence in past time.
- b) The imperfect indicative is often translated by the progressive form of the English past tense—was praising, was warning, etc., but sometimes the simple English past is used as its equivalent.
- c) The imperfect subjunctive is sometimes used to express action which was at a past time thought of as future.

148 FUTURE

The future tense, as in English, denotes future time.

a) When used with conjunctions meaning if or when, the future tense is regularly translated by the English present.

149 PERFECT

The perfect tense has two uses.

- 1) It may be equivalent in meaning to an English present perfect (translated with the auxiliary verbs have or has).
- 2) It may be equivalent to the English past tense, referring to an indefinite past act.
- a) In future less vivid conditional sentences the perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to a future act which, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

150 PAST PERFECT

The past perfect is used to represent an act as having occurred before some expressed or implied past time.

- a) The past perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to an act which was thought of in the past as likely to occur before some expressed or implied future time.
- b) The past perfect is sometimes used in subordinate clauses to denote repeated action.

151 FUTURE PERFECT

The future perfect is used to show that an act will occur before some expressed or implied future time.

a) The future perfect is used more frequently in Latin than in English.

152 SEQUENCE OF TENSES

The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause usually bears a definite relation to the tense in the principal clause. This relation is called the sequence of tenses.

- 1) If the main verb is present, future, or future perfect, the dependent subjunctive is present or perfect.
- 2) If the main verb is imperfect, perfect, or past perfect, the dependent subjunctive is imperfect or past perfect.

A perfect indicative which is translated by an English present perfect may be followed by a present or perfect subjunctive.

- 153 Exceptions to the rule for the sequence of tenses are sometimes found:
- 1) In a clause of result a perfect subjunctive is sometimes used where ordinary sequence of tenses would demand an imperfect.
- 2) The historical present may be followed either by the tenses which would follow a perfect or by the tenses which would follow a present.
- 3) Sometimes a strongly marked difference between the time ideas of the subordinate clause and the main clause leads to a seeming disregard of the sequence of tenses.

PREPOSITIONS

The following prepositions take their objects in the ablative case: \bar{a} (ab), cum, $d\bar{e}$, \bar{e} (ex), prae, pro, sine.

Cum is attached to the end of the following words: mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, and vōbīs. This is called the enclitic use of cum. The word is also commonly used in this way with quō, quā, and quibus.

mēcum, with me tēcum, with you quibuscum, with whom

155 The prepositions in and sub are used with the ablative in expressions denoting existence or continuance in a place; they are used with the accusative in expressions denoting motion toward a place.

In urbe mānsī, I remained in the city. In urbem vēnī, I came into the city.

- All prepositions found in this book except those given above take their objects in the accusative.
- 157 When the object of a monosyllabic preposition is a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition sometimes stands between the adjective and the noun.

magno cum periculo, with great danger

SUMMARY OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

LONG	SHORT	$\mathbf{ae} = i$ in $like$
$\bar{\mathbf{a}} = a \text{ in } father$	$\mathbf{a} = \text{first } a \text{ in } aha$	$\mathbf{a}\mathbf{u} = ou$ in round
$\bar{\mathbf{e}} = \mathbf{e}$ in they	e = e in net	oe = oi in boil
$\bar{i} = i$ in machine	i = i in this	ei = ei in $vein$
$\bar{o} = o$ in hole	o = o in domain	eu = short e + oo
$\bar{\mathbf{u}} = u$ in rude	u = u in $full$	$ui \ almost = ui \ in \ ruin$

CONSONANTS

The consonants are, in general like English. But note that:

c is always like k	p is always as in spin	t is always as in stop		
g is always as in go	$\mathbf{q}\mathbf{u} = qu$ in $quick$	\mathbf{x} is always like ks		
$\mathbf{j} = y$ as in yes	s is always as in say	bs = ps; $bt = pt$; $v = w$		
ch = c in can ; $ph = p$ in put ; $th = t$ in ten				

SYLLABLES

A syllable must always have a vowel or a diphthong.

- 1. A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: pō-nō, ha-be-ō.
- 2. Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows: par-va, ter-ra.

EXCEPTIONS. (1) If the first of the two consonants is a stop consonant¹ and the second is 1 or r, both are taken with the vowel following: pa-trī. (2) In the division of a compound verb into syllables, the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb: ad-est.

3. When there are more than two consonants between two vowels, all but the first go with the following vowel: ob-scū-ra.

ACCENT

- 1. All words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable: $a'm\bar{o}$, lau'dant.
- 2. In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the penult (the syllable before the last) if the penult is long; that is, if it has a long vowel (mo-nē'mus) or a diphthong (a-moe'na) or if it ends in a consonant (in-ter'dum, pu-el'la).

EXCEPTION. If the first of two consonants is a stop consonant¹ (or f, ph, th, ch) and the second is 1 or r, they do not make the penult long.

3. If the penult is not long, the accent falls on the antepenult (the second syllable from the last): pe-cū'ni-a, a-gri'co-la, e-pis'tu-la.

¹The stop consonants are b, p, d, t, g, c, k, q. The combinations ch, ph, th are treated as stop consonants.

Since the meaning of many Latin words can readily be deduced from related Latin words or from English derivatives, such connections are often pointed out in this Vocabulary. For instance, abdūcō is followed by "(p. 84)," signifying that on page 84 the formation of compound verbs is discussed. In the same way, "absēns (p. 148)" means that the form and meaning of this adjective are explained there.

A

- ā, ab (also abs in some compounds), prep. with abl., from, by, at; (place) away from; on, on the side of; (time) since, after; (distance) away, off
- abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), put away, hide
- abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead or take away; carry off
- abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go away, retire
- abjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), cast away, throw down; throw
- ablātus, -a, -um, see auferō
- abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut or tear off or away
- absēns, gen. -sentis, adj. (p. 148), absent, away
- absentia, -ae, f. (p. 200), absence
- abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (p. 180), hold back, refrain, abstain
- absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus (p. 84), be away, be distant, be absent; refrain from; be lacking
- abundō, -āre, -āvī, —, overflow; abound
- ac, see atque
- accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 180), come near or to; be added, be in addition to
- accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set fire to, light; inflame
- acceptus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), acceptable, pleasing
- accidō, -cidere, -cidī, (p. 180), fall to or on, fall; happen, occur; happen to
- accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), take, take in, receive, accept; hear; endure

- accurrō, -currere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum (p. 180), run to, come up hurriedly
- accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse, blame
- ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. (p. 124), sharp; spirited, bold, eager, fierce
- aciēs, -ēī, f. (p. 124), tip, point, edge; battle line, battle array; encounter, battle; flash (of the eye)
- ācriter, *adv* (p. 124), sharply, vigorously, fiercely, severely, bravely
- acūtus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 64), sharp, pointed
- ad, prep. with acc., to, against, at, toward, according to, among; (motion) up to, toward, near to; (position) near, beside; (purpose) for; (time) up to, until, on; (number) about; adv., about
- addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), add, attach; give
- addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead or bring to, lead against, conduct, bring; draw to, draw tight; induce, influence
- adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go or come up to, approach; visit; face
- adeō, adv., to such an extent or degree,
 so, so much; in fact
- adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus, stick, adhere
- adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (p. 180), apply; summon, admit, invite; bring, supply
- adhūc, adv., until now, as yet; still
- adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (p. 180), drive (to), compel, urge; hurl, drive (in); ram in; haul, move
- aditus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), way of approach, approach, entrance; access

- adjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180),
 hurl toward or on, throw; add,
 add to
- adjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum (p. 84), join to, add; associate
- adjuvō, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtum (p. 84), aid, help; support, sustain
- administrö, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, manage, administer, attend to, do, direct, govern
- admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 84), wonder, wonder at, be surprised; admire
- admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), admit, receive; let go; commit; ıncur
- admodum, adv., to the limit; fully,
 very, very much
- adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī, adultum, grow up
- adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum (p. 84), rise against; attack
- adorno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), adorn, decorate
- adorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), worship, adore
- adsum, -esse, adfuī or affuī, -futūrus (p. 180), be present, be here, be near, come
- adulēscēns, gen. -entis, adj., youthful, young; m. and f. as noun, young man or woman, a youth; the younger, junior
- adulescentia, -ae, f. (p. 200), youth
- advena, -ae, m. and f., stranger
- adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come to, come up, arrive
- adventus, -ūs, m. (pp. 158, 238), approach, coming, arrival
- adversus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), turned toward, facing, in front, opposite; unfavorable, hostile
- adversus, prep. with acc., against;
 opposite, facing
- advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (p. 84), turn to; proceed against; animum advertere, observe, notice
- aedificium, -ī, n. (p. 200), building, house

- aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), build, construct
- aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick, feeble
 aegrē, adv., painfully; with difficulty;
 with grief or resentment; aegrē
 ferre, be indignant, resent
- aēneus, -a, -um, adj., of copper, of bronze, brazen
- aequitās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), fairness, evenness of temper
- aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make even
 or equal; equal
- aequor, -oris, n., level surface; sea
 aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, level;
 equal; just, favorable; calm
- āēr, āëris, acc. āëra, m., air, sky
- aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; money;
 aes aliēnum, debt
- aestās, -ātis, f., summer; initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer
- aestimātiō, -ōnis, f., valuation
- **aestus,** $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$, m., a boiling; heat; tide
- aetās, -ātis, f., time of life, age; lifetime, generation
- afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum (p. 180), bring or carry to; bring forward; report
- afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), do to; affect, treat; visit with; afflict; magnō dolore afficere, annoy very much
- afflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, damage greatly; afflict
- affligō, -fligere, -flixī, -flictum (p. 238), strike, dash down; break, damage; afflict
- ager, agrī, m., field, land, farm;
 country, territory
- agger, -eris, m., mound, siege mound, rampart, earthwork; materials for a rampart; pile
- aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum (p. 180), advance against, attack; approach
- agmen, -inis, n. (p. 238), marching army, marching column; army; agmen claudere, bring up the rear; novissimum agmen, the rear, rear line or column

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive; bring up; do, act, perform, attend to; spend, pass; hold (courts, assemblies); discuss, confer; grātiās agere, give thanks, thank

agricola, -ae, m., farmer agricultūra, -ae, f., agricultūre āla, -ae, f., wing; squadron (of cavalry) alacritās, -ātis, f., activity, energy, eagerness

albus, -a, -um, adj., white
aliās, adv., at another time; at another
place, elsewhere

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., of another, another's, of others, others'; foreign, strange; unfavorable; aes aliēnum (another's money), debt

aliō, adv., to another place

aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, adj., some, any aliquis, aliquid, pron., someone, somebody, something; anyone, anything

aliter, adv., otherwise, differently; on any other conditions; aliter . . . ac, otherwise than, differently from

alius, -a, -ud, adj., another, other; different, else; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; pl., some . . . others

alloquor, -loqui, -locutus sum (p. 180), speak to, address, greet

almus, -a, -um, adj., nourishing, fostering

alō, -ere, aluī, altum, nourish, support; rear; sustain, increase

alter, altera, alterum, adj., one of two, the other, a second, another; alter...alter, the one...the other; dië altero, on the next day

altitūdō, -inis, f. (p. 200), altitude, height; depth

altus, -a, -um, adj., nourished, wellgrown; high, lofty; deep; n. as
noun, the deep, the sea

alumna, -ae, f., foster daughter alumnus, -ī, m., foster son, ward alveus, -ī, m., small boat amābilis, -e, adj. (pp. 124, 148), worthy of love, friendly ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj., both

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, walk
amīcitia, -ae, f. (p. 200), friendship
amīcus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 124), friendly, loving, kind; m. as noun, friend
amita, -ae, f., aunt

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), lose; let slip, miss; send away amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, love, like amoenus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant amor, -ōris, m. (p. 124), love

āmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move away, remove

amplius, -i, n., more, greater amount amplius, compar. adv., more, in addition; more generously

amplus, -a, -um, adj., large; great, noted; honorable, splendid, magnificent, generous

an, conj., used in double questions, or, whether; utrum ... an, whether ... or; used alone, introducing a question, or is it that? can it be that?

ancora, -ae, f., anchor; ancoram tollere, weigh anchor, set sail

angelus, -ī, m., messenger; angel angustia, -ae, f. (p. 200), narrowness; usually pl., narrow place or pass; difficulties

angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow anima, -ae, f., soul, mind

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (p. 238), turn the mind to, observe, notice, perceive

animal, animālis, n., (p. 21), living creature, animal

animus, -ī, m., soul, mind, courage, spirit; feeling, heart, disposition, nature; high spirit, arrogance; aequus animus, calmness; animum advertere, observe, notice; ex animō, sincerely; habēre in animō, intend

annus, -ī, m., year

ante, prep. with acc., before, in front of; adv., before, formerly, previously, ago

anteā, adv., formerly, previously, before, first antequam or ante quam, conj., before

antīguitus-attribuō

- antiquitus, adv., in former times, long ago
- antiquus, -a, -um, adj., old, former, ancient; m. pl. as noun, the ancients
- antrum, -ī, n., cave, cavern
- ānxius, -a, -um, adj., anxious, troubled
- aper, apri, m., wild boar
- aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum, open, open up, make accessible; establish; reveal, make known
- apertissimē, adv., very openly; very
 frankly
- apertus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), open, exposed, unprotected; plain, frank
- appāritor, -ōris, m., servant
- appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call by name, address, salute; call on, appeal to; name, call
- appello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum (p. 180), drive or bring to; with or without navem, bring to land, bring up, land
- appetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum (p. 180), strive after, seek; approach, be at hand
- appōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, serve appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, come near, approach
- apud, prep. with acc., at, near, before; among, in, with; to; in the vicinity of; in the possession of
- aqua, -ae, f., water; aqueduct
- aquila, -ae, f., eagle; eagle (of metal, as a Roman standard)
- āra, -ae, f., altar
- arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, judge, think, believe, consider
- arbor, -oris, f., tree
- arca, -ae, f., chest, box
- arcessō, -ere, arcessīvī, arcessītum, send for, summon, invite; seek
- arcus, $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m., bow, arch
- ārdēns, gen., -entis, adj. (p. 148), burning, blazing
- ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, be on fire, blaze, burn up, be consumed; be inflamed (with emotion)
- arēna, -ae, f., sand; arena

- argentum, -ī, n., silver
- āridus, -a, -um, adj., dry, parched, arıd; n. as noun, dry land
- ariēs, -etis, m., ram; battering ram
 arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms, weapons,
 implements, equipment; tools
- armātūra, -ae, f., armor, equipment; with levis, light-armed
- armātus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), armed, equipped, in arms; m. pl. as noun, armed men, troops
- armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), arm, equip, fit out
- arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plow
- arroganter, adv., arrogantly
- arrogantia, -ae, f., arrogance, presumption, insolence
- ars, artis, f., skill, art; business, profession; craft, cunning; ars medica, medical skill
- artificium, -i, n., handicraft; trick, device
- arx, arcis, f., citadel, fortress
- ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, climb, mount, ascend; go aboard
- ascēnsus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), ascent, approach
- aspectum, -ī, n. (p. 238), view, aspect aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectum, look at, look on; examine
- assiduus, -a, -um, adj., close at hand;
 continual
- assimilis, -e, adj., similar, like
- at, conj. (used to contradict or introduce objections), but, yet, at least; but (you say)
- atque (before consonants ac), conj., and; and also, and even, and especially; after words of likeness and unlikeness, as, than, from; simul atque, as soon as
- ātrium, -ī, n., atrium, principal room of a Roman house
- attineō,-tinēre,-tinuī,-tentum, detain attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum (p. 180), touch, reach; border on; arrive at
- attribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum (p. 180), allot, assign, hand over

auctor, -ōris, m., promoter, originator, leader; cause; supporter

auctōritās, -ātis, f., influence, authority, prestige, dignity

audācia, -ae, f. (pp. 124, 200), daring, boldness; audacity, presumption

audācter, adv. (p. 124), boldly, bravely, fiercely

audāx, gen. -ācis, adj. (p. 124), daring, bold; presumptuous

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, semideponent (p. 124), dare; be courageous

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear, listen to; learn

auditor, - \bar{o} ris, m. (p. 200), hearer, auditor

auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum (p. 180), carry away, remove; destroy

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, enlarge, increase, add to

augurium, -ī, n., augury, prophecy,
omen

augustus, -a, -um, adj., majestic, venerable

aura, -ae, f., breeze, wind

aureus, -a, -um, adj., of gold, golden aurīga, -ae, m., drīver (of a chariot), charioteer

aurōra, -ae, f., dawn, morning aurum, - \bar{i} , n., gold

aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or

autem, conj. (never stands first in its clause), but, on the other hand, however; furthermore, moreover

auxilium, -i, n. (p. 200), help, aid, support; resource, resort; pl., auxiliary troops; reinforcements

avāritia, -ae, f., greed, avarice

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum (p. 84), carry off, take away, carry away

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (p. 84), turn away, turn aside, avert, divert

avidē, adv., greedily

avis, avis, f., bird

āvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus (p. 84), fly away; flee away, flee

avus, -i, m., grandfather

R

balteus, -ī, m., girdle, belt; sword belt
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign,
barbarous, barbarian, savage, rude;
m. pl. as noun, barbarians

beātus, -a, -um, adj., happy, blessed, fortunate

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. (pp. 124, 148), warlıke

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pp. 124, 238), carry on war, wage war

bellum, -ī, n., war; bellum gerere, wage war; bellum inferre, make war on

bēlua, -ae, f., wild beast

bene, adv., well, rightly, successfully;
 quite; compar., melius, better;
 superl., optimē, best

benedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, praise, bless

benedictio, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), praise; benediction

beneficium, -ī, n., kindness, favor, benefit, kind deed, service; privilege, distinction, honor

benevolentia, -ae, f., kındness

benignē, adv., kindly, courteously

benignus, -a, -um, adj., kind, courteous, agreeable

bēstia, -ae, f., beast, animal bibō, -ere, bibī, —, drink

bīduum, -ī, n., two days

biennium, -ī, n., two years

bīnī, -ae, -a, num. adj., by twos, two each, two at a time

bis, adv., twice, doubly, in two ways bonus, -a, -um, adj., good; kind, kindly, well-disposed; n. as noun, good, blessing, boon, advantage; n. pl., goods, estate, property; compar., melior, melius, better; superl., optimus, -a, -um, best, excellent

bos, bovis, m. and f. (see p. 315, 8), bull, ox, cow; pl., cattle, oxen

bracchium, -ī, n., forearm, arm

brevis, -e, adj., short (of space or time), brief, small; brevī or brevī tempore, briefly; quickly, soon

breviter, adv., briefly

C

cadāver, -eris, n., corpse, dead body
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall,
 happen; fall (dead), be slain,
 perish

caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind; hidden; dark, obscure

caedes, caedis, f. (p. 238), murder, slaughter, bloodshed

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, cut, cut down, kill; rout, strike

caelestis, -e, adj., heavenly, celestial; divine; m. pl. as noun, gods, divinities

caelum, -ī, n., sky, heaven, air caerimōnia, -ae, f., ceremony, rite

calamitās, -ātis, f., disaster, calamity, loss

calceus, -i, m., shoe

callidus, -a, -um, adj., experienced,
 skillful; shrewd

campus, -ī, m., plain, field

canis, canis, m. and f., dog, hound

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sing; crow

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, take possession of, capture, seize; receive, get; cōnsilium capere, form or adopt a plan; initium capere (ab), begin at

captīvus, -a, -um, adj., captive; m. as noun, prisoner, captive

caput, capitis, n., head; top; source or mouth of a river; person, citizen, individual; citizenship; chief city, capital; capite dēmissō, with bowed head

carcer, -eris, m., prison, dungeon; stall at the starting point on a race track, barrier

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be without, not have, lack

cāritās, -ātis, f., love, charity

carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat

carrus, -i, m., cart

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious; expensive

casa, -ae, f., hut, cottage

castellum, -ī, n., fort, fortress, stronghold; redoubt castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp, military encampment; castra facere, pitch camp; castra habēre, encamp; castra movēre, break camp; castra pōnere, pitch camp, encamp

cāsus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), a falling, fall; accident, chance, occurrence; emergency; condition; misfortune, disaster, fate; cāsū, by chance

catena, -ae, f., chain, shackle

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, excuse; a cause, interest; position, condition; causā, with preceding gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, on account of; quā dē causā or quam ob causam, why

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, beware of, beware, take care

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, go away, abandon; give up, withdraw

celeber, -bris, -bre, adj., renowned, celebrated

celer, celeris, celere, adj., swift, sudden

celeritās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), speed, swiftness

celeriter, adv., swiftly, quickly

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal, hide

cēna, -ae, f., dinner, feast

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), dine, dine on, eat

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -um, assess; estimate, think; propose, vote

cēnsus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), census, an enumeration of people according to wealth for purposes of taxation and military service; census rating, wealth

centum, indecl. num. adj., hundred centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion, commander of a hundred men

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, separate, distinguish; discern, see

certāmen, -inis, n., struggle, battle; contest, trial

certe, adv. (p. 252), surely, at least, at all events

certus, -a, -um, adj., definite, settled, certain, fixed; sure; (aliquem) certiorem facere, inform (someone); certior fieri, be informed

- cervus, -i, m., stag, deer
- (cēterus), -a, -um, adj. (masculine nom. sing. not in use, chiefly plural forms employed), the other, the rest of, the remaining; m. pl. as noun, the rest, others, the remainder, all the rest
- cibus, $-\bar{i}$, m., food
- cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround, encircle; gird on
- circiter, adv., about, nearly, approximately; prep. with acc., about, near
- circuitus, -ūs, m., a going around; circumference; in circuitū, all around, on all sides
- circum, prep. with acc., around, about
- circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum (p. 84), place or put around; surround
- circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go around
- circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), send around, put around
- circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, (p. 180), stand around, surround
- circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come around, surround, outflank; deceive
- citerior, -ius, compar. adj., on this side; nearer
- cīvīlis, -e, adj. (p. 148), of citizens, civic, civil
- cīvis, cīvis, m., citizen, fellow citizen cīvitās, -ātis, f., citizenship; the state, a state, nation; city
- clam, adv., secretly, privately
- clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cry out,
 shout, call out
- clāmor, -ōris, m. (p. 200), loud cry, shout, clamor; shout of approval; clāmōrem tollere, set up a shout or cry
- clārus, -a, -um, adj., bright, clear; loud; famous
- classis, classis, f., division, class; fleet
- claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close, fasten; inclose; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear
- clāva, -ae, f., club

- clēmēns, gen. -entis, adj., kind
- clēmentia, -ae, f. (p. 200), gentleness, mercy
- cliēns, -entis, m., dependent, follower coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum (p. 84), buy, buy up
- coepī, coepisse, coeptum (see p. 343, 48), have begun, began, commenced
- cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consider carefully, think over, reflect; plan, intend
- cognōmen, -inis, n., cognomen, last
 name, name
- cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, become acquainted with, learn about, investigate, learn, find; in perfect tenses, know, be aware; be acquainted with; recognize
- cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum (p. 180), bring together, collect; compel, force
- cohors, cohortis, f., cohort, tenth part of a Roman legion; cohors praetōria, guard of honor
- cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 84), encourage, urge on
- collis, collis, m., hill, height
- colloco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), station, arrange; establish; place
- colloquium, -ī, n. (p. 200), conference, conversation, interview
- colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum (p. 84), talk with, converse, confer
- collum, -i, n., neck
- colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate, till; live or dwell in; inhabit; honor, worship
- colonia, -ae, f., colony, settlement
- columna, -ae, f., column, pillar
- coma, -ae, f., hair
- comes, -itis, m. and f., companion, comrade, associate, attendant
- commeātus, -ūs, m., communication; trip; supply train; provisions, supplies
- commemoro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, mention, relate, state
- commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intrust, commend; surrender

- committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), send together, bring together; commit; intrust, trust to; proelium committere, begin battle, engage in battle
- commodē, adv., conveniently, easily, well; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily
- commodus, -a, -um, adj., convenient, suitable; n. as noun, convenience
- commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 84), stop, stay, tarry
- commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move or affect deeply, excite, arouse, stir up, disturb, alarm
- commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make common; communicate, impart; share, divide
- commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (p. 84), fortify strongly, intrench
- commūnis, -e, adj., common, in common, general, public
- commūtātiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), a change; interchange
- commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), change; exchange
- comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, compare, match
- comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), prepare, prepare for, provide; secure
- compello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum (p. 84), drive together, collect; drive, force
- comperio, -perire, -peri, -pertum, find out, discover, learn
- compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill, fill up
- complūrēs, -plūra, or -plūria, adj.,
 several, a number of, many; a
 great many
- comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), bring together, collect
- comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum (p. 84), seize, catch, grasp
- comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum (p. 180), press together, squeeze; hold back, restrain
- conatum, -ī, n., attempt, undertaking

- cōnātus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), attempt, undertaking, effort
- concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go away, yield; grant, permit
- concessiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), a granting, concession
- concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down, cut to pieces, kill
- conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring together, reconcile; win, win over; bring about, establish
- concilium, -ī, n. (p. 200), assembly, meeting, gathering, council
- concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call, summon; excite, instigate
- conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), cry out together, shout, exclaim
- concordia, -ae, f., harmony, agreement concurrō, -currere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum (p. 84), assemble hurriedly, come, run together
- concursus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), a running together; attack; collision
- condiciō, -ōnis, f., agreement; terms;
 condition
- condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), put together; conceal; found, establish
- condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), bring together, collect; induce, lead, conduct
- confero, -ferre, contuli, collatum (p. 180), bring together, bring, collect, gather; compare; se conferre, proceed, withdraw, go
- confertus, -a, -um, adj., crowded, in close array, close
- confestim, adv., at once, immediately
- conficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum (p. 180), make; finish, complete, accomplish; weaken, exhaust; (of troops) muster, raise; ad eas res conficiendas, to accomplish or complete this
- confido, -fidere, -fisus sum, be confident, have confidence (in), rely
- confirmo, -are, -avi, -atum (p. 84), strengthen, confirm; establish; encourage, reassure, assert

- conflagro, -are, -avi, -atum, be on fire, burn
- confligo, -fligere, -flixi, -flictum, come
 together, collide; contend, fight
- congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum (p. 180), come together, meet; engage in battle with, contend
- congressus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), meeting, conference, interview
- conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), throw together, put together; throw, hurl
- conjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum (p. 84), fasten together, join, unite
- conjūnx, conjugis, m. and f. (p. 238), husband, wife
- conjūrātiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), conspiracy; league, confederacy
- conjūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), take oath, league together, plot
- conor, -arī, -atus sum, try, attempt, plan
- conquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītum, hunt for, search out; collect, get together
- consanguineus, -a, -um, adj., related by blood; m. pl. as noun, kinsmen, relatives
- conscendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum, climb; go aboard, embark on
- conscribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum (p. 84), write; enroll, levy; patres conscripti, senators
- consecratus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), consecrated, holy
- consecro, -are, -avī, -atum, set apart, consecrate
- cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, f., agreement
- consensus, -us, m. (p. 238), agreement, consent
- consentio, -sentire, -sensi, -sensum (p. 84), agree, combine
- consequor, -sequi, -secutus sum (p. 84), follow up or after, follow, pursue; overtake; obtain, accomplish
- conservo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), retain, maintain, preserve; protect, save

- consido, -sidere, -sedi, -sessum (p. 180), sit down; halt; encamp, settle
- consilium, -ī, n., deliberation; counsel, advice; judgment; plan, purpose; council; consilium capere, form or adopt a plan; consilium inire, make a plan
- consisto, -sistere, -stiti, (p. 84), take one's stand, halt, make a stand; consist
- consobrina, -ae, f., cousin
- console, -ārī, -ātus sum, comfort, console
- conspectus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), sight, view, presence
- conspicio, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, catch sight of, look at, observe
- conspicor, -arī, -atus sum, catch sight of, observe, see, behold
- constanter, adv., continually, constantly
- constīpo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, crowd together
- constituo, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, place, station; set up, build, establish; arrange; appoint; decide
- consto, -stare, -stiti, -statūrus (p. 180), stand together, stand with; consist; agree; *impers.*, constat, it is known, it is certain, it is agreed
- consuesco, -suescere, -suevi, -suetum, become accustomed; perfect, be accustomed, be in the habit of
- consuetudo, -inis, f. (p. 200), custom, habit, way, policy; manner of living
- consul, -ulis, m., consul
- consulatus, -us, m., consulship, office of consul
- consulo, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, deliberate, consult; look out for
- consultum, -i, n. (p. 238), decree
- consumo, -sumere, -sumpsi, -sumptum (p. 84), consume, destroy; spend
- contemno, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, scorn, despise
- contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum (p. 84), attempt; contend, fight, struggle; hasten, hurry; insist

contentus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 64), satisfied, contented

continent, -entis, f., mainland, continent

continuously, continuously, continually

contineö, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (p. 180), hold together; shut in, bound; contain, maintain, restrain

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum (p. 180), extend to, touch, adjoin; happen to

continuo, -are, -avī, -atum, join; continue

continuus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 64), uninterrupted, successive, continuous contrā, adv., on the contrary, on the other hand; on the opposite

side; *prep. with acc.*, against, opposite, facing; contrary to

contrādīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum

(p. 180), speak against, contradict contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum (p. 84), gather, draw together, bring together

controversia, -ae, f., dispute, quarrel, controversy

contumēlia, -ae, f., insult, abuse

conubium, -i, n., marriage

convallis, -vallis, f., valley

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come together, come; meet, meet with, assemble; come to, arrive; impers., convenit, an agreement is made, it is agreed

conventus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), meeting, assembly, court

conversō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, turn round; converse

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (p. 84), turn about, turn; change, convert, wheel around

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), call together, call, summon

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus sum (p. 84), come forth, arise

côpia, -ae, f., abundance, supply, plenty; amount, number; pl., resources, supplies, provisions; forces, troops; pedestrēs cōpiae, infantry forces, infantry cornū, -ūs, n., horn; wing (of an army), flank

corona, -ae, f., crown

corpus, corporis, n., body; dead body, corpse

corripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum (p. 180), seize, take hold of; attack

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily; ordinary, usual

cotīdiē, adv., every day, daily

crās, adv., tomorrow

creator, -ōris, m. (p. 200), maker, creator; Creator, God

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, numerous, frequent

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, trust, commit; believe, think, suppose

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, burn

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, create; elect, choose, appoint

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, grow, thrive, increase

cruciātus, -ūs, m., torture; cruelty crūdēlis, -e, adj., cruel, unmerciful crūdēlitās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), cruelty

crux, crucis, f., cross culpa, -ae, f., blame

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), blame cultūra, -ae, f., cultivation

cultus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), cultivation, culture; civilization, refinement

cum (sometimes attached to a word), prep. with abl., with, along with, together with, at the same time with

cum, conj., when, since, although; (time) while, after, whenever; (cause) because; (concessive or adversative) though; cum...tum, both...and, not only... but also; cum prīmum, as soon as

cupiditās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), desire, eagerness

cupīdō, -inis, f., desire

cupidus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 124), desirous, eager, fond

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, wish eagerly, desire, be eager, wish

cūr, interrog. adv., why? for what reason?

cūra, -ae, f., care, attention; concern, task, help; anxiety

cūria, -ae, f., curia, a division of the Roman people, ward; senate house

cūriōsitās, -ātis, *f.*, curiosity, inquisitiveness

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), care for, take care of, attend to; cause (to be done); care; cure

curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum, run currus, -ūs, m., wagon, chariot

cursus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), a running, race; pace, speed; course, way; journey

custodia, -ae, f., custody; garrison custodio, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (p. 238), watch, guard, defend, protect custos, -odis, m. and f., guard cutīcula, -ae, f., skin

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, condemn dē, prep. with abl., from, of, on, about, on account of, in accordance with; (place) down from, away from; (time) just after, during; (respect) concerning, in regard to; (cause) over, for

dea, -ae, f., goddess

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe; be under obligation to; ought, must, should

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), withdraw, retire; die

decem, indecl. num. adj., ten

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum (p. 84), decide, decree, resolve, vote

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight out to the end; fight, contend

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., tenth

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), take in, deceive

dēclīvis, -e, adj., sloping downward, descending

decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adorn, decorate

decorum, -i, n., propriety

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum (p. 84), run down; hurry along

dēditio, -onis, f. (p 238), surrender

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), give up; devote; sē dēdere, surrender

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead away or down, withdraw, remove; lead, take; conduct, settle; launch (ships); unfurl (sails)

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum, keep or ward off, repel; defend

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. (p. 200), defender

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (p. 84), bring down or away, bring, carry; confer, take; report

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., tired out, exhausted, weary

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), fail, run out, be insufficient; be wanting or missing; abandon, desert; revolt

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, — (p. 84), flee from

deinceps, adv., in succession, in turn deinde, adv., next, then; in the second place; afterwards

dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), throw or hurl down; drive away; drive down

dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, blot out, destroy, overthrow

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bind down, fasten, tie, tie up, moor

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum (p. 180), choose, select

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), send down; bow

dēmonstrātor, -oris, m. (p. 200), one who points out or indicates, demonstrator

dēmonstro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), point out, show; state, explain, mention

dēmum, adv., at last, at length

dēnique, adv., at last, and then, finally; in short

dēns, dentis, m., tooth

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., close, thick

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), announce, proclaim; warn, threaten dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum (p.

84), drive from or away

dēpono, -ponere, -posui, -positum (p. 84), lay down, lay aside; give up; put, station

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 84), lay waste, plunder, ravage

dēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum (p. 180), tear off or away, tear

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, climb down, descend; resort

dēscēnsus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), descent dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum

abandon, desert

dēsertor, -ōris, m. (p. 200), deserter dēsertus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 64), deserted, solitary

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, long for, wish, desire; demand, require; miss

dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, jump down, leap down

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum (p. 180), stop, cease; abandon

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), despair of, despair, lack confidence

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look down on, scorn, disdain, despise

dēspondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, pledge, promise; promise in marriage, betroth

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, draw (a sword)

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (p. 84), be wanting, be lacking, fail

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (p. 84), prevent, hinder

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum (p. 84), draw off, strip off, take from

dētrīmentum, -ī, n., loss, injury, damage

deus, -ī (nom. pl., dī; dat. and abl. pl., deīs or dīs), m., a god; Deus, God dēvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum

(p. 84), turn away or aside

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, devour

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, righthand, on the right, on the right side

dextra, -ae, f., right hand; ā dextrā, on the right

dī, see deus

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, proclaim; give over, give up

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell, state, speak; mention, relate; administer; call; set, appoint; mīrābile dictū, strange to say, "believe it or not"

dictātor, -ōris, m. (p. 200), dictator dictiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), a speaking, a pleading

dictum, -ī, n. (p. 238), word

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., day; time, period of time, interval; appointed time; ad diem, at the appointed time, punctually; diē alterō, on the next day; multō diē, late in the day; postrīdiē ejus diēī or posterō diē or proximō diē, on the following day, tomorrow; priōre diē, yesterday

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum (p. 180), carry apart, scatter; postpone, delay; differ, be different

difficilis, -e, adj., difficult, hard, troublesome

difficultās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), difficulty, trouble

diffido, -fidere, -fisus sum, lack confidence in

diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum (p. 180), spread

digitus, -i, m., finger; toe; inch, the sixteenth part of a Roman foot

dignitās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), merit; dignity, reputation

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, fit

diligenter, adv., carefully, diligently; with exactness

diligentia, -ae, f., diligence, care, faithfulness

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight, contend, struggle

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum lose; send out or away, dismiss

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum (p. 180), tear in pieces; plunder

dīrus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful

dis- (dī-), inseparable prefix, apart;
in different directions

dīs, see deus

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go away, withdraw, leave

discessus, $-\bar{u}s$, m. (p. 238), a going away, withdrawal, departure

disciplina, -ae, f., instruction, training, teaching, doctrine

discō, -ere, didicī, —, learn, be taught discrīmen, -inis, n., separation; difference, distinction; crisis

disjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), scatter; rout

dispār, gen. disparis, adj., unequal dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum (p. 180), scatter

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), place apart, station, place dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., disagreement, __

dissension, discord

dissimilis, -e, *adj.*, not like, different distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (p. 180), hold *or* keep apart, divide

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum (p. 180), assign, divide, distribute

dītissimus, -a, -um, adj., richest

diū, adv., long, a long time, for a long time; compar., diūtius, longer, too long; superl., diūtissimē, for the longest time

diversus, -a, -um, adj., opposite; diverse, different; separate

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, part, divide, separate; distribute, share

dīvīnus, -a, -um, adj., divine, sacred

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. pl., riches, wealth

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, concede, afford, grant, furnish; pay, suffer; in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage; poenās dare, pay the penalty

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach, inform, instruct; explain; perf. part., learned

doctor, - \bar{o} ris, m. (p. 21), teacher, doctor

doctrīna, -ae, f., instruction

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, grieve, suffer, be in pain; be sorry, be indignant

dolor, -ōris, m. (p. 200), sorrow, pain, vexation; dolorem ferre, be indignant; magnō dolore afficere, annoy greatly

dolus, -ī, m., trickery, deceit; trick

domesticus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 64), of or belonging to the home, home; one's own, private, personal; civil, domestic

dominus, $-\bar{i}$, m., master, lord

domus, -ūs (-ī), f. (see p. 315, 8), house, home; loc., at home

dono, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), give donum, -ī, n., gift, present

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep

dōs, dōtis, f., marriage gift, dowry

dracō, -ōnis, m., serpent, dragon druidēs, -um, m. pl., Druids, ancient

order of priests in Gaul and Britain dubito, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be uncertain

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain, indecisive; n. as noun, doubt, uncertainty; non est dubium quin, there is no doubt that

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., two hundred

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead, conduct; bring; assume; make; think, consider; postpone; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry

dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until; provided

duo, duae, duo, num. adj., two

duodecim, indecl. num. adj., twelve duodēvīgintī, indecl. num. adj.,

duplex, gen. duplicis, adj. (p. 21), double, twofold

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make hard; endure, persevere

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, harsh, unfeeling, severe; difficult

dux, ducis, m. (p. 238), leader, commander

\mathbf{E}

ē, see ex

eighteen

ēdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum (p. 84), declare, proclaim, decree, appoint ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), put forth, give out; disclose edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, eat

- ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring up, rear, train
- ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead out; draw (a sword)
- efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum (p. 180), bring *or* carry out, carry, remove; make known
- efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), make, accomplish; perform, cause, effect
- effluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum (p. 180), flow or run out, flow forth
- effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus (p. 180), flee from, flee, escape
- ego, gen. meī (nom. pl., nōs), pers. pron., I
- ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum (p.
 180), go out, come out; march out,
 leave, depart; disembark, land
- ēgregiē, adv., excellently
- ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., remarkable, unusual; distinguished; excellent
- ēminēns, gen. -entis, adj., distinguished, eminent
- ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), send out *or* away, release, drop; open an outlet
- emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy; sometimes in compounds, take
- enim, *conj*., for; really, in fact, indeed ēnsis, ēnsis, *m*., sword
- enuntio, -are, -avi, -atum (p. 84), assert; proclaim, reveal, disclose; report
- eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, go, advance,
- eō, adv., on that account, therefore, for that reason; to that place, there, thither
- eōdem, adv., to the same place, end,
 or purpose
- epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle
- eques, equitis, m., horseman, cavalryman; knight; pl., horsemen, cavalry; the knights, one of the three orders of Roman society
- equester, -tris, -tre, adj., of a horseman, of the cavalry, equestrian, cavalry
- equidem, adv., truly, indeed

- equitātus, $-\bar{u}s$, m., cavalry, horsemen equus, equī, m., horse
- ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum (p. 180), lift, lift up, raise
- ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum (p. 180), snatch away or out; take away; rescue, free; sē ēripere, escape
- errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wander; go astray, be mistaken, err
- error, - \bar{o} ris, m. (pp. 21, 200), wandering; error
- ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, train, teach, instruct, educate
- ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, burst or break forth
- ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), a breaking out, sortie, sally
- et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and, not only . . . but also; adv., also, even, too
- etiam, adv., yet, even yet, still; also, too, besides, furthermore, likewise, even; etiam atque etiam, again and again, repeatedly; non modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also; non solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also; quin etiam, moreover, more than that
- etsī, conj., even if, and if, although; and yet
- ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum (p. 84), go away, escape
- ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come out; result, happen
- ēventus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), outcome, result; event, occurrence
- ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), call forth or out
- ex (before vowels and some consonants), ē (only before consonants), prep. with abl., from, according to, by, of; (space) out of; on the side of, on; (time) since, after; (source) out of; (cause) because of, in accordance with; (partitive expressions) of, from among
- exaltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, raise, exalt exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, deprive of breath, exhaust, weaken; kill; pass., die; pf. part., breathless, exhausted; dead

- excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
 (p. 84), go out, withdraw, depart;
 exceed
- excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsum, excel
- excelsus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), high, lofty, distinguished
- excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), take out, except; capture; meet, greet, receive
- excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call out; arouse, incite; bring about; erect (towers), raise
- excogito, -are, -avi, -atum (p. 84), think out; invent, contrive
- excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, excuse; give reason for
- exemplar, gen. exemplaris, n., example, copy; likeness
- exemplum, -ī, n., example; precedent exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go out or away, go forth, withdraw, leave
- exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, engage busily, employ; train, drill, exercise; administer
- exercitātiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), exercise, training, experience
- exercitus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), army
- exiguus, -a, -um, adj., limited, small, slight, short, poor
- exilium (exsilium), -ī, n., exile, ban-ishment
- eximō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum (p. 180), take out, remove
- exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, estimate; consider, judge, believe, think
- exitus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), a going out; exit; conclusion, end, result
- expecto (exspecto), -are, -avi, -atum (p. 84), look forward to, await, wait for; expect, wait, hope for
- expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, extricate, free; explain
- expeditus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), unimpeded, free, light-armed, in light array; open, easy
- expello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum (p. 84), drive from or out, drive, remove, banish

- experior, -periri, -pertus sum, try;
 experience; prove, test
- expleo, -plere, -plevī, -pletum, fill
- explorator, -oris, m. (p. 200), scout
- explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, investigate, examine; reconnoiter, explore
- expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), put *or* set forth; expose; abandon; set ashore, land; draw up; explain, relate
- expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), assault, take by storm, capture
- exsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum (p. 180), appear, come forth
- exstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, heap or pile up
- extrā, adv., and prep. with acc., outside, beyond
- extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum (p. 84), drag out, draw out, draw forth, extract
- extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., outermost, extreme, farthest, last; end or last part of; most remote

F

- faber, fabrī, m., workman, mechanic, smith, carpenter; engineer
- fābula, -ae, f., story, tale; fable
- facile, adv., easily, readily
- facilis, -e, adj., easy; agreeable, courteous
- facinus, facinoris, n., act, deed; misdeed, crime
- faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do, form, construct, perform, commit; cause, bring about, accomplish; act; suppose; (aliquem) certiōrem facere, inform (someone); iter facere, march, make a journey; potestātem facere, grant opportunity or permission, give a chance; proelium facere, engage in battle; vim facere, use violence or force
- factio, -onis, f. (p. 238), faction, party factor, -oris, m. (p. 200), maker, doer, performer
- factum, -ī, n. (p. 124), deed, act, event; exploit

facultās-forma

facultās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), ability;
 means, opportunity; supply; pl.,
 resources

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, deceive; disappoint; escape

falsus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 21), false, misleading, pretended

fāma, -ae, f., report, rumor; reputation, fame

famēs, -is, f., hunger, starvation

familia, -ae, f., slaves in a household; household; family, race

familiāris, -e, adj. (p. 64), of a household, private, domestic; m. as noun, intimate friend or acquaintance; rēs familiāris, private property, estate

fās, n., indecl., divine sanction or law (as opposed to jūs, human law); the right or lawful thing; the will of Heaven; fās est, it is right or proper

fātum, -ī, n., utterance; fate, doom, destiny

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, favor fēlīcitās, -ātis, f., good fortune

fēlīciter, adv., happily, fortunately, favorably

fēlīx, gen. -īcis, adj., fruitful; successful, happy, fortunate

 $f\bar{e}mina, -ae, f., female; woman$

fenestra, -ae, f., window

ferāx, gen. -ācis, adj., productive,
 fertile

ferē, adv., usually, generally; nearly, almost, about; for the most part

fero, ferre, tuli, latum, bear, carry, bring; endure, submit to, suffer; withstand; report, say; (of laws) propose, offer, carry, enact; impers, fertur, it is said; ferunt, they say; aegrē (molestē) ferre, be indignant, resent; signa ferre, advance the standards, advance

ferox, gen. -ocis, adj., fierce

ferrum, -ī, n., iron; spearhead; spear,
 sword

fertilitās, -ātis, f., fertility

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild; cruel,
fierce; uncivilized

fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful, loyal fidēs, -eī, f., faith, belief; loyalty, faithfulness, honor; alliance, trust; fidem facere, give a pledge, convince; in fidem recipere, take under one's protection

fīdus, -a, -um, adj., faithful figūra, -ae, f., shape, form, figure fīlia, -ae, f., daughter

fīlius, -ī, m., son

fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictum, mold, form, make up; invent; imagine; control

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (p. 238), bound, define, limit, measure; end, finish

fīnis, fīnis, *m. and f.*, limit, boundary; end, close; *pl.*, borders, boundaries; territory, land, country

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., bordering, neighboring; m. pl. as noun, neighbors

fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, be done, become, happen, result; certior fierī, be informed

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make firm, strengthen

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, vigorous, steadfast, firm, powerful

flägitö, -äre, -ävī, -ātum, demand flamma, -ae, f., blaze, fire, flame

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, bend, turn; incline, curve; change; direct

fleo, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep, cry, weep for, lament

flö, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blow flöreö, -ēre, -uī, —, bloom, flower flös, flöris, m., blossom, flower

fluctus, $-\bar{u}s$, m., wave, billow

flümen, -inis, n. (p. 238), river, stream

fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow, run foedus, foederis, n., agreement, stipulation; treaty, league, alliance

folium, -i, n., leaf

fons, fontis, m., spring, fountain fore (=futūrus esse), fut. inf. of sum forma, -ae, f., form, figure; appearance; beauty forte, adv., by chance, by accident; perhaps

fortis, -e, adj., strong, powerful; brave, courageous, bold, fearless

fortiter, adv. (p. 252), bravely, gallantly, boldly

fortitūdō, -inis, f. (p. 200), bravery, courage

fortūna, -ae, f., fortune, fate, luck,
 good fortune; pl., property, pos sessions

forum, -ī, n., open space; market
 place; forum

fossa, -ae, f., ditch, trench

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, wreck, shatter; weaken, wear out

frāter, frātris, m., brother

frāternus, -a, -um, adj., brotherly

fraus, fraudis, f., deceit, deception, fraud, trickery

fretum, -ī, n., strait, channel; sea frūctus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), crop; profit;

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj., of or pertaining to grain, of provisions; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, provisions

frumentum, -i, n., grain; pl., growing crops, standing grain

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, enjoy

frūstrā, adv., vainly, in vain, without effect

fuga, -ae, f., fleeing, flight; fugae sē mandāre, flee; in fugam dare, put to flight

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, run away; run away from, avoid

fugitīvus, -ī, m., fugitive

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 124), rout, put to flight

fūmus, $-\bar{i}$, m., smoke

funda, -ae, f., sling, slingshot

funditor, -ōris, m. (p. 200), slinger

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour, pour out; rout, defeat; shed; diffuse

furia, -ae, f., fury; curse

furo, -ere, -ui, -, rage

furor, -ōris, m. (p. 200), rage, madness, fury, passion

G

galea, -ae, f., helmet (of leather or metal)

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice, be glad, take pleasure

gaudium, $-\bar{i}$, n., joy, delight

geminus, -a, -um, adj., twin-born; double, twofold; m. pl. as noun, twins

gemma, -ae, f., jewel, gem

gēns, gentis, f., tribe, race, people, nation; clan, house

genus, -eris, n., birth, race, origin,
family; sort, class, kind, character,
nature

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, bear, wear, carry; wage, carry on; manage, administer; do, perform; pass., often, go on, take place, be done; bellum gerere, wage war; sē gerere, conduct oneself, behave

gigās, -antis, m., giant

gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum, beget, bear, give birth to, produce; spring

gladiātor, -ōris, m. (p. 200), gladiator gladius, -ī, m., sword

glōria, -ae, f., glory, fame, renown, reputation

glōrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, glorify

gradior, gradī, gressus sum, step, walk, go

gradus, -ūs, m., degree, rank

grātia, -ae, f. (p. 200), favor, regard, friendship; influence, good will; gratitude, thanks, requital; grātiās agere, express thanks, thank; grātiam referre, requite, make requital, repay

grātus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, acceptable; agreeable; pleased, grateful; welcome

gravis, -e, adj., heavy, weighty; hard to bear, oppressive; severe, serious, grave, important

gravitās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), heaviness, weight; dignity

graviter, adv., heavily; deeply;
severely, seriously; hard

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold, possess, own, keep, contain; consider, regard, think; castra habēre, encamp; habēre in animō, intend; habēre in memoriā, remember; habēre ōrātiōnem, make or deliver a speech

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, live, dwell, reside

hasta, -ae, f., spear, lance, javelin, dart

haud, adv., not at all, by no means, not

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, draw (water, etc.)

herba, -ae, f., grass, herb, plant hērōs, hērōis, m., hero

heu, alas!, oh me!

hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters, winter camp

hībernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), spend the winter, winter

hic, haec, hoc, demonstr. adj., referring to what is near in space, time, or thought, this (pl. these), the present; the following; the last named, the latter; the first named, the former; demonstr. pron., he, she, it (pl., they)

hic, adv., here, in this place; on this occasion; at this point

hieme, adv., in winter

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), spend the winter, winter

hiems, hiemis, f., winter; storm hinc, adv., hence

hodie, adv., today; now

homō, -inis, m, human being, man, person; pl., mankind, people

honor or honos, -ōris, m. (p. 21), honor, esteem, reputation, distinction; office

honoro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), honor, respect

honorus, -a, -um, adj., honorable

hōra, -ae, f., hour, time

horribilis, -e, adj., dreadful, horrible, terrible

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, cheer, exhort, urge, advise

hortus, $-\bar{i}$, m., garden

hospes, hospitis, *m*., host; guest, stranger, visitor

hospitium, -ī, n., entertainment, hospitality

hostis, hostis, m., enemy, public enemy, foe; pl., the enemy

hūc, adv., to this place, hither, here; besides, in addition

hūmānitās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), human nature or feeling; kindliness; civilization, refinement

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., of man, human; kind; civilized

humilis, -e, adj., low; humble, unknown; weak

1

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place; then, thereupon

ictus, $-\bar{u}s$, m., thrust, blow; wound

idem, eadem, idem, demonstr. pron. and adj., same, the very one; also, too, besides, likewise

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., suitable, favorable, fit; capable, deserving

igitur, *adv.*, therefore, then, consequently, accordingly

ignis, ignis, m., fire; signal fire

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, not know, be unaware of, ignore

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, overlook, pardon, forgive

ignōtus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), unknown, unfamiliar, strange

ille, illa, illud, demonstr. pron., that one; (in contrast with another pronoun) the other, the former; (more rarely) the latter; pers. pron., he, she, it (pl., they); demonstr. adj., that (pl., those), yonder; the well-known, the famous

illic, adv., there, in that place

illūstris, -e, adj., illustrious, distinguished

illuviēs, -ēī, f., dirt, filth

- immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 180), send in; let go
- immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sacrifice, offer as a sacrifice
- immortālis, -e, *adj*., immortal, undying, eternal
- impatientia, -ae, f., impatience
- impedimentum, -i, n. (p. 238), impediment, hindrance; pl., baggage, heavy baggage (of an army), baggage train
- impedio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, entangle, hinder, obstruct; prevent
- impedītus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), entangled; encumbered, hindered; obstructed, at a disadvantage
- impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum (p. 180), drīve or urge on, incite; impel
- impendeō, -pendēre, --, -- (p. 180), impend, overhang
- imperator, -ōris, m. (p. 200), general, commander in chief, emperor
- imperātum, -ī, n. (p. 238), order, command; imperāta facere, obey orders
- imperītus, -a, -um, adj., inexperienced, unskilled; unacquainted with
- imperium, -ī, n. (p. 200), command, order; power, control, authority; supreme power or command; sovereignty, rule, government, empire; might, majesty, dominion
- imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, order, command, direct; demand; levy; control, rule, govern; impose
- impetro, -are, -avi, -atum, obtain (by request), obtain one's request, secure, effect
- impetus, -ūs, m., attack, raid; force, violence; facere impetum, make an attack
- impiger, -gra, -grum, adj., energetic, quick; industrious
- impleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill up, fill
- imploro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wail, beseech, entreat, beg
- impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 180), place or set on, put on, impose; mount; put on board

- importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 180), bring in
- imprīmīs, adv., especially, chiefly
- imprūdentia, -ae, f., rashness, imprudence
- in, prep., with acc., into, toward, against, on; for, to, till; over; with abl., in, in the midst of, on, upon, among, at, over; in the case of
- in-, inseparable prefix, not
- inaestimābilis, -e, adj., inestimable, invaluable
- inaudītus, -a, -um, adj., unknown, strange
- incēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, move in, on, or through
- incendium, -ī, n. (p. 200), fire, conflagration
- incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, set fire to, burn; inflame
- incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain
- incidō, -cidere, -cidī, (p. 180), fall into, fall on, fall; happen
- incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), begin
- incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, urge on, arouse, incite; propel
- inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum (p. 180), shut in, inclose
- incola, -ae, m. and f., inhabitant,
 resident
- incolō, -colere, -coluī, (p. 84), dwell in, inhabit; live
- incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, safe
- incommodum, -ī, n., inconvenience; loss, disaster, misfortune
- incrēdibilis, -e, *adj*., incredible, extraordinary
- incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse, complain of; upbraid
- inde, adv., then, thence, therefore; (place) from that place; (time) after that, next; (cause) in consequence; (source) from it, of it
- indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum (p. 84), proclaim, set, call for
- indignātiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 100), indignation, resentment

indignitās, -ātis, f. (pp. 100, 200), unworthy treatment, indignity

indignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), bring or lead in; draw on or over; induce, move

indulgentia, -ae, f., indulgence

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, put on (clothing, etc.); endow

ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go into, enter; enter into or on, undertake; cōnsilium inīre, form or make a plan; inīre grātiam, gain favor; inīre numerum, enumerate, count

inermis, -e, adj., unarmed, defenseless

infamia, -ae, f., disgrace

infāns, -fantis, m. and f., child, infant
infēlix, gen. -fēlīcis, adj., unhappy,
 unfortunate

inferior, -ius (p. 21), compar. of inferus

infero, -ferre, intuli, illātum (p. 180), bring or carry in; inflict; cast into; bring on; bring forward, cause; bellum inferre, wage war on; sē inferre, advance; signa inferre, advance (to the attack), charge

inferus, -a, -um, adj., down, low, below; m. pl. as noun, those of the
lower world, the dead; compar.,
inferior, -ius, lower, lower down;
inferior, weaker; superl., infimus,
-a, -um or imus, -a, -um, lowest;
deepest

inficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), dip (something) into, color; infect, poison

infinitus, -a, -um, adj., infinite

infrā, adv., and prep. with acc., below, under, underneath, beneath

ingenium, -ī, n., inborn quality or nature, character, disposition; talent, ability, genius

ingēns, gen. -entis, adj., enormous, vast, huge, very large, great

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum (p. 180), go into, enter, advance; engage in, undertake

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., unfriendly,
hostile; m. as noun, (personal)
enemy; rival

inīquus, -a, -um, adj., uneven, unequal; unfair, unjust; unfavorable, disadvantageous

initium, -ī, n. (p. 200), going in; beginning; initium capere, begin at; initium trānseundī facere, take the initiative in crossing, be first to cross

injiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), throw into or upon

injūria, -ae, f., injustice, injury; abl. used adverbially, unjustly

(injussus, -ūs), m., only abl., injussū, without command, without order

innō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swim, float

innocentia, -ae, f., innocence, integrity inopia, -ae, f., lack, want, scarcity; need, poverty

inquam (see p. 343, 48), defective verb (always after one or more words of a quotation), say; inquit, he says

insciēns, gen. -entis, adj., not knowing, ignorant

 \bar{i} nscriptio, $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., inscription

insequor, -sequi, -secütus sum (p. 84), follow up, follow, pursue

inserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, thrust
in, insert

insidiae, $-\bar{a}$ **rum**, f. pl., treachery, ambush, plot

insigne, insignis, n., mark, badge,
 signal; pl., decorations, insignia

īnsignis, -e, adj., marked, distinguished īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum (p. 180), set in place; draw up; arrange, provide; erect, build; establish, institute, begin, adopt

īnstitūtum, -ī, n. (p. 238), principle, custom, habit

instō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus (p. 180), stand on; be near, approach, be at hand; press on, pursue

instrümentum, -**i**, *n*. (p. 238), tool, instrument

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, build up, construct; provide, equip; draw up, arrange

īnsula, -ae, f., island

intāctus, -a, -um, adj., intact, unharmed

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., untouched; unhurt; fresh, vigorous; whole

integrē, adv., without prejudice

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum (p. 180), understand, perceive, know; see, realize; learn

intelligentia, -ae, f. (p. 21), understanding, intelligence

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum (p. 84), stretch to; extend, direct, bend

intentus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 64), intent, attentive

inter, prep. with acc., between, among, within, through, during; inter sē, with or to each other; from one another; among themselves

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go *or* come between, be between, intervene

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), intercept, catch up

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum (p. 180), shut *or* cut off

interdin, adv., during the day, by day interdum, adv., sometimes, from time to time, occasionally

intereā, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime

intereö, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), be lost, die, perish, be killed

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), kill, slay; sē interficere, commit suicide

interim, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile

interior, -ius, compar. adj., inner, interior

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), leave off, cease; interrupt, suspend; let pass; neglect; intervene, separate

interpono, -ere, -posui, -positum (p. 84), put between, interpose

interpres, -pretis, m. and f., interpreter interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 238),

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), ask, inquire of, question

interpret; imagine

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (p. 84), be *or* lie between; be present at, take part in; *impers.*, interest (p. 21), it is to the interest *or* advantage; it concerns

intervāllum, -ī, n., intervening space, distance, interval (of time or of space)

interveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come between, intervene

intrā, prep. with acc., within, inside of;
into, inside

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, go into, enter intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead into, introduce

introeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, enter

inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., unusual, strange, unfamiliar, extraordinary

invādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum (p. 84), enter; with in and the accusative, invade

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find, discover, learn

inventor, - \bar{o} ris, m. (p. 21), inventor, author

invictus, -a, -um, adj., unconquered, unconquerable

invidiosus, -a, -um, adj., jealous

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, invite, summon, request, urge

invītus, -a, -um, adj., against one's will, unwilling

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, pron., intensive, self, himself, herself, itself (pl., themselves); he, she, it; emphatic, very, the very

īra, -ae, f., ire, anger, rage

irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum, be angry
irātus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 64), angry,
irate

irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh, laugh at

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum (p. 180), break in *or* into, burst (into)

is, ea, id, demonstr. pron., that one, this (pl., these), this one; pers. pron., he, she, it (pl., they); demonstr. adj., that, this (pl., these); such, of such a sort or kind

iste, ista, istud, demonstr. pron., that one; pers. pron., he, she, it (pl., they); demonstr. adj., referring to that which is close to or belonging to the person addressed, that of yours, that (pl., those)

ita, adv., so, thus; yes; in this way, as follows; to such an extent, in such a way; accordingly, thus; on this condition; ut...ita, just as...so, while... yet; ita est, yes

itaque, conj., and so, accordingly, therefore, and thus

item, adv., also, likewise, too

iter, itineris, n., a way, road; journey, march; right of way; route, line of march; iter facere, march, make a journey, make one's way; magnum iter, rapid or forced march

iterum, adv., again, a second time, once more

J

jaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, lie, lie down; be prostrate or fallen, lie dead

jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, throw, hurl, fling; scatter, sow; throw up, build; drop (an anchor)

jactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, toss about, shake

jactūra, -ae, f., loss, sacrifice

jaculum, -ī, n., javelin, dart

jam, adv., already, now, by this time; soon, directly; at last; furthermore, besides; jam dūdum, long ago; jam prīdem, long ago, this long time; non jam, no longer

jānua, -ae, f., door

jubeo, -ere, jussī, jussum, order, command

jūdex, jūdicis, m., judge; juror

jūdiciālis, -e, adj. (p. 64), of justice, judicial

jūdicium, -ī, n. (p. 200), trial, legal trial; judgment, decision; opinion; jūdicium facere, express an opinion

jūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), decide, judge, consider

jugum, -ī, n., yoke; ridge, summit
jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, join,
fasten together, unite, yoke

jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), take oath, swear

jūs, jūris, n., right, justice, law; authority; abl., by right, justly

jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, n., an oath

(jussus, -ūs), m., only abl., jussū, at the order or command

jūstitia, -ae, f. (p. 21), justice, uprightness

jūstus, -a, -um, adj., in accordance with law; just; proper

juvenis, gen.-is, adj., young, youthful; m. and f. as noun, young person, young man or woman (esp. one less than forty years of age), youth

juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, aid, help, serve, benefit

L

labor, -ōris, m., labor, toil, exertion, hardship; distress, difficulty.

laboro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), strive, labor; suffer, be in distress

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, harass, provoke, attack

lacrima, -ae, f., tear

lacrimo, -are, -avi, -atum (p. 238), weep

lacus, $-\ddot{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m., lake, pond

laetitia, -ae, f. (p. 200), joy

laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful, glad, happy

lapis, -idis, m., stone

lassitūdō, -inis, f., weariness

lātē, adv., widely, far and wide

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, lie hidden, be concealed; hide, seek shelter

lātitūdō, -inis, f. (p. 100), width, breadth

latro, -onis, m., robber, brigand

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive

latus, lateris, n., side; flank, wing (of an army)

laudo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), praise laus, laudis, f., praise, fame, glory; merit, excellence

lavo, -āre, lāvī, lautum, wash, bathe lēgālis, -e, adj. (p. 64), of or belonging to the law, legal

lēgātiō, -onis, f., embassy, legation; mission

lēgātus, -i, m., representative; staff officer, lieutenant; envoy

legio, -onis, f., legion

legionarius, -a, -um, adj., of the legion, legionary

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, gather, collect; choose; read

lēnis, -e, adj., smooth, gentle; kind lëniter, adv., slowly

leō, -ōnis, m., lion

levis, -e, adj., light, slight; easy

leviter, adv., slightly, lightly

lēx, lēgis, f., law, enactment; terms, condition

libenter, adv., willingly, gladly

liber, librī, m., book

liber, libera, liberum, adj., free, independent; permitted; open

līberālitās, -ātis, f. (p. 100), generosity, liberality

liberaliter, adv., generously, liberally līberātor, -ōris, m. (p. 100), liberator, deliverer

līberē, adv., freely

līberī, -ōrum, m. pl., the free members of the household; children

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set free, free, release

lībertās, -ātis, f. (p. 100), liberty, freedom; permission

licet, licere, licuit or licitum est, impers., it is allowed or permitted, one may

lignum, $-\bar{i}$, n., wood

līlium, $-\bar{i}$, n., lily

līmus, -ī, m., mud

lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language, speech

linter, -tris, f., boat, skiff

littera, -ae, f , letter (of the alphabet);
 pl., letter, epistle, letters; literature, scholarship

lītus, lītoris, n., shore, seashore, beach loco, -are, -avi, -atum (p. 238), place, put; locate

locus, -i, m. (pl. usually n., loca, -ōrum), place, spot, locality; ground; situation; chance; rank; abl., with dependent gen., in the place of, as

longe, adv., far, long; (space) far away, far off; at or to a distance; (degree) by far, much; (time) for a long time

longinquus, -a, -um, adj., distant, far

longitūdō, -inis, f. (p. 100), length

longus, -a, -um, adj., long; long-continued; distant; nāvis longa, warship

loquor, loqui, locutus sum, say, speak, talk

lōrīca, -ae, f., coat of mail; breastwork, parapet

lōtus, -ī, m., lotus

lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, (p. 238), play, engage in sport

 $l\bar{u}dus, -\bar{i}, m.$, game, play, sport, public game

lūmen, -inis, n., light, lamp, torch

lūna, -ae, f., moon

lupa, -ae, f., she-wolf, wolf

lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cleanse; light up (of the sun); wander over

lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight; ortā lūce or prīmā lūce, at daybreak

M

maestus, -a, -um, adj., sad; gloomy magicus, -a, -um, adj., magical, magic magis, adv., more, in a greater degree,

magister, $-\text{tr}\bar{i}$, m., chief, master

magistrātus, $-\bar{u}s$, m., public office, magistracy; magistrate, official

magnificus, -a, -um, adj., splendid, magnificent

magnitūdo-mēns

- magnitūdō, -inis, f. (p. 100), greatness, great amount; size, extent; magnitūdō ventī, violent wind
- magnopere or magnō opere, adv., greatly, very much, exceedingly, especially; earnestly; compar., magis, more, more greatly, in a greater degree, rather; superl., maximē, in the highest degree, most of all, exceedingly, chiefly, especially; quam maximē, as much as possible
- magnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large, much; loud; magnum iter, rapid or forced march; compar., major, majus, greater, larger; superl., maximus, -a, -um, greatest, largest
- major, majus, adj., greater, larger; major nātū, older, elder
- majores, -um, m. pl., ancestors
- male, adv., badly, wickedly; compar., pejus, worse; superl., pessimē, worst. most unkindly
- maleficium, $-\bar{i}$, n., evil deed; injury
- mālō, mālle, māluī, (see pp. 341-342, 47), prefer, choose rather or instead of
- malum, -ī, n., evil, misfortune, harm; punishment
- malus, -a, -um, adj., bad, evil, wicked; compar., pejor, pejus, worse; superl., pessimus, -a, -um, worst, most wicked
- mandātum, -ī, n. (p. 238), command, order; mandate
- mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), hand over, give; commit; commission, command; fugae sē mandāre, flee
- mane, adv., in the morning
- maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain, stay; wait, wait for
- mānēs, -ium, m. pl., shades (of the dead), ghosts, spirits
- manuālis, -e, adj. (p. 64), of or belonging to the hand, manual
- manus, $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$, f., hand; force; band, troop
- mare, maris, n., sea

- maritimus, -a, -um, adj., of the sea, maritime, on the sea
- māter, mātris, f., mother; mātrēs familiae, matrons
- māteria, -ae, acc. -am, or māteriēs, acc. -em, f., stuff, timber
- mātrimōnium, -ī, n., marriage; in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry
- $m\bar{a}tr\bar{o}na$, -ae, f., wife, matron
- mātūrē, adv., rapidly, soon; quam mātūrrimē, as soon as possible
- mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ripen, mature; hurry
- mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe, grown, of proper age; mature; early, speedy
- maximē, adv., in the highest degree, most of all, exceedingly, chiefly, especially; quam maximē, as much as possible
- maximus, -a, -um, adj., greatest, largest
- medicīna, -ae, f., healing art; medicine
- medicus, -a, -um, adj., of healing, medical; ars medica, medical skill; m. as noun, physician, surgeon
- medīdiēs, see merīdiēs
- medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, middle of, the midst of; n. as noun, the middle
- melior, melius, adj., better
- melius, adv., better
- membrum, $-\bar{i}$, n., limb, member
- memor, gen. -oris, adj., relentless
- memoria, -ae, f. (p. 21), memory, recollection; faculty of remembering; time; in memoriā habēre or tenēre, remember; in memoriam, in memory of
- memorō, -āre, -āvì, -ātum (p. 238), recall, relate
- mendicus, -i, m., beggar
- mēns, mentis, f., mind, understanding; purpose

mēnsa, -ae, f., table; meal, course mēnsis, mēnsis, m., month

mercātor, -ōris, m., trader, merchant mercēs, mercēdis, f., fee, pay

mereō -ēre, -uī, -itum, deserve; earn; acquire

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, plunge, sink

merīdiēs, $-\bar{e}i$, m., midday, noon; south

meritum, -ī, n. (p. 238), service

meritus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), meriting; merited, deserved, just

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, measure;
 distribute

metuō, -ere, -uī, — (p. 238), fear, be afraid of

metus, $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$, m., fear

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., my, mine, my own, of mine

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, move, migrate

mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier

mīlitāris, -e, adj. (p. 64), of a soldier, military; rēs mīlitāris, warfare, art of war, military science

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), be a soldier, perform military service

mīlle, num. adj., a thousand; n. pl. as noun, mīlia, -ium, thousands; mīlle passūs or passuum, a thousand paces, mile

minae, - \bar{a} rum, f. pl., threats

minimē, adv., least; no, not at all; minimē saepe, very seldom

minimus, -a, -um, adj., smallest, least, very small; very seldom

ministerium, -ī, n., service; ministry; administration

minor, minus, adj. (p. 21), smaller, less, of less importance

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, lessen, diminish

minus, adv., less; minus facile, less easily, not so easily; nihilō minus, none the less; nevertheless; sī... minus, if not

mīrābilis, -e, adj. (p. 148), wonderful mīrāculum, -ī, n., miracle, strange thing

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire, be astonished

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful, astonishing, strange

miser, misera, miserum, adj., wretched; unfortunate; unhappy

miserē, adv., miserably, desperately mittē, -ere, mīsī, missum, send; dismiss, release, let go; throw, hurl

dismiss, release, let go; throw, hurl mobilis, -e, adj. (p. 148), mobile

modestia, -ae, f. (p. 21), modesty modo, adv., only, merely; just now; non modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also

modus, -ī, m., measure, size; amount; way, mode, manner, kind; ejus modī, of such a sort; quem ad modum, in what way, how; as; tālī modō, of such a kind, in such a way

moenia, -ium, n. pl., city walls, fortifications

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, grind; pf. part., ground; molita cibāria, meal, flour

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, remind, advise, warn

monitor, $-\bar{\text{o}}$ ris, m. (p. 21), one who reminds, monitor

mons, montis, m., mountain, range of mountains; hill

monstro, -are, -avī, -atum (p. 238), show; point out

mönstrum, $-\bar{i}$, n. (p. 238), monster

mora, -ae, f., delay; hindrance

morior, morī, mortuus sum, die

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 238), delay, linger

mors, mortis, f., death

mortālis, -e, adj. (p. 64), mortal

mortifer, -era, -erum, adj., deadly

mortuus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), dead; m. as noun, dead person; pl., the dead

mōs, mōris, m., custom; mōs est, it is usual or customary

mōtus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), movement moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move, stir; castra movēre, break camp

mox, adv., soon, presently, afterwards

mulier, -eris, f., woman, female multiplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, multiply

multitūdō, -inis, f. (p. 100), multitude, large number, crowd, throng; the common people, population

multō, adv., by much, much, by far, far

multum, adv., much, greatly; compar., plūs, more; superl., plūrimum, most, very, generally

multus, -a, -um, adj., many, many a; much, abundant, a great quantity of; extensive, great; multō diē, late in the day; m. pl. as noun, many, many persons; n. as noun, much; (pl.), many things

mundus, -ī, m., world; universe

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, wall in, fortify, guard, defend, protect; construct

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), fortification, defenses, rampart

mūnus, mūneris, n., service, office; duty; burden; gift

mūrus, -ī, m., wall, city wall

 $m\bar{u}sica, -ae, f., music$

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, change; turn

N

nam, conj., for, inasmuch as namque, conj., for, for in fact

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, happen upon, meet with, find; get possession of

nārrātor, -ōris, m. (p. 100), narrator nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report, relate, tell

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born or produced; arise; perf. part., often with a numeral, at the age of, old

nātiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), nation, tribe, people

nātūra, -ae, f., nature, character,
 quality

nātūrālis, -e, adj. (p. 64), natural nātus, -ī, m. (p. 238), son, child

(nātus, -ūs) m. (p. 238), only in abl. sing., nātū, birth, age; major nātū, older, elder

nauta, -ae, m., sailor

nāvālis, -e, adj. (p. 64), naval

nāvicula, -ae, f., small boat

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pp. 55, 238), set sail, sail

nāvis, nāvis, f., ship, vessel, boat; nāvis longa, warship, galley; nāvis onerāria, freight ship, transport; nāvem appellere, bring to land, come to land; nāvem conscendere, go aboard ship, embark; ē nāve ēgredī, disembark; nāvem or nāvēs solvere, set sail, weigh anchor, put to sea

-ne, enclitic adv., a sign of direct questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no"; conj., introducing indirect questions, whether

nē, adv., not; nē ... quidem, not ...
even, not ... either; conj., that ...
not, in order that ... not, in order
not to, for fear that; (after verbs of
fearing) that, lest; nē quis, so that
or in order that no one

nec, see neque

necessāriō or necessāriē, adv., necessarily, unavoidably

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., necessary; critical; m. pl. as noun, friends, kinsmen

necesse, indecl. adj., necessary; inevitable

necessitās, -ātis, f. (p. 100), necessity, need

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, put to death, kill

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, disregard, neglect

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, say no, say ... not; deny, refuse

- negōtium, -ī, n., business; task; trouble; negōtium dare, employ
- nēmō, dat. nēminī; acc. nēminem; no gen. or abl.; m. and f., no one, nobody; not a single one
- nemus, -oris, n., a wood, forest nepōs, -ōtis, m., grandson
- neque or nec, conj., and not, not;
 nor; neque . . . neque or nec . . .
 nec, neither . . . nor; neque solum
 . . sed etiam, not only . . . but
 also
- nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī, —, not know, be ignorant; nesciō quis, someone or other, somebody; nesciō quid, something or other, something; nesciō cūr, for some reason or other; I do not know why
- neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. (p. 21), neither; m. pl. as noun, neither side or party
- neve or neu, conj., and not, nor nex, necis, f., death, murder
- nihil, n., indecl., nothing; with gen., no, none (of); adv., not at all; non nihil, something; as adv., somewhat, to some extent
- nihilum, -ī, n., nothing at all, not a bit, nothing; especially, in the abl. with a compar., e.g., nihilō minus, nevertheless, none the less
- nisi or nī, conj., if not, unless; after
 a neg or an interrog., except, but;
 only
- nōbilis, -e, adj., highborn, noble; well-known, distinguished; m. pl. as noun, nobles, the nobility
- nōbilitās, -ātis, f. (p. 100), fame; high rank, nobility; the nobles
- noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, harm, injure noctū, adv., by night, at night
- nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., of or by night, nightly, nocturnal
- nölö, nölle, nölui, (see pp. 341-342, 47), not wish, be unwilling; imberative. do not
- nomen, -inis, n., name; reputation,
 fame; account, sake; excuse

- nominatim, adv., by name
- nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), name
- non, adv., not, no; non jam, no longer; non nihil, something; non numquam, sometimes, a few times
- nondum, adv., not yet
- nonne, used to introduce a question and to imply the answer "yes"
- nonnullus, -a, -um, adj., some, several
- nonus, -a, -um, num. adj., ninth
- nos, pers. pron., we
- nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum, become acquainted with, recognize; perf., know
- noster, -tra, -trum, adj., our, ours,
 our own; m. pl. as noun, our men,
 troops, soldiers
- notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, notice, observe nōtus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), known, familiar, well-known
- novem, indecl. num. adj., nine
- novus, -a, -um, adj., new; strange; rēs novae, revolution; superl., novissimus, -a,-um, last, the end of, rear; m. pl. as noun, those at the rear, rear ranks or line; novissimum agmen, the rear
- nox, noctis, f., night; ad multam
 noctem, till late at night; media
 nox, midnight; proxima nox, tomorrow night
- nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, uncover, make or lay bare; deprive of
- nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unprotected
- nūllus, -a, -um, adj., no, not any, none; m. pl. as noun, none
- nūmen, -inis, n.. divinity
- numerus, -ī, m., number; amount,
 quantity
- nummus, $-\bar{i}$, m., coin
- numquam, adv., never, not at all; non numquam, sometimes, a few times
- nunc, adv., now, at present

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), announce, give news, report, narrate, carry a report

nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger; news, message

nuper, adv., lately, recently

nusquam, adv., nowhere

nūtrīx, -īcis, f., nurse

nympha, -ae, f., nymph; pl., the nymphs, female deities that inhabited the seas, fountains, woods, and mountains

О

ob, prep. with acc., toward, against; on account of, by reason of, because of; ob eam rem, for this reason, therefore; quam ob causam, for this reason, why; quam ob rem, therefore; why; why?

objiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), put before, throw against

obscūrus, -a, -um, adj., dark, obscure observo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, observe

obses, obsidis, m. and f., hostage

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum (p. 180), hem in, blockade, besiege

obsidiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), siege, blockade

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, stop up, barricade

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (p. 180), hold, occupy, have; hold fast, obtain

occāsiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), occasion, opportunity

occāsus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), a falling, setting; sōlis occāsus, sunset, the west

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum (p. 180), fall down; die, be killed; set (applied to the sun)

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down; kıll, slay

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hide, conceal

occultus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), hidden, secret; n. as noun, secret; in occultō, in secret

occupātus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), occupied, engaged, busy

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take possession of, occupy, seize

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum (p. 180), run against, run to meet, meet: fall in with

octo, indecl. num. adj., eight

octoginta, indecl. num. adj., eighty

oculus, $-\bar{i}$, m., eye

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, defective verb (see p. 343, 48), hate, detest

odiōsus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), hateful, odious

odium, $-\bar{i}$, n. (p. 21), hatred

odor, -ōris, m., odor, scent

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, strike against, harm; animum offendere, offend

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f., offense, displeasure offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum (p. 180), bring before, offer; expose; sē offerre, expose oneself to

officium, -ī, n., service, kindness; duty, official duty; sense of obligation

oleum, $-\bar{i}$, n., oil

ōlim, adv., once, formerly, once upon a time; some day

ōmen, -inis, n. (p. 21), omen, sign omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, let go, neglect; cease, stop; omit

omnīnō, adv., altogether, entirely, in all, only; in general, by all means

omnis, -e, adj., all, every, whole; n. pl. as noun, everything

onerārius, -a, -um, adj., fitted or suitable for burdens; nāvis onerāria, freight ship, transport

onus, oneris, n., load, burden, weight; cargo; care, responsibility

opera, -ae, f., work, pains; effort, labor, toil; attention; aid, help

opīniō, -ōnis, f., opinion, belief, expectation; impression; contrā opīniōnem omnium, against the judgment of everyone, contrary to popular opinion

oportet, oportere, oportuit, impers.,
 it is necessary, it is proper or right;
 (one) must, (one) ought

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj., of or pertaining to a town; m. pl. as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town oppidum, -ī, n., town, stronghold, city

opportune, adv., opportunely, at the right time, conveniently

oppressor, -ōris, m. (p. 21), crusher, destroyer

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum (p. 180), press or weigh down, oppress, crush, overpower; put down; somnō oppressus, overcome by sleep, asleep

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), taking by storm, attack, assault, siege

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 180), attack, assault, try to storm, storm, besiege

(ops), opis (no nom. or dat. sing.), f., aid; power; pl., power, influence, resources, wealth

optimē, adv., best

optimus, -a, -um, adj., best, excellent opus, operis, n., work, labor; task; deed; structure, siege work, fortification; want, necessity; opus est, there is need of, it is necessary; magnō opere, greatly, very much; quantō opere, how much? how greatly?

ōra, -ae, f., margin, shore, distant shore; ōra maritima, coast, seashore
 ōrāculum, -ī, n. (p. 46), oracle;

prophecy

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 100), oration, speech, discourse; argument; habēre ōrātiōnem, deliver or make a speech

ōrātor, -ōris, m. (pp. 21, 100), orator, speaker

orbis, orbis, m., circle; orbis terrārum, the earth, the world

ordo, ordinis, m., row, rank, line; order; class, rank

orīgō, -inis, f., origin, descent

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise, rise; appear, begin; be descended, spring from; oriēns sōl, sunrise; the east; ortā lūce, at daybreak

ornātus, -a, -um, adj., furnished,
fitted out; distinguished

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, speak; pray, plead; ask for

ortus, -ūs, m., rising; the east; ortus sõlis, sunrise

ōs, ōris, n., mouth; face; look, expression

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum (p. 180), display, show, point out; make known; state

ōstium, -ī, n., door; mouth, entrance ōtium, -ī, n., leisure, idleness, ease; peace, quiet

Р

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 238), forage, collect food

pābulum, -ī, n., food; fodder, pasture
pācificus, -a, -um, adj., peacemaking,
pacific

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), make peaceful, pacify, subdue

pactum, -ī, n., agreement paene, adv., nearly, almost

paenitentia, -ae, f. (p. 21), penitence, repentance

pāgus, $-\bar{i}$, m., district, canton palam, adv., openly, in public

pālus, -ī, m., stake

palūs, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh

pandō, -ere, pandī, pānsum or passum, spread, stretch out; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands

pār, gen. paris, adj., equal, like; suitable

parātus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), prepared, ready

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus, spare, show mercy to

parens, parentis, m. and f., parent, father, mother; relative

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, --, obey, submit, be subject to pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, obtain, bear, be at hand

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare, make ready; get, acquire

pars, partis, f., part, share, division; direction, quarter; in omnēs partēs, into every part; omnibus in partibus, in all directions, on all sides; ūnā ex parte, on one side

participō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, share partim, adv., partly, in part

partior, -īrī, -ītus sum (p. 238), share
parum, adv., too little, little; compar.,
minus, less; superl., minimē, least;
not at all; no

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, little; humble; compar., minor, minus, smaller, less, of less importance; superl., minimus, -a, -um, smallest, least, very small

pāscor, -ī, pāstus sum, be fed, pasture
passus, -ūs, m., step; mille passūs or
 mille passuum, a thousand paces,
 mile

pāstor, -ōris, m. (pp. 21, 100), shepherd

patefacio, -facere, -feci, -factum, lay open, open; expose, reveal

pateo, -ere, -ui, -, lie or be open, stretch out, extend

pater, patris, m., father; pl. often, forefathers; senators; pater familiae, father or head of a family; patrēs conscripti, senators

patior, patī, passus sum, suffer; allow, permit

patria, -ae, f., native country or land patricius, -a, -um, adj., of the fathers, of the nobles, patrician

patrius, -a, -um, adj., paternal, ancestral

paucitās, -ātis, f. (p. 100), small number

paucus, -a, -um, adj., few; usually pl., few, a few; m. pl. as noun, a few, few people; n. pl. as noun, a few things, a few words; paucis ante annis, a few years before

paulātim, adv., little by little, gradually **paulisper**, adv., for a short time **paulo**, adv., (by) a little

paulum, adv., a little

pavor, -ōris, m., trembling, terror

pāx, pācis, f., peace

pectus, pectoris, n., breast; heart,
 mind, feelings

pecūnia, -ae, f., wealth, money

pecus, pecudis, f., beast, animal; sheep; pl., cattle

pedālis, -e, adj. (p. 64), of the foot,
 pedal

pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier, infantryman; pl., infantry

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., on foot; pedestrian, of a foot soldier; on or by land; pedestrēs copiae, infantry forces, infantry

peditātus, -ūs, m., infantry

pejor, pejus, adj., worse

pejus, adv., worse

pellis, pellis, f., skin, pelt

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, beat;
 drive out or away; rout, defeat

pendeō, -ēre, pependī, —, hang, hang down

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum, weigh;
pay; with poenam, pay, suffer
pendulum, -ī, n., pendulum

per, prep. with acc., through, among, by, throughout; (space) over; (time) during, for; per annum, by the year, annually; per sē, of oneself

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), seize, receive; learn; feel

percutio, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, thrust or pierce through; strike

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p.
84), lead or bring through, bring,
lead; construct; induce

peregrinus, -a, -um, adj., from abroad, strange, foreign

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (p. 84), go through; be lost; perish, die

perfacilis, -e, adj., very easy

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (p. 84),
 bear through; convey; endure, submit to; report, relate

- perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), accomplish, carry out, complete; cause
- perfidus, -a, -um, adj., treacherous perfuga, -ae, m., deserter
- perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, (p. 84), flee for refuge, desert
- perīculōsus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), dangerous, perilous
- perīculum, -ī, n., trial; danger, risk
- perītus, -a, -um, adj., experienced, skilled
- permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum (p. 84), continue, remain, last permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p.
- 84), let go; intrust; permit, allow
- permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move strongly *or* deeply, alarm; influence
- perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj., very few
- perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, perpetual, lasting; the whole of; in perpetuum, forever
- perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum (p. 84), break through
- perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum (p. 84), write in full; record
- persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum (p. 84), follow up; pursue
- perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, see or look through, perceive clearly, view; inspect, learn; observe
- persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum (p. 84), persuade, convince, induce
- perterreo, -terrere, -terrui, -territum (p. 84), frighten thoroughly, terrify
- pertineō, -tinere, -tinuī, -tentum (p. 180), extend; tend, lead; pertain
- perturbātiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 100), disturbance, alarm
- perturbātus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), disturbed
- perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), disturb greatly, throw into confusion, disturb; dismay

- perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come through *or* to, arrive, reach, come
- pēs, pedis, m., foot; (as a measure) a
 foot; pedem referre, retreat
- pessimē, adv., worst; most unkindly
 pessimus, -a, -um, adj., worst, most
 wicked
- petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, pursue, seek, make for; assail; go to; ask for, ask; beg, entreat; fugā salūtem petere, flee, run away, run to a place of safety
- phalanx, -angis, f., phalanx, military formation in close order
- piger, -gra, -grum, lazy
- pīlum, -ī, n., pike, spear, javelin
- pīrāta, -ae, m., pirate
- placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, please, be pleasing; impers., placet, it is resolved or decided
- plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, soothe, appease, placate
- plānitiēs, -ēī, f., level ground, plain plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -eī or -ī, f., the common people, populace, plebs, plebeians
- plēnē, adv., completely
- plēnus, -a, -um, adj., full; whole
- plērumque, adv., for the most or greater part, very often, commonly, generally
- plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, adj., most; pl., very many, most of
- pluit, impers., it rains
- plūrimum, adv., most, very, generally; plūrimum posse, be most powerful
- plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., most, very many, very large; n. as noun, very much
- plūs, plūris, n. (see p. 317, 17), more; pl. as adj., a number of, several; m. pl. as noun, more
- plūs, adv., more
- poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty; poenam or poenās dare, pay the penalty
- poēta, -ae, m., poet

polliceor-praesertim

polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, promise pōmum, -ī, n., apple

pondus, ponderis, n., a weight (of a scale); weight

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, put, place, lay; deposit, store away; pass., be situated; arma pōnere, lay down one's arms, surrender; castra pōnere, pitch camp, encamp

 $p\bar{o}ns$, pontis, m., bridge

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, devastate, lay waste, ravage

populus, $-\bar{i}$, m., a people, nation; the people, the citizens

porcus, -i, m., swine, hog

porta, -ae, f., gate; door, portal

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, convey, carry, bring

portus, -ūs, m., harbor, port

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, demand

possessiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 100), possession, property

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, have possession of, possess, occupy; acquire

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can; have influence; plūrimum posse, be most powerful; minimum posse, have little or no power

post, adv., behind, in the rear; after, afterwards, later; prep. with acc., behind, back of; after

posteā, adv., afterwards, later, to come, subsequently

posteāquam, see postquam

posterus, -a, -um, adj., following, next; postero die, on the next day

postquam or posteāquam, conj., after, as soon as, when

postrīdiē, adv., next day, the following day; postrīdiē ejus diēī, the next or following day

postulātum, -ī, n. (p. 238), demand

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand, require, ask for

potēns, gen. -entis, adj. (p. 148), powerful, influential

potentia, -ae, f. (p. 200), power, political influence, authority

potestās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), power, authority; opportunity; control; potestātem facere, grant opportunity or permission, give a chance potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, become master of, get control of; possess

potius, compar. adv., rather

prae, prep. with abl., before, in front of, ahead of; in comparison with

praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharp in front or at the end

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, hold forth, present; display, show

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go before; surpass

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), enjoin upon, direct, give directions to, order, advise, teach

praecipuē, adv., especially

praeclārē, adv., admirably

praeclārus, -a, -um, adj., famous, distinguished

praecurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum (p. 84), run before, run forward praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), proclaim, assert; boast

praedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum (p. 84), foretell; advise, warn

praefectus, -i, m. (p. 238), commander, officer, prefect

praeficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum (p. 180), place over or in charge of

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), send forward, send ahead; send

praemium, -ī, n., reward, prize

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), place in charge of

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum (p. 84), direct

praesēns, gen. -entis, adj. (p. 148), at hand, present; immediate, for the moment

praesentia, -ae, f. (pp. 21, 200), presence; in praesentiā, for the present praesentō, -āre, —, -ātum, place before, show; present

praesertim, adv., especially

- praesidium, -ī, n., defense, protection; garrison, guard; safety
- praestāns, gen. -stantis, adj., surpassing, remarkable
- praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum (p. 180), stand before; excel; show; praestat, impers., it is better or preferable
- praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (p. 84), be ahead; be in command *or* in charge of, command, preside over
- praeter, prep. with acc., past, by; besides, except
- praetereā, adv., in addition, besides, besides this, beyond this, moreover
- praetōrius, -a, -um, adj., of a praetor, a Roman magistrate; praetōria cohors, guard of honor
- prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, grasp, seize
- premo, -ere, pressi, pressum, press,
 press hard
- pretiōsus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), valuable, precious
- pretium, -ī, n., price
- prex, precis, f., prayer, entreaty
- prīdem, adv., long ago; jam prīdem, this long time; long ago
- prīdiē, adv., (on) the day before
- prīmō, adv., at first, first
- prīmum, adv., first, at first; quam prīmum, as soon as possible
- prīmus, -a, -um, adj., first, foremost; first part of; principal, chief; m. pl. as noun, the leading men; in prīmīs (imprīmīs), especially; prīmā lūce, at daybreak
- princeps, gen. principis, adj., first, foremost, chief; m. as noun, leader, chief, noble
- prīncipātus, -ūs, m., first place, leadership, authority
- prior, prius, adj., former, preceding,
 first
- pristinus, -a, -um, adj., former prius, adv., before, previously, first
- priusquam or prius ... quam, conj.,
 before, sooner than; until
- prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., private, personal; m. as noun, private citizen

- prō, prep. with abl., before, in front of; in behalf of, in defense of, for; in place of, in return for, instead of; in the character of, as; in accordance with, considering
- probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, test; show; approve
- procedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum
 (p. 84), go forward, advance, proceed; march
- procul, adv., at a distance, afar
- procus, -ī, m., suitor, lover
- prodo, -dere, -didi, -ditum (p. 180),
 bring forth; reveal; hand down;
 surrender
- prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead or bring forth; draw up (troops); prolong
- proelium, -ī, n., battle, engagement; proelium committere, begin battle; proelium facere, engage in battle
- profectio, -onis, f. (p. 238), a setting out, departure
- pröferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (p. 84), bring forth or forward
- prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), carry out, accomplish; make progress, assist; gain
- proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out or forth, start, go forward, march; migrate
- profor, -fārī, -fātus sum, speak out
- profugio, -fugere, -fugi, -fugiturus (p. 84), flee from or before, escape profugus, -a, -um, adj., fleeing; m. as
- noun (p. 238), fugitive, exile progredior, -gredi, -gressus sum (p.
- 180), go on *or* forward, proceed, advance
- prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum (p. 180), hold back; keep, keep out or away from; prevent, hinder from, protect
- proinde, adv., therefore
- prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), hurl forward or down; throw, abandon; banish; sē prōjicere, jump down
- prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), promise; datā fidē prōmittere, promise in good faith

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move forward, push onward

prōnuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), announce, report; say, speak

prope, prep. with acc., near, nearby,
near to; adv., nearly, almost;
compar., propius, nearer; superl.,
proximē, nearest, most recently

propello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum (p. 84), drive forward or forth; dislodge, drive off, repel, rout

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten, hurry, be in haste

propinquus, -a, -um, adj., near, neighboring; m. and f. as noun, relative, kinsman, kinswoman

propius, adv., and prep. with acc., nearer

propono, -ponere, -posui, -positum (p.
84), put or set forth, point out;
report; offer

proprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own, private, appropriate

propter, prep. with acc., near; because of, on account of

proptereā, adv., for this or that reason, on account of this, therefore; proptereā quod, for the reason that, because, inasmuch as

prora, -ae, f., prow

prosequor, -sequi, -secutus sum (p. 84), follow after, pursue

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus (p. 180), be of service; help, profit

prōtinus, adv., next; immediately prōveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come forth

provideo, -videre, -vidi, -visum (p. 84), foresee; provide

provincia, -ae, f., province

prōvocō, -vocāre, -vocāvī, -vocātum (p. 84), call forth, challenge

proximē, adv., nearest; last, most
recently

proximus, -a, -um, adj., nearest, next; recent, last; proximō diē, on the next day, tomorrow; proxima nox, tomorrow night, the following night

prūdentia, -ae, f., foresight, prudence
pūblicē, adv., in the name of the
 people or state; officially; for the
 state, at public expense

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to the people or state, public; n. as noun, public; rēs pūblica, f., the state, government, public interests

pudor, -ōris, m., shame, sense of shame

puella, -ae, f., girl, maiden puer, puerī, m., boy, child

puerīlis, -e, adj. (p. 148), boyish; puerile

pugna, -ae, f., battle, fight

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), fight, engage in battle

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, beat, knock at pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cleanse, clean, clear; excuse

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consider, think, believe, suppose

Q

quā, adv., where, by which or what way or road

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., forty quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., four hundred

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, seek, look for; ask, inquire

quaestor, -ōris, m. (p. 21), quaestor, a Roman magistrate connected with state finances

quālis, -e, adj., such as, as

quam, adv., to what degree, how, how greatly; as; how? with comparatives, than; with superlatives, as . . . as possible; ante . . . quam, conj., before; prius . . . quam, conj., sooner than; quam celerrimē, as soon as possible; quam maximē, as much as possible; quam prīmum, as soon as possible; tam . . . quam, so much . . . as, both . . . and

quamquam, conj., although, though;
and yet

quantum, adv., rel., as much as, as far as, to such an extent as; interrog., how much? how far? tantum . . . quantum, as much . . . as

quantus, -a, -um, adj., interrog., how great? how much? quantō opere, how much? how greatly? rel., as great (especially after tantus); tantus . . . quantus, as (so) great . . . as, as large . . . as, as much . . . as; n. as noun, as much as

quārē, adv., rel., for which reason, wherefore, why; interrog., why?

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj., fourth quasi, adv., as if, as though, almost quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj., four-

teen

-que, enclitic conj., and

queror, queri, questus sum, complain; complain of; lament

quī, quae or qua, quod, indef. adj., some, any

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, this, that; rel. adj., which, what, whatever

quī or quis, quae, quod, interrog. adj., what? which?

quia, conj., because

quicquam, see quisquam

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., whoever, whatever, whichever, everyone who, everything that

quid, interrog. adv., why? with posse, how?

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, adj., a certain, some; a kind of; pron., a certain person, somebody, someone, something; pl., some

quidem, adv., indeed; at least, even;
nē . . . quidem, not even, not
. . . either

quiēs, -ētis, f., quiet, repose, rest quiētē, adv., quietly

quiētus, -a, -um, adj., quiet

quin, conj. and adv., so that not, but that; as conj., after words of doubt, that, that not; after words of hindering, from; as adv., nay, indeed, moreover; quin etiam, nay even, moreover, nay more, more than that

quindecim, indecl. num. adj., fifteen quingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., five hundred

quinque, indecl. num. adj., five quintus, -a, -um, num. adj., fifth

quis, quid, indef. pron., anybody, anyone, anything; ne quis, so that no one; sī quis, if anyone, whoever

quis or qui, quae, quod, interrog. adj., what? which? what kind or sort of?

quis, quid, interrog. pron., who? which?
 what? nesciō quis, someone or
 other, somebody; nesciō quid, something

quisquam, quicquam or quidquam, indef. pron., anyone, anything, anyone or anything at all; as adj., any

quisque, quaque, quodque, indef. adj., each, each one

quisque, quidque, indef. pron., each one, every one, each, every

quō, adv., interrog., whither? where? to what place? in what direction? rel., to which place or point, whither; because

quō, conj., whereby, in order that, that; quō minus or quōminus, so that . . . not, from, lest

quoad, adv., as long as, until

quod, conj., because; as to the fact that, whereas; proptereā quod, for the reason that, because; inasmuch as; quod sī, but if, now if, and if

quōminus, see quō (conj.)

quondam, adv., formerly, once

quoniam, conj., since, because

quoque, conj., also, too

quot, adj., indecl., interrog., how many? rel., as many as

quotannis, adv., every year, yearly
quotiens, adv., rel., as often as;
interrog., how often?

R

rāmus, -ī, m., branch, bough rāna, -ae, f., frog

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, seize, carry off; lay waste

ratiō, -ōnis, f., account, reckoning; way, manner, plan; system; reason; aliā ratiōne, otherwise, on other or any other terms; quā ratiōne, on what terms

ratis, -is, f., raft

re-, inseparable prefix, again, back rebellio, -onis, f., revolt, rebellion

recens, gen. -entis, adj., new, fresh, recent

recessus, -ūs, m., retreat

recipero, see recupero

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), take, get or bring back; admit, receive; undertake; in fidem recipere, take under one's protection; sē recipere, withdraw, retreat

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, read aloud recognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum (p. 84), recognize

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., straight, direct recuperō or reciperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, win or get back, recover

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse, decline

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 84), give back, restore; give up; make

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go back, return; ad sē redīre, recover consciousness

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (p. 180), drive back; bring under, reduce

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum (p. 180), buy back, ransom; purchase

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew

reditus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), return

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead back, bring back

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum (p. 180), carry or bring back; repay; reply; announce, report; refer; lay before; pedem referre, withdraw, retreat; sē referre, go back reficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum (p. 180), make over; renew; repair

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus (p. 84), flee back; flee

refugium, -i, n. (p. 238), recourse, taking refuge; refuge

rēgia, -ae, f. (p. 124), palace

rēgīna, -ae, f. (p. 124), queen

regiō, -ōnis, f. (pp. 124, 238), region, territory, country

rēgius, -a, -um, adj. (p. 124), royal, regal

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pp. 124, 238), reign, rule

rēgnum, -ī, n. (p. 124), royal authority
or power; sovereignty, rule; kingdom

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum (p. 124), guide, direct, control; rule

rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), throw *or* hurl back, repel

religiō, -ōnis, f., reverence; religion; scruple; religious observance

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave behind, leave, abandon

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., left, remaining, rest or remainder of; m. as noun, the other

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum (p. 84), remain

remedium, $-\bar{i}$, n., remedy

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), send back; give up, relax; remit

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move back *or* away; remove, withdraw

rēmus, -ī, m., oar

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew

renuntio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), bring back word, report

repello, -ere, reppuli, repulsum (p. 84), drive back or away, repulse

repentīnō, adv., suddenly

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj., sudden

reperio, -īre, repperī, repertum, find, discover; find out

repleo, -plere, -plevi, -pletum, fill; fill full

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), carry back; convey

rēs, reī, f., thing (the exact meaning to be determined by the context); matter, fact, affair, event; act, deed, exploit; circumstance, condition; action; reason; possession; ad eas rēs conficiendas, to accomplish this; ob eam rem, therefore; his rebus gestis, after these exploits or operations; quam ob rem, therefore; why; why? re vera, in fact; res dīvīna, religious matter; res familiāris, private property, estate; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, provisions; rēs gesta, deed; rēs mīlitāris, warfare, art of war, military science: rēs novae, revolution; rēs or res publica, the state, government, public interests

rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum (p. 84), enroll; write again

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, — (p. 84), stand still, remain behind; resist

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look back, look back at, regard

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer, reply, respond

responsum, -ī, n. (p. 238), reply, answer, response

rēs pūblica, see rēs

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum (p. 180), put *or* place back, restore, rebuild

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (p. 180), hold *or* keep back; keep, maintain

reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come back

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, — (p. 84), (active regularly in perf. tenses only), turn back, come back, return

revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, turn back, return

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), recall rēx, rēgis, m. (p. 124), king, ruler

rīpa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream), shore rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask; ask for, request

rosa, -ae, f., rose

röstrum, -ī, n. (p. 21), beak, snout, bill; beak (of a ship); pl., Rostra, platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships ruīna, -ae, f., downfall, ruin, destruction, calamity; pl., ruins rūmor, -ōris, m. (p. 21), rumor, report ruō, -ere, ruī, ruitūrus, rush; fall rūpēs, -is, f., rock, cliff rūrsus or rūrsum, adv., again

rūrsus or rūrsum, adv., again rūsticus, -a, -um, adj., of the country, rural

S

saccus, -ī, m., sack, bag sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., sacred, holy sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., priest, priestess

sacrificium, $-\bar{i}$, n. (p. 200), sacrifice sacrificō, $-\bar{a}$ re, $-\bar{a}$ v \bar{i} , $-\bar{a}$ tum, sacrifice sacrum, $-\bar{i}$, n., sacred rite

saepe, adv., often, frequently; minime
saepe, very rarely

saepenumerō or saepe numerō, adv., time and again, often

saevus, -a, -um, adj., savage, cruel sagitta, -ae, f., arrow

sagittārius, -ī, m., bowman, archer salūs, -ūtis, f., health; safety; salūtem dīcit, greets

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), greet, hail

salvus, -a, -um, adj., safe

sānctus, -a, -um, adj., sacred, holy sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood; race

sānitās, -ātis, f., soundness; good sense; sanity

sapiēns, gen. -entis, adj., wise sapientia, -ae, f. (p. 200), wisdom

satis, indecl. adj., enough, sufficient; as noun, enough; adv., enough, sufficiently, quite; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (p. 238), do enough; give satisfaction, make reparation, apologize

saxum, $-\bar{i}$, n., rock, stone scaena, -ae, f., scene; stage scālae, -ārum, f. pl., scaling ladder scapha, -ae, f., small boat. skiff scelerātus, -a, -um, adj., wicked, infamous scelus, sceleris, n., evil or wicked deed, crime schola, -ae, f., school sciens, gen. -entis, adj., informed; skilled, expert; understanding scientia, -ae, f., knowledge scindo, scindere, scido, scissum, tear down, destroy sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, know, understand: know how scrībo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, write scūtum, -ī, n., shield sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go apart or away, withdraw sēcrētō, adv., secretly sēcrētum, -ī, n., secret, mystery sēcrētus, -a, -um, adj., set apart secundus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), following, second; favorable sed, conj., but, on the contrary sēdecim, indecl. num. adj., sixteen sedeő, -ère, sēdī, sessum, sit; settle sēdēs, -is, f., seat; residence, home semper, adv., always, ever senātor, -ōris, m. (p. 21), senator, one of a council of elders senātus, -ūs, m., senate, council or body of elders; ex senātūs consulto, according to a decree of the senate senex, gen. senis, adj., old, aged; m. as noun, old man, elder sententia, -ae, f., thought, feeling, opinion, judgment; mūtātā sententia, having changed (one's) mind sentiō, -îre, sēnsī, sēnsum, perceive. feel, realize, know, sense sēparātim, adv., separately, privately sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, separate septem, indecl. num. adj., seven septentriones, -um, m. pl., the stars of the Big Dipper; the north

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., seventh sepultūra, -ae, f., burial; in sepultūram dare, bury sequor, sequi, secutus sum (p. 263). follow, pursue; maintain; agree with sermō, $-\bar{o}$ nis, m., talk, conversation, discourse; speech, interview serō, serere, sēvī, satum, sow serva, -ae, f., female slave, maid servant. servo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, observe, guard, keep; save servus, -ī, m., slave, servant sescenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., six hundred sex, indecl. num. adj., six sextus, -a, -um, num. adj., sixth sī, conj., if, in case, in the event that: quam sī, as if; quod sī, but if, now ıf, even if; sī minus, if not; sī quis, if any, if anyone, whoever sīc, adv., thus, so, in this way or manner; so, to such an extent or degree; ut . . . sīc, as . . . so, while . . . yet, though . . . still sīcut or sīcutī, adv., just as, as if, as well as: as it were sīdus, -eris, n., heavenly body significo, -are, -avī, -atum, announce; indicate, mean signum, -ī, n., token, emblem, sign; signal; (military) standard, banner; signa ferre, advance the standards. advance; signa inferre, advance (to the attack), charge silentium, $-\bar{i}$, n. (p. 200), silence sileo, -ere, -uī, -, be silent silva, -ae, f., forest, wood, woods similis, -e, adj., like, similar simul, adv., at the same time, together; immediately; simul atque, as soon as simulātio, -onis, f. (p. 238), simulation, simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make like; pretend **sin**, conj., but if, if however

sine, prep. with abl., without

- singulāris, -e, adj. (p. 64), single, alone; singular; one by one
- singuli, -ae, -a, pl. num. adj., one at a time; one on a side; m. as noun, individuals
- sinistra, -ae, f., the left hand; ā sinistrā, on the left
- sistō, -ere, stitī, statum, plant, set situs, -ūs, m., site, situation
- sive or seu, conj., or, or if; sive . . . sive, whether . . . or
- societās, -ātis, f., alliance
- socius, -ī, m., associate, partner, ally, comrade, companion
- söl, sölis, m., sun; sun god; oriēns söl, east; sölis occāsus, sunset, west; ortū sölis, at or from sunrise
- soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, semideponent, be accustomed; be in the habit of
- sölitüdö, -inis, f. (p. 200), wilderness solitus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), accustomed, customary, usual
- sollicitě, *adv.*, carefully, anxiously, solicitously
- sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, agitate, incite, stir up, appeal to
- sölum, adv., only, merely, alone; nön sölum...sed etiam, not only... but also
- solus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only
- solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, loosen, untie; release; absolve; cast out; pay; with or without nāvem or nāvēs, set sail, weigh anchor
- somnus, -ī, m., sleep, drowsiness; ē somnō excitātus, roused from sleep
- sonus, -ī, m., sound, noise
- **soror, -\bar{o}ris,** f., sister
- spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum, scatter, sow, sprinkle
- **spatium**, -ī, n., space, extent; interval, distance; space of time
- speciēs, -ēī, f., sight, spectacle; appearance; semblance; kind
- spectāculum, $-\bar{i}$, n. (pp. 46, 238), spectacle, show
- spectator, -oris, m. (p. 21), spectator

- specto, -are, -avi, -atum, watch, see;
 consider; face, be situated; tend
- spēlunca, -ae, f., cave, cavern
- spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, despise, spurn
- spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), hope, hope for
- spēs, spe \bar{i} , f., hope, expectation spīna, -ae, f., barrier; thorn
- spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, despoil, plunder
- (spons, spontis), f., only abl., sponte, with sua, mea, tua, of one's own (my own, your own) accord, voluntarily
- squālor, -ōris, m. (p. 21), filth
- stabulum, -ī, n., stable, stall
- statim, adv., at once, immediately
- statiō, -ōnis, f. (p. 238), standing, station
- statua, -ae, f., statue
- statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum, stand, set up, make a stand; halt; station; determine, decide
- statūra, -ae, f., stature, height, size stella, -ae, f., star
- stimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), spur on, stimulate
- stimulus, -ī, m., goad, spur
- stīpendium, -ī, n., tax, tribute; a soldier's pay
- stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, stand; abide by
- strepitus, -ūs, m., dm, noise, uproar studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, desire, be eager or anxious; be devoted (to), give attention (to), study, lay stress on, attach importance to
- studium, -ī, n. (p. 200), zeal, enthusiasm; loyalty, devotion; study
- stultus, -a, -um, adj., foolish, stupid
- suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, urge, recommend, persuade
- sub, prep. with acc., under, toward;
 (place) beneath, into; up to, close to;
 (time) just before, during; with abl.,
 under, at; (place) at the foot of;
 in the shelter of; (time), in, within

- subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead or draw up, beach (ships); withdraw
- subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), come up (from below), come up (to), advance; go under, take up; undergo
- subitō, adv., suddenly
- subjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), hurl beneath; place below or under; hurl from beneath; subject
- sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lift or hold up; assist
- subministrō, -ministrāre, -ministrāvī, -ministrātum, furnish, supply
- submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), lower; drop; send up or under, send as aid or reinforcement
- submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move from under, drive away
- subsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum (p. 84), follow up *or* after, follow, follow closely
- **subsidium**, **-i**, *n*., reserve aid, assistance, help, relief; *pl*., reinforcements
- subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum (p. 84), withdraw; take away, subtract
- succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 180), go under; come up to, advance; succeed
- successor, -ōris, m. (p. 100), successor succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut, cut down
- suffrāgium, -ī, n., vote
- suī, sibi, sē, sē, third pers., sing. and pl., reflexive pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves; acc. as subject of inf., him, her, it, them, or he, she, it, they; reciprocal, each other, one another
- sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist
- summa, -ae, f., top, summit; total
- summoveô, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 180), move from under, send away, drive away, remove
- summus, -a, -um, adj., highest, top of; chief, greatest, supreme; n. as noun, top, summit; summum imperium, supreme command

- sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take; assume
- sūmptuosus, -a, -um (p. 148), adj., expensive, sumptuous
- super, adv., above, on top; prep., above, on top of
- superbia, -ae, f. (p. 200), pride, haughtiness
- superbus, -a, -um, adj., haughty, proud
- superior, -ius, adj. (p. 21), upper, higher; superior; (time), earlier, former, previous
- superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rise above or higher than; conquer, defeat; be superior to
- supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be left or over, survive, remain
- superus, -a, -um, adj., upper; m. pl. as noun, gods above, gods
- **supplicatio**, **-onis**, *f*., public prayer, supplication; thanksgiving
- supplicium, -ī, n., punishment
- supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 180), bring or carry up
- suprā, adv., above; before, earlier, formerly; prep. with acc., above, on, over
- suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), take up; undertake, assume; begin
- suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsum (p. 180), hang up, hang, suspend
- suspīciō, -ōnis, f. (p. 100), suspicion, distrust
- suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect
- sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (p. 180), uphold, sustain; withstand, resist, endure, bear; hold out; restrain; sē sustinēre, hold oneself up, stand up
- suus, -a, -um, poss. adj., reflexive, third person, his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, hers, its, theirs; one's own, one's; m. pl. as noun, one's (his, their) own men, troops, friends, people, party; n. pl. as noun, one's (his, her, their) own possessions, his (her, their) possessions or property

Т

tabernāculum, -ī, n., tent

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, be silent, keep silent about

tacitus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), silent; concealed, secret

taeda, -ae, f., torch

tālis, -e, adj., such, of such a kind

tam, adv., thus, so, so much, to such an extent; tam...quam, so much... as; both...and

tamen, adv., nevertheless, still, yet, however

tamquam, adv., as if, just as if

tandem, adv., at last, at length, finally

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch; border on; affect, influence

tantulus, -a, -um, adj., so small, so little, so unimportant

tantum, adv., so much, so greatly, to such an extent, so far; this much, only, alone, merely; tantum . . . quantum, as much . . . as

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great, so large, of such a size, of such an extent; tantus...quantus, as (so) great... as, as large...as, as much...as; n. as noun, so much

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make slow, retard

tardus, -a, -um, adj., tardy, slow taurus, -ī, m., bull

tēctum, -ī, n. (p. 238), roof; shelter, dwelling, house

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect; conceal

tellūs, tellūris, f., the earth; land, region

tēlum, -ī, n., missile, weapon, javelin, dart

temerārius, -a, -um, adj., imprudent temerē, adv., rashly, indiscreetly

temeritās, -ātis, f. (p. 100), rashness temperantia, -ae, f., prudence, self-control, temperance

tempestās, -ātis, f., time, season; weather; storm, tempest

templum, $-\bar{i}$, n., temple, shrine

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, test, try; venture, attempt; tempt

tempus, temporis, n., time; a time, period, season; opportunity; brevī tempore, quickly, soon; ex tempore, without preparation, offhand

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, stretch, aim, direct; make one's way, go; bend

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, hold, possess; occupy; control; cursum tenēre, keep a course; sē tenēre, stay

tergum, -ī, n., back; rear; post tergum, behind; tergum vertere, flee

terra, -ae, f., earth, land; territory, region; orbis terrārum, the earth; the world

terrēnus, -a, -um, adj., earthen, of earth

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten, terrify, alarm

terribilis, -e, adj. (p. 148), frightful, terrible

territus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), frightened, terrified

terror, -ōris, m. (p. 21), terror, panic, fear, dread

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., third

testimonium, -ī, n., testimony, evidence

testis, -is, m. and f., witness

testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise; as a military term, testudo, a shed protecting besiegers, or a close formation of troops with overlapping shields

tigris, -idis; nom. pl. tigrēs, m. or f., tiger

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, fear, be afraid of; be afraid

timide, adv., timidly

timidus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 21), timid, cowardly

timor, -ōris (p. 238), m., fear, alarm; timidity

titulus, -ī, m., title of honor

toga, -ae, f., toga, outer garment worn by Roman men

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, lift, raise; take on board; exalt; remove; do away with; abolish

tormentum, -ī, n., torture; also, a military machine for hurling missiles; hence, pl., artillery

tot, indecl. num. adj., so many

totidem, indecl. num. adj, the same number of, just as many

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, the whole (of), all, entire, wholly

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, treat, handle, manage

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), give or hand over, deliver up, surrender; hand down, tell; teach

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 180), lead across or over, transfer, conduct

trāgula, -ae, f., javelin, dart, light Gallic javelin thrown by a strap

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, draw, drag, draw along or away

trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p.
180), hurl across or through; pierce;
take across; cross

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj., calm, tranquil

trans, prep. with acc., across, beyond, on the other side of, to the other side of

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), cross, go over, go across or through, pass through; pass by; initium trānseundī facere, be first to cross

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (p. 84), carry or bring over; transfer; sē trānsferre, devote oneself

trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum (p. 84), transfix, pierce

trānsmitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), send across; transmit

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), carry or take across, convey

trānsvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum (p. 84), carry across, convey

trecenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., three hundred

trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., three tribūnus, -ī, m., tribune, title of a Roman official

tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum, allot, assign, grant; pay; attribute

tribūtum, -ī, n. (p. 238), tribute, tax trīduum, -ī, n., period of three days, three days

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty

triplex, gen. -icis, adj., threefold, triple, in three divisions or lines

trīstis, -e, adj., sad

trīstitia, -ae, f., sadness

tū, gen tuī; nom. pl., vōs; pers. pron., you

tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, look or gaze at; watch, guard, protect

tum, adv., then, at that time; thereupon, next; cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also

tumultus, -ūs, m., uproar, confusion, tumult; rebellion

tumulus, -i, m., mound, small hill

tunica, -ae, f., undergarment, tunic turbo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb; confuse

turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, shameful, dishonorable, base

turris, f., tower

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), protected, safe; n. as noun, safety, place of safety

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., your, yours (referring to one person)

U

ubi, adv., rel., where, in which place; when, whenever; interrog., where?

ubique, adv., everywhere

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, take vengeance on, avenge, punish

ŭllus, -a, -um, adj., any; m. as noun, anyone, anybody

ulterior, -ius, compar. adj., farther, beyond, more distant, ulterior

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., farthest; most distant; last; end of

ultrā, adv. (p. 21), on the other or far side, beyond, farther, in addition; prep. with acc., on the other side of, beyond, past; nē plūs ultrā, nothing beyond, the height of excellence

ultrō, adv., beyond; voluntarily; without reason or cause, without provocation; ultrō citrōque, back and forth, backward and forward

umbra, -ae, f., shade, shadow; shading foliage

umerus, -ī, m., shoulder

umquam, adv., at any time, ever

ūnā, adv., at the same time, along with, together; ūnā ex parte, on one side

unda, -ae, f., wave

unde, adv., rel., from which place, whence; from which cause, from which; interrog, whence? from what place or direction? from what cause?

undecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
eleventh

undeviginti, indecl. num. adj., nineteen undique, adv., from all sides or directions, on all sides, everywhere

unguentum, $-\bar{i}$, n., ointment

ūniversitās, -ātis, f. (p. 100), whole world, universe; university

universus, -a, -um, adj., all together,
all, universal

unus, -a, -um, num. adj., one, single;
only, alone; the same, common;
ad unum, to a man

urbs, urbis, f., city; especially, the City, i.e., Rome

urna, -ae, f., jar, pitcher

ursa, -ae, f., bear

usquam, adv., anywhere, in any place usque, adv., all the way, even to, even, as far as; all the time; usque ad, up to, till

ūsus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), use, advantage; practice, experience, skill; ūsuī or ex ūsū, of advantage, of service; ūsus est, it is necessary

ut or uti, adv., as, when, since, as soon as; as, just as; since, inasmuch as, seeing that; though, although, even if, as if; how (introducing indirect questions); ut . . ita, just as . . so, while . . . yet; ut . . sīc, as . . . so, while . . . yet, though . . . still;

conj., with clauses of purpose, that, in order that, so that, in order to; with clauses of result, that, so that

uter, -tra, -trum, pron., interrog., which (of the two)? which? indef., whichever of the two, whichever

uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj., each (of two), both; pl., of two parties, each side, both sides or parties, both

ūtilis, -e, adj. (p. 148), useful, expedient

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, make use of, employ, enjoy; take advantage of, adopt

utrimque, adv., on both sides

utrum, adv. in double questions, whether; utrum...an, whether... or

uxor, -ōris, f., wife

v

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be empty or unoccupied

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., empty

vādō, -ere, —, —, go, walk; hasten

vadum, $-\bar{i}$, n., shallow; ford

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, range, roam.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be strong or powerful; valē, farewell

valētūdō, -inis, f. (p. 200), health

validus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 64), well, strong

vallēs, vallis, f., valley

vāllum, -ī, n., intrenchment, rampart valor, -ōris, m. (p. 21), valor; strength varius, -a, -um, adj., differing, different, various; changing

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste, ravage

vehementer, adv., violently; severely, strongly, very much, greatly

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry, convey, transport

vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or vellus, velleris, n., fleece

- vēlocitās, -ātis, f., swiftness, speed
- vēlum, -ī, n., covering, veil; sail; vēla dare or facere, set sail
- vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., hunting, hunting expedition
- vendo, -dere, -didi, -ditum, offer
 for sale, sell, vend
- venēnum, -ī, n., poison, venom
- venia, -ae, f., pardon
- veniō, -ire, vēni, ventum, come, arrive, go; in dēditiōnem venīre, surrender
- venter, -tris, m., stomach, abdomen ventus, -ī, m., wind
- verbum, -ī, n., word, saying; pl., conversation; verba facere, speak
- vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, reverence, fear, dread
- vergō, -ere, --, --, lie toward, face; be situated
- vērō, adv., in fact, indeed; but
- versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, turn often, turn
- versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, be engaged or involved, be situated, be busy; live, remain
- vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn, turn around; change; tergum vertere, flee, take to flight; pass. as reflexive, turn (oneself), turn one's attention
- vērus, -a, -um, adj., true, real; fair, just; rē vērā, in fact, in truth; n. as noun, truth
- vesper, -erī (-eris), m. (p. 21), evening star, evening; sub vesperum, toward evening; vesperī, in the evening
- vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., your, yours (of more than one person)
- vēstīgium, -ī, n., footprint, footstep,
 track
- vestis, vestis, f., covering; clothing; pl., clothes, garments
- veterānus, -a, -um, adj., old, veteran
- vetus, gen. veteris, adj., old, long-standing, former

- vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plunder, overrun
- via, -ae, f., way, road, street; journey,
 march
- viātor, $-\bar{o}$ ris, m., traveler
- vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj., neighboring, near
- victima, -ae, f., victim, animal for sacrifice
- victor, -ōris, m. (pp. 21, 100), victor; as adj., victorious
- victoria, -ae, f. (p. 21), victory
- victus, -a, -um, adj. (p. 148), defeated; m. pl. as noun, the vanquished, the conquered
- vīcus, -ī, m., street, quarter; village
- videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see, perceive; understand; see to; take care; pass., be seen, be noticed; (very frequently) seem, appear; (sometimes) seem good or right
- videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, seem, seem best or proper
- vigil, gen. vigilis, watchful; m. as noun, sentinel, guard
- vigilia, -ae, f. (p. 200), being awake; watching; guard, night watch; a watch (a fourth part of the night); dē quārtā vigiliā, about the fourth watch (see p. 271)
- vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), watch; keep awake
- vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., twenty
- vilicus, -i, m., steward, farm manager villa, -ae, f. (p. 21), farmhouse, villa; country estate, farm
- vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, bind, fetter; restrain
- vincō, -ere, vicī, victum, conquer, defeat, subdue; refute, convince; be victorious, win
- vinculum, -ī, n. (p. 238), a fastening; chain; bond
- vīnea, -ae, f., vineyard; shed (to protect besiegers)
- **vīnum,** $-\bar{i}$, n., wine

viola, -ae, f., violet

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, violate, harm, injure, dishonor

 $v\bar{i}pera, -ae, f., viper$

vir, viri, m., man; husband

virgō, -inis, f., virgin, young girl

virtūs, -ūtis, f., manliness, courage, valor: virtue, worth; power

vīs, f. (see p. 315, 8), force, violence, strength, power; pl., strength; vim facere, use violence or force

vīsus, -ūs, m. (p. 238), vision; prodigy

vīta, -ae, f., life; ē vītā excēdere, die; vītam superāre, survive

vītā, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid, escape

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live vīvus, -a, -um, adj., alive, living

vix, adv., hardly, barely, scarcely, with difficulty

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), call, summon, invite; name

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, fly, fly about volō, velle, voluī, — (see pp. 341-342, 47), will, wish, be willing, desire; intend

volucer, -cris, -cre, adj., flying; f. as noun, bird

voluntās, -ātis, f. (p. 200), will, wish; consent, approval; purpose

voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure, enjoyment

volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtum, roll, turn about, turn around

vos, pers. pron., you (pl.)

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow; wish

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, sound; word, utterance; magnā vōce, in a loud voice or tone

vulgō, adv., commonly; publicly,
 openly; everywhere

vulgus, -ī, n., the common people,
common crowd, the public

vulnero, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), wound

vulnus, vulneris, n., wound, injury; vulnera facere, inflict wounds

vultur, -uris, m., vulture

vultus, -ūs, m., expression, countenance, features

PRONUNCIATION KEY

a hat	e let	i bit	o hot	u cup	ə takən
ā āge	ē ēqual	ī īce	ō lōw	ū ūse	ŦH then
ã cã re	ė stėrn		ô ôrder	ü r ü le	zh measure
ä fäther					

A., abbr. for Aulus, Aulus (ô'ləs), a Roman first name

Achilles, nom.; Achillis, gen.; Achillem, acc.; m., Achilles (a kil'ez), Greek hero in the Trojan War

Adōneus, -ī, m., Adonis (ə don'ıs) or (ə dō'nıs), handsome youth loved by Venus Adriaticum Mare, Adriatici Maris, n., Adriatic (ā'dri at'ik) Sea (maps, pp. 161, 221)

Aeētēs, -ae, m., Aeëtes (ē ē'tēz), king of Colchis

Aegaeum Mare, Aegaei Maris, n., Aegean (ē jē'ən) Sea (map, p. 161)

Aegyptiī, -ōrum, m. pl., Egyptians (i jip'shənz)

Aegyptus, -ī, m., Egypt (ē'jipt), country in northeast Africa (maps, pp. 142, 161)

Aemilius, L., -ī, m., Lucius Aemilius (lū'shəs ē mil'1 əs), an officer of Gallic cavalry

Aenēās, nom.; Aenēae, gen. or dat.; Aenēam, acc.; Aenēā, abl.; m., Aeneas (ē nē/əs), Trojan leader, hero of Vergil's Aeneid

Aeolus, -ī, m., Aeolus (ē'ō ləs), god of the winds

Aequi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Aequi (ē/kwī), a warlike people of ancient Italy (map, p. 203)

Aeson, -onis, m., Aeson (e'sən), father of Jason

Aethiopia, -ae, f., Ethiopia (e'thi o'pi a), country in Africa

Aethiopicus, -a, -um, Ethiopian (ē/thi ō/pi ən)

Aetna, -ae, f., Etna (et'nə), volcano in Sicily (maps, p. 161, inside front cover)

Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa (af'rı kə) (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside back cover)

Agamemnon, -onis, m., Agamemnon (ag' a mem'non), Greek leader in the Trojan War

Alba Longa, -ae, f., Alba Longa (al'bə lông'gə), city built by Ascanius (map, p. 203)

Albānus, -a, -um, Alban (ôl'bən), of the people of Alba Longa; m. as noun, an Alban

Alesia, -ae, f., Alesia (\(\pi\) le'zh\(\pi\)), a Gallic town, the scene of Vercingetorix' final stand against the Romans (map, p. 221)

Alexander Magnus, Alexandri Magni, m., Alexander (al/1g zan/dər) the Great, king of Macedonia

Allecto, nom., f., Allecto (a lek'to), one of the three Furies

Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., the Allobroges (ə lob'rō jēz), a Gallic tribe (map, p. 221)

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., the Alps (map, p. 221)

Amāta, -ae, f., Amata (ə mā'tə), queen of Latrum

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambarri (am bar'ī), a tribe of southern Gaul

Ambiānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ambiani (am/biā/nī), a Gallic tribe (map, p. 243)

Amūlius, -ī, m., Amulius (ə mū'li əs), king of Alba Longa

Anchises, nom., m., Anchises (an kī'sēz), father of Aeneas

Androcles, nom.; Androclem, acc.; Androcle, abl.; m., Androcles (an'drō klēz), Roman slave

Anglia, -ae, f., England

Aniō, Aniēnis, m., the Anio (an'i ō), a tributary of the Tiber (map, p. 203)

Anna, -ae, f., Anna, name of a girl or woman

Apollo, -inis, m., Apollo (a pol'o), god of the sun

Appius Claudius, Appii Claudii, m., Appius Claudius (ap'i əs klô'di əs), patriotic Roman citizen famed for his public works

Aqua Appia, Aquae Appiae, f., the Appian Aqueduct

Aquileia, -ae, f., Aquileia (ak/wə le/yə), a city of Cisalpine Gaul (map, p. 221)

Aquitania, -ae, f., Aquitania (ak/wə tā/ni ə), the part of southwestern Gaul between the Garonne River and the Pyrenees (map, p. 221)

Aquītānus, -a, -um, Aquitanian (ak/wə tā/ni ən); m. pl. as noun, Aquitanians, inhabitants of Aquitania

Arar, -aris, m., the Arar (ā'rär), river in Celtic Gaul, now called the Saône (sōn) (map, p. 221)

Archimēdes, -is, m., Archimedes (är/ki mē/dēz), Greek scientist

Arecomici, see Volcae

Argō, nom., f., the Argo (ar'gō), Jason's ship

Argolicus, -a, -um, Greek

Argonautae, -ārum, m. pl., the Argonauts (är'gə nôtz), the crew of Jason's ship, the Argo

Argus, -ī, m., Argus (ar'gəs), builder of Jason's ship, the Argo

Ariadna, -ae, f., Ariadne (ar'i ad'ni), Cretan princess

Arīminum, -ī, n., Ariminum (ä rim'i num), a city of northern Italy (map, p. 142)

Arverni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Arverni (är vér'nī), a tribe of Celtic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Ascanius, -ī, m., Ascanius (as kā'ni əs), son of Aeneas

Asia, -ae, f., Asia (maps, pp. 142, 185, inside back cover)

Athēna, -ae, f., Athena (a the na), goddess of wisdom

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens (ath'inz), a city of Greece (maps, pp. 161, 185, inside back cover)

Athēniēnsis, -is, m., an Athenian (ə thē/ni ən)

Atīlius, M. Atīlius Rēgulus, -ī, m., Marcus Atilius Regulus (mar'kəs ə til'1 əs reg'yə ləs), a consul in 256 B.C.

Atrebās, -ātis, m., an Atrebatian (at/rə bā/shən), one of the Atrebates (at/rə bā/tēz), a tribe of Belgic Gaul

Atuatucī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Atuatuci (at/ū at/ū sī), a Gallic tribe (map, p. 221)

Augustus-Capitōlium

Augustus, -ī, m., Augustus (ô gus'təs), the first Roman emperor (see Octāviānus) Aulidem, acc., f., Aulis (ô'lis), a Greek town

Aurora, -ae, f., Aurora (ô rô'ra), goddess of the dawn

Aurunculeius, -ī, m., L. Aurunculeius Cotta, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lü'shəs ô rung'kū lē'yəs kot'ə), one of Caesar's officers

Avaricum, -ī, n., Avaricum (ə var'i kum), a stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges (burzh) (map, p. 221)

Axona, -ae, m., the Aisne (an), a river of Belgic Gaul (maps, pp. 221, 243)

Bacēnis, -is, f., Bacenis (bə sē'nis), a forest in Germany (map, p. 221)

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the Belgians (bel'jənz), one of the three divisions of the Gallic people

Belgium, -ī, n., Belgium (bel'jəm), the country of the Belgae (map, p. 221)

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. pl, the Bellovaci (bə lov'ə sī), a tribe of Belgic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Bibracte, -is, n., Bibracte (bī brak'tē), chief town of the Haedui (map, p. 221)

Bibrax, Bibractis, f., Bibrax (bi'braks), a town of the Remi (map, p. 243)

Biturīgēs, -um, m. pl., the Bituriges (bit/ū rī/jēz), a tribe of central Gaul

Boii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Boii (boi'yī), a Gallic tribe (map, p. 221)

Bratuspantium, -ī, n., Bratuspantium (brat'əs pan'shi əm), a town of the Bellovaci (map, p. 221)

Britannia, -ae, f., Britain (maps, pp. 142, 221, 243, inside back cover)

Britannus, -ī, m., a Briton

Brundisium, -ī, n., Brundisium (brun diz'i əm), an ancient seaport in south-eastern Italy (map, p. 142)

C., abbr. for Gaius, Gaius (ga'yəs), a Roman first name

Cabūrus, C. Valerius, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yəs və lē'ri əs kə bū'rəs), a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship

Cadurci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Cadurci (kə der'sī), a tribe of southwestern Gaul

Caesar, -aris, C. Jūlius, -ī, m., Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yəs jül'yəs sē'zər), Roman general and author; L. Caesar, Lucius Caesar, a distant relative of Julius Caesar, who served as his lieutenant in Gaul

Calais, -is, m., Calais (kal'ā is), one of the Argonauts

Calchas, nom.; Calcham, acc.; m., Calchas (kal'kəs), Greek prophet

Caledonia, -ae, f., Scotland (map, p. 142)

Callisto, nom., f., Callisto (kə lis'tō), Arcadian princess, changed to a bear Camillus, -ī, m., Camillus (kə mil'əs), Roman general

Campus Mārtius, -ī, m., Campus Martius (kam'pəs mär'shəs), Field of Mars, an exercise and parade ground in Rome, dedicated to Mars (map, p. 205)

Capitolinum, -ī, n., the Capitoline (kap'i tə līn), one of the Seven Hills of Rome (map, p. 205)

Capitolium, -ī, n., the Capitol (kap'i təl), a temple of Jupiter in Rome; also the Capitoline, one of the Seven Hills of Rome

Capua, -ae, f., Capua (kap'ū ə), a city of Italy (map, p. 142)

Carnutes, -um, m. pl., the Carnutes (kar'nü tez), a tribe of Celtic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Carolus Magnus, -ī, m., Charlemagne (shār'lə mān)

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, of Carthage (kar'thij), Carthaginian (kar'thə jin'i ən); m. pl. as noun, Carthaginians

Carthago, -inis, f., Carthage (kär'thij), a city in North Africa (maps, pp. 142, 161)

Cassiānum, Bellum Cassiānum, -ī, n., the Cassian (kash'ən) War, a war in 107 B.C., in which L. Cassius was killed by the Helvetians

Cassius, L., -ī, m., Lucius Cassius (lü'shəs kash'əs), consul in 107 B.C.

Casticus, -ī, m., Casticus (kas'ti kəs), a Sequanian noble

Castor, -oris, m., Castor (kas'tər), one of the Argonauts

Catameitus, -ī, m., Ganymede (gan'i mēd), cupbearer to Jupiter

Caturigēs, -um, m., the Caturiges (kat/ū rī/jēz), a Gallic tribe of the Province Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., the Celts (seltz or keltz), inhabitants of Celtic Gaul; the Gauls

Celtica, -ae, f., Gaul (map, p. 221)

Centaurus, -ī, m., Centaur (sen'tôr), legendary monster with the head, arms, and chest of a man, and the body and legs of a horse

Cerberus, -i, m., Cerberus (ser'bər əs), fierce three-headed watchdog of the lower world

Cerës, Cereris, f., Ceres (sēr'ēz), goddess of agriculture

Ceutrones, -um, m. pl., the Ceutrones (sü'tro nez), a Gallic tribe

Charon, -ontis, m., Charon (kar'on), ferryman in the lower world

Chersonēsus, -ī, f., Chersonese (kėr'sə nēz'), a city and peninsula, on the Black Sea (map, p. 142)

Chilensis, -e, Chilean (chil'i ən)

Christianus, -ī, m., Christian

Cicero, -onis, M. Tullius, -i, m., Marcus Tullius Cicero (mär'kəs tul'i əs sıs'ə ro'), Roman orator and writer

Circē (or Circa), -ae, f., Circe (ser'si), an enchantress

Cisalpīna, see Gallia

Citerior Gallia, see Gallia

Clūsium, -ī, n., Clusium (klū'si əm), a city of Italy (map, p. 142)

Clytemnestra, -ae, f., Clytemnestra (kli/təm nes/trə), wife of Agamemnon

Colchi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Colchians (kol'ki ənz), people of Colchis (kol'kis)

Colchis, -idis; Colchida, acc.; f., Colchis (kol'kis), a country of Asia (maps, pp. 142, 185)

Commius, -ī, m., Commius (kom'i əs), a chief of the Atrebates

Considius, P., -ī, m., Publius Considius (pub'li əs kən sid'i əs), an officer in Caesar's army

Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth (kôr'inth), a famous city of Greece (maps, pp. 161, 185) Cornēlia, -ae, f., Cornelia (kôr nēl'yə), name of a girl or woman

Cornēlius—Ēpīrus

Cornelius, -ī, m., Cornelius (kôr nēl'yəs), name of a boy or man

Corsica, -ae, f., Corsica (kôr'si kə), an island in the Mediterranean Sea (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside front cover)

Cotta, see Aurunculeius

Crassus, M. Licinius, -ī, m., Marcus Licinius Crassus (mär'kəs lī sin'i əs kras'əs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey; his son, Marcus Licinius Crassus, was one of Caesar's quaestors

Crēta, -ae, f., Crete (krēt), an island in the Mediterranean Sea (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside back cover)

Crīto, -ōnis, m., Crito (krī'tō), a disciple of Socrates

Cumae, -ārum, f. pl., Cumae (kū'mē), city of Italy, site of the Sibyl's cave

Cupido, Cupidinis, m., Cupid (kū'pid), god of love

Cures, -ium, m. and f. pl., Cures (kū/rēz), chief town of the Sabines (map, p. 203)

Cūriātius, -ī, m., Curiatius (kū/riā/shi əs), name of an Alban family

Cyprus, -ī, f., Cyprus (sī'prəs), an island in the Mediterranean Sea (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside back cover)

Daedalus, -ī, m., Daedalus (ded'ə ləs), character of Greek legend

Dānuvius, -ī, m., the Danube (dan'ūb), a river of central Europe (map, p. 142)

Dēlos, -ī, f., Delos (dē'los), a small island in the Aegean Sea

Delphī, -ōrum, m. pl., Delphi (del'fī), city in Greece, famous for the oracle of Apollo (maps, pp. 161, 185)

Deucalion, -onis, m., Deucalion (dū kā'li ən), character of Greek legend

Diāna, -ae, f., Diana (dī an'a), goddess of the moon and of hunting

Dīdō, nom., f., Dido (dī'dō), queen of Carthage

Dīs, Dītis, m., Pluto (plū'tō), god of the lower world

Discordia, -ae, f., Discordia (dis kôr/di a), goddess of discord

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., Diviciacus (di vish/i ā/kəs), Haeduan chief

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., Divico (div'i kō), Helvetian chief

Domnotaurus, see Valerius

Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., Dumnorix (dum'nō riks), a Haeduan chief, brother of Diviciacus

Eburones, -um, m. pl., the Eburones (eb/ū ro/nēz), a German tribe living in northwest Gaul (map, p. 221)

Ecphantus, -ī, m., Ecphantus (ek fan'tus), a Greek philosopher

Epidamnius, -a, -um, of Epidamnus, Epidamnian (ep/ə dam/ni ən)

Epidamnus, -ī, f., Epidamnus (ep/ə dam/nəs), a town of Illyria, later Dyrrachium, now Durazzo

Epimētheus, -ī, m., Epimetheus (ep/i mē'thüs), character in Greek mythology; husband of Pandora

Ēpīrus, -ī, f., Epirus (ē pī'rəs), a district of Greece (map, p. 161)

Erōtium, -ī, Erotium (ē rō'shəm), a courtesan in Plautus' play Menaechmi Etrūscī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Etruscans (i trus'kənz), a people of Italy (map, p. 203)

Eumaeus, -ī, m., Eumaeus (ū mē/əs), swineherd of Ulysses

Europa, -ae, f., Europe (map, p. 142)

Eurydicē, nom.; Eurydicēs, gen.; Eurydicēn, acc.; f., Eurydice (ū rid'i sē), wife of Orpheus

Eurylochus, -ī, m., Eurylochus (ū ril'ə kəs), a companion of Ulysses Eusebius, -ī, m., Eusebius (ū sē'bi əs)

Fābricius, C., -ī, m., Gaius Fabricius (gā'yəs fə brish'ı əs), prominent Roman of the third century B.C.

Fatum, -i, n., Fate, Destiny

Faustulus, -ī, m., Faustulus (fôs'tū ləs), shepherd, foster father of Romulus and Remus

Fortuna, -ae, Fortuna (fôr tu'nə), Roman goddess

Fretum Gallicum, -ī, n., the English Channel, the strait between England and France (map, p. 243)

Fulvia, -ae, f., Fulvia (fül'vi ə), name of a girl or woman

Furiae, -ārum, f. pl., Furies (fūr'iz), three goddesses of vengeance

Gabali, -ōrum, m. pl., the Gabali (gab'ə lī), a tribe of southwestern Gaul Gabīnius, A., -ī, m., Aulus Gabinius (ô'ləs gə bin'i əs), consul with Lucius Piso in 58 B.C.

Galba, -ae, m., Galba (gal'bə), name of a man or boy

Galenus, -ī, m., Galen (gā'lən), Greek physician

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul (gôl); Gallia Citerior, -ōris, or Cisalpīna, Nearer Gaul, Cisalpīne Gaul (sis al'pīn gôl); Gallia Ulterior, -ōris, Farther Gaul, Transalpīne Gaul (trans al'pīn gôl) (maps, pp. 142, 221, inside back cover)

Gallicus, -a, -um, of the Gauls, Gallic

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul (gôl), an inhabitant of Gaul; pl., the Gauls

Garunna, -ae, m., the Garonne (gä rôn'), a river of Gaul (map, p. 221)

Genava, -ae, f., Geneva (ji nē'və), a Gallic city on Lake Geneva (map, p. 221)

Gergovia, -ae, f., Gergovia (jer go'vi ə), town of the Arverni (map, p. 221)

Germānia, -ae, f., Germany, land of the Germans (maps, pp. 142, 221, inside back cover)

Germanus, -a, -um, German; m. pl. as noun, Germans

Gesoriacum, -ī, n., Gesoriacum (jes/ō rī/ə kəm), the port eight Roman miles from Portus Itius, from which part of Caesar's fleet sailed (map, p. 243)

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside back cover)

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; m. as noun, a Greek

Graiocelī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Graioceli (grā yos'ə lī), a Gallic tribe

Hadriāticum—Jūlius

Hadriāticum, see Adriāticum

Haeduus, -a, -um, Haeduan (hed'ū ən); m. as noun, a Haeduan; pl., the Haedui (hed'ū ī), a tribe of Celtic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Hanno, -onis, m., Hanno (han'o), a prominent Carthaginian

Harpyia, -ae, f., Harpy (här'pi), mythical creature, half bird and half woman

Hector, -oris, m., Hector (hek'tər), Trojan prince slain by Achilles

Helena, -ae, f., Helen (hel'ən), queen of Sparta, called the most beautiful woman in the world

Helenus, -ī, m., Helenus (hel'ə nus), Trojan prince and soothsayer

Hellē, nom., f., Helle (hel'ē), sister of Phrixus

Helvētius, -a, -um, Helvetian (hel vē/shən), of the Helvetians; m. pl. as noun, the Helvetians, a tribe of Celtic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Helvii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Helvii (hel'vi i), a Gallic tribe

Hēraclīdēs, -ae, m., Heraclides (her/ə klī'dēz), a Greek philosopher

Herculaneum, -ī, n., Herculaneum (her/kū la/ni əm), a city in Italy

Herculēs, -is, m., Hercules (hèr'kū lēz), a hero famous for great strength

Hesperia, -ae, f., Italy

Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland (map, p. 142)

Hippolyta, -ae, f., Hippolyte (hi pol'i ta), queen of the Amazons

Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain (maps, pp. 142, 161, 221, inside back cover)

Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish; m. as noun, a Spaniard

Histrus, -a, -um, Istrian (is'tri ən), of Trieste (map, inside front cover)

Homēricus, -a, -um, Homeric (hō mer'ik), of Homer

Homērus, -ī, m., Homer (hō/mər), blind Greek poet, author of two long poems, the Odyssey and the Iliad

Horātius, -ī, m., Horatius (hō rā'shəs), a Roman family name

Hostilius, Hostius, -ī, m., Hostius Hostilius (hos'ti əs hos til'i əs), Roman commander in the time of Romulus

Icarus, -ī, m., Icarus (ik'ə rəs), son of Daedalus

Īda, -ae, f., Ida (ī'də), mountain near Troy

Illyricum, -ī, n., Illyricum (i lir'i kəm), Illyria (i lir'i ə), territory northeast of the Adriatic which formed part of Caesar's province (map, p. 221)

Īllyrius, -a, -um, Illyrian (i lir'i ən)

Iphigenia, -ae, f., Iphigenia (if'i ji ni'a), daughter of Agamemnon

Italia, -ae, f., Italy (map, p. 221)

Italicus, -a, -um, Italian

Ithaca, -ae, f., Ithaca (ith's ks), an island, home of Ulysses (map, p. 161)

Jāson, -onis, m., Jason (jā'sən), a Greek hero

Jovem, see Juppiter

Julia, -ae, f., Julia, name of a girl or woman

Jūlius, -ī, m., Julius (jül'yəs), name of a man or boy

Jūnius, -a, -um, Junian (jūn'yəs); m. as noun, June

Jūno, -onis, f., Juno (ju'no), queen of the gods

Juppiter, Jovis, m., Jupiter (jü'pi tər), king of the gods; Juppiter Stator, Jupiter the Stayer

Jūra, -ae, m., the Jura (jūr'a), a chain of mountains between the Rhine and the Rhône (map, p. 221)

Jūstīniānus, -ī, m., Justinian (jus tin'i ən), Roman emperor responsible for the Roman legal code, Corpus Jūris

Jūturna, -ae, f., Juturna (jü ter'nə), nymph, sister of Turnus

L., abbr. for Lucius

Labienus, T., -ī, m., Titus Labienus (tī'təs lā'bi ē'nəs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War

Labyrinthus, -ī, m., Labyrinth, a building with a maze of passages in Crete

Laconia, -ae, f., Laconia (lə ko'ni ə), a country of Greece, of which Sparta was the capital

Lacus Lemannus, -ī, m., Lake Geneva (ji nē'və) (map, p. 221)

Lāocoon, -ontis, m., Laocoon (lā ok'o on), Trojan priest

Latinus, -a, -um, Latin; m. pl. as noun, Latins, people of Latium

Latinus, -ī, m., Latinus (la ti'nas), king of Latium

Latium, -ī, n., Latium (lā'shi əm), part of Italy in which Rome was situated (map, p. 203)

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Latobrigi (lat/ō brī/jī), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine (map, p. 221)

Lātona, -ae, f., Latona (la to'na), mother of Apollo and Diana

Laurentum, -ī, n., Laurentum (lô ren'təm), a town in Latium (map, p. 203)

Lāvīnia, -ae, f., Lavinia (lə vin'i ə), Latin princèss, bride of Aeneas

Lāvīnium, -ī, n., Lavinium (lə vin'i əm), city of Latium, founded by Aeneas in honor of his wife (map, p. 203)

Lāvīnius, -a, -um, of Lavinium, Lavinian (la vin'i an)

Libya, -ae, f., Libya (lib'i ə), a country of northern Africa; Africa (map, p. 161)

Liguria, -ae, f., Liguria (li gūr'i ə), a district of Cisalpine Gaul (map, p. 221)

Lingones, -um, m. pl., the Lingones (ling'go nez), a people of Celtic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Liscus, -ī, m., Liscus (lis'kəs), a chief magistrate of the Haeduans

Londinium, -ī, n., Londinium (lun din'i əm), a city in Britain, now London (map, p. 243)

Lūcia, -ae, f., Lucia (lü'shə), name of a girl or woman

Lücifer, Lüciferi, m., Venus, as morning star

Lūcius, -ī, m., Lucius (lü'shəs), a Roman first name

Lucretia, -ae, f., Lucretia (lü krē'shə), name of a girl or woman

Lūna, -ae, f., Luna (lü'nə), the moon goddess

Lutecia, -ae, f., Lutecia (lü tē'shi ə), a city in Gaul, now Paris (map, p. 243)

M.-Mons Sacer

M., abbr. for Marcus, Marcus (mar'kas), a Roman first name

Macedonia, -ae, f., Macedonia (mas/i do/ni ə) (map, p. 142)

Magna Charta, -ae, f., Magna Charta, the great charter

Mandubii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Mandubii (man du'bi ī), a Gallic tribe

Mānlius, -ī, m., Manlius (man'li əs), a Roman first name; Roman who saved the Capitol

Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus (mär'kəs), a Roman first name

Mare Adriaticum (Hadriaticum), Maris Adriatici, n., the Adriatic (ā/dri at/ık) Sea, an arm of the Mediterranean Sea (map, p. 221)

Mare Aegaeum, Maris Aegaei, n., the Aegean (ē jē/ən) Sea (map, p. 161)

Mare Caspium, Maris Caspii, n., the Caspian (kas'pi ən) Sea (map, p. 142)

Mare Internum, Maris Internī, n, the Mediterranean (med/1 tə rā/ni ən) Sea (maps, pp. 142, 185, 221)

Mare Tyrrhenum, Maris Tyrrheni, n., the Tyrrhenian (tı re'nı ən) Sea, part of the Mediterranean Sea, southwest of Italy (map, p. 203)

Marius, -ī, m., Marius (mār'i əs), Roman consul

Mārs, Mārtis, m., Mars (märz), god of war; Mārs Ultor, Mars the Avenger Massiliensis, -e, Massilian (ma sil'i ən)

Matrona, -ae, f., the Marne (marn), a river of Gaul (map, p. 221)

Maurētānia, -ae, f., Maurītania (mô/ri tā/ni ə), a country of North Africa (map, p. 142)

Mēdēa, -ae, f., Medea (mi dē'a), princess of Colchis, an enchantress

Mediterrāneus, -a, -um, Mediterranean (med/i tə rā/ni ən); Mare Mediterrāneum, the Mediterranean Sea (maps, pp. 142, 161, 221, inside covers)

Medūsa, -ae, f., Medusa (mi dū'sə), a Gorgon, a creature with snakes for hair

Melita, -ae, f., Malta (môl'tə), an island in the Mediterranean

Menaechmus, -ī, m., Menaechmus (me nek'məs), one of twin brothers, leading characters in Plautus' play Menaechmi

Menapii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Menapii (mə nā'pi ī), a tribe of Belgic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Menelaus, -ī, m., Menelaus (men/ə la/əs), king of Sparta

Mercurius, -ī, m., Mercury (mer'kū ri), messenger of the gods

Messāla, -ae, M., m., Marcus Messala (mar'kəs mə sā'lə), a consul in 61 B.C.

Messāna, -ae, f., Messina (me sē'nə), a city of Sicily (map, inside front cover)

Messēnio, Messenio (me sē'ni o), slave of Menaechmus Sosicles

Mīdās, nom., m., Midas (mī'dəs), mythical king who was granted the golden touch

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva (mi nėr'və), goddess of wisdom

Mīnōtaurus, -ī, m., Minotaur (min'ə tôr), mythical monster with the head of a bull and the body of a man

Mīsēnum, -ī, n., Misenum (mī sē'nəm), ancient Italian town

Möns Albanus, Montis Albani, m., the Alban (ôl'bən) Mount (map, p. 203)

Mons Sacer, Montis Sacri, m., the Sacred Mountain, a hill near Rome (map, p. 203)

Morinī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Morini (mor'i nī), a tribe of Belgic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Mosa, -ae, m., the river Meuse (mūz) (map, p. 221)

Moschus, -i, m., Moschus (mos'kəs), father of the Menaechmi

Mysia, -ae, f., Mysia (mish'i ə), a country in Asia Minor (map, p. 185)

Nantuātēs, -um, m. pl., the Nantuates (nan tū ā'tēz), a Gallic tribe in the Alps (map, p. 221)

Nephālius, -ī, m., Nephalius (ne fāl'i əs)

Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune (nep'tūn), god of the sea

Nervii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Nervii (ner'vi i), a tribe of Belgic Gaul (maps, pp. 221, 243)

Nicetus, -ī, m., Nicetus (nī sē'tus), a name perhaps used in error for that of Aratus, a Greek poet

Nīlus, -ī, m., the Nile (nīl), the great river of Egypt (map, p. 142)

Noreia, -ae, f., Noreia (no re'yə), town in Germany, now Neumarkt (map, p. 221)

Noricus, -a, -um, of Noricum, Norican (no'ri kən), belonging to a Germanic tribe living between the Danube and the Alps (map, p. 142)

Notus, -ī, m., Notus (no'təs), the south wind

Noviodūnum, -ī, n., Noviodunum (nō/vi ō dū/nəm), the capital city of the Suessiones (map, p. 243)

Numidia, -ae, f., Numidia (nū mid'i ə), a country of North Africa (map, p. 142) Numitor, -ōris, m., Numitor (nū'mi tôr), king of Alba Longa

Ōceanus, -ī, m., the Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean (map, p. 221)

Öceanus Britannicus, -i, m., English Channel, that part of the Atlantic between Britain and France (map, p. 243)

Ocelum, -ī, n., Ocelum (os'i ləm), city of Cisalpine Gaul

Octāvia, -ae, f., Octavia (ok tā'vi ə), name of a girl or woman

Octāviānus, -ī, m., Octavian (ok tā'vi ən), a surname of the emperor Augustus, signifying that he was adopted from the Roman family called Octavius

Octodūrus, -ī, m., Octodurus (ok/tō dū/rəs), a town of the Veragri, a Gallic tribe (map, p. 221)

Orcus, -ī, m., Orcus (ôr'kəs), the lower world

Orgetorix, -īgis, m., Orgetorix (ôr jet'ō riks), a Helvetian chieftain

Orpheus, -ī, m., Orpheus (ôr'fūs or ôr'fī əs), a mythical singer

Ostia, -ae, f., Ostia (os't17), the ancient seaport of Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber River (map, p. 203)

P., abbr. for Publius, Publius (pub'li es), a Roman first name

Palatium, -ī, n., Palatine (pal'ə tīn), one of the Seven Hills of Rome (map, p. 205)

Palestīna, -ae, f., Palestine (pal'is tīn), a country of Asia, on the Mediterranean Sea (map, p. 142)

Pandora—Pūblius

Pandora, -ae, f., Pandora (pan do'ra), mythical character

Paris, nom.; Paridis, gen.; Paridi, dat.; Paridem, acc.; Paride, abl.; m., Paris (par'is), Trojan prince

Parthia, -ae, f., Parthia (pär'thi ə), an ancient country (map, p. 142)

Pelias, -ae, m., Pelias (pē'li əs), uncle of Jason

Penātēs, -ium, m. pl., the Penates (pe nā/tēz), ancient Italian household gods

Pēnelopa (or Pēnelopē), -ae, f., Penelope (pi nel'ə pi), wife of Ulysses

Pēniculus, -ī, m., Peniculus (pē nik'u ləs), hanger-on of Menaechmus of Epidamnus, in Plautus' play

Persae, -ārum, m. pl., the Persians (per/zhənz)

Peruvianus, -a, -um, of Peru, Peruvian (pə rü'vi ən)

Phaëthon, m., Phaëthon (fa'i thon), son of Apollo

Phāsis; Phāsim, acc.; m., the Phasis (fā'sis), a river in Colchis (map, p. 185)

Phineus, -i, m., Phineus (fin'1 28), king of Salmydessus, in Thrace (map, p. 185)

Phoenicia, -ae, f., Phoenicia (fi nish'a), a country in Asia Minor

Phrixus, -ī, m., Phrixus (frik'səs), legendary prince

Pīcus, -ī, m., Picus (pī'kəs), legendary king, changed to a woodpecker

Pīsō, -ōnis, M., m., Marcus Piso (mär'kəs pī'sō), a consul in 61 B.C.; L. Pīsō, Lucius Piso, a consul in 58 B.C.; L. Pīsō, Lucius Piso, a Roman commander, grandfather of L. Piso the consul

Plato, -onis, m., Plato (pla'to), a Greek philosopher

Plīnius, -ī, m., Pliny (plin'i), the Elder, Roman writer and military leader; the Younger, nephew of Pliny the Elder, also a writer

Plutarchus, -ī, m., Plutarch (plu'tärk), Greek biographer

Plūtō, -ōnis, m., Pluto (plü'tō), king of the lower world

Poenus, -a, -um, Punic (pū'nik), Carthaginian (kär'thə jin'i ən); m. as noun, a Carthaginian

Polydectes, -ae, m., Polydectes (pol/i dek'tez), a legendary king

Polydorus, -ī, m., Polydorus (pol'i do'res), Trojan prince

Polyphēmus, -ī, m., Polyphemus (pol'i fē'məs), legendary one-eyed giant

Pompeii, -ōrum, m. pl., Pompeii (pom pā'ē), a city

Pontus Euxīnus, -ī, m., Black Sea (maps, pp. 142, 185, inside back cover)

Portus Dubris, m., Portus Dubris (pōr'təs dü'bris), city near the point of Caesar's landing in Britain, now Deal (map, p. 243)

Portus Itius, m., Portus Itius (por'tos ish'i os), a port of the Morini in Gaul, from which Caesar and most of his fleet sailed for Britain (map, p. 243)

Priamus, -i, m., Priam (pri'am), king of Troy

Proca, -ae, m., Proca (pro'ka), king of Alba Longa

Promontorium Bonae Spei, Cape of Good Hope

Proserpina, -ae, f., Proserpina (proser'pi na), wife of Pluto and queen of the lower world

Provincia, -ae, f., the Province (prov'ins), Transalpine Gaul, the Roman province governed by Caesar (map, p. 221)

Pūblius, -ī, m., Publius (püb'li əs), name of a boy or man

Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic (pū'nik); Carthaginian (kär'thə jin'i ən)

Pÿrēnaeus, -a, -um, Pyrenean (pir/i nē/ən); Pÿrēnaeī Montēs, Pyrenees (pir/i nēz) Mountains (map, p. 221)

Pyrrha, -ae, f., Pyrrha (pir'a), character of Greek legend

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., Pyrrhus (pir'as), king of Epirus, in Greece

Pythagoricus, -a, -um, Pythagorean (pə thag/ə rē/ən), pertaining to Pythagoras

Q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwin'təs), a Roman first name

Quintus, -ī, m., Quintus, a Roman first name, Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus, see Sabīnus

Quirites, -um, m. pl., Quirites (kwi rī'tēz), Roman citizens

Rauraci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Rauraci (rô'rə sī), a Gallic tribe Rēgulus, see Atīlius

Rēmus, -a, -um, of the Remi (rē/mī); m. as noun, one of the Remi; pl., the Remi, a tribe of Belgic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Remus, -ī, m., Remus (rē/məs), twin brother of Romulus

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia (rē/ə sil'vi ə), mother of Romulus and Remus Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine (rīn), river between Gaul and Germany (maps, pp. 142, 221)

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhône (ron), a river in Gaul (maps, pp. 142, 221)

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome (rōm) (maps, pp. 142, 203, inside covers)

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman (rō/mən); m. as noun, a Roman

Rōmulus, -ī, m., Romulus (rom'ū ləs), legendary founder of Rome

Rubicō, -ōnis, m., the Rubicon (rü'bi kon), river in northern Italy at the boundary of the Roman Republic (map, p. 221)

Rūfus, see Sulpicius

Runnimede, m., Runnymede (run'i mēd), an Engish meadow

Rutēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ruteni (rü tē'nī), a tribe of southwestern Gaul

Rutulī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Rutuli (rut'ū lī), or Rutulians (rə tül'yənz), a people of central Italy (map, p. 203)

Rutulus, -a, -um, Rutulian (rə tül'yən)

Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine (sā'bīn); m. pl. as noun, the Sabines, a people of ancient Italy whose lands adjoined those of the Latins (map, p. 203)

Sabīnus, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus, -ī, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwin'təs tī tū'ri əs sə bī'nəs), one of Caesar's lieutenants

Sabis, -is, m., the river Sabis (sa'bis), now the Sambre (sam'br) (map, p. 221) Samius, -a, -um, Samian (sa'mi ən), of Samos, where inexpensive dishes were made

Samnītēs, -ium, m. pl., the Samnites (sam'nītz), the inhabitants of Samnium (map, p. 203)

Sānctus Augustīnus, -ī, m., Saint Augustine

Santoni-Syria

Santonī, -ōrum, or Santonēs, -um, m. pl., the Santones (san'tō nēz), a people of Aquitania

Sardinia, -ae, f., Sardinia (sär din'i ə), an island in the Mediterranean Sea (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside covers)

Sāturnius, -a, -um, of Saturn (sat'ərn), Saturnian (sa ter'ni ən), Italian

Sāturnus, -ī, m., Saturn (sat'ərn), a star, planet

Segovia, -ae, f., Segovia (sā gō'vya), a city of Spain (map, p. 142)

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Segusiavi (seg ū'si ā'vī), a tribe of southern Gaul

Seleucus, -ī, m., Seleucus (sə lü'kəs), legendary pirate

Senones, -um, m., the Senones (sen'o nez), a people of Gaul (map, p. 221)

Sēguana, -ae, m., the Seine (sān), a river of Gaul (map, p. 221)

Sēquanus, -a, -um, of the Sequani (sek'wə nī), Sequanian (sə kwān'i ən), m. pl. as noun, the Sequani, the Sequanians, a tribe of Celtic Gaul (map, p. 221)

Sertorius, -ī, m., Sertorius (ser tôr'i əs), general under Marius

Sextus, -ī, m.; Sextus, name of a man or boy

Sibylla, -ae, f., the Sibyl (sib'il), priestess and oracle of Apollo

Sibyllinus, -a, -um, Sibylline (sib'i līn), pertaining to a Sibyl

Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily (sis'i li) (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside covers)

Siculus, -a, -um, Sicilian (sə sil'yən)

Silvia, -ae, f., Silvia (sil'vi a), daughter of Tyrrhus

Sinon, nom., m., Sinon (sī'nən), Greek spy in Trojan War

Socrates, -is, m., Socrates (sok're tez'), an Athenian philosopher

Sol, Solis, m., Sol (sol), god of the sun

Sosiclēs, -is, m., Sosicles (sos'ə klēz), true name of the second Menaechmus in Plautus' play

Sparta, -ae, f., Sparta (spar'tə), a city in Greece (map, p. 161)

Stator, see Juppiter

Styx, Stygis, f., Styx (stiks), river in the lower world

Suessiones, -um, m. pl., the Suessiones (swes/i o'nez), a tribe of Belgic Gaul (map, p. 243)

Sulla, -ae, m., L. Sulla, Lucius Sulla (lü'shəs sul'ə), dictator and leader of the nobility (138-78 B.C.)

Sulpicius, P. Sulpicius Rūfus, -ī, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pub'li əs sul pish'əs rü'fəs), one of Caesar's lieutenants

Symplegades, -um, f. pl., the Symplegades (sim pleg' a dez), the Clashing Rocks, situated, according to legend, at the entrance to the Black Sea (map, p. 185)

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., Syracuse (sir'ə kūs), city in Sicily (map, p. 161)

Syrācūsānus, -a, -um, Syracusan (sir'ə kū sən); m. as noun, a Syracusan, an inhabitant of Syracuse

Syria, -ae, f., Syria (sir'i ə), ancient country at east end of the Mediterranean Sea (map, p. 142)

T., abbr. for Titus, Titus (ti'təs), a Roman first name

Tagus, -ī, m., the Tagus (tā'gəs), a river in Spain (map, p. 142)

Tamesis, -is, m., Thames (temz), a river in Britain (map, p. 243)

Tarentini, -orum, m. pl., Tarentines (to ren'tenz), people of Tarentum

Tarentum, -ī, n., Tarentum (tä ren'təm), a town in Italy (map, p. 142)

Tarquinius, -ī, m., Tarquin (tar'kwin), a king of Rome; T. Superbus, Tarquin the Proud, last king of Rome

Taurōrum, gen., m. pl., Taurians (tô/ri ənz), inhabitants of a peninsula in the Black Sea

Tēlemachus, -ī, m., Telemachus (tə lem'ə kəs), son of Ulysses

Thēbae, -ārum, f. pl., Thebes (thēbz), a city of ancient Greece (map, p. 185)

Thermodon, -ontis, m., Thermodon (ther mo'don), a river of Pontus, a region about the Black Sea

Thēseus, -ī, m., Theseus (thē'sis or thē'si əs), one of the Argonauts

Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly (thes' a li), a section of Greece (map, p. 185)

Thrācia, -ae, f., Thrace (thrās), region north and east of Greece (map, p. 185)

Tiberis, -is, nom. or gen.; Tiberim, acc.; m., the Tiber (tī/bər), river on which Rome is situated (maps, pp. 203, 205, inside front cover)

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of the Tigurini (tig/ū rī/nī); m. pl. as noun, the Tigurini, a tribe of Helvetians

Titūrius, see Sabīnus

Titus, -ī, m., Titus (tī'təs), name of a man or boy

Tolosātēs, -ium, m. pl., the Tolosates (tolosā'tēz), people of Tolosa, modern Toulouse (tü lüz')

Trānsalpīna, -ae, f., Transalpine Gaul (trans al'pīn gôl), Caesar's province north of the Alps (map, p. 221)

Trēverī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Treveri (trev'ə rī), a people of Gaul (map, p. 221)

Troja, -ae, f., Troy (troi), an ancient city in Asia Minor (maps, pp. 142, 161)

Trojānus, -a, -um, Trojan (tro/jən); m. as noun, a Trojan, an inhabitant of Troy

Trojus, -a, -um, Trojan (tro/jən)

Troucillus, see Valerius

Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Tulingi (tū lin'jī), a German tribe (map, p. 221)

Tullia, -ae, f., Tullia (tül'yə), name of a girl or woman

Tūnēs, -ētis, m., Tunis (tū'nis), a Roman seaport in North Africa (map, p. 142)

Turnus, -ī, m., Turnus (ter'nəs), king of the Rutulians

Tusculum, -ī, n., Tusculum (tus/kū ləm), an ancient town in Latium (map, p. 203)

Tyrrhus, -ī, m., Tyrrhus (tir'əs), shepherd of King Latinus

Ulixes, Ulixis, m., Ulysses (ū lis'ez), king of Ithaca, hero of Homer's Odyssey Ultor, see Mars

Valerius-Zētus

- Valerius, -ī, m., C. Valerius Domnotaurus, Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (gā'yəs və lē'ri əs dom'nō tô'rəs), son of Caburus, a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship; C. Valerius Troucillus, Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yəs və lē'ri əs trü sil'əs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar
- Veii, -ōrum, m. pl., Veii (vē/yī), a city of the Etruscans, about twelve miles from Rome (map, p. 203)
- Venelli, -ōrum, m. pl., the Venelli (vē nel'ī), a tribe of Celtic Gaul (maps, pp. 221, 243)
- Veneti, -ōrum, m. pl., the Veneti (ven'ə tī), a tribe of Celtic Gaul (map, p. 221) Veneticus, -a, -um, of the Veneti (ven'ə tī), a tribe of Celtic Gaul
- Venus, -eris, f., Venus (ve'nes), the planet Venus; the goddess of love
- Verbigenus, -ī, m., Verbigenus (ver bij'ə nəs), a canton of the Helvetians
- Vercingetorix, -īgis, m., Vercingetorix (ver'sin jet'ō riks), a leader of the Averni, commander in chief of the Gallic forces in the uprising against the Romans in 52 B.C.
- Vergilius, Pūblius Vergilius Marō, -ōnis, m., Vergil, Roman poet, author of the Aeneid
- Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., Vesontio (vē son'shi ō), chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon (bə zän'sôn')
- Vesuvius, -ī, m., Vesuvius (vi sū'vi əs), volcano in Italy (map, inside front cover)
- Via Appia, -ae, f., the Appian (ap'i ən) Way (map, inside front cover)
- Viridomārus, -ī, m., Viridomarus (vir/i do mā/rəs), a chief of the Haeduans
- Vocontii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Vocontii (vo kon'shi i), a Gallic tribe
- Volcae Arecomici, m. pl., the Volcae Arecomici (vol'sē ar/ē kom'i sī), a tribe of southern Gaul
- Volscī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Volsci (vol'sī), a people of Latium (map, p. 203)
- Volusēnus, C., -ī, m., Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (gā'yəs vol'ū sē'nəs kwod rā'təs), a military tribune in Caesar's army
- Vulcānus, -ī, m., Vulcan (vul'kən), god of fire
- Vulsō, -ōnis, L. Mānlius, Lucius Manlius Vulso (lü'shəs man'li əs vul'sō), a consul in 256 B.C.

Xanthippus, -ī, m., Xanthippus (zan tip'es), a Greek who took Regulus prisoner

Zephyrus, -ī, m., Zephyrus (zef'ə rəs), the west wind Zētus, -ī, m., Zetus (zē'təs), one of the Argonauts

Illustrations

Parana analyticature in America	AGE
Roman architecture in America	11
Stylus, about six inches long British Museum, London	15
Mosaic floor, with lighthouse in center foreground.	
Piazzale delle Corporazioni, Ostia	16
Restoration of part of Herculaneum On the site	18
Spoons Metropolitan Museum, New York Bracelet Metropolitan Museum	21
	22
Archaeological excavation	27
Bronze Mercury found in a Roman temple in England	
Colchester and Essex Museum, Colchester, England	27
Mosaic floor Exeter, England	27
Latona By William Henry Rinehart (1825-1874). Metropolitan Museum	28
Aqueduct, probably first century A.D Segovia, Spain	30
Ursa Major	34
Chest found in Pompeii Museo Nazionale, Naples	37
Pillars of a temple of Ceres Segesta, Sicily	38
Diana Painting by Paris Bordone (1500-1571)	
	40
Mosaic from a Roman villa in Africa	42
Sybil Part of ceiling fresco by Michelangelo (1475-1564)	
Sistine Chapel, Rome	50
Aeneas and the golden bough	52
Flight from Troy Relief from an altar found on the site of Carthage	02
Musée Alaoui, Le Bardo, Tunis	54
Marble relief of a temple of Vesta Uffizi Gallery, Florence, Italy	56
Plowman Bronze statuette found in County Durham, England	50
British Museum	58
Colosseum, called by Romans Amphitheatrum Flavium Begun by	50
	61
Vespasian; dedicated by Titus (80 A.D.)	OI
The oldest arch in the city, built by Domitian (51-96 A.D.) in honor	61
of Titus	
Remains of the Forum Holitorium	61
Plate of early Italian pottery	62
Archer and slinger Cybulski	63
Appius Claudius Mural by Cesare Maccari (1840-1919) in the Palazzo	~~
Madama, where the Italian senate meets Rome	66
Consul with lictors	69
Roman judge Relief from the bronze doors of the Supreme Court	
Building Washington, D. C.	69
Caesar Ancient statue Museo Capitolino, Rome	69
Roman senate Mural by Cesare Maccari (1840-1919)	
Palazzo Madama, Rome	69
Scabbard Cybulski	71

	PAGE
Lar Relief from the tomb of C. ManliusLateran Museum, Rome	73
Jupiter Ancient statue Vatican Museums, Rome Ludovisi Juno Ancient statue	73
Ludovisi Juno Ancient statue Museo delle Terme, Rome	73
Head of "Ares Resting," after a bronze by Lysippus Museo delle Terme	73
	13
Head of Venus of Cnidus, copy of a statue by Praxiteles	
Vatican Museums, Rome	73
Household shrine from the house of the Vettii, Pompeii . Vatican Museums	73
Animals for sacrifice Relief, showing animals for the Suovetaurilia	73
Vesuvius Just beyond the arch was Pompeii's civil forum, surrounded	
by temples, markets, and administration buildings	74
Home of the Minotaur Painting by Ernest-Augustin Gendron (1818-1881)	76
Icarus falling	78
	10
Chimera Bronze, fifth century B.C., found near Arezzo, Italy	
DucksMuseo Archeologico, FlorenceDucksMosaic	80
Ducks Mosaic Metropolitan Museum	82
Ascanius and stag From an Aeneid printed in Nuremberg, 1688	
Library of Phillips Andover Academy, Andover, Mass.	86
Roman interior Painting, reconstituting the house of Cornelius Rufus	
from remains in Pompeii Lehmann	89
Plan of an early house	89
House of Pansa, a citizen of Pompeii (model) Metropolitan Museum	89
Apartment house (model)	89
Bronze stag Gallo-Roman	90
Inkwell and pen Royal Ontario Museum of Archaeology, Toronto, Canada	92
Homer and child After painting by François Gérard (1770-1837)	94
Lion Arch of Constantine, Rome	96
Pileated woodpecker	98
Kitchen in the house of the VettiiPompeii	105
Heating stove, from Pompeii	105
Pottery lamp, from Pompeii Walters Art Gallery, Baltimore	105
Glass bottles made about the end of the first century A.D., found in	
Germany	105
Reconstitution of Roman bedroom The frescoed walls are from a villa	LOO
at Boscoreale Metropolitan Museum	105
Vergil reading his poems to Augustus Painting by Charles François	105
Islabort Assistant Dell's and L'islanding by Charles François	
Jalabert Asinius Pollio and Livia listen, while Octavia faints at	
mention of her dead son Marcellus	106
Aeneas at the court of Latinus Nuremberg Aeneid	112
Relief from tomb of M. Vergilius Eurysaces, first century A.D Rome 1	117
Oil jars Ostia 1	117
Bread	117
Glazed pottery flask	117
Plate British Museum 1	177
Relief of meat market	TT 1
Staatliche Skulptureneemmelum Denda Com	177
Staatliche Skulpturensammlung, Dresden, Germany 1	.17
Coin of the eight Italian nations, joining in an oath of federation 1	.18
Jupiter and Juno Nuremberg Aeneid 1	.20

	AGE
Death of Turnus Nuremberg Aeneid	122
Capture of Proserpina Painting by Walter Crane (1845-1915)	126
Orpheus By Thomas Crawford (1813-1857)	
Museum of Fine Arts, Boston	128
Museum of Fine Arts, Boston Relief Museum, Ancona, Italy	121
Part of a funeral monument The inscription says "Longidienus continues	101
The inscription says Longidenus continues	101
his work."	131
Cutlery shop From the altar of L. Cornelius Atimetus, first century B.C.	
Vatican Museums	131
Relief of shop	131
Relief from a funeral monument	131
Pandora Painting by Dante Gabriel Rossetti (1828-1882)	132
Apollo American Museum of Natural History, New York	
Roman Glassware found in Germany Landesmuseum, Bonn	
Paris Ancient statue	120
Halon and Paris Pointing by Dudolf von Douten	140
Helen and Paris Painting by Rudolf von Deutsch	140
Ruins of the Roman town of Volubilis in French Morocco	143
Relief from a tomb at Neumagen	
Provinzialmuseum, Trier, Germany	
Ruins of the Greek town of Chersonesus, on the Black Sea	
Bridge over the Tagus, built about 105 A.D. in honor of Trajan Spain	143
Helen Painting by Frederic Leighton (1830-1896)	144
The wooden horse Painting by Henri Paul Motte (1846-1922)	
Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington	146
Iphigenia Pompeian fresco paintingMuseo Nazionale, Naples	
Sacrifice of Inhigenia Painting by Giovacchino Agricola	
Sacrifice of Iphigenia Painting by Giovacchino Agricola	
Palazzo Doria, Rome	156
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship	156 162
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship Polyphemus	156 162 164
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship Polyphemus Tray Baumeister Berlin Museum	156 162 164 166
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship Polyphemus Tray Baumeister Berlin Museum Greek ship, from a vase painting	156 162 164 166 168
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship Polyphemus Tray Baumeister Greek ship, from a vase painting Ulysses' ship in the storm	156 162 164 166 168 169
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus	156 162 164 166 168 169 170
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus	156 162 164 166 168 169 170
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176 177
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship Polyphemus Tray Baumeister Berlin Museum Greek ship, from a vase painting Ulysses' ship in the storm Mercury Head of Hermes of Andros Ulysses in Circe's house Baumeister Penelope at her loom, from a vase painting Ulysses is recognized Relief Baumeister Greek head of Ulysses Baumeister Greek head of Ulysses Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176 177
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176 177
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 169 170 172 176 177 178 179 181
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 169 170 172 176 177 178 179 181
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176 177 178 179 181 182 186
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176 177 181 182 186 188
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176 177 178 181 182 186 188 190
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 170 172 176 177 178 179 181 182 186 188 190
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 170 172 176 177 178 179 181 182 186 188 190
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176 177 181 182 186 188 190
Palazzo Doria, Rome Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. Polyphemus Tray Baumeister	156 162 164 166 168 169 170 172 176 177 181 182 186 188 190 193 195 196

F	PAGE
View across the Trojan plain toward the Hellespont	202
Replica by Vincenzo Aurisichio of the Capitoline wolf in Rome	
Sault Ste. Marie, Mich.	204
Seizure of the Sabine women Painting by Nicolas Poussin (1593-1665)	
Metropolitan Museum Carthaginian boat	206
Carthaginian hoat	210
Regulus leaving Rome Mural by Cesare Maccari	
Palazzo Madama, Rome	212
Farly Roman money Cybulski	214
Palazzo Madama, Rome Early Roman money Cybulski	216
Eagle, emblem of Caesar's fourth legion (model)	
Rheinisches Landesmuseum, Trier	216
Tombstone of M. Favonius Facilis of the twentieth legion, erected by	
his freedmen first century A D Colchester and Essex Museum	216
his freedmen, first century A.D Colchester and Essex Museum Soldier wearing plated armor British Museum	216
Soldiers making camp After Rheinhard	216
Relief from the temple of Neptune in Rome, said to have been built	
about 30 B.C Louvre, Paris	220
Soldiers crossing a pontoon bridge. Column of Marcus Aurelius, Rome	223
Roman army	227
Callic chief of the time of Roman occupation	229
Gallic chief of the time of Roman occupation	230
Coin of the Segusiavi Blanchet Pool at Bath Monument of a blacksmith Yorkshire Museum, York, England	240
Monument of a blacksmith Vorkshire Museum York England	240
Cinerary urns, found in EssexColchester and Essex Museum	240
Silver cup, from Welwyn, Herts	240
Center of a mosaic telling the story of Dido and Aeneas England	240
Silver handle found in Northumberland British Museum	240
Arrival of the Allies in Normandy	241
Landing on the Normandy beach	242
Parade helmet	245
British coin COM F means son of Commius Evans	247
The white cliffs of Dover	
Marker at Deal, about nine miles from Dover	250
Libation pan The name of the maker—Bodvogenus—is on the handle,	
which is inlaid in a silver vine pattern From Isle of Ely	
Relief from a tomb at Arles, France	254
Child's head	
Bowl of terra sigillata ware, second century A.D Walters Art Gallery	254
Roman remains	254
Amphitheater at Arles	
A Druid ceremony	255
Gallic feast Parmentier	
Gallic chieftain of early type	258
Bracelets Dechélette	

	AGE
Relief Musée Départemental des Vosges, Epinal, France	260
German village Parmentier	261
Teutonic smiths Painting by George Peters	
Public Museum, Milwaukee, Wis.	
Barbarian cavalry	
Vercingetorix Statue by Aimé Millet (1819-1891), on a height near	200
site of Alesia	266
Coins showing Vercingetorix	200
Cavalryman (model)	
Surrender of Vercingetorix	
Battle	269
Hunting lions Mosaic Leptis Magna, Africa	
St. Jerome writing	273
St. Augustine Medieval drawing	
Rockefeller Memorial Chapel, The University of Chicago	275
Charlemagne Painting by Albrecht Dürer (1471-1528)	
German National Museum, Nuremberg	279
Erasmus	282
Roman actors wearing comic masks British Museum	
MAPS	
Italyinside front co	ver
The Roman Empire	
The Mediterranean World	
Voyage of the Argo	
Early Rome and surroundings	203
The Seven Hills of Rome	205
Gaul	221
Datala mitala III-landiana	74T
Battle with Helvetians	200
Caesar's route to Britain	443 070
The spread of Latin	212
The Roman World inside back co	ver

 ${\mathbb R}$ oman numbers refer to pages; boldface to sections in the Grammar for Reference

```
\bar{a}. ab, preposition, 24, 53, 60, 107;
                                          ACTIVE VOICE, defined, 59
     367, 154
                                          ad, preposition, 53, 54; 348, 74
   distinguished from \bar{e}, ex, 25
                                             prefix, 68, 84, 180
   prefix, 68, 84, 180
                                          ADJECTIVES, defined, 12
ABLATIVE
                                            first declension, 44-45, 49; 315, 9
   absolute, 108, 109; 351, 88
                                            second declension, 44-45, 49; 315, 9
   of accompaniment, 107; 350, 84
                                            third declension, 127, 129, 134; 316
   of agent, 60, 107; 349, 80
                                            agreement of, 14, 16, 23, 25, 41, 49,
   of cause, 352, 91
                                               68, 87, 142; 344, 49
                                            attributive, 353, 95
   of comparison, 350, 81
                                            comparative, translation of, 133:
   of degree of difference, 251 (n. 3);
     351, 87
                                               353, 100
   of description, 190 (n. 7); 351, 90;
                                            comparison of
     352, 90a
                                              regular, 133-134; 317, 15
   of manner, 107; 350, 85
                                              irregular, 136; 317, 16
   of means, 60, 107; 351, 86
                                            demonstrative, 67, 79; 321, 27
  of place, 350, 82
                                            denoting a part, 353, 98
  of place from which, 349, 79
                                            formed with suffixes, 64, 148
  of respect, 168; 351, 89
                                            identifying, 163; 322, 29
  of route, 351, 86a
                                            indefinite, 323, 33
  of separation, 224 (n. 5); 349, 78
                                            intensive, 170-171; 321, 28
  of time, 157; 350, 83
                                            interrogative, 75: 323, 32
  used adverbially, 252
                                            irregular, 318, 18
  with deponents, 203; 352, 92
                                           made from verbs, 148
  with prepositions, 25, 53; 367, 154
                                           numeral, 318, 21; 319, 22
ac (atque), 237 (n. 7)
                                           position of, 12; 367, 157
  after aliter, 214 (n. 5)
                                           possessive, 45, 87; 320, 26
ACCENT, 368
                                           predicate, 13, 142; 353, 96
ACCUSATIVE
                                           relative, 322, 30
  as object and predicate, 17; 349, 76
                                           substantive use of, 49; 353, 97
  as subject of infinitive, 141; 348, 75;
                                           superlative, declension of, 134
    361, 128; 363, 134, 1
                                              translation of, 133; 353, 100
 of direct object, 13, 14, 17; 348, 70
                                           two modifying one noun, 14
 of duration of time, 157; 348, 71
                                           with ablative of description, 190
 of extent in space, 160; 348, 72
                                              (n. 7); 351, 90
 of place to which, 186 (n. 2); 348, 73
                                           with adverbial force, 353, 99
 with compounds of trāns, 349, 77
                                           with dependent dative, 23; 346, 63
 with prepositions, 53, 54; 348, 74;
                                           with genitive of description, 188
   367, 156
                                             (n. 4); 345, 56
 with verbs of naming, 349, 76
                                           with prefix per, 218 (n. 3)
```

ADVERBS, defined, 51 CAUSAL CLAUSES comparison of, 136; 318, 19-20 with cum, 187; 358, 116 formed from adjectives, 252 with quod, quia, quoniam, 360, 123 translation of comparative and with indicative, 360, 123 superlative, 353, 100 with subjunctive, 187:358, **116**: 360. AGREEMENT 123 of adjectives, 14, 16, 23, 25, 41, 49, cēterī, plural, 77 68, 87, 142; 344, **49** circum, preposition, 75; 348, 74 of appositives, 25; 344, 51 prefix, 84 of participles, 97, 130; 344, 49 CLAUSE, defined, 29 of relative pronouns, 139; 344, 50 coepī, conjugation of, 343, 48 of verbs, 19; 344, 52 $c\bar{o}g\bar{o}$, followed by infinitive with acaiō, conjugation of, 343, 48 cusative subject, 361, 128, 2 aliquis, declension of, 323, 33 com-, prefix, 84 Answers to Ouestions, 72 COMMANDS ante, preposition, 53; 348, 74 imperative, 31, 57, 111, 113, 115, prefix, 245 (n. 5) 175; 360, 124 ANTECEDENT, defined, 71 in indirect discourse, 363, 134, 2 preceded by relative clause, 190 negative, 175; 360, 125 (n. 4)COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES antequam, with subjunctive, 357, 113a declension of, 134; 317, 17 ANTICIPATORY CLAUSES, 213; 357, 113 formation of, 133-134 Apposition, defined, 25 translation of, 133; 353, 100 with quam, 350, 81a Appositives, defined, 25 agreement of, 25; 344, 51 COMPARISON of adjectives, 133, 136; 317, 15-16 ARTICLE, lack of in Latin, 12 of adverbs, 136; 318, 19-20 Assimilation, 180 atque (ac), 237 (n. 7) COMPOUND VERBS, defined, 68 changes of spelling in, 180 BASE, of a noun, defined, 29 eō, 145 of an adjective, defined, 133 ferō, 161, 180 bos, declension of, 315, 8 formation with prefixes, 84, 180 with accusative and dative, 347, 68a CARDINAL NUMERALS, 134; 318, 21 with dative, 189 (n. 2); 245 (n. 5); 319, 22 CASE, defined, 17 347, 68 CONCESSIVE CLAUSES, 183; 358, 117 CASE ENDINGS OF NOUNS CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, 361, 130 first declension, 17, 23, 25, 29, 44 362, **133**; 366, **149***a* second declension, 44 third declension, 91 Conjugation, defined, 19 first, 20, 32, 36, 39, 59, 77, 81, 97, fourth declension, 147 99, 103, 123, 130, 153, 155, 177fifth declension, 157 178, 183, 185, 187, 199, 325, **34** causā, with genitive, 205 (n. 5) with gerund, 171, 364, 140a 328, **35**

Conjugation—cont.	DECLENSION, defined, 29
second, 57, 59, 63, 77, 81, 97, 103,	of nouns
123, 130, 153, 155, 177-178, 183,	how determined, 29, 41, 91, 147,
185, 199, 207; 329, 36 —334, 37	157
third, 111, 113, 115-116, 119, 121,	first declension, 29, 43-44; 313, 1
123, 130, 153, 155, 177-178, 183,	second declension, 41, 43-45;
185, 199, 207; 329, 36 —334, 37	313, 2
fourth, 115-116, 119, 121, 123, 130,	third declension, 91, 93, 95; 313,
	3—314, 5
153, 155, 177-178, 183, 185, 199,	fourth declension, 147; 315, 6
207; 329, 36 —334, 37	
Conjunctions, defined, 29	fifth declension, 157; 315, 7
consilium est, with substantive clause,	irregular, 315, 8
356, 110 <i>b</i>	of adjectives
Consonants, 368	first and second declension, 44-45,
contrā, preposition, 67; 348, 74	49, 87; 315, 9
prefix, 180	third declension, 127, 129; 316,
cum, preposition, 53, 107; 350, 84-85;	10-13
367, 154	of comparative and superlative ad-
with pronouns, 139, 151; 367, 154	jectives, 134; 317, 17
conjunction, 33	of participles, 97, 130, 173; 317, 14
with tum, 359, 118 a	Defective Verbs, 343, 48
cum CLAUSES	DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES OR PRO-
anticipatory, 213; 357, 113a	NOUNS, 67-68, 79; 321, 27
causal, 187; 358, 116	agreement, 68, 79
concessive, 183; 358, 117	declension of, 321, 27
descriptive, of situation, 184; 358-	DEPENDENT CLAUSE, defined, 29
359, 118	DEPONENT VERBS, defined, 165
-cum, enclitic, 139, 151; 367, 154	conjugation of, 165, 167; 335-336, 39
DATIVE	ablative with, 203; 352, 92
of agent, 207; 347, 69 ; 355, 105 b	genitive with potior, 352, 92a
of indirect object, 23; 346, 62	gerund of, 172 (n. 8)
of possession, 203; 347, 65	infinitives of, 165, 167
of purpose, 231; 347, 66	participles of
of reference, 231; 347, 67	future passive participle passive
position of, 23	in meaning, 364, 139a
with adjectives, 23; 346, 63	perfect participle active in mean-
with compounds, 189 (n. 2); 347, 68	ing, 167; 363, 135a
with persuādeō, 218 (n. 2); 346, 64	semideponent, 336, 40
with special verbs, 191 (n. 4), 249	DESCRIPTION, RELATIVE CLAUSE OF,
(n. 11); 346, 64	
	357-358, 115
dē, preposition, 34, 53; 367, 154	DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION,
prefix, 84, 180	184; 358-359, 118
with ablative, used instead of gen-	diēs, declension of, 315, 7
itive, 164 (n. 5); 345, 55 b	gender of, 157

DIPHTHONGS, 368 FEAR, CLAUSES OF DIRECT OBJECT, defined, 13 with subjunctive, 213; 357, 112 accusative of, 17; 348, 70 with perīculum est, 357, 112b and c agreement of adjectives with, 14 ferō, conjugation of, 161; 339-340, 44 dis-, prefix, 180 compounds of, 161, 180 DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS $f\bar{\imath}\bar{o}$, conjugation of, 219; 341, 46 list of, 319, 22 fruor, with ablative, 203; 352, 92 instead of cardinals, 267 (n. 5) fungor, with ablative, 203; 352, 92 $d\bar{o}$, present, 99 FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, 177-178; imperfect, 51 366, **151** future, 33 FUTURE TENSE, 32-33, 57, 81, 121; perfect, 36 366**, 148** imperative, 31 "do" in negative sentences and in GENDER, defined, 41 questions, 19 agreement of adjectives in, 41 domus, declension of, 315, 8 in first declension, 41, 44 in place-from-which construction, in second declension, 41, 43, 44 349, 79 in third declension, 95 in place-to-which construction, 186 in fourth declension, 147 (n. 2); 348, **73** in fifth declension, 157 in locative, 352, 94 GENITIVE DOUBT, CLAUSES WITH EXPRESSIONS objective, 345, 57 of, 191; 359, 119 of description, 188 (n. 4); 345, 56; dum, in clauses of proviso, 357, 114 352, **90***a* with anticipatory subjunctive, 213; of material or composition, 346, 59 of measure, 345, 56a 357. **113***a* with present tense, 160 (n. 5); 365, of possession, 16, 17, 23, 88; 345, 54 of the whole, 245 (n. 6); 345, 55 dummodo, in clauses of proviso, 357, position of, 23 replaced by ablative with $d\bar{e}$ or ex. duo, declension of, 134; 318, 21 164 (n. 5); 345, **55**b subjective, 345, 58 with causā and grātiā, 205 (n. 5) ē, ex, preposition, 24, 53; 367, **154** distinguished from \bar{a} , ab, 25 with impersonal verbs, 346, 61 with potior, 352, 92a with ablative, used instead of genitive, 164 (n. 5); 345, 55b with verbs of remembering, 346, 60 GERUND, defined, 171 prefix, 84, 180 declension of, 171 ego, declension and use of, 151; 320, 23 uses of cases of, 171; 364, 140; ejus, eōrum, distinguished from suus, 365, **142***a* 88; 320, **26** with causā, 171; 364, 140a $e\bar{o}$, conjugation of, 145; 340, 45 distinction between gerund and compounds of, 145, 175 imperatives of, 175 gerundive, 209; 365, **142** of deponent verbs, 172 (n. 8) EXPLETIVE "there," 25

INDEFINITES, 323-324, 33 GERUNDIVE, defined, 209 INDEPENDENT CLAUSE, defined. 29 agreement of, 209 PARTICIPIAL INDEPENDENT CONcase uses of, 209; 364, 141a STRUCTION, defined, 108 grātiā, with genitive, 205 (n. 5) INDICATIVE MOOD, defined, 31 uses of, 354, 101—355, 105 hic, declension of, 67; 321, 27 after words meaning until or before. distinguished from ille, 68 357. 113b distinguished from is, 79 with certain conjunctions, 354, 102 pronoun, 81 INDIRECT DISCOURSE, defined, 141 translation of neuter plural, 162 use of, 141-142; 361, 128, 1; 363, 134 (n. 6)commands in, 363, 134, 2 HISTORICAL INFINITIVE, 361, 129 dependent clauses in, 192; 363, HISTORICAL PRESENT, 365, 145a **134**. 3 informal (implied), 360, 122 *īdem*, declension of, 163; 322, 29 INDIRECT OBJECT, defined, 23 pronoun, 163; 322, 29 dative of, 23; 346, 62 IDENTIFYING PRONOUN OR ADJECTIVE, position of, 23 322, **29** translated by phrase with "to," 23. ille, declension of, 67; 321, 27 54 distinguished from hic, 68 INDIRECT QUESTIONS, defined, 187 distinguished from is, 79 pronoun, 81 use of, 187; 359, 120 Infinitives, defined, 20 for special emphasis, 172 (n. 5) IMPERATIVE MOOD, defined, 31 active present, 20, 36, 57, 111, 115, 123, first conjugation, 31 second conjugation, 57 third conjugation, 111, 113 future, 173 perfect, 155 fourth conjugation, 115 of $d\bar{o}$, 31 passive of $e\bar{o}$ and sum, 175 present, 123, 155 negative commands, 175; 360, 125 future, 268 (n. 3) use of, 360, 124-125 perfect, 155 in conditional sentences, 361, 130a as subject, 361, 127 IMPERFECT TENSE, 38, 57, 77, 119, complementary, 360, 126 183, 184, 185; 366, 147 historical, 361, 129 IMPERSONAL VERBS, defined, 195; 354, in indirect discourse, 141, 142, 155, 192; 361, **128**, 1; 363, **134**, 1 105 followed by infinitive, 195; 354, 105a instead of gerunds, 364, 140d with genitive, 346, 61 of deponents, 165, 167 passive used impersonally, 355, 105b with impersonal verbs, 195; 354, with infinitive as subject, 361, 127 105ain, preposition with ablative and acwith subject accusative, 141; 361, cusative, 24, 53, 54; 367, 155 **128**; 363, **134**, 1 prefix, 84, 180 with subject nominative, 361, 129a

inguam, synopsis of, 343, 48 subjunctive, 183, 184-185, 187, 189. INTENSIVE, 170-171; 321, 28 191, 192, 193, 199, 211, 213; 355, inter, preposition with accusative, 75; 106-360, 123 348, **74** mos est, followed by infinitive, 354, prefix, 84 105aINTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE, declenwith substantive clause, 356, 111a sion of, 75; 323, 32 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, declen $n\bar{e}$, after verbs of hindering, 359. sion of, 71; 322, 31 119; 2 case of, 72 with -cum, 139; 367, 154 before quis, 192 (n. 6) INTRANSITIVE VERBS, defined, 13 in a negative command, 360, 125a ipse, declension and use of, 170-171; with clauses of fear, 213; 357, 112 321, 28 with negative purpose clauses, 189; IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES, 318, 18 355. **107** IRREGULAR VERBS, see eo, fero, etc. with noun clauses of desire, 191; is, 79; 321, 27 356, **110** iste, declension of, 321, 27 with volitive subjunctive, 355, 106a -ne, sign of a question, 72 jam and nunc distinguished, 51 NEGATIVE COMMANDS iubeo, followed by infinitive with with $n\bar{e}$, 360, **125**a accusative subject, 356, 110c; with $n\bar{o}l\bar{\imath}$ and infinitive, 175; 360, 361, 128, 2 jūs est, with substantive clause, 356, "no," expressed in Latin, 72 **110**b $n\bar{o}l\bar{i}$, 175; 360, **125** $n\bar{o}l\bar{o}$, conjugation of, 163; 341-342, 47 LOCATIVE, 352, 94 followed by infinitive with accusa $m\bar{a}l\bar{o}$, conjugation of, 341-342, 47 tive subject, 361, **128**, 2 imperative of, in negative comfollowed by infinitive with accusative subject, 361, 128, 2 mands, 175; 360, 125 meī, declension of, 320, 24 Nominative meminī, conjugation of, 343, 48 as subject, 17; 344, 53 with genitive, 346, 60 as predicate, 103; 344, 53a with historical infinitive, 361, 129a meus, declension and use of, 45; 320, non, in noun clauses of fact, 356, 111 26 $m\bar{\imath}lia$, declension of, 160; 318, 21 in result clauses, 193; 356, 109 with genitive, 160 nonne, sign of a question, 72 $m\bar{\imath}lle$, adjective, 160 $n\bar{o}s$, declension of, 151; 320, 23 Noun (or Substantive) Clauses modo, in clauses of proviso, 357, 114 Mood, defined, 31 after jubeō, vetō, 356, 110c imperative, 31, 57, 111, 113, 115, after jūs est or consilium est, 356, 175; 360, **124** 110b after mos est, 356, 111a indicative, 31; 354, 101—105 infinitive, 20, 141; 360, **126**—361, after perīculum est, 357, 112b of desire, 191; 356, 110, 110a 129

NOUN CLAUSES—cont.	perfect passive, 97; 363, 137
of fact, 219; 356, 111	declension of, 97; 363, 137
of fear, 357, 112	agreement of, 344, 49
with perīculum est, 357, 112b	of deponents, 167; 363, 135a, 364
with <i>quod</i> , 354, 104	139 <i>a</i>
Nouns, defined, 12	position of, 97
classes of, 91, 93, 95	as substantives, 353, 97
declension of, 313-315, 1-8	used in infinitives, 155
derived from verbs, 238	Passive Voice, defined, 59
formed with suffixes, 200	first conjugation, 59, 77, 81, 103,
gender of, 41	123, 153, 155, 178, 184, 187
irregular, 315, 8	327-328, 35
nūllus, declension of, 318, 18	second conjugation, 59, 77, 81, 103,
NUMBER, of nouns, 14	123, 153, 155, 178, 184, 187
of verbs, 19	332-334, 37
Numerals	third conjugation, 111, 113, 116,
cardinal, 134; 318, 21-319, 22	119, 121, 123, 153, 155, 178, 184,
distributive, 267 (n. 5); 319, 22	187; 332-334, 37
ordinal, 319, 22	fourth conjugation, 115-116, 119,
duo, trēs, mīlia, declined, 318, 21	121, 123, 153, 155, 178, 184,
with ablative, 164 (n. 5); 345, 55b	187; 332-334, 37
with nouns plural in form but sin-	PAST PERFECT TENSE, 153, 185;
gular in meaning, 267 (n. 5)	366, 150
nunc and jam distinguished, 51	patior, with infinitive, 361, 128, 2
_	per, preposition, 53; 348, 74
ob, preposition, 348, 74	prefix, 84, 180, 218 (n. 3)
prefix, 84, 180	PERFECT SYSTEM OF VERBS, 35, 178
with accusative of cause, 352, 91b	Perfect Tense, defined, 35; 366,
OBJECT	149
direct, 13, 14, 17	active, 35-36, 63, 115
indirect, 23, 54	passive, 103, 116
oblīvīscor, with genitive, 346, 60	contrasted with imperfect, 38
ōdī, conjugation of, 343, 48	perīculum est, with clause of fear,
ORDER OF WORDS, 12, 19, 23, 51, 97	357, 112 <i>b</i>
Participles, defined, 97	PERSON ENDINGS OF VERBS, 20, 35,
present active, 130; 363, 136	39, 59
declension of, 130, 317, 14	Person of Verbs, defined, 19
future active, 173; 363, 138	PERSONAL PRONOUNS, declension and
future passive, 207; 364, 139	use of, 151; 320, 23
as gerundive, 209; 364, 141	persuādeō, followed by dative case
with dative of agent, 207; 355,	and noun clause of desire, 218
105 <i>b</i>	(n. 2)
with sum, 207; 364, 139	PHRASE, defined, 14

PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS locative, 352, 94 place from which, 349, 79 place to which, 54, 186 (n. 2): 348. 73 place where, 54; 350, 82 prefix, 84, 180 plūs, declension of, 136; 317, 17 Possessive Adjectives and Pro-NOUNS, 45, 87-88 Possessive Case, 16, 17, 23 Possessives, declension of, 320, 26 agreement of, 320, 26 possum, conjugation of, 166, 199: 338, 42 imperfect subjunctive, 185 present subjunctive, 199 principal parts, 166 post, preposition, 53; 348, 74 postquam, with indicative, 354, 102 potior, with ablative, 203; 352, 92 with genitive, 352, 92a prae, prefix, 84 355, 107*a* PREDICATE, defined, 13 adjective, 13, 142; 353, 96 noun, 13, 14, 142; 344, 53a with passive, 103; 344, 53a PREDICATE NOMINATIVE, 344, 53a Prefixes, use of, 84, 180 78 per, prefixed to adjective, 218 (n. 3) verbs compounded with, 84 67 Prepositions, defined, 24 cases with, 25, 53-54; 367, 154-156 352, **91***b* position of, 367, 157 with ablative of cause, 352, 91a with ablative of place from which, PURPOSE 349, 79a with gerunds, 171 PRESENT SYSTEM OF VERBS, 33, 39, 57 Present Tense, defined, 32; 365, 145 first conjugation, 20, 59 second conjugation, 57, 59 140c third conjugation, 111, 113 fourth conjugation, 115

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS, 98, 99, 104, 116, 145, 165, 173 priusquam, with anticipatory subjunctive, 213; 357, 113a prō, preposition, 40; 367, 154 Pronouns, defined, 71 declension of, 71, 79, 83, 151, 170; 320, **23**—324, **33** demonstrative, 67, 79, 81; 321, 27 identifying, 163; 322, 29 indefinite, 323-324, 33 intensive, 170; 321, 28 interrogative, 71-72; 322, 31 omitted as subject, 17 personal, 71, 151; 320, 23 possessive, 45, 87, 88; 320, 26 reflexive, 83, 141, 151; 320, 24 relative, 139; 322, 30 agreement of, 139; 344, 50 introducing purpose clause, 189; neuter, with genitive of whole, 345, with -cum, 139, 151; 367, 154 Pronunciation, 12, 79, 368 prope, preposition with accusative, propter, preposition with accusative, with accusative, to express cause, prosum, conjugation of, 338, 43 Proviso, Clauses of, 357, 114 clauses of, 189; 355, 107, 107a translation of, 355, 107b with comparatives, 355, 108 dative of, 231; 347, 66 expressed by gerund with ad, 364, expressed by gerund with causā, 171, 364, **140**a

quam, with comparative, 350, 81a RELATIVE PRONOUNS, use of, 139 quamquam, with indicative, 354, 102 OUESTIONS, 72 $qu\bar{\imath}$, as adjective, declension of, 75; 323, 32 as pronoun, declension of, 322, 30 at beginning of sentence, 228 (n. 5) quia, with indicative or subjunctive, 360, 123 quīdam, declension of, 324, 33 with $d\bar{e}$ or ex and ablative, 164 (n. 5); 345, **55**b quin, with subjunctive, after expressions of doubt, 191; 359, 119, 1 with subjunctive, after verb of hindering, 359, 119, 2 quis, declension of, 71; 322, 31 indefinite, after $s\bar{i}$ or $n\bar{e}$, 192 (n. 6 and n. 7) quisquam, declension of, 324, 33 quisque, declension of, 323, 33 quō, in a purpose clause containing a comparative, 224 (n. 2); 355, 108 with -cum, 367, 154 quod, causal, 360, 123 introducing a substantive clause, 354. **104** quōminus, after verbs of hindering, 359, **119**, 2 quoniam, causal, with indicative or subjunctive, 360, 123 QUOTATIONS, 141 re-, prefix, 84, 180 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS, 83, 141, 151; 320, 24

RELATIVE CLAUSES causal, 358, **116***a* of description, 357-358, **115** of purpose, 189; 355, **107**a with indicative, 354, 103 with subjunctive, 357, 115-358, 115a

declension of, 322, 30 agreement, 139; 344, 50 introducing purpose clause, 189; 355, **107**a preceding antecedent, 190 (n. 4) with -cum, 139; 367, 154 rēs, 157; 315, 7 RESULT CLAUSES, 193; 356, 109 ROMAN NUMERALS, 319, 22 SEMIDEPONENT VERBS, 208 (n. 2): 336, **40** SENTENCE, defined, 12 SEQUENCE OF TENSES, 211; 366, 152— 367, **153** exceptions to rule, 367, 153 $s\bar{\imath}$, before quis, 192 (n. 6) sine, preposition, 77; 367, 154 sōlus, declension of, 318, 18 STEMS OF VERBS, defined, 20 present, 32, 99 future, 33 perfect, 35-36, 99, 104 participial, 99, 153, 155 sub, preposition, with ablative and accusative, 81; 367, 155 SUBJECT, defined, 12 in indirect discourse, 141 omission of, 17 SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, defined, 183 conjugation of, 183; 325-328; 330; 333; 335; 337-341 present, active and passive, 199 imperfect, active and passive, 183, 184 perfect, active and passive, 211 past perfect, active and passive, 185, 187; 366, 150 after perīculum est, 357, 112b anticipatory, 213; 357, 113 by attraction, 359, 121 in causal clauses, with quod, quia, and quoniam, 360, 123

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—cont.	SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES, see Noun
in cum clauses	CLAUSES
anticipatory, 357, 113 , 113 <i>a</i>	SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES, 49
causal, 187; 358, 116	SUFFIXES, forming adjectives, 148
concessive, 183; 358, 117	forming nouns, 200, 238
descriptive, 184; 358, 118	suī, declension of, 83; 320, 24
in clauses of fear, 213; 357, 112	sum, conjugation of, 19, 33, 36, 39;
in clauses of proviso, 357, 114	337, 41
in clauses of purpose, 189; 355, 107	compounds of, 68
with $qu\bar{o}$ and a comparative, 224	imperatives of, 175
(n. 2); 355, 108	infinitives of, 33, 197 (n. 2)
with relative pronouns, 189; 355,	present subjunctive, 199
107a	imperfect subjunctive, 185
in clauses of result, 193; 356, 109	perfect subjunctive, 211
in clauses with quīn	principal parts, 173
with verbs of hindering, 359, 119, 2	with dative of possession, 203;
after words and phrases of doubt-	347, 65
ing, 191; 359, 119 , 1	with future active participle, 173
in conditional sentences, 361, 130 <i>a</i>	with future passive participle, 207;
in conditions	364, 139
contrary to fact, 362, 133	with perfect passive participle, 103,
future less vivid, 362, 132	153, 187, 211
in expressions of doubt, 191; 359,	SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES, 133
119	declension of, 134
in indirect discourse	translation of, 133; 353, 100
commands, 363, 134 , 2	Supine, 365, 143
dependent clauses, 192; 363,	supra, preposition, 121
134 , 3	suus, declension and use of, 87; 320, 26
in implied (informal) indirect dis-	distinguished from ejus, eōrum, 88;
course, 360, 122	320, 26
in indirect questions, 187; 359, 120	Syllabication, 368
in negative commands, 360, 125a	Synopsis of Verbs, 334, 38
in noun clauses of desire, 191; 356,	21.01.01.01.
110	tamen, use of, 183; 358, 117a
translation of, 356, 110 a	Tense, defined, 32; 365, 144
in noun clauses of fact, 219, 356, 111	present, 32, 57, 59, 111, 113, 199;
in relative clauses of description,	365, 145
357, 115	historical, 365, 145 <i>a</i>
of desire (volitive), 355, 106	with <i>dum</i> , 365, 146
of irregular verbs, 337-342, 41-47	with future force, 365, 145 <i>b</i>
of sum and possum, 185, 199, 211;	imperfect, 38, 39, 77, 119, 183, 184;
337, 41—338, 42	366, 147
volitive, 355, 106	in conditional sentences contrary
with necesse est, 361, 127a	to fact, 362, 133
WILL PECCODE COL, DUI, LAIG	10 1400, 000, 200

TENSE-cont. in repeated or habitual action, 349, 77 248 (n. 10); 366, 147a translation by progressive form, 366, **147**b future, 32, 33, 81, 121; 366, 148 in future more vivid conditional sentences, 362, 131 translation of, with certain conjunctions, 366, 148a perfect, 35-36, 63, 103, 115-116, 211; 366, 149 denoting single act, 248 (n. 10) equivalent to English past tense, **366**, **149**, 2 equivalent to English present perfect, 366, 149, 1 356, 110 in future less vivid conditional sentences, 362, 132a; 366, 149a 356, 111 past perfect, 153, 185, 187; 366, 150 denoting repeated acts, 248 (n. 10): 366, 150b subjunctive in conditional sentences contrary to fact, 362, 133 future perfect, 177, 178; 366, 151 in future more vivid conditional sentences, 362, 131b frequent use of, 366, 151a infinitives in indirect discourse, 142, 334, 37 155 sequence of, 211; 366-367, 152-153 signs of tenses 334, 37 imperfect, 39, 77, 119 future, 32, 81, 121 past perfect, 153 future perfect, 177 "there," as an expletive, 25 "to," in English phrases place to which, 54, 186 (n. 2); 348, 73 equivalent to indirect object, 23, 54 tōtus, declension of, 318, 18 trāns, preposition, 53; 348, 74 prefix, 84 337, **41**—342, **47**

two objects with compounds of, TRANSITIVE VERBS, defined, 13 trēs, declension of, 134; 318, 21 $t\bar{u}$, declension of, 320, 23 tuī, declension of, 320, 24 tum, in cum clause, 359, 118a tuus, declension and use of, 45; 320, 26 ubi. with indicative, 354, 102 ut, with indicative, 196 (n. 2) with subjunctive in clauses of fear, 213; 357, 112 in clauses of purpose, 189; 355, 107 in clauses of result, 193: 356, 109 in noun clauses of desire, 191: in noun clauses of fact, 219: ūtor, with ablative, 203; 352, 92 VERBALS, uses of, 364, 140a, c, d VERBS, defined, 13 first conjugation, 20, 32, 36, 39, 59, 77, 81, 97, 103, 123; 325, **34**—328, **35** second conjugation, 57, 59, 63, 77, 81, 97, 103, 123; 329, **36** third conjugation, 111, 113, 115-116, 119, 121, 123; 329, **36** fourth conjugation, 115-116, 119. 121, 123; 329, 36—334, 37 agreement of, 19; 344, 52 compound, 84, 145, 180 with dative, 189 (n. 2); 347, 68 defective, 343, 48 deponent, 165, 167; 335-336, 39 derivation of, 238 impersonal, 195; 354-355, 105 irregular, 33, 145, 163, 166, 219;

VERBS-cont. person and number of, 19 position of, 19 principal parts of, 98-99, 104, 116 semideponent, 336, 40 special, with dative, 191 (n. 4); 346, **64** stems of, 20, 99, 104 synopsis of, 334, 38 transitive and intransitive, 13 also CONJUGATION, Mood, TENSE, VOICE vēscor, with ablative, 203; 352, 92 vetō, followed by infinitive with accusative subject, 356, 110c; 361, **128**, 2

vir, declension of, 49
vīs, declension of, 315, 8
VOCATIVE CASE, 31, 43; 352, 93
VOICE, defined, 59
VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, 355, 106
volō, conjugation of, 163; 341-342, 47
followed by infinitive with subject accusative, 361, 128, 2
vōs, declension of, 320, 23
VOWELS, 368

WORD FAMILIES, 124 WORD ORDER, 12, 19, 23, 51, 97

"yes," how expressed in Latin, 72 you," Latin equivalents, 20

Acknowledgments

To all who have contributed to the illustration of *College Latin* cordial thanks are given. For their kindness in permitting us to reproduce pictures, grateful acknowledgment is made to the following.

Anderson, Rome, pages 16, 61 (arch, forum)

Art Reference Bureau, Inc., Ancram, N.Y., and Fratelli Alinari, Florence, Italy, 37, 105 (kitchen), 117 (bakery, bread), 154, 156, 267

The Bettman Archive, New York, 76, 143 (settlers), 258

British Information Services, Chicago, 248

The British Museum, London, 15, 58, 117 (plate), 216 (Roman soldier), 229, 240 (cup, handle), 312

Brown Brothers, New York, 268, 279

Caisse Nationale des Monuments Historiques, Paris, 220

A Century of Progress, Chicago, 89 (apartment house)

A. E. Coe & Sons, Ltd., Norwich, England, 245

Colchester and Essex Museum, Colchester, England, 27 (Mercury), 216 (tombstone), 240 (urns)

H. C. Combs, 240 (pool)

Commissariat Général au Tourisme, Paris: Photo Aérienne Greff, Pilote et Opérateur R. Henrard, 254 (Arles); Marcelle d'Heilly, 254 (Paris)

The Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington, D.C., 146

Eastman Educational Slides, 69 (consul)

ENIT (Italian State Tourist Office), New York, 61 (Colosseum), 74

E.P.T. (Ente Provinciale per il Turismo), Ravenna, Italy, 131 (boat)

Fogg Museum of Art, Harvard University, 132

French Embassy Press and Information Division, New York, 143 (arches)

French Government Tourist Office, Chicago, 90

Frick Art Reference Library, New York, 94

Ewing Galloway (photograph by Burton Holmes), Chicago, 30

Philip D. Gendreau, New York, 38

Gramstorff Bros., Inc., Malden, Mass., 50, 140, 144

The London Electrotype Agency, Ltd., London, and S. Brown, Tiverton, Devon, England, 240 (mosaic)

Milwaukee Public Museum, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, 262

Musée Alaoui, Le Bardo, Tunis, 54

Musée Départemental des Vosges, Epinal, France, 260

Musées d'Arles, Archives Photographiques, Arles, France, 254 (child)

The Philadelphia Commercial Museum, 210

The Photographical Archives of the Vatican Museums, 73 (Lar), 131 (cutlery)

Reuter-photo, P.A.-Reuter Photos, Ltd., London, 27 (mosaic)

Royal Ontario Museum of Archaeology, Toronto, 92

Sovfoto, New York, 143 (walls)

Bruno Stefani, Milan, Italy, 190

The Toledo Museum of Art, Toledo, Ohio, 182

Albert H. Travis, University of California, Los Angeles, 143 (bridge)

Underwood-Stratton, New York, 202

The University of Chicago, Office of Press Relations, 275

U.S. Coast Guard, Public Relations Division, Washington, D.C., Official Photos, 241, 242 The Walters Art Gallery, Baltimore, and Miss Dorothy K. Hill, Curator of Ancient Art, 105 (lamp), 117 (pitcher), 254 (bowl)

The Yorkshire Museum, York, England, and Messrs. Walter Scott, Bradford, England, 240 (gravestone)

Pictures on the pages cited are reproduced by the courtesy of the following.

The American Museum of Natural History, New York, 135

Miss Mabel J. Mather, High School, Sault Ste. Marie, Mich., and Young, photographer, 204

The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York, 21, 22, 28, 82, 89 (private house), 105 (bedroom), 186, 206

Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, 128

Museum, Aquileia, Italy, 131 (blacksmith)

The National Gallery of Art, Washington, D.C., 11, 40 (from the Kress Collection)

Charles H. Forbes Collection of Vergiliana, Oliver Wendell Holmes Library, Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass., 86, 112, 120, 122

H. W. Poulter of Colchester and Essex Museum, Colchester, and Mayor W. P. D. Stebbing, Deal, England, 250

The Public Library of Newark, N.J., 193

Rheinisches Landesmuseum, Bonn, Germany, 105 (bottles), 136

Römisch-Germanisches Zentralmuseum, Mainz, Germany, 216 (eagle)

Soprintendenza, Monumenti e Scavi in Libia and Archivio fotografico della Libia occidentale, 42, 270

Soprintendenza per le Antichita and Don Carlo Rabini, Ancona, Italy, 131 (wine merchant)

Staatliche Skulpturensammlung, Dresden, Germany, 117 (meat market)

The pictures on the pages cited are from the following.

Baumeister, Denkmäler des Klassischen Altertums, 138, 166, 172, 176, 177, 178, 179

Blanchet, Traité des monnaies gauloises, 230, 237

Cybulski, Tabulae quibus antiquitates Graecae et Romanae illustrantur (copyright, A. J. Nystrom and Co., Chicago), 63, 71, 214

Déchelette, Manuel d'archéologie préhistorique celtique et gallo-romaine, 259

Evans, Coins of the Ancient Britons, 247

Head, A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients, 266 (coins)

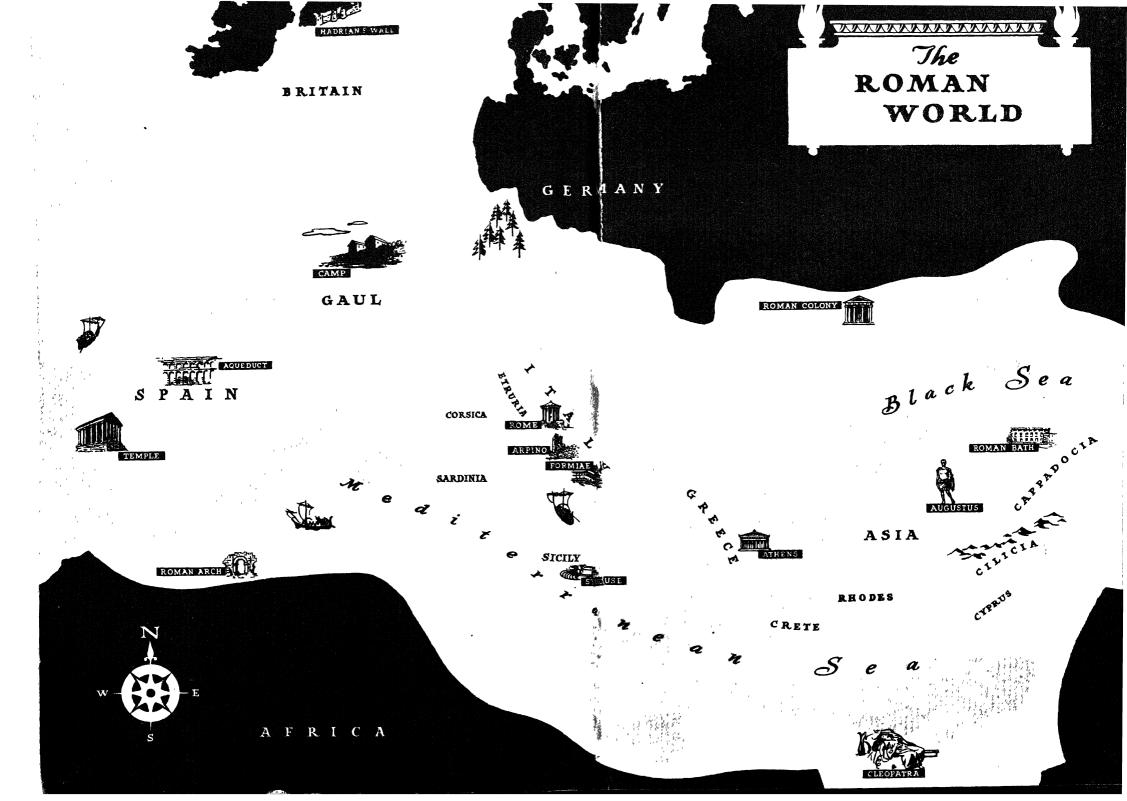
Lehmann's Kulturgeschichtliche Bilder, 89 (atrium)

Letellier, Description historique des monnaies françaises, gauloises, royales et seigneuriales, 266 (Vercingetorix)

Parmentier, Album historique, v. 1, 257, 261; v. 2, 273, 274

Rheinhard, C. Julii Caesaris Commentarii de Bello Gallico, 216 (soldiers at work)

Pictures on the following pages were drawn by Herbert Rudeen: 52, 162, 164, 169, 188, 196, 199, 227, 255



UNIVERSAL LIBRARY UNIVERSAL LIBRARY